ON THE MORPHOLOGY AND SEMANTICITY OF THE
SOTHO VERBAL STEM, WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE
TO THE DERIVATIVE VERBAL SPECIES.

THESIS FOR THE DEGREE OF DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF CAPE TOWN.

PRESENTED BY D.F. V.D. MERWE.
APRIL, 1941.
The copyright of this thesis vests in the author. No quotation from it or information derived from it is to be published without full acknowledgement of the source. The thesis is to be used for private study or non-commercial research purposes only.

Published by the University of Cape Town (UCT) in terms of the non-exclusive license granted to UCT by the author.
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHAPTER</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 VERBAL ROOTS:</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Verbal Roots</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derivative Verbal Roots</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound Verbal Roots</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 VERBAL STEMS GENERAL - Their Nature and their terminal Inflections</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 SIMPLE VERBAL STEMS:</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Simple Verbal Stems</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary Simple verbal Stems</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varieties of Simple Verbal Stems</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 THE CONNECTING VOWEL:</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstandardised Connecting Vowels</td>
<td>56 &amp; 63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standardised Connecting Vowels</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic Connecting Vowels</td>
<td>58 &amp; 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semantic Non-significant Standardised Connecting Vowels</td>
<td>60 &amp; 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffixes used without Connecting Vowels</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 DERIVATIVE SUFFIXES:</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single Derivative Suffixes</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound Derivative Suffixes</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 DERIVATION OF VERBAL STEMS THROUGH SUFFIX- FORMATION - GENERAL</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 SCHEME OF CLASSIFICATION OF VERBAL DERIVATIVE SUFFIXES:</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durative, Durative(intensive), durative (Intensive-multiplicative) or multiplicative</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary durative</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary durative used singly</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary durative used in a compound suffix</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 8 CONT'D:

Secondary durative
Secondary durative used singly
Secondary durative used in a compound suffix
Durative in basic position
Durative-applicative
Durative-actional (destructive)
Durative-actional (capable)
Durative-performative
Durative (extensive) -performative
Durative in non-basic position
Durative (intensive)
Durative (intensive) used singly
Durative (intensive) used in a compound suffix
Durative (intensive) in basic position
Durative (intensive)-applicative -factitive
Durative (intensive)-reciprocal
Durative (intensive) in non-basic position

Multiplicative
Multiplicative used singly
Multiplicative used in a compound suffix
Multiplicative in basic position
Multiplicative - applicative
Multiplicative-reciprocal
Multiplicative - reciprocal-factitive
Multiplicative in non-basic position

9. OPERATIVE, OPERATIVE(EXTENSIVE).

Operative
Operative used singly
Operative used in compound suffix
10. STATIONAL, STATIONAL (CAPABLE); STATIONAL (CAUSATIVE),
STATIONAL (DESTRUCTIVE), STATIONAL (INTENSIVE),
STATIONAL (CAPABLE-INTENSIVE), STATIONAL (DESTRUCTIVE - INTENSIVE).

Stational
Stational used singly
Stational used in a compound suffix
Stational in basic position
Stational-factive
Stational in non-basic position

Stational (capable) ama
Stational (capable) used singly
Stational (capable) ạba ọga ạna used in a compound suffix.
Stational (capable) in basic position
Stational (capable)-actional (capable)
Stational (capable)- applicative
Stational (capable)- reciprocal
Stational (capable) in non-basic position

Stational (capable) ọba ọga ọna
Stational (capable) used singly

Stational (causative)
Stational (causative) used singly
Stational (capable) ọba ọga ọna used in a compound suffix
Stational (capable) in basic position
Stational (capable)-passive
Stational (capable)- reciprocal
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stational (causative) in a compound suffix</td>
<td>173.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (causative) in basic position</td>
<td>174.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (causative)-passive</td>
<td>174.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (causative)-stational (capable)</td>
<td>174.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (capable) eya eya eya or stationa l (causative) in basic position</td>
<td>174.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performative</td>
<td>174.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performative (intensive)</td>
<td>186.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performative-stational (capable)</td>
<td>187.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (capable) eya eya eya in non-basic position</td>
<td>188.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (causative) in non-basic position</td>
<td>188.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (destructive)</td>
<td>189.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (destructive) used singly</td>
<td>189.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (destructive) in a compound suffix</td>
<td>189.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (destructive) in basic position</td>
<td>189.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (destructive)-reciprocal</td>
<td>193.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (destructive)-factive</td>
<td>194.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (destructive)-performative</td>
<td>195.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (destructive) in non-basic position</td>
<td>196.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (intensive)</td>
<td>196.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (intensive) used singly</td>
<td>196.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (intensive) used in a compound suffix</td>
<td>197.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (capable - intensive)</td>
<td>197.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (capable-intensive) used singly</td>
<td>198.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (capable-intensive) used in a compound suffix</td>
<td>198.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stational (destructive-intensive)</td>
<td>198.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 11: Confusiv

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confusiv used singly</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>199.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confusiv used in a compound suffix</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confusiv in basic position</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Persitiv</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Persitiv-applicativ</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>205.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Confusiv in non-basic position</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>206.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 12: Actional, Actional (capable), Actional (applicativ) or Applicativ, Actional (destructiv)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional (intensiv)</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>207.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>207.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional used singly</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>207.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional used in a compound suffix</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>213.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional in basic position</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>213.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional-factiv</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>213.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional in non-basic position</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>214.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional (capable)</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>215.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional (capable) used singly</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>215.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional (capable) used in a compound suffix</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>220.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional (capable) in basic position</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>220.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional (capable-intensive)</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>230.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional (capable)-stational (capable)</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>233.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional (capable)-factiv</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>223.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Actional (capable) in non-basic position</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>226.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Applicativ

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applicativ</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>226.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applicativ used singly</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>226.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applicativ used in a compound suffix</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>238.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applicativ in basic position</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>238.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applicativ (intensiv)</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>239.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Applicativ (intensiv)-factiv</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>244.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### CHAPTER 13 CONT'D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Applicative (intensive)-applicative</td>
<td>245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applicative (intensive)-applicative-factitive</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applicative-factitive</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applicative in non-basic position</td>
<td>251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (destructive)</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (destructive) used singly</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (destructive) used in a compound suffix</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (destructive) in basic position</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (destructive-intensive)</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (destructive-factitive)</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (destructive)-stational (destructive)</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (destructive) in non-basic position</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (intensive)</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (intensive) used singly</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actional (intensive) used in a compound suffix</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13. PROTRACTIVE, PROTRACTIVE (POSITIONAL) OR POSITIONAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Protractive</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protractive used singly</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protractive used in compound suffix</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positional</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positional used singly</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positional used in compound suffix</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positional in basic position</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positional-factitive</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positional-actional (destructive)</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positional in non-basic position</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 14. ADDITIVE, ADDITIVE (RECIPROCAL) OR RECIPROCAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Additive</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additive used singly</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CHAPTER 14 CONTENTS

Additive used in compound suffix  | 294
Additive in basic position       | 294
Additive-factitive               | 296

### Reciprocal

Reciprocal used singly           | 296
Reciprocal used in compound suffix | 306
Reciprocal in basic position     | 306
Reciprocal-factitive             | 306
Reciprocal in non-basic position  | 310

## 15. PUNCTATION, PUNCTATION(CONTACTIVE) OR CONTACTIVE

Punctative                        | 312
Punctative used singly            | 312
Punctative used in compound suffix | 314

Contactive                        | 316
Contactive used singly            | 316
Contactive used in compound suffix | 318
Contactive in basic position      | 318
Contactive-factitive              | 320
Contactive-performative           | 320
Contactive in non-basic position  | 321

Punctative (intensive)            | 322
Punctative (intensive) used singly | 322
Punctative (intensive) used in a compound suffix | 324

Contactive (intensive)            | 325
Contactive (intensive) used singly | 325
Contactive (intensive) used in compound suffix | 325
## 16. DISRUPTIVE.

- Disruptive used singly
- Disruptive used in compound suffix
- Disruptive in basic position
- Disruptive in non-basic position

## 17. FACTITIVE.

- Factitive used singly
- Factitive used in compound suffix
- Factitive in basic position
- Factitive-performative
- Factitive-applicative
- Factitive in non-basic position

## 18. PASSIVE.

- Primary passive
- Primary passive used singly
- Primary passive used in compound suffix
- Primary passive in basic position
- Primary passive in non-basic position
- Secondary passive
- Secondary passive used singly
- Secondary passive used in compound suffix
- Secondary passive in basic position
- Secondary passive in non-basic position

## 19. DERIVATION THROUGH PREFIX-FORMATION.

## 20. VERBALISED DERIVATIVES.

- Denominative
- Deisophonic
- Deadjectival
- Deadverbial
CHAPTER: 21. COMPOUND VERBAL STEMS.

APPENDIXES:
- Appendix A  
- Appendix B  
- Appendix C1.  
- Appendix C2.  
- Appendix D1.  
- Appendix D2.  
- Appendix E1.  
- Appendix E2.  
- Appendix F.  
- Appendix G.  
- Appendix H.  
- Bibliography
CHAPTER 21. **COMPOUND VERBAL STEMS**

PAGES:

Appendix A 430
Appendix B 452
Appendix C1 459
Appendix C2 462
Appendix D1 469
Appendix D2 469
Appendix E1 474
Appendix E2 475
Appendix F 477
Appendix G 480
Appendix H 492

Bibliography 494
INTRODUCTION.

One of the most characteristic features of Bantu grammatical structure is the way in which several verbal stems may be formed from the same verbal root by the affixing of one or more suffixes. This results in what are called the derivative verbal species.

This phenomenon has accordingly been treated to a considerable extent in the existing literature on the Bantu languages, and as regards Sotho, the work of Endemann in his *Wörterbuch der Sotho-Sprache*, pp. 20 - 35 must be specially mentioned in this connection. But in spite of the attention already given to the subject in Sotho there still remains much to be explained concerning the nature of the Sotho verbal stem, its formation as well as its semantics, especially in the case of the derivative verbal species. Something remains to be added to our knowledge even of those derivative species which have been long recognised and fully explored; while there are certain other species about which, though they have been recognised, we have comparatively little information; and, finally, there are numbers of verbal stems which have not been recognised for what they are, viz. derivative verbal species, and whose formation has accordingly not received adequate treatment.

A feature which one feels has been particularly neglected is the interrelationship of suffixes. Except at the hands of Weinhof and E. Endemann, and by them only to a limited extent, this has received no treatment at all. The practice has been to list all suffixes separately, without recognizing that many of them are related to one another through possessing phonetically identical or phonologically related consonants, or through possessing common elements of other kinds like the series *la*, *ala*, *ola*, *ola* and *ta*.

The...
The terminologies so far employed in connection with derivative verbal stems are also hardly satisfactory. Some terms are, as I hope to show, definitely erroneous; other terms if not erroneous are misleading; while of the remainder it may be said that many are inadequate, since they neither distinguish all that has to be distinguished, nor bring out all the relationships that can be observed in the system of derivative verbal species.

An attempt has been made in the present treatise to draw attention to this incomplete and sometimes incorrect treatment of the verbal stem, especially of the derivative species, to throw light on various points as yet obscure, and to suggest that I hope to be a more correct approach to the analysis of the Sotho verbal stem, as well as a more satisfactory classification of the verbal suffixes.

I think it should be mentioned at this stage that no attempt has been made to indicate the probable origin of the Sotho derivative suffixes. This was attempted by K. Endemann in his Wörterbuch der Sotho-Sprache with, it seems to me, no success. He regards several of the suffixes as being identical in force with verbal stems of equal form, and implies that the present system of derivation is a remnant or a development of a previous process of compounding two or more independent verbal stems. I do not wish to imply that Endemann is wrong in his theory; all I suggest is that his arguments do not prove it. In any case it has not been my purpose to seek the origin of forms but only to analyse them.

The aim in this treatise has been to give a detailed analysis of the Sotho verbal stem, and this was done by adopting the following method:

1. I made a systematic card index of all verbal stems found in the existing Southern Sotho, Tswana and Northern
Sotho dictionaries. In this way some 19,500\(^1\) stems were collected — this number excluding reflexive stems, since I do not regard these as constituting a derivative verbal species. It will be realised also that this number includes only those forms actually given in the dictionaries, but does not include many forms, especially compound derivative species, which are theoretically possible but not given in the dictionaries. The number of forms, referred to in this treatise, from other sources than the dictionaries (e.g. the literature in the languages, native informants, etc.) is very small. Obviously not all forms listed on the cards have been discussed or even mentioned in this treatise; it soon became evident that numerous forms require no special treatment, as they did not disclose any special features. It was, however, necessary to collect all of them in the first place in order to be sure subsequently that no noteworthy form was overlooked.

2. I next proceeded to classify and analyse the simple stems with a view to discovering, if possible, whether disyllabic and trisyllabic stems of this kind could not, in a number of cases at least, be split up into simpler elements. It will be seen that this analysis led to the breaking of a considerable number of the simple verbal stems into still simpler component elements, and in this way a number of roots were isolated.

3. An attempt was then made to analyse and classify the remaining stems with a view to ascertaining the relationship between their component elements, viz. roots and derivative formatives. Having thus determined the various species endings, I next proceeded to an examination of the various forms and

\(^1\) Here, as in other cases, I am quoting only round figures. I have, however, deviated from this practice when the figures are very small.
semantic functions of these endings, both in their single and in their compound states, with a view to determining the common factors underlying these various forms and functions. Here I experienced considerable difficulty; first in trying to isolate what might be called the semantic greatest common measure of the various verbal stems, exhibiting a given single or compound ending; and second in trying to fix upon suitable names for each of the semantic functions of a given species ending. I would here expressly repudiate any claim to finality in either regard. At the present stage of the lexicological history of Sotho, it proved to be a task of the greatest difficulty to ascertain the underlying semantic functions of some of the suffixes. In regard to terminology I have, as will be seen, been forced to reject some of the accepted terms as unsuitable, to re-define others which seem to me loosely and incorrectly used, and to coin still other new terms. The terminology I have used must necessarily be subject to many criticisms. But I present it in the hope that it will contribute to the evolution of a better nomenclature than they themselves constitute.

I have naturally made full use of the existing literature on Sotho. In addition to this I have not only referred to a considerable extent to the literature in the various Sotho languages but have also made use of a number of Sotho-speaking informants.

I have employed the recognised orthography for the three languages, excepting in Southern Sotho, where a and a have been used to indicate open o and open o, and a and a to indicate semivocalic o and o.

For the sake of completeness, as well as for the sake of indicating the incidence of the verbal stems quoted

1) i.e. the incidence of the stems according to the dictionaries. It is of course very likely that in some cases the dictionaries are not complete - this is especially the case with the Tswana dictionary.
as examples, it was thought advisable to indicate in each case the language or languages in which a given stem occurs. This has usually necessitated the writing of the same stem two or three times. The employment of a phonetic orthography would have avoided such a repetition as far as stems with identical pronunciation in the three varieties of Sotho are concerned, though it would not have avoided this repetition in cases where not only the official orthography but also the pronunciation differs. On the other hand, the employment of the current orthography has the advantage of easy correlation with the forms given in most of the Sotho literature.

To save space, I have omitted the hyphen usually employed in linguistic work on Bantu languages in connection with formatives, and have written the suffix of e.g. bənala as ala and not as -ala, and its root as bən and not as bən-

To support some of my statements it was found necessary to give many examples. The majority of these examples will be found only in appendices at the end of the treatise and not in the chapters concerned. This procedure was adopted in order to avoid long lists of examples being quoted in the chapters, which would then have become unnecessarily cumbersome. Suitable references to the appendices are of course made wherever necessary.

Finally I should like to express a special word of thanks to Prof. G.P. Lestrade for the advice and guidance given to me in the compilation of this treatise.

ABBREVIATIONS.

UB. = Ur-Bantu.
S. = Southern Sotho.
T. = Tswana.
N. = Northern Sotho.
Term. = Doke G.M. Bantu linguistic terminology.


W. d. S. = Endemann K. Wörterbuch der Setho-Sprache.


Z. f. E. S. = Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen-Sprachen.

M. S. O. S. = Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalischen Sprachen.


App. = Appendix.
1. In analysing the Sotho verbal stems with a view to reducing them to their roots, I was fully aware of the point, rightly emphasised by Bourquin\(^{11}\), that such an analysis, if accurate results are aimed at, should not be limited to one language only. In spite of this I have restricted myself to an examination of the vocabulary of Sotho only, referring to other Bantu languages merely when occasion demands. I thought such an analysis justifiable, as I do not aim at reducing the Sotho verbal stems to their UB. roots, but only at analysing them into such elements as, from the point of view of the Sotho verbal vocabulary only, appear to be irreducible\(^{111}\), in the hope that an analysis of this kind will itself be a step in the direction of the ultimate establishment of UB. roots on a comparative basis — an analysis which for obvious reasons, cannot be accurately performed without detailed information on individual languages. The collecting of such information from various individual Bantu languages, with a view to comparative analysis, falls outside the scope of this treatise.

---

1) Strictly speaking, the term verbal root is not correct as no particular root can be regarded as being the basis exclusively of a verbal stem: e.g. the root \(S.\) \(\text{rut} T. \text{ruti} \text{X.} \text{rut}\) is the basis of both the verbal stem \(S.\) \(\text{rute} T. \text{rute} \text{X.} \text{rute}\) (teach) and the noun-stem \(\text{ruti}\) in \(S.\) \(\text{erutiti} T. \text{erutiti} \text{X.} \text{erutiti}\) (missionary), but as I am aiming at giving a review only of the bases of verbal stems and in so doing have limited myself to examining only verbal stems the term is perhaps justified. It is quite possible, that some of the verbal roots quoted below, may be further split up into roots of a simpler nature, if a more detailed analysis of the Sotho vocabulary is made.

11) \(H.B.B.W., \) pp. 191 and 192.

111) The term "irreducible element" used by Beke \((H.B.B.W., p. 192)\) is, for the purposes of this treatise, taken to mean that part of a Sotho verbal stem, other than its prefixes, suffixes or terminatives, which cannot be reduced to a simpler element by examining the Sotho verbal vocabulary only.
The verbal root in Sotho, determined in the manner which will be fully discussed below, offers a basis upon which the Sotho verbal stem can be explained, and it will be readily agreed that some basis, or other, from which to operate, is essential in analytical work of the kind dealt with in this treatise.

2. Isolation of a verbal root: The root of a simple verbal stem\(^1\) may be isolated by eliminating its terminative\(^\text{ii})\), which may be either the multi-functional 3.\(\hat{a}\) T.\(\hat{e}\) N.\(\hat{e}\), the subjunctive and objective-imperative 3.\(\hat{a}\) T.\(\hat{e}\) N.\(\hat{e}\), the negative and habitual 3.\(\hat{a}\) T.\(\hat{e}\) N.\(\hat{e}\)\(^\text{iii})\), or the perfect S.\(\hat{l}\)le T.\(\hat{l}\)le N.\(\hat{l}\)le\(^\text{iv})\), or one or other permutation of these perfect terminative. Thus the root of the multi-functional simple stem 3.\(\hat{b}\)ala T.\(\hat{b}\)ala N.\(\hat{b}\)ala (count, read) is 3.\(\hat{b}\)al T.\(\hat{b}\)al N.\(\hat{b}\)al, of the subjunctive simple stem 3.\(\hat{a}\)om\(\hat{a}\) T.\(\hat{a}\)om\(\hat{a}\) N.\(\hat{a}\)om\(\hat{a}\) (may bite) is 3.\(\hat{a}\)om T.\(\hat{a}\)om N.\(\hat{a}\)om, and of the perfect simple stem S.\(\hat{l}\)hile T.\(\hat{d}\)igile N.\(\hat{d}\)ile\(^\text{iv})\) (have thrown down) is S.\(\hat{l}\)h T.\(\hat{d}\)ig N.\(\hat{d}\)ile.

3. The components of a verbal root:

(a) The root-consonants: Root-consonants are those consonants which remain after the simple verbal stem has been stripped of its terminative. Thus the root-consonants of S.\(\hat{r}\)oma T.\(\hat{r}\)oma N.\(\hat{r}\)oma (send) are S.\(\hat{r}\) T.\(\hat{r}\) N.\(\hat{r}\) and S.\(\hat{m}\) T.\(\hat{m}\) N.\(\hat{m}\), of S.\(\hat{e}\)mile T.\(\hat{e}\)mile N.\(\hat{e}\)mile.

---

\(1\) For a definition of a simple verbal stem cf. Chapter 3 §1.

\(\text{ii})\) For a discussion of the verbal terminatives cf. Chapter 2; it will be seen that each of these terminatives is employed with a different conjugational form.

\(\text{iii})\) The terminative \(e\) sometimes has an influence on the root-vowel cf. §8(b) below.

\(\text{iv})\) The perfect terminative sometimes affects the preceding root-consonant and sometimes the root-vowel; cf. §8(a) and (b) below.
3. (have ploughed) are the first 3.1 T.1 H.1 and 3.2 T.2 H.2, and the root-consonant of T.20 H.20 (draw water) is T.2 H.2. All verbal roots contain a root-consonant or consonants.

(b) The root-vowel: The root-vowel is the vowel which remains after the simple verbal stem has been stripped of its terminative 11). Thus the root-vowel of S.βετίλα T.βετίλα N.βετίλα (chisel) is S.2 T.2 H.2, of S.βάλλω T.βάλλε N.βάλλο (see) is S.3 T.3 H.3, and of S.βάλλε T.βάλλε N.βάλλε (may see) is S.3 T.3 H.3.

A verbal root can contain only one root-vowel. There are, however, consonantal roots which do not contain root-vowels at all. This is the case inter alia with the roots of all monosyllabic verbal stems, e.g. the root of S.μα T.μα N.μα (rain) is S.μ T.μ H.μ.

1) One and the same consonant may of course be a root-consonant or a stem-consonant according as to whether it appears in a root or a stem respectively, e.g. the ũ and -οι of the ũ -οι are root-consonants in ροι, but stem-consonants in ροι (also). These consonants are sometimes affected by the formations employed to derive stems from roots, this is e.g. sometimes the case when the perfect terminative is suffixed to roots, compare in this connection the ἑ of bel with the S.2 T.2 H.2 found in S.βαλλε T.βαλλε N.βαλλε (have counted) derived from bel, 1962 were examples of the influence of the perfect terminative on the preceding consonant reference should be made to Pltn. pp. 77-79 and Tschir The comparative phonetics of the Auto-Bantu group of Bantu languages. pp. 62-89.

11) Dale uses the term stem-vowel to designate the vowel, other than the vowels of the terminatives, found in simple verbal stems, giving as examples 2 of ἑαν and i of πιάτα (p. 200). Thus the S.2 T.2 H.2 in S.βαλλε T.βαλλε N.βαλλε (chisel, carve) is a stem-vowel, but it is a root-vowel in S.βαλλ T.βαλλ N.βαλλ. One and the same vowel can therefore either be a stem- or a root-vowel according as to whether it appears in a stem or a root-respectively.

Root-vowels are sometimes affected by the formations employed to derive stems from roots; e.g. some of them very according to the conjunctival terminative employed. Thus 2 and 3 may be open in a given verbal stem in its multi-functional or subjunctive conjunctival forms but must always be closed if that verbal stem is in its perfect, habitual and negative conjunctival forms; cf. βαλλε and ἑαν below and ἑαν (see) and beti (do not eat). The perfect terminative sometimes even influences the root-vowel, e.g. S.παλ T.παλ N.παλ + S.παλ T.παλ N.παλ > S.βαλλε T.βαλλε N.βαλλε (have remained); cf. S.παλ T.παλ N.παλ (remain) and also Pltn. pp. 77-78.
4. Types of verbal roots:

(1) Simple verbal roots: a simple verbal root is the irreducible element of a verbal stem. This type of root may be of the following forms: (a) consonantal, i.e. consisting of a consonant\(^{11}\) only; (b) syllabic, syllabic verbal roots are again of two types: (i) those consisting of a consonant\(^{11}\) plus a vowel\(^{11}\), (ii) those consisting of a consonant\(^{11}\) plus a vowel plus a consonant\(^{11}\).

The consonants of simple verbal roots are such as are not due to the influence of a preceding nasal or \(\dot{a}\).

(2) Derivative verbal roots, i.e. verbal roots, derived from simple verbal roots through strengthening\(^{14}\) of one or more of the root-consonants as a result of the influence of a preceding nasal or a preceding \(\dot{a}\). This type of root can be of the following forms: (a) consonantal, i.e. consisting of a consonant only, (b) syllabic, which are again of two types: (i) those consisting of a consonant plus a vowel, (ii) those consisting of a consonant plus a vowel plus a consonant.

1) Unless otherwise stated, from now on only the multifunctional conjugational form of the simple verbal stem will be employed for the purpose of obtaining the required roots.

\(^{11}\) 8.6 T.Y H.Y and 8.5 T.Y H.Y are here also included under the term consonant.

\(^{11}\) There is in Sotho a certain number of verbal roots which would appear to be syllabic. The fact is, however, that such roots contain a latent consonant which reappears in certain circumstances: cf. Phon., pp. 89-81. Of this nature is the initial root of, e.g. B.ala T.ala H.ala (spread out) (cf. B.ala (spread) Phon., p. 187), vis. g. For other roots of this nature cf. App. A. 2 and 3.

\(^{14}\) For a discussion of the strengthening of consonants as a root-forming process, cf. 6. below.

\(^{15}\) Strengthening of the root-consonant resulting in derivative verbal roots is no longer a living process in Sotho. One cannot automatically form derivative roots from simple roots. Not all Sotho affricatives and plosives can be ascribed to the influence of a preceding nasal or \(\dot{a}\) (cf. Phon., p. 74).
5. Compound verbal roots, i.e. verbal roots consisting of: (i) two simple verbal roots, (ii) a simple verbal root, and a derivative verbal root, and (iii) two derivative verbal roots.

5. Simple verbal roots:

(1) Consonantal simple verbal roots. These are found: (a) in monosyllabic verbal stems, e.g. the T.h T.h N.h in S.ha T.ka N.ha (be), the T.g N.g in T.ka N.g (draw water), the S.t T.y N.y in S.ta T.ya N.ya (go), and the S.t Y.y N.y in S.ta T.ya N.ya (fall); (b) as the second root in a compound verbal root. Examples of this will be found under 7 below.

LJ2, T.301, S.461 and N.43 respectively.  

Many Sotho simple verbal stems cannot be reduced beyond roots of this type, but comparison with other Bantu languages will undoubtedly reduce a number of these roots to compound roots consisting of syllabic (of the form consonant + vowel) and consonantal roots. So, as far as can be ascertained from Sotho, the irreducible element in S. buna T.buna N.buna (see) is S.buna T.buna N.buna, although Dempwolff gives an US. stem yuana (see)11), and Deke says Lambe yuana (see) has a compound root, or, as he styles it a derived root, yua, with a simple root ya as its first component part111). In spite of this it should be remembered that the Bantu languages are not averse to roots of the form consonant plus vowel plus consonant

1) There is in Sotho a certain number of verbal roots which appear to be of the type consonant plus vowel, or even of a type vowel plus consonant, and not of the type consonant plus vowel plus consonant, as one of the consonants is missing; but not only has it been proved that a consonant has dropped out in such cases, reappearing in certain circumstances (cf. Phon. pp. 60-61), but this consonant is sometimes in Sotho actually retained as the final vowel y. For this reason I regard the roots of the following simple verbal stems, as conforming to the type consonant plus vowel plus consonant:

(a) Simple verbal stems consonant in a vowel, e.g. S.bina N.bina (become clear), T.sike N.sike (tell lies) cf. N.sika (tell lies);

(b) Simple verbal stems where the terminative 3 follows immediately upon the root-vowel, e.g. T.314 (run away) of S.sika N.sika (run away) and US.314 (base in running, leave behind) M.B.S. P. 314, T.314 N.314 (return) of S.314 T.314 N.314 (return) and US.314 Phon. 314, T.182 (be witch), cf. S.182 N.182 (be witch), S.182 T.182 (be witch), N.182 (catch).


6. Derivative verbal roots:

(a) Consonantal derivative verbal roots. These are found: (i) in monosyllabic verbal stems; e.g. S.фа H.ма (draw water) with root S.фa H.ма; (ii) as the second root in a compound verbal root. Examples of this will be found under 7 below.


(ii) Of the form consonant plus vowel plus consonant, e.g. N.фaме (lift up a dress) with root N.фa всст (lift up a dress); N.фa всст (look to the side) with root N.фa всст (look at, round); S.фa всст (become cool) with root S.фa всst, ef.

1) Cf. H.UN-H., p. 248. In the following verbal stems the nasal is still retained: S.фa T.фa H.фa (it denotes the idea of continued action; in T. and N. also: occupy, inhabit; and in T. also: be) ef. S.фa T.фa N.фa (be); T.ны (distill as rain, exude as gum, perspiration etc.), ef. S.ны T.ны N.ны (rain) and N.ны = N.ны (rain) H.UN-H., p. 311; and S.ны N.ны (go to steel); S.ны T.ны H.ны (take out); T.ны N.ны (take); S.ны N.ны (it denotes the idea of: nevertheless, but; in N. also; do the opposite); S.ны (take).

11) There is in Sotho a certain interaction between the open and closed variety of the vowels o and в respectively of Teker. The comparative phonetics of the Suto-Chew group of Bantu languages, p. 95, and 159, p. 60, also L. Нi H. Нi = L. Нi H. Нi = T. Нi H. Нi (chisel). More examples of this nature will be met with in the course of this treatise. It should be noted that such interaction is sometimes found within the same subgroup of Sotho, e.g. N.ны = N.ны (look down upon).
S.čilo T.čilo N.čiš (become cool, heal); S.čiko T.čiko N.čiko (pass something, go a long way, go parallel, along) with root S.čik T.čik N.čiku; cf. S.čiša T.čiša N.čiša (run away, outrun); and T.čiša N.čiša (withhold an opinion, decline to express an opinion about a matter without hearing more fully about it) with root T.čit N.čit, of. T.čita N.čita (avoid, get out of the way of anything likely to do harm, as a stone thrown at one, refuse). 1)

The strengthening of the consonant is due to either nasal influence, 11), or else to the influence of the vowel 111), and as these two sounds have the same effect on the following consonant, it is impossible to say which of the two was responsible for the strengthening of the consonant or consonants in the verbal root. The following is perhaps noteworthy:

There are about 78 trisyllabic verbal stems in Sotho, the second syllable of which consists of a nasal only, e.g. N.čhačha (dispute, quarrel), of. N.čhača (hang on or fasten to, but note especially en čhačha kwača = cause dissatisfaction or strife); S.čhaka N.čhaka (walk swinging one’s legs and arms), cf. S.čhaka (stretch out one’s legs like one horseback), and S.čaka T.čaka N.čaka (kick); T.čaka (embrace with the arms, spread the arms around), of. S.čaka T.čaka (catch, receive with the hand), and S.čaka T.čaka N.čaka (close or shut a hole, in N. also: catch with both hands); N.čaka (become disgusted or weary), of. N.čaka (become disgusted or weary). 1iv).

11) N.VB.N., p. 192, Phon., pp. 47, 61, 63 and 81.
111) Phon., pp. 61 and 78, and Tucker’s The comparative phonetics of the Suto-Chuana group of Bantu languages, p. 92.
1iv) Reference to these verbal stems will again be made in Chapter 3, where more examples will be quoted.
It is true that stages without the nasal could not be found for all such verbal stems; but these examples prove, I think, that one of the formatives, causing strengthening of the second consonant of a verbal stem, is the nasal. Whether the nasal was succeeded by the vowel i, which Tucker thinks is the primary cause of consonant strengthening\(^1\), is difficult to say: there is at any rate nothing to prove it.

The examples quoted above seem to indicate three stages of development of the consonant of the second syllable of the verbal stem, viz.: (i) the stage where the consonant is still unstrengthened, (ii) the stage where the consonant is strengthened, and still preceded by the nasal, the probable cause of the strengthening, and (iii) the stage with strengthened consonant only.

The occurrence of a nasal in a stem, is sometimes due to a preceding g (UB. \(\ddot{u}\))\(^{11}\). However, in view of, not only the possible line of development indicated above, but also the fact that nasal combinations occur fairly frequently in Bantu verbal stems\(^{111}\), it seems doubtful whether g should necessarily be regarded as the cause of the occurrence of the nasal in the Sotho verbal stems referred to above. The explanation, offered by Bourquin, may perhaps be applied to the following verbal stem: T.\(\ddot{a}ya\) = T.\(\ddot{a}ya\) = T.\(\ddot{a}ya\) = T.\(\ddot{a}ya\) (strike, knock down, churn by striking up and down). That the stem with the nasal is a later development can perhaps be seen

---

1) The comparative phonetics of the Suto-Chewa group of Bantu languages, p. 92.


111) Phon., p. 47 and N.UB.W., p. 198.
from the reflexive stem *itisyə* (strike oneself) which is of course derived from *itisyə*. Compare also *t.niti1a* (leave on one side, pass without touching, e.g. *s.niti1a kwa niti1a* - east or leave outside) with *s.ti1a n.ti1a* (give up, renounce) and its reflexive stem *s.iti1a n.iti1a* (abstain from, keep oneself on a definite side).

As will be pointed out later, the general effect of consonant strengthening on the meaning of the verbal stem is to make the meaning more emphatic. The nasal or the *j* as the case may be, has therefore in such cases a definite semantic force. If now the following verbal stems are compared: *t.kvvar* *N.kvvar* (scrape with a knife, strike as a match), *N.kvath* (scrape, plane), and *T.kwæs* *N.kwæs* (rustle or make a noise like feet in the grass), *N.blær* (chase away), *N.blath* (walk where there is no way) and *N.blæs* (chase away), it is found that in both sets the three verbal stems are semantically related; *kvas(a) kvæs(a)* and *blæs(a) have been derived from *kvvar(a) kwvar(a) and blær(a) through suffix formation, the suffix being *T.ya N.ya* (or strictly speaking *y*, because as will be seen later the *y* does not form an integral part of the suffix); *kvath(a) kwath(a) and blath(a) have been derived from *kvvar(a) kwvar(a) and blær(a) through the influence of either a nasal or *j* on the last consonant. From the viewpoint of word-composition, there seems to be no difference between the nasal or *j* on the one hand, and the suffix *y* on the other hand. Under the influence of the nasal, or *j*, *y > th, under the influence of *y*, *y > g or j*. The question therefore arises: if *y* is regarded as a suffix, why cannot the nasal or *j*, as
the case may be, also be regarded as such? I admit that there
are not many instances where two stems have been formed from the
same root, the one by adding the suffix y to the root, and the
other by strengthening the final consonant of the root, but
that does not affect the argument, as there are many stems
having either the one or the other of these formatives. The
mere fact that the nasal or the e are employed to strengthen
the initial consonant of a stem does not exclude it from be-
ing a suffix as it may in this way be employed to affect the
consonant of monosyllabic stems. This reminding one of the
suffix y which also sometimes affects the consonant of mono-
syllabic stems although in a different way, e.g. 3. n.wa N.wa
(go to stool, idea of making wet), cf. 3. na T.na N.na (rain);
T. ng (give a name to), cf. N.ng (mean), and S.ra T. ra N. ra
(say). For two reasons, however, consonant-strengthening can-
not be regarded as being due to suffix formations: (1) Often,
even in one and the same sub-group of Sotho, there exist
side by side two stems of more than one syllable, and equal
in meaning, one with a strengthened initial consonant, the
other with an unstrengthened initial consonant, e.g. N. fable
(fend off) N. phala (fend off), S. nala (make a first cut in
the skin, rip open) S. thala (make a first cut in the skin,
rip open). In such cases there can of course be no question
of suffix formation, but the process through which the con-
sonant of a monosyllabic stem in strengthened is of identi-
cal type — therefore not suffix formation either; (2) The
occurrence of strengthened and unstrengthened consonants in
phonologically related stems, often differs from sub-group to
sub-group of Sotho, without involving any semantic change.11),
e.g. T. pha = N. phaba (sharpen, cut lengthwise), N. pha = S.
phha N. phha (become loose).111). Such behaviour is not typical
of suffixes; they keep their force from sub-group to sub-group

1) Cf. also Phon., p. 81.
ii) Phon., p. 68.
in) For more examples cf. Appendices CI, DI, and EII.
of Sotho, one hardly ever finds a simple stem in one sub-group being semantically identical with the corresponding derivative stem in another sub-group.

But although consonant-strengthening cannot be regarded as due to suffix-formation, it still remains to be settled whether it should be regarded as a stem-extending or a root-extending process.

(i) Strengthening of the first consonant of a simple verbal stem: if one compares S.hofo (shovel away, take out in quantity) with S.khafa (shovel away, drive out) one finds that they are semantically related, though not synonymous, that they have a common consonantal root $\mathfrak{f}$ (cf. App. B. 3), that the first syllable in both cases, viz. ho and kho are roots (cf. App. A. 44 and 78), of which the consonants are related, $\mathfrak{h}$ having been derived from $\mathfrak{f}$ through strengthening. These remarks apply also to S.hobha T.wothha N.xobla (rub, sharpen, file); N.xwohla (rub, make soft) (App. A. 44 and 78, App. B. 4) and S.rattha T.rathha N.rattha (cut with an axe, split up wood), N.thatha (break into pieces) (App. A. 123 and 160, App. B. 12) etc. For more examples cf. Appendices A, B and C.

(ii) Strengthening of the second consonant of a simple verbal stem: if one compares S.fala T.fala N.fala (scrape, plane, take off) with S.feta T.feta N.feta (hollow, dig a hole), one finds that they are semantically related, though not synonymous, that they have a common root $\mathfrak{f}a$ (App. A. 16), and that their last syllables contain roots $\mathfrak{f}$ and $\mathfrak{f}$ respectively (cf. $\S$ 7 below) which are phonetically related, $\mathfrak{f}$ being a consonant formed from $\mathfrak{f}$ through strengthening. The same remarks will apply to N.dug (stir something stiff) S.luka (stir up water and make it muddy) (App. A. 14)
S. John T. John N. John (look towards), S. John T. John N. John (observe the stars, observe, notice) (App. A. 98) etc., For more examples cf. Appendices A and B. And as for the roots contained in the second syllables of these verbal-stems cf. §7 below.

(iii) Strengthening of both consonants of a simple verbal-stem: if one compares T. rare N. rare (approach and retreat from as in dancing, interweave) with N. thatha (go round in circles, walk about) one finds that they are semantically related, though not synonymous, that there is a root ḫa (App. A. 194) and a root ḫ (cf. §7 below), that there is a root ḫa (App. A. 149) and a root ḫ (cf. §7 below). The consonants of these four roots are phonetically related, ḫ being derived from ḫ through strengthening. The same remarks will apply to S. ḫa T. ḫa N. ḫa (kick) and S. thatha (kick out one's legs like one on horseback), where there are roots ḫa (App. A. 123) and ḫa (App. A. 165), as well as roots S. ḫ T. ḫ N. ḫ and S. ḫ (§7 below). For more examples of this nature cf. Appendices A and B.

From the above, I think, one may conclude that it is the form of the root which is primarily affected as a result of strengthening, and not that strengthening is a root-extending process often of semantic significance. Reference to this process, especially as regards its semantic force, will again be made in chapter 5, dealing with the simple verbal stems. It should however be noted that strengthening of a consonant(s) of a root, underlying a verbal-stem, is not always accompanied by a change in

1) As will be seen later the derivative suffixes are also subject to a process of strengthening.
meaning, e.g. N. rona (crack vermin, delouse) and N. thona (crack vermin, delouse), N. faha (ward off) N. phaha (ward off), for more examples cf. Appendices Cl, Dl, and El.

7. Compound roots:

(i) Consisting of two simple verbal roots, e.g. N. hore T. hore N. xôra (scrape with a finger and then lick the finger) the roots are S. hô T. xô N. xô (App. A. 49), and B. xô T. xô N. xô (App. B. 10); B. xôra (scatter, disperse) the roots are hâ (App. A. 40), and for roots xô and xô cf. (i) above; N. xôra (peel off, scrape off) the roots are xô (App. A. 43) and xô (App. B. 9), for root xô cf. (i) above. More examples can be obtained from Appendices A. and B.

(ii) Consisting of a simple verbal root and a derivative verbal root, e.g. N. xôra (chisel, hollow out) the roots are kô (App. A. 75) and for roots kô and kô cf. (i) above; N. xôra (peel off, scrape off) the roots are xô (App. A. 43) and xô (App. B. 9), for root xô cf. (i) above. More examples can be obtained from Appendices A. and B.

(iii) Consisting of two derivative verbal roots, e.g. N. xôra (cut or chop off), kô (App. A. 76) and xô (App. B. 12), for roots kô and xô cf. (i) above. For more examples cf. Appendices A. and B.

All simple verbal stems given in App. A. have roots of the form consonant plus vowel; but all these stems have another element as well in their structure.

Let us take, e.g. the simple verbal stem N. fala (plane, cut off obliquely), S. fala (crush grain on a mill), B. fala T. fala N. fala (scrape, plane, take off), T. fala (chop or cut lengthwise), S. fala T. fala N. fala (hollow, dig a hole),

1) Cf. also Phon. pp. 62 and 61.
N. faya (break asunder), all these stems have a common root S.fal T.fal N.fal (App. A. 18). The terminal s of these stems is a detachable terminative). It now still remains to be decided what the form: N.faf, S.fahl, S.fal T.fal N.fal, T.fafh, S.fal T.fal N.fal, and N.fay are. S.fal T.fal N.fal as seen above, is their common root. What then are N.f. S.hl, S.fal T.fal N.fal, and N.fay? One might call N.faf, S.fahl, S.fal T.fal N.fal, etc. derivative verbal roots, derived from the simple verbal root S.fal T.fal N.fal. This is the solution offered by Doke when analysing Lamba wésw (see) but this does not give an explanation of the formative s in wésw, and would not suffice to explain f, hl, l etc. here. Should they be regarded as formatives other than verbal roots? And, if so, what kind of formatives? Before attempting to reply to these questions, let us examine what is said by Bourquin on the second syllable of simple verbal stems. He states that the second syllables are employed to give a definiteness, in a certain direction, to the general idea expressed by what he calls "Stammwurf"; he further maintains that already in Ub., these second syllables seem to have had a definite force; but he is not prepared to regard them as roots. He gives no reasons, however, for his contention. I can see no objection to regarding such final syllables as containing roots, and I propose, in what follows, to show that roots can, as far as 3otho is concerned, at any

1) Cf. Chapter I.

ii) In the earlier part of this chapter, these consonants have been regarded as being roots; in how far this assumption is justified will be seen from what now follows.


iv) M.UB.W., p. 191.

v) M.UB.W., p. 193.
rate, (a) be consonantal\(^1\), and (b) occur in the second syllable of a simple verbal stem.

A comparison of the two irreducible elements, found in the simple verbal stems quoted above, will reveal one salient point of difference between these elements, viz. that the common root בעל T.ם N.ם consists of a consonant plus a vowel, while the other element consists of a consonant only. But does this difference imply that such second elements cannot be roots? The examination of a number of syllabic roots will show that it is their consonants and not their vowels, which predominantly determine their meaning; furthermore, the examination of a number of simple verbal stems will show that the same consonants occurring in their first syllables may also occur in their second syllables. Let us take, e.g., the root-consonants בע T.ס N.ס, ס.ס T.ס N.ס, and ת.ס T.ס N.ס:

A. Where they occur in the second syllable of a simple verbal stem; the examples here quoted have been obtained from App. B.1:

(1) בע T.ס N.ס (idea of scattering), cf. ער.ס (idea of dividing, splitting), e.g.:  

בע N.ס (wipe away a child's dirt),

ס.ס (scatter, disperse),

ס.ס (whip water away, take away in quantity),

N.ס (dip up mud with the hand),

T.ס (wipe away filth),

ס.ס (shovel away, drive out),

T.ס (swoop, lavish),

\(^1\) That consonantal verbal roots occur in monosyllabic stems has already been indicated above.
(ii) 3. th T. th N. th (idea of breaking, breaking apart), cf. 
UR.Ke (idea of cutting), e.g.:

N. tek (break with a crowbar),
N. kraka (hook e.g. a thorn in the clothes),
S. kheth (split in two),
S. phuk (break, smash),
N. thak (break out, off),
S. thuk (break).

Cf. also the suffix kHz found in the following 
derivative verbal stems:

N. phaka (out a slip in an animal’s ear) from 
pha, still found in S. apka (scar, rent), 

N. roka (break out, off, smash) from ro, also 
found in N. ler (crack) as well as the simple stem

S. thaka (kick out one’s legs like one on 
horseback).

(iii) 3. th T. th N. th (idea of making short abrupt movements), e.g.:

N. betha (beat),
S. bhat (strike, chop, pinch),
S. klothe (plunge off feathers, pluck),
S. klothe (plunge, pull),
S. katha, T. katha, N. katha (crush, break in new 
ground),
S. katha (gallop),
S. kratha (cut or chop off), S. katha (prepare a 
threshing floor by removing the grass thereof),
S. matha (gallop, run),
T. matha (pilfer food, take a little, 
grind fine),
N. matha (beat), N. matha (break off, pinch off)
S. matha T. matha, N. matha (pilfer, take a 
slice of, break off),
S. matha N. matha (pinch, gnaw, scratch),
We find that semantically the stems in each of these sets are related, and that in each set there is a common element, viz., the last syllable i.e. S.fga T.fga N.fga, S.kba T.kba N.kba and 9. the T. the N. the respectively. But s is a terminative common to all these elements, and is therefore not responsible for the semantic agreement in each of these sets, hence the only formatives that can account for this agreement are S.f T.f N.f, S.k T.k N.k, and 9. th T. th N. th; S.f T.f N.f has the idea of scattering, S.k T.k N.k has the idea of breaking apart and 9. th T. th N. th has the idea of making short abrupt movements.

B. Where they occur in the first syllable of a simple verbal stem, being at the same time, the commonantal element of a syllabic verbal root:

(1) S.f T.f N.f occurring in the roots:

S.fga T.fga N.fga (Ub. pa) with the idea of splitting, scraping away, (App. A. 16), e.g.:

N.faga (plane, cut off obliquely),
S.faga (crush grain on a mill),
S.faga T.faga N.faga (scrape, plane, take off),
T.faga (chop or cut lengthwise),
S.faga T.faga N.faga (hollow, dig a hole),
N.faga (break asunder, beat in two).

S.fga N.fga with the idea of wiping away, (App. A. 19), e.g.:

S.faga N.faga (wipe away a child’s dirt),
S.faga (wipe off, away),
cf. also T.faga (avoid blows, parry).

S.fga T.fga N.fga (Ub. pa) with the idea of stripping off, rubbing off, (App. A. 51), e.g.:

S.fega T.fega N.fega (strip off the leaves or small branches with the hand),
cf. also T.fega N.fega (rub off, take away the leaves).
S. ṭu T. ṭu H. ṭu with the idea of plucking, jerking out; (App. A. 54), e.g. :

T. ṭuthe (pluck out, off).

S. ṭu T. ṭu H. ṭu (pluck, jerk off).

cf. also S. ṭuthe (scatter, drive away).

In spite of the different root-vowels, there is nevertheless a semantic agreement between these various roots, viz. the idea of separating from, and the element responsible for this semantic agreement is undoubtedly S. ṭu T. ṭu H. ṭu, and this is then most probably the same S. ṭu T. ṭu H. ṭu referred to in A. above, there being a definite resemblance in the two ideas expressed.

(ii) S. ṭh T. ṭh H. ṭh occurring in the roots:

S. ṭha T. ṭhe H. ṭhe with the idea of piercing, cutting; (App. A. 54), e.g. :

T. ṭhatha (pierce as a branch).

H. ṭhaththa (hook in clothes as a thorn).

S. ṭhaththa T. ṭhatha H. ṭhatha (crush, break new ground - i.e. cut furrows).

H. ṭhatha (cut the ear).

T. ṭhatha H. ṭhatha with the idea of breaking, chopping, (App. A. 76), e.g. :

T. ṭhatha (cut up growing grass with a spade, chop out the backbone of an animal).

H. ṭhatha (bite through).

T. ṭhatha H. ṭhatha (break with the teeth, plough hard land).

T. ṭhatha H. ṭhatha (break or cut a twig from a stump).

cf. also S. ṭhatha T. ṭhatha H. ṭhatha (chooses, separate i.e. idea of making or breaking apart).

S. ṭhi H. ṭhi with the idea of digging; (App. A. 71), e.g. :

S. ṭhilla (dig dry dung in a kraal).

S. ṭhilla H. ṭhilla (strike the ground with a pick).

cf. also S. ṭhilla (clean a place with a spade), and T. ṭhilla (dig superficially).
In spite of the different root-vowels, there is nevertheless a semantic agreement between these various roots, viz. the idea of cutting, breaking, and the element responsible for this semantic agreement is undoubtedly S. kh T. kh N. kh, and this is thus most probably the same S. kh T. kh N. kh referred to in A. above, there being a definite resemblance between the two ideas expressed.

(iii) S. th T. th N. th occurring in the roots:

S. thó T. thó N. thó with the idea of breaking off, away, (App. A. 158), e.g.:

N. thô (break off),

S. thôba (break through, break out and run away),

N. thôka (break off, out).

df. also N. thôba (break through, out), and N. thôka (take out with two fingers).
In spite of the different root-vowels, there is nevertheless a certain semantic agreement between these various roots, viz. the idea of making violent movements or performing forceful action, and the element responsible for this semantic agreement is undoubtedly S.th T.th N.th. and this is then most probably the same S.th T.th N.th referred to in A. above, there being a definite resemblance between the two ideas expressed.

From the above, I think, the following points are evident: (i) of the roots taken from App. A. the semantically dominant element is the consonant; the vowel, although it may give some colouring to the meaning of the root, is not a decisive factor in determining the basic meaning of the root; (ii) the consonantal element which is responsible for the basic meaning of the roots referred to in (i), is used also in the second syllable of a verbal stem as a consonantal root. It can hardly be said that the above examples are due to mere coincidence; more examples, revealing the same phenomenon, may be obtained by comparing Appendices A. and B.

Of certain verbal-stems one can only prove the first syllable to be a root, e.g. ḥaw: S.ḥaw) (strain a liquid), S.ḥaw (strain a liquid), S.ḥah (drain, fall in drops); S.ḥaw T.ḥaw N.ḥaw (look towards), S.ḥaw T.ḥaw N.ḥaw (pay attention, observe the stars), S.ḥaw (observe, become acquainted with), S.ḥaw T.ḥaw N.ḥaw (look after, expect, wait for). As far as I could ascertain, none of the last syllables of these verbal stems contains a root also found in another verbal stem, whether in its last or first syllable. But, in view of what has been said previously,

one can perhaps assume that these last syllables do contain roots, though the actual meaning of these roots cannot be gathered from the Sotho verbal vocabulary alone; it is difficult to see what else they could be.

As certain verbal stems again, one can only prove the last syllable to contain a root, e.g. N.x̆hla (get loose, become united) where hla contains a root h1, (App. B. 4), T.jama (wipe away filth) where ja contains a root j, (App. B. 3). There are not many examples of this type, as a rule, one can either prove that both syllables contain roots, or, that the first syllable is a root, or else, the root is of the form consonant plus vowel plus consonant. I think, however, that one can, in view of what has been said previously, assume that X8 and ja are roots, although their actual value cannot be indicated from the Sotho verbal vocabulary alone; it is difficult to see what else they could be.

A word may now be said in justification of the term compound root here adopted, since it may be asked why the term "derivative roots", employed by Duke with regard to Lamba (go, was not used). If I apply this term to N.x̆hla (consisting of a root X, App. A. 45 and a root j, designated by the term "derived root") it would mean that this term is employed to x in (App. B. 10). It would mean that he is a root derived from the simple verbal root X through the addition of another simple verbal root j. But this does not seem right; the adding together of two formatives of equal status, to my mind, does not give a derivative form but a compound form. For this reason, and as it is essential to have a term for the stage obtained when a simple verbal stem

consisting of two verbal roots), is short of the terminative s. I am using the term compound verbal root.

8. It is perhaps noteworthy that so many simple verbal stems consist of two roots which resemble each other in meaning. Let us examine the following simple verbal stems with v as their second root: S.tura T.tura N.tura (notch, hollow cut), N.xera (cut open a swelling, wound the head), N.xera (carve), N.bhura (cut e.g. with an axe), N.khare (plough hard dry land), N.xhore (bite off, break with the teeth), N.xhore (chisel, hollow cut), S.agare, N.agare (engrave, scratch), S.phure T.phure N.phure (cut hard food, gnaw). They have a common consonantal root v conveying the idea of cutting, scratching, biting (App. B. 10) and in addition, in each case, respectively an initial syllabic root conveying the following ideas:

S.tu T.tu N.tu (idea of notching, scratching off) (App. A. 33)
S.ka T.ka N.ka (idea of cutting, scraping) (App. A. 41)
N.xh (idea of cutting, scraping) (App. A. 43)
S.blh N.blh (idea of stabbing, chopping) (App. A. 60)
T.xh N.xh (idea of breaking, chopping) (App. A. 70)
N.xh (idea of notching, chiselling) (App. A. 75)
S.nava T.nava N.nava (idea of scratching) (App. A. 108)

1) (a) A simple verbal stem commencing in a vowel and having a demonstrable root in its second syllable, e.g. T.ara N.ara (wound the head, cut open a swelling) (for root v cf. App. B. 10) seems to have as its other root a vowel only. The fact is that in such cases the consonant, which originally preceded the vowel, has mostly disappeared in Sotho (Phon. pp. 59-61). In other cases this consonant has been retained as the semi-vowel e.g. T.ara N.ara (ward off) and N.ye (ward off).

(b) In a simple verbal stem like N.essa (beat), which has a root t (cf. App. A. 146), the final a is of course a verbal terminative, it may seem as if there is no root in the second syllable, i.e. in spite of the fact that the stem is disyllabic it nevertheless contains one root only. That this is not the position, but rather that we have here an elision of the second root is proved by the fact that this verbal stem has another form occurring also in N. yess (beat), where a is in all probability the representative of V. y, which has completely disappeared in the case of tes (Phon. p. 59). Similarly the second root of S.bua T.bua N.bua (skin) has probably been elided, cf. S.bua N.bua (skin) and the root S.bu T.bu N.bu (App. A. 10).
Semantically the first and second roots of these verbal stems are closely related. Similar results will be obtained, if the first syllables (i.e. the initial roots) of the verbal stems quoted in § 7 above, with S. ru T. ru N. ru, S. tu T. tu N. tu and S. th T. th N. th respectively as their second roots, are compared with roots of equal form in App. A. It is true that not all these verbal stems show resemblance in meaning in their two roots, but most of them do. More examples, showing this phenomenon, may be obtained by comparing verbal stems contained in App. B. with those contained in App. A.

Let us now take S. furu T. furu N. furu, one of the stems analyzed above for further examination. As pointed out it has an initial root S. ru T. ru N. ru with meaning more or less akin to that of S. ru T. ru N. ru; but it will be seen from App. A. that there are two other roots of the same form, differing entirely in meaning from S. ru T. ru N. ru referred to above. In the same way there are roots ru found in the second syllable of simple verbal stems, differing semantically from S. ru T. ru N. ru with the idea of cutting, scratching, biting, e.g. the root S. ru T. ru N. ru found in S. hara T. hara N. hara (coil ropes, gather up clothes when going through water) (for root S. ru T. ru N. ru cf. App. A. 39), or the root T. ru found in T. ilhara (worry) (for root T. ilho cf. App. A. 59). The question may now be asked, what proof there is that the roots S. ru T. ru N. ru and S. ru T. ru N. ru, found in S. furu T. furu N. furu, are actually the S. ru T. ru N. ru and S. ru T. ru N. ru which are related in meaning. Can one of these roots not perhaps have another meaning? I admit that no definite reply can be given to these questions; one can only put a counter question, viz.: if out of two sets of roots, each of which contains roots
equal in form but not in meaning, with however one or more roots in one set akin in meaning to one or more roots in the other set, two roots have to be chosen to build up a stem, is it not very likely that roots akin in meaning will be chosen rather than roots not akin? It should be remembered that the number of simple verbal stems is 90 to identical in form, but not in meaning (and in some cases not in intonation), is not so very big; that means that where there are two sets of roots, as described above, in by far the majority of cases only one verbal stem is formed by taking both its roots from these two sets - one from each set. But these are only tentative remarks.

9. The question now arises: what is the difference between a derivative suffix, and the verbal root found in the second syllable of a simple verbal stem? Take, e.g. the verbal stem "koome" (set down helpless, sink down exhausted) derived from kog found in T.ogee "n.ogóe (a weak thing). Why should T.ogge (final e is in each case a verbal terminative) be regarded as a suffix and not a root? Or is it a root? As the answer to these questions is closely linked up with the difference between a simple and a derivative verbal stem, this matter will be dealt with in Chapter 6.

10. Time and again in the preceding paragraphs, initial simple or derivative verbal roots, of the form consonant plus vowel, have been quoted with a common consonant, but different vowels and related in meaning. This phenomenon becomes more interesting when found in simple verbal stems related in meaning, and alike in form excepting for the root-vowel, e.g. 1) M.kaare (open a sore, wound the head) 41.

1) The numbers after the examples refer to the roots in App. A.
N.µ̱ra (carve) 45. S.µ̱ra T.µ̱ra N.µ̱ra (scrape with the finger) 49; N.p̱ta (press together, squeeze) 109, N.p̱ta (press together, squeeze), S.p̱ta N.p̱ta (hide) 120. 
N.p̱ta (squeeze between the hands); S.ṯna N.ṯna (scoop up much water or corn), N.ṯna (dip up with a flat dish), N.ṯna (lick a pot clean, scrape with a finger and then lick the finger).

It may be that we have in each of the sets of verbal stems quoted above, a common consonantal root, that will then be the consonant found in the second syllable - this is, e.g. actually the case with the ṯ found in the first set (cf. App. B. 10); but different syllabic roots, of the form consonant plus vowel, that will then be the initial roots; this is actually the case, either partly or wholly, with some of the sets quoted above.

It is of course impossible to say by examining one language only, whether one of these syllabic roots is to be regarded as the original root, and the other as having been derived from it through a process of vowel change. However, one thing seems evident from the above examples, viz. that it is the form of the root which is primarily affected as a result of this type of vowel change, which has mostly, but not always a semantic significance1). Of course the stem being built on the root, will be affected if the root undergoes a change, and for this reason I shall refer to this process again in chapter 3, dealing with the simple verbal stem, in spite of the fact that it is primarily a root-extending process.

11. The root may also change in length, stress and tone11). It is, however, not my aim to examine these changes in this treatise.

1) Cf. App. C.

CHAPTER 2.

The verbal stems general to their nature and their terminal inflections.

1. The term verbal stem as used here, covers stems derived by means of: (a) derivative suffixes or conjunctival terminatives from verbal roots or non-verbal stems; (b) prefixes from already existing verbal stems.

The same stem may occur in both verbs and other parts of speech, e.g. S. *thepa (do), in the verb *thepa (I do), and in the noun *thepa-like (sinner lit. a door of bad things). In this treatise the term "stem" will be used to denote verbal stems unless otherwise specified.

2. The following stems occur in Sotho:

A. Simple stems;

B. Derivative stems which again are of two types:

1. Those derived from verbal roots, such stems may be termed verbal derivatives. There are here two types of verbal derivation, viz. (a) derivation through suffix-formation, such derivatives are sometimes subject to prefix-formation as well; (b) derivation through prefix-formation, such derivatives are sometimes subject to suffix-formation as well.

1) Excepting where specially mentioned, verbal stems of a non-Bantu origin are not dealt with in this treatise.

ii) Debe defines a stem as follows (cf. Term., p. 200): "that part of a word depleted of all pratal inflexion". It will be observed that this definition does not cover such derivative verbal stems as: N. *mbuma (sing), cf. S. *mbuma; N. *bume (rear, resound), and S. *wumaka (look well at), cf. S. *humak (look in all directions).

iii) These terms will be defined later.

ii. These derived from non-verbal stems, such stems may be termed verbalised derivatives. There is here only one type of derivation viz. through suffix-formation.

C. Compound stems, which again are of the following types:
   1. Reduplicated verbal stems;  
   2. Verbal stem + verbal stem (not reduplication);  
   3. Noun-stem + verbal stem;  
   4. Ideophonic stem + verbal stem;  
   5. Adjectival stem + verbal stem;  

Compound stems are also subject to suffix-formation.

Each of these various types of stems will be fully dealt with in the subsequent chapters, where definitions will be given. For all the different terms above employed,  

3. The stem in Sotho, whether simple, derivative or compound, is subject to two types of terminal inflexion, viz.:  
   a. Species-forming terminal inflexion, or terminal inflexion changing the species of the stem;  
   b. Conjugational terminal inflexion, or terminal inflexion changing the conjugation of the stem.

4. By the term species is meant these derivative stems formed from non-verbal stems, or verbal roots through suffix-formation.

Species-forming terminal inflexion therefore concerns the species of the stem, and the inflecting formatives employed are termed derivative suffixes\(^1\). This type of terminal inflexion will be dealt with at length later on in this treatise.

1) For the definition of "derivative suffixes" cf. Chapter 5.
5. By the term conjugation is meant that set of forms which the stem assumes to indicate action (positive or negative), mood (indicative, subjunctive etc.), tense (past, present etc.), implication (simple, progressive etc.), aspect (indefinite, continuous etc.), and sequence.

Conjugational terminal inflection therefore concerns the conjugation of the stem, and the inflecting suffixes employed will here be named terminatives. There are in Sotho four\(^1\) such terminatives, viz. 3.\(a\) T.\(a\) N.\(a\), 3.\(b\) T.a N.a, 3.\(c\) T.e N.e, and 3.\(d\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\) (or one or other of its permutations)\(^2\). These terminatives\(^1\) always have the final position in a stem, excepting 3.\(d\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\) which is combined with the derivative stems, viz. the primary passive and \(n\).\(e\) factitive\(^3\).

\(^{1}\) There are three more suffixal forms, viz. (a) The imperative suffix S.\(e\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\) employed in the plural imperative positive and negative, e.g. S.\(e\) boeng T.\(e\) boeng N.\(e\) boeng (see). S.e boeng T.e boeng N.e boeng (do not see); in the negative open \(e\) and open \(e\) become closed under the influence of \(e\). (b) The plural hortative suffix S.\(e\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\) (the hortative is a variant of the subjunctive mood), e.g. S.e ba boeng T.a re boeng N.e re boeng (let me see). Also here open \(e\) and open \(e\) become closed under the influence of \(e\). (c) The relative suffix S.\(a\) T.\(a\) N.\(a\) (some dialects \(a\), and \(a\) (most dialects) \(a\), I am quoting a few examples from S.\(a\) n.\(a\) re fatang (the person who loves), rethe n.\(e\) fatang (the person who does not love), n.\(e\) re fatang (the person who has loved). In all three cases the suffixes are attached to one or other terminative already existing.


\(^{3}\) They are also used when forming stems in Sotho from foreign words. I quote examples of stems found in T., and derived from Afrikana \(e\) (fasten) and kwed (be angry); \(e\) (fasten) kwed (become angry), \(e\) (fasten) kwed (may get angry) \(e\) (do not fasten) kwed (may get angry - negative) kwed (have fastened) kwed (have become angry).

\(^{4}\) With these two stems the derivative suffixes are inserted into the perfect terminative resulting in: (a) as regards the perfect passive: S.\(e\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\) (of. T.\(e\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\) have been done). But the secondary passive suffix, as far as it can be used with the perfect conjunctival terminative, precedes the latter e.g. S.\(e\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\) (have been given) or. T.\(e\) n.\(e\) (give)\(^1\) (b) as regards the perfect factitive: S.\(e\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\) (of. Phon., p. 78 regarding the development of the perfect factitive suffix), e.g. T.\(e\) n.\(e\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\) (have finished) from T.\(e\) T.\(e\) N.\(e\).
6. The term conjugational form indicates that form, taken up by the stem itself, whether simple, derivative or compound, when provided with one of the terminatives referred to above. There are therefore four conjugational forms in Sotho, viz. in:

(a) 3. T. 2 N. i.e. the multi-functional conjugational form. The verb is in this conjugational form in the vast majority of its moods and tenses, not only in the positive but sometimes also in the negative conjugationi).

(b) 3. T. 3 N. i.e.: (i) The subjunctive conjugational form. The verb is in this conjugational form when the verb is in certain tenses of the subjunctive moodii).

(iii) The objective-imperative conjugational form. The verb is in this conjugational form when in its imperative mood singular positive, it is preceded by the objectival concord or the reflexive prefix.

(c) 3. T. 2 N. i.e.: (i) The negative conjugational form. The verb in this form denotes denial, the opposite to positive or affirmativeiv).

1) For a definition of conjugation cf. Term., p. 75.

11) In all three languages this terminative, whether subjunctive or objective-imperative, is changed into closed e when followed by t. ng T. ng N. ng a suffixal formative employed to indicate the plural of the hortative mood, as well as the plural of the objective-imperative, and as indicated above, in both cases, the stem-vowel, if open e or open o is changed into closed e or closed o, e.g. (I quote from N.): hortative: singular a le bole (let me see), plural a le boseng (let us see); objective-imperative: singular a le fune (shop it), a le fune (shop them).


iv) Cf. Term., p. 150.
(4) See T. ile N. ile (or one of its various permutations), i.e. the perfect conjugational form. The verb in this form denotes completed action\(^{1}\).

\(^{1}\) As will be seen from the following examples, change of conjugational form does not indicate change of species\(^{11}\).

(I quote examples from T.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ke a ile (I build)</th>
<th>Agie is a multi-functional simple stem,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gore ke a ile (so that I may build)</td>
<td>Agie is a subjunctive simple stem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go ke a ile (I do not build)</td>
<td>Agie is a negative simple stem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ke tle ke a ile (I usually build)</td>
<td>Agie is a habitual simple stem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ke agle (I have built)</td>
<td>Agle is a perfect simple stem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ke me agle aile (I build a house for him)</td>
<td>Agle is a multi-functional applicative stem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gore ke me agle aile (so that I may build a house for him)</td>
<td>Agle is a subjunctive applicative stem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Go ke me agle aile (I do not build a house for him)</td>
<td>Agle is a negative applicative stem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ke tle ke me agle aile (I usually build a house for him)</td>
<td>Agle is a habitual applicative stem,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ke me agetae aile (I have built a house for him)</td>
<td>Agetae is a perfect applicative stem,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples of this nature can be quoted for any simple, derivative or compound stem in Sotho, and similar or more or

1) The initial vowel of the perfect terminative often coalesces with the multi-functional terminative in the perfect conjugational form of monosyllabic verbal stems (cf. Chapter 6), e.g. S. galele T. ilele (has built), cf. S. gie T. gie (burn) cf. T. J. J. Jesuit A Grammar of the Sotho Language, p. 150, Wecree and Brown Sotho Grammar, p. 151, Haitema Grammatik des Sotho, p. 70.

11) In view of the twofold aspect of all Sotho verbal stems, viz. species and conjugation, a double-barreled term is necessary in each case. Thus: S. rati S. rati S. rati (love) is termed multi-functional simple; multi-functional to distinguish it from the other conjugational forms, and simple to distinguish it from the other species e.g. the applicative, reciprocal, etc. So, S. rati S. rati S. rati (cause to love), S. rati S. rati S. rati (may cause to love), S. rati S. rati S. rati (do not cause to love - negative) are all performative (causative) stems, i.e. as far as their species is concerned, but, in addition to this they have each a specific conjugational form which should also be referred to in any terminology aiming at accuracy.
less similar examples can be quoted for many other Bantu languages; for a particularly complete series in one such language reference may be made to Herero. 1)

From the above it is apparent that species is always linked with conjugational form: no conjugational form can appear isolated from the species, nor can any species appear except in some conjugational form. Therefore, although I do not propose in this treatise to deal with the various conjugational forms, one has the option but to choose one of the conjugational forms with which to operate in discussing the verbal species. In dealing with the various species of the stem, it has been the practice so far to quote these species in their multi-functional conjugational form, and as there is no reason why I should deviate from this practice, I shall also operate with the multi-functional conjugational form of the stem. Reference to the other conjugational forms will of course be made as occasion demands.

8. In view of the fact that the possibility of the multi-functional terminative g having replaced another as well as the probable identity of that vowel, and if so which vowel, has already been the subject of considerable discussion, I think it advisable to give also attention also because there are in Sotho a few stems which do not end in g in their multi-functional conjugational form; viz. s.ve T.ve N.ve 11) (say), T.itsa (know), T.lore 111) 1) Cf. Hahn's *Grammatik des Herero* Appendix E. at the end of his book.

11) Cf. N. ve (say).

111) Cf. T. (SetlKrwa) lore (bring).
I do not intend to go into this question as far as other Bantu languages are concerned, but must make some short critical examination of the opinions already expressed in this connection, in order to justify the point of view I take up with reference to this question in Sotho.

1) Only found dialectally in T.

ii) S. be T. be N. be is a variant of S. be T. be N. be (be), and is found in such constructions as e.g. S. re T. be re a rile (we shall be buying) the be here employed must be distinguished from be <. While the perfect of be found in such constructions as e.g. T. re re a rile (we were buying).

iii) T. be, which is found only dialectally, is a variant of T. be (be) and is found in such constructions as re tle be re rile (we shall be buying), ke a be be rile (I am buying).

iv) Found only in the participial mood, cf. S. ke le means (I being a man). It is noteworthy that le has no negative conjunctural form with the same root as basis. The negative of le is expressed by S. ke T. ge N. ge (not being, is not) found only in the negative conjunctural form of S. ke as means (I not being a man), and S. ha as means (it is not a man).

v) Of Nguni origin cf. Xh. y'ho (say).

vi) A variant of T. 3e (be), cf. e.g. ke tle me ke rile (I shall be buying).

vii) A variant of S. me, cf. ha tle me me tle (however they will come).

viii) A variant of S. le, cf. ke tle le ke tle (I shall indeed come).

ix) A variant of S. me, cf. ke tle me ke tle (I shall keep on coming).

x) This list may have to be extended if on further investigation it is found that formations which are at present regarded as verbal auxiliaries (cf. Xhosa, p. 87), are actually verbal stems. Such an investigation has not been carried out here, as it would have necessitated a lengthy discussion on practically the whole of Sotho verbal morphology, and such a discussion would lead us too far afield from the subject of this treatise. Moreover, the outcome of such a discussion would not affect this treatise only to the same extent as to this list, as well as to the list of monosyllabic stems, a few more verbal stems might have to be added. It was therefore not thought worth while to give this matter any further attention here.
All those who have investigated this question agree that the terminal \( a \) is a detachable formative which has its own specific function.

9. So far attention was mainly focussed upon \( a \) as terminal of the simple stem, i.e., according to my terminology for Sotho, the terminative of the multi-functional simple stem, but, as indicated above, the vowel generally terminating the multi-functional derivative stem is also \( a \) and as such it is to my mind also worthy of investigation. It will be convenient for my purpose here to discuss the terminal \( a \) in the derivative stems first, and to take in order the following two points — reference to other Bantu languages being made where necessary, to support the observations made in regard to Sotho: (i) whether the vowel \( a \) terminating the multi-functional derivative stem, and hence also the derivative suffixes of such stems, is an integral part of the suffixes proper, (ii) if not, whether the simple and derivative stems in their multi-functional conjugational form must necessarily have had another terminal vowel preceding \( a \), and if so which vowel — with other words whether \( a \) has replaced another vowel.


11) Although compound stems also end in \( a \) in their multi-functional conjugational form, we need not pay any special attention here to the terminative \( a \) of these stems, as it throws no special light on the question under discussion. In fact, most compound stems have either a simple or a derivative stem as final component part.
10. Point (1):
(a) The mere fact that, as already indicated above, the force of the derivative stem is not affected by the change of the terminative is, I think, sufficient proof that neither $a\partial T.a N.a$ nor $a\partial T.a N.a$ and $a.lie T.lie N.lie$ (or one of its permutations) for that matter, can be regarded as being part and parcel of the derivative suffixes. There may e.g. be actional (destructive) derivative suffixes $a\partial a\partial N.a\partial$, $a\partial T.a N.a\partial$, $a\partial N.a\partial$, $a.lie T.lie N.lie$ and $a.otae T.otae N.otae$.

The nature of the terminatives of these suffixes depends upon the conjunctional form in which the stem is used.

(b) One further proof is however offered, that a derivative suffix proper:

Let us compare the following multi-functional derivative stems corresponding to $T.itae$ (know) and $T.lere$ (bring) (i.e. multi-functional simple stems not ending in $a$) with parallel multi-functional derivative stems corresponding to $T.rata$ (love), (i.e. a multi-functional stem ending in $a$):

(i) multi-functional derivative stems corresponding to $itae$: the performative (causative) $itise$ (make known), the actional (capable) $itase$ (become known), the applicative $itasete$ (know with respect to), the reciprocal $itsanye$ (know each other)\(^1\), and the passive $itsive$ (be known)\(^1\); $lere$: the applicative $lerete$ (bring with respect to), and the passive $lerive$ (be brought)\(^1\).

---

2) The actional (capable) - actional (capable) stem corresponding to $itae$ however ends in an $a$: $itsahala$ (become known).
3) In T.(Setlôkwa) also $leriwa$. 
(ii) multi-functional derivative stems corresponding to rate: the performative (causative) rates (cause to love), the stational (capable) ratas (be lovable), the applicative ratea (love with respect to), the reciprocal raeta (love each other), and the passive ratae (be loved). We see therefore that where the multi-functional simple stem does not end in a, the corresponding multi-functional derivative stems as a rule, do not end in e either 1 - the exceptional forms being probably due to analogy to the general position.

This phenomenon is also found in other Bantu languages: e.g. in Xhosa the (say) has a corresponding applicative stem /hole, and a corresponding passive stem /hive, the multi-functional derivative stem corresponding to thi (say) and however in 11; in Yaonde, as far as ati (UB. aha) is concerned, e.g. bede (put down on something) has a corresponding durative stem bede, trous (walk) has a corresponding durative stem troua 11; in Konde, as far as ati (UB. aha) is concerned, e.g. ti (say) has durative stem trivi; in Kamba, the reciprocal stems in this language as a rule end in a in the multi-functional conjugational form e.g. yeni (see each other) of. eni (see), but the reciprocal corresponding to ngege (give) is ngengae (give each other) vi.


v) Bruter "Handbuch der Kamba Sprache" M.8.0.8. 9, p. 86.

vi) In Duala, where the vowel employed as terminative of the multi-functional conjugational form of the simple verbal stem, is very often the same as the root-vowel (Meinehof Lautlehre der Bantusprachen, p. 167), verbal suffixes in the multi-functional conjugational form are very often found ending in e (Meinehof Lautlehre der Bantusprachen, pp. 164-66).
From the above, I think, it is evident that the terminal vowel \( a \) does not form an integral part of the derivative suffix, but is a terminative suffixed to it just as \( i \) and \( ale \) may be suffixed to it. It has been the practice so far to quote derivative stems in their multi-functional conjugational form, and hence derivative suffixes an ending in \( a \). There is no reason for deviating from the existing practice, and derivative suffixes will therefore in this treatise also be provided with a final \( a \). It should, however, be remembered that this \( a \) is merely the multi-functional terminative, and does not actually belong to the suffix.

11. Point (11):
I shall first of all discuss briefly the terminal vowel of the multi-functional simple stem, and subsequently refer to the position in regard to the multi-functional derivative stem.

The following are the theories which have been evolved in this connection:

(a) What we may call the unknown vowel theory.
This theory was evolved by Bleek\(^1\), and supported to a certain extent by Meinhold\(^1\), though later Meinhold seems to have receded his opinion\(^1\). Bleek contends that "the ending vowel of the stem of almost all verbs has been entirely lost" and "as a consonantal ending is incompatible with the original principles of structure in the Bantu

---


11) *Grundriss einer vergleichenden Grammatik der Bantusprachen*, p. 82-83.

111) *Lautelehre der Bantusprachen*, p. 56
languages, a vowel must be supposed to have been suppressed before the -a, which is the grammatical ending of the positive infinitive in the infinitive, indicative etc." He indicates the "obliterated vowel" by the Hebrew י (aleph).

(b) What we may call the assimilated-vowel theory. This theory was evolved by Haba\(^1\) and has been supported by Kopp\(^1\), and also by van Eden\(^\text{ii}\), though later van Eden has also revised his opinion\(^\text{iv}\). According to this theory the vowel suppressed by י was a vowel assimilated to the root-vowel. It will be noted that the difference between these two theories is not primary, in that they both definitely postulate the existence of a displaced vowel, but only secondary, in that, according to the first theory the quality of the vowel is not postulated, while in the second theory it is. My reasons for being reluctant to assume the necessity for inferring any vowel whatever will be seen from what is said below.

Speaking generally, the multi-functional simple stem in Bantu seems to have as terminative either of the following:

1. י, which is almost the universal multi-functional terminative.

2. A vowel identical in form with the root-vowel, this is a common phenomenon in Dama\(^\text{i}\), but is occasionally also met with in other Bantu languages e.g. T-lere (bring), Luba peco (give), Ngala bote (beat), kolo (speak)\(^\text{vi}\) and Soli \(^\text{iii}\) (kapo)\(^\text{vii}\).

---

6) "Weinreb Lautlehre der Bantu-Sprachen", p. 187.
7) Term., p. 115.
iii. A vowel which is neither a nor of the form described in ii. above, examples of this are found all over the Bantu-area, e.g., T-ita (know), Zulu asi (know), Soli kute (possess), and Siha mrie (bring), maki (be able), kulo (linger), koko (forget), wololo (kindle a fire).

iv. A vowel of varying form with some mono- or disyllabic stems, e.g., 3,pe T-pe N-re (say), Xhosa thi (say) and 5/be (say, speak), Nyawensi yi (be) Tonga ku (say).

In several Bantu Languages, e.g., Herero, Old Swahili, Soli, Mgazidja, etc.111), disyllabic verbal stems are found with a root- and a terminal vowel identical in form. Keespe believes these forms to be radical, i.e., not to contain any affixes iv). The later investigations of Meinhor1v), Bergervi) and van Edenvii) however demonstrate clearly that such forms are due to a terminating i or ilg and therefore cannot be regarded as basic.

If one sets oneself the task of indicating the root-meaning of the multi-functional simple stem, one must first of all be clear about what one expects to include under this term. To my mind, the only formative or formations which contain the root-meaning of the multi-functional simple stem, are those formations which remain after the multi-functional simple stem has been torn apart of its terminative which is mostly a. These formatives are the roots of the stems and unless split up into simpler roots (i.e., only as far as compound roots are concerned), never end in a vowel. Hence they offer no explanation for such stems as referred to in §3-i.e. practically the only multi-functional simple stems in Sotho not ending in a — a fact which therefore still remains to be explained.

1) van Eden "The phonology of Soli" Z.f.E.S. 26, p. 269.
2) Pokken "Das Kimba" W.S.O.S. 8, pp. 75-76.
5) Leutlehrde der Bantusprachen, pp. 56 and 136.
Should e.g. **lovo** be regarded as consisting of two roots *lo* and *vo*? and, should we believe that in the case of **lovo** and itse a root-combination, and in the case of the other stems referred to in §8 a simple root, is now used as a simple verbal stem? And, if so, should these *lovo* stems be regarded as remnants of an early widely-prevailing stage? In view of the fact that there are in Sotho only a very few multi-functional simple stems not ending in **o** it seems impossible to give any definite reply to these questions by considering Sotho only. In fact, in such stems are very scarce in Bantu as a whole, these questions can only be settled by extending one's investigations over an area far beyond the limits of one language-zone, let alone one language-group. It is because I am well aware of the risk one runs in attempting to settle questions like these by limiting oneself to one language, that I offer the following observations based upon Sotho, not with a view to explaining the possible origin of stems like **lovo** and **itse**, but in the first place as an interesting phenomenon, and only in the second place as a possible line along which further investigations in this connection might perhaps be carried out. If we reduce the following multi-functional simple stems to their roots, we get in each case a root of a syllabic and another of a consonantal form - I analyse *lovo* and **itse** only a few stems below, more can be obtained from App. A, to which reference should also be made for the meanings of the syllabic roots employed below:

3. **khatha T. khatha N. khatha** (break in new ground, crush), roots: S. **kha** T. **kha** N. **kha** (App. A. 64), and S. **th** T. **th** N. **th** (App. B. 12);

3. **khatha T. khatha N. khatha** (choose, separate i.e. idea of making or breaking apart), roots: S. **khá** T. **ká** N. **ká** (App. A. 70), and S. **th** T. **th** N. **th** (App. B. 12);
N. krōtha (cut or chop off, plane), roots:
N. krō (App. A. 76), and N. th (App. B. 12).

But there are also syllabic roots commencing in S. th T. th N. th, which are semantically closely akin to the consonantal root S. th T. th N. th, e.g. the syllabic roots in:

N. thatha (break into pieces), roots: N. tha (App. A. 150), and N. th (App. B. 12);

S. thaka (kick out the legs), roots: S. th (App. A. 150), and S. th (App. B. 12);

N. thētha (cut off), roots: N. thē (App. A. 152), and N. th (App. B. 12);

N. thōkxa (break off, smash), roots: N. thō (App. A. 156), and N. ḵx (App. B. 5).

Similar analysis, although not perhaps always so elaborate, can be made of many other simple stems by compare Appendices A. and B. If one now takes e.g. the stem krōtha, which has as indicated above, the roots krō and th, the question arises whether th was not once followed by a vowel, especially in view of the fact that there are syllabic roots commencing in th and semantically related to the root th and one feels inclined to assume that this vowel was ā (there is a root thō referred to above), thus giving a form krōthā. The same assumption can be made for thētha < thēthā, thōkxa < thōkxā, etc. But these are merely assumptions, because one can equally well assume that the vowel which followed th in krōthā was ā (of. root thē above), thus giving krōthā. If, through further investigations and comparison with other Bantu languages, it can be proved that the root or each of the roots underlying a simple stem must have ended in a vowel, and that the root-vowels must needs be alike,
then and only then can the stage preceding a simple stem (and not necessarily a multi-functional simple stem), be regarded as a root with assimilated vowels.

From the above, I think, it is evident how difficult it is to explain such stems as *lore, itse, re* etc. One may perhaps, without binding oneself, assume that *lore* and *itse* do consist of two syllabic roots and *re, be*, etc., (cf. §8), of one syllabic root which for some reason or other have been taken up as multi-functional stems. It is perhaps noteworthy that there are some Bantu languages in which multi-functional stems which are the parallels of *T.lore, T.itse* and *S.re T.re N.re*, do not end in *g*.

The sporadic occurrence of multi-functional stems not ending in *g*, does not seem to justify such a far-reaching assumption vis., that the terminative *g* must have replaced another vowel; and, to my mind, there is no reason to speculate on such a possibility, not only as far as the simple stems are concerned, but also as regards the derivative stems. It is true that a consonantal ending is incompatible with word-structure in Bantu; but the fact that the final consonant, either of a simple or a derivative stem is followed by a detachable vowel, surely does not imply that either (i) previously there must have existed a permanent vowel after the consonant, or (ii) if such a vowel did not exist we should have had a consonantal ending. Because we have no reason to believe that the root was ever used independently, and as indicated above, the stem, whether simple

---

1. As far as Sotho is concerned it should be noted that by far the most of the stems referred to in §8 are only variants of stems that do end in *g*. Furthermore the majority of these stems are deficient verbal stems and end in *g* when not ending in *g*, and when ending in *g* occur only in certain tenses notably in the future.

11. The question whether or not *g* has always been the terminative of the multi-functional derivative stems has also been discussed by Black and Watkins, cf. footnote p. 33.
or derivative, is always supplied with a terminative depending upon the conjugational form in which the stem is used. It seems to me therefore that there is no stage conceivable in the language where the root, ending in a consonant, could have violated the principle underlying the Bantu word-structure viz. that words cannot end in a consonant.
CHAPTER 3.

THE SIMPLE VERBAL STEM.

1. A simple verbal stem is a verbal stem which denotes that species not denoted by any of the derivative species 1).

2. As indicated in chapter 2, I am dealing in this treatise with the simple stem in its multi-functional conjugational form.

3. A multi-functional simple stem is a stem of not more than two syllables 2)/ and consisting of the verbal root plus the terminative e, excepting in the following few cases where the stem ends in a vowel other than e: T.itse (know), T.lere (bring), S.ro T.re N.re (say), S.Bo T.be N.be (bo), T.bo (be), S.la T.la N.la (being), N.Bo (say).

1) It has been the general practice so far, not only in the previous part of this treatise, but also in other publications on Bantu languages, to quote derivative stems together with their corresponding simple stems, if available. This practice will be continued, as the simple species, being the most commonly used species, offers a good basis for comparison purposes.

2) Excepting for T.stava (strike) as well as a few trisyllabic stems, the second syllable of which consists of a nasal (cf. 33).

3) The following disyllabic stems are however derived and not simple: (a) those derived from consonantal roots, e.g. S.nile T.nile N.nile (rain on to, leak), cf. S.na T.na N.na (rain); (b) those derivative stems whose disyllabic nature is due to vowel- elision: (i) where contracted and uncontracted derivative stems as well as the corresponding simple stems can be indicated, e.g. N.tana (dash down), cf. T.tanwa (dash down) < T.tanaye, and T.tana (beat), N.nile (give a name to) < N.nile (give a name to), cf. N.nile (give a name), T.nile (place for) < T.nile (place for) < T.nile (place), cf. T.nile (place), S.nache N.nache (open the water pouch) cf. S.nache (expel the water pouch) < S.nache and N.nache (rip or tear open), N.tana (beat down with the fist), cf. T.tane (beat each other) < T.tanaye and T.tana (beat); (ii) where only the contracted and uncontracted derivative stems could be indicated: S.isina < S.isina (rummage in the grass in order to drive mice out), S.nache < S.nache (open a book, turn up the edge), T.titana < T.titana (spread out as water over a plain), T.tana (be tired, be hungry), cf. S.tane (get tired, walk when tired), T.tana (listen to), cf. S.tana T.tana N.tana (listen to), T.kwina < T.kwina (dislocate).
T.\textit{ra} (be), S.\textit{meye} (denoting idea of: nevertheless, however), S.\textit{bi\textit{la}} (denoting idea of: spontaneity), S.\textit{\textit{m\textit{a}}} (denoting idea of: continuity) and T.\textit{meye} N.\textit{meye} (take)

4. The simple stems may be subdivided as follows:
(a) Primary stems, consisting of (i) a simple root, or (ii) a compound root composed of two simple roots, plus in each case the terminative \textit{a}, excepting in the following cases where the stem ends in a vowel other than \textit{a}: T.\textit{ita} (know), N.\textit{lea} (bring), S.\textit{ra} T.\textit{ra} N.\textit{ra} (say), S.\textit{be} T.\textit{be} N.\textit{be} (be), S.\text{\textit{le}} T.\text{\textit{le}} N.\textit{le} (being), S.\textit{sho} (say), T.\textit{na} (be), S.\textit{meye} (denoting idea of: nevertheless, however), S.\textit{\textit{bi\textit{la}}} (denoting idea of: spontaneity), S.\textit{\textit{m\textit{a}}} denoting idea of: continuity) and T.\textit{meye} N.\textit{meye} (take).

(b) Secondary stems, consisting of (i) a derivative root or (ii) a compound root consisting of a simple root and a derivative root, or two derivative roots plus in each case the terminative \textit{a}.

Now necessary it is to distinguish between these two types of simple stems will be clearly seen when comparing the following simple stems: S.\textit{\textit{jaba}} T.\textit{\textit{jaba}} N.\textit{jaba} (make a mess of, knead) and S.\textit{\textit{jaba}} T.\textit{\textit{jaba}} (harass, torment, knead), N.\textit{\textit{ra}} (wound the head, cut upon a swelling) and S.\textit{\textit{khatha}} T.\textit{\textit{khatha}} N.\textit{\textit{khatha}} (ploough up in furrows, break up new soil), N.\textit{\textit{lafa}} (cut off obliquely, plane) and T.\textit{\textit{fasha}} (chop or cut lengthwise)\textsuperscript{1}. On the other hand, although these two forms of the simple stem are not semantically and phonetically alike, their terminal formatives are identical, and their behaviour, in the conjugation of the verb as well as in the various processes involved in the extension of the stem, is in all respects alike. For this reason they are classified as two subdivisions of a main stem, and not as two independent main stems.

\textsuperscript{1} More examples of this nature may be obtained from Appendices 2B, 2L, 2S, and 2P.
5. As can be seen from §4 above the difference between a primary and a secondary simple stem depends upon the difference between a simple and a derivative root and as was indicated in chapter 1, the difference between these two roots is due to either a nasal or the vowel i, both of which have a strengthening influence on the following root-consonant. Semantically the influence of this strengthening of the root-consonant or root-consonants, is to emphasise or intensify the meaning expressed by the primary simple stem. It sometimes happens that a simple stem appears in one subgroup of Sotho with unstrengthened consonant or consonants, and in another subgroup with strengthened consonant or consonants1) without, however, any difference in meaning, e.g. T.bupa (cover) N.µupa (cover), N.µota (become loose) S.µota S.µota (become loose), S.µota (smear a skin in order to make it supple) N.µota (smear a skin in order to make it supple)ii). In form therefore the one subgroup has a primary simple stem, the other a secondary simple stem, but it happens more often than not that such verbal stems differ not only in form but also in meaning, a glance at Appendices Cl and C2, D1 and D2, and El and E2 will prove this.

It sometimes happens that in the same subgroup the semantic difference between a primary and a secondary simple stem is lost, but this is rather the exception than the rule, e.g. S.thuma (break, smash) and S.thuma (break, smash)iii).

ii) For more examples cf. Appendices Cl, D1, and E1.
iii) For more examples cf. Appendices Cl, D1, and E1.
Although, as seen in chapter 1, consonant-strengthening is in Sotho a root-extending process, I am nevertheless dealing with it here as well. I think such a procedure is justifiable, as a root is one of the component parts of a verbal stem, and it is furthermore only possible to realize its real significance if the influence it has on the stem is taken into consideration. In fact, as the root can never be used independently, its very meaning is ascertained from the meaning conveyed by the stem.

Strengthening of the consonant or consonants of the Sotho verbal stem falls under three heads:

(1) Strengthening of the first consonant:

(a) Where primary and secondary stems are synonymous, e.g.: N. faha (food off) N. phaha (food off), N. xora (be satisfied) S. xora T. xora (be satisfied), etc. \(^1\)

(b) Where primary and secondary simple stems are not synonymous: N. xora (cut open a swelling, grace the skin, scratch) N. kora (mark by cutting the ear), T. lepe N. lepe (become tired or weary, be faint) S. lepe N. lepe (become tasteless, tired, weary), S. lepe T. lepe N. lepe (strike, clasp the hands, throb or ache as the head or pulse), N. kora (beat suddenly, stab), etc. \(^{11}\)

---

\(^1\) For more examples cf. App. Cl.

\(^{11}\) For more examples cf. App. C2. Under this heading will fall the trisyllabic primary stem T. stava (strike), cf. S. stefa T. stava N. stava (instruct, direct, reprimand) and T. stava (strike).
(ii) Strengthening of the second consonant 1):

(a) Where primary and secondary simple stems are synonymous: T. baba (cool of anger) T. baba (cool of anger), S. fuba (put into the mouth) S. fupa T. fupa (put into the mouth), etc. 11)

(b) Where primary and secondary simple stems are not synonymous: T. phoa (become blistered) T. phoka (foam or froth as milk in a pail), S. thaba T. thaba N. thaba (be glad, cheerful) N. thapa (play), etc. 111)

1) Trisyllabic simple stems with a nasal as second syllable fall under this heading. I have already referred to such stems in chapter 1 §6 where the influence of the nasal on the following consonant has been discussed. I am quoting here a few more examples: T. tasaka (wound badly or in many places) and N. thaka (scratch, tear, notch), cf. N. thaka (break, smash) and N. thaya (crack version), S. rantha (make cuts in the ear of an animal), cf. S. ratha T. ratha N. ratha (cut with an axe) and S. para (tattoo a brave warrior’s arm), S. nekama (gesticulate before fighting), cf. S. ngaba N. ngaba (strike), also S. naha T. naha N. naha (take hold of with the nails, scratch, scratch); S. taka (walk slowly), cf. N. taka (jump, go jumping from one house to another), also S. taha N. taha (become tired, weak, tasteless); N. phamba (fly), cf. S. phamba (fly, run, jump) and N. fata (be light); S. hama T. hama N. hama (walk boldly), cf. N. kama (walk quickly without looking at anybody); S. tanta T. tanta (twist, tie round), cf. N. tata (twist, roll up); N. tata (stroke as the beard), cf. N. fatha (= fatha); N. blama (cut into pieces as e.g. meat), cf. S. blika (strike, chop); N. taka (cut into strips), cf. N. taka (separate, cut out).

Sometimes only the trisyllabic simple stem could be indicated, e.g. T. raka N. raka (walk slowly with legs apart), S. kona (look at someone attentively), S. thansi N. thanka (hurt as does a wound), N. gama (hobble, limp along, bundle), S. blama (be uneven), T. ratac (refuse to sell or give that which one afterwards sells or gives to another), T. phenta (spread abroad as a swarm of locusts, scatter over a wide space).

The forms of the following stems are probably due to the elision of the connecting vowel (cf. chapter 4), and are therefore abbreviated derivative stems and not simple stems: S. lihampa N. lihampa (honour, respect), cf. S. lihampa M. lihampa (= lihampa), T. genta (stamp, pound), cf. N. genta (beat), (probable line of development: genta $>$ genta $>$ genta), also S. setta T. seta (beat out, stamp), N. tsama (prick with a needle), cf. T. tsamka (needle), also S. nongama (top as corn), N. kama (eek), cf. N. tona (pick one thing out of many).


(iii) Strengthening of both consonants; this type of strengthening is not so common as those under (i) and (ii):

(a) Where primary and secondary simple stems are synonymous: S.fofa T.fofa N.fof (plait e.g. hair, fibres etc.), N.phothe (plait e.g. hair, fibres etc.), S.hoe (take out) S.khopa (take out)i.

(b) Where primary and secondary simple stems are not synonymous: S.lula T.dula N.dula (sit down), N.tula (bend the head through fatigue), N.faya (knock, beat into two) N.pha (divide) etc.ii.

Although the following were the only examples, I could find, of all three types of consonant-strengthening applied to the same primary verbal stem, they are nevertheless instructive: S.khela (smear, besmirch) S.khela (smear the head with clay), S.home T.fofe N.fofe (scrape, brush up rubbish) S.khela (shovel away)" in all four there seems to be the idea of scraping or smearing. T.daya (strike), S.ka T.laya N.lya (instruct, direct, reprimand), T.batya (strike), N.laka (supervise, rule, administer), N.taka (take charge of, e.g. of an army, inspect); in all five there seems to be the idea of keeping in order. S.lula T.dula N.dula (sit down), S.tula N.tula (stamp, crush, break), N.duta (stoop under a burden, bend the head), N.tuta (bend the head with fatigue); in all four there seems, the idea of downward motion.

There are more examples where two out of the three types of consonant-strengthening are applied to the same primary simple stem, e.g. S.lina T.lina N.lina (spread, scatter), S.ata T.ata N.ata (increase, become numerous) T.kala (hover with outstretched wings) N.kala (smooth out)iii.

iii) For more examples cf. App. F.
6. Varieties of simple verbal stems: simple stems whether primary or secondary, can be divided into the following varieties:

A. Monosyllabic simple stems, all of which consist of a consonant or a semivowel plus the terminative verbs, excepting S.re T.re N.re (say), S.be T.be N.be (be), T.do (be), S.le T.le N.le (being), S.cho (say), T.ne (be), S.hle (denoting idea of spontaneity). There are not many monosyllabic stems in Sotho. The following is practically an exhaustive list1):

S.ba T.ba N.ba (be), S.be T.be N.be (be), T.be (be),
S.re T.re N.re (give),
N.re (burn), T.fre (burn),
T.ge N.ge (draw water),
N.kwa (die, wither),
N.hlwa (delay, pass the time),
S.hla (denotes notion of spontaneity), S.hle (denotes notion of spontaneity),
S.hlëa (ascend, climb),
S.1e T.1e N.1e (eat),
S.ki T.ki N.ki (be like), S.ki T.ki N.ki (can, be able),
S.hla N.kwa (draw water),
S.hla N.kwa (pluck, pluck out),
T.kwa N.kwa (spit out),
S.kha (get weaned),
N.kwa (spit out),
N.kwa (dip in e.g. a pen into ink or a finger into fat),
N.kwa (come out), N.kwa (hear),
S.le T.le N.le (being)11),

1) It is however possible that a few more stems may have to be added to this list. For remarks in this connection cf. Chapter 2 §6.

11) S.se T.se N.se (not being, is not) can perhaps be regarded as a monosyllabic verbal stem in e.g. S.ki se mooma T.ki se mooma (I not being a man), cf. S.ki le mooma T.ki le mooma N.ki le mooma (I being a man), but it can hardly be a verbal stem in S.ki se mooma T.ki se mooma N.xa se mooma (it is not a man).
S. tōn T. tōna N. tōna (fight, quarrel),
S. na T. na N. na (be),
T. na (be),
S. na T. na N. na (rain),
T. naúa (bear fruit), cf. T. uwa (bear fruit), T. mña (bear fruit), N. omwa = N. eomwa (bear fruit),
S. nū T. uwa N. uwa (drink),
S. uwa N. uwa (go to the stool),
S. re T. re N. re (fall),
S. phē N. phē (get dry),
N. pē (dig), cf. S. pē T. pē N. pē (dig), also UB. kimba (dig (N.UB.W. p. 206)),
N. re (say),
N. re (arrive at years of discretion of a child),
S. re T. re N. re (say),
S. na T. na N. na (leave off raining, disappear of darkness),
T. ūna (name, give a name to),
T. ūna (become burnt, scalded, scorched),
S. phē T. ūna (die),
N. ūna (burn, scorch),
S. tīna T. tīna N. tīna (come), cf. UB. yīna = UB. ḳa (come), (N.UB.W. p. 206),
N. tīna (hear), cf. S. utūna T. utūna N. utūna (hear), also N. ūna above, and UB. ḳa = UB. yīna (hear) (N.UB.W. p. 204),
N. tūna (come),
N. tēna (eat),
T. tēna (dry up as water),
S. oha (burn), S. oha (say),
S. tēna N. tēna (condemn), cf. N. tēna (condemn),
S. tēna T. tēna N. tēna (go out, come out),
S. tēna N. tēna (spit out),
N. tēna (hear),
S. te T. te N. te (go),
It will be noticed from the above list that while some of these stems are monosyllabic in one dialect, they need not necessarily be so in other dialects.

The small number of monosyllabic verbal stems in Sotho in comparison with the large number of verbal roots of the form consonant or consonant plus vowel, is undoubtedly a striking phenomenon. The position would therefore seem to be that there is a monosyllabic root-basis, and a di-syllabic stem-basis with very few monosyllabic stems. Some of these, might have been so originally, others might have worn down to their present form. It should also be noted that the monosyllabic stems are preceded by the vowel ə in some of its conjugational forms.

R. Disyllabic simple stems, which again fall into four heads:

(i) Those of the form consonant or semi-vowel, plus vowel, plus consonant or semi-vowel, plus the multi-functional terminative, which is always ə excepting in:
- T. lere (bring), e.g. S. lene T. lene N. lene (plough),
- S. bala T. bala N. bala (count, read), S. tišala N. tišala (betray),
- S. rem T. rem N. rem (come), S. rata T. rata N. rata (love),
- T. tšana N. tšana (enter), T. tšana (become damp), N. tšana (be thin),
- S. horo (skin), N. hore (scratch, rustle), T. tšana (take), S. boše T. boše N. boše (return), N. rana (send off).

(ii) Those of the form vowel plus consonant plus the multi-functional terminative which is always ə.

1) Cf. Prec, p. 44.


III) In Sellokwe also lere.
excepting in T.\texttt{tae} (\textit{know}). These stems are usually termed vowel verbs\textsuperscript{1}), e.g. S.\texttt{aha} T.\texttt{sge} N.\texttt{sre} (\textit{build}), S.\texttt{ebb} T.\texttt{ebb} (\textit{swim}), S.\texttt{ile} T.\texttt{ile} N.\texttt{ile} (\textit{avoid})), S.\texttt{gae} N.\texttt{gae} (get spoiled, worn out), S.\texttt{una} T.\texttt{una} N.\texttt{una} (\textit{take}, \	extit{gather}).

The initial vowel of the vowel verb seems, in some cases at any rate, to be unstable:

(a) It seems to be subject to change, e.g. S.\texttt{spa} N.\texttt{spa} (call together a public meeting), T.\texttt{spa} (as in no \texttt{spa} \texttt{nekposi} = call to a tribal meeting), N.\texttt{spa} (put into water, soak), S.\texttt{jne} T.\texttt{jne} N.\texttt{jne} (put into water, dip in)\textsuperscript{11}).

(b) A stem may be found commencing in a vowel in one dialect while in other dialects the vowel has disappeared, cf. A. above.

(c) Sometimes, owing to strengthening, a vowel verb is changed into a stem commencing in a consonant, e.g. S.\texttt{apa} T.\texttt{apa} N.\texttt{apa} (strike, throb as a pulse), N.\texttt{kapa} (beat suddenly, stab)\textsuperscript{111}).

(iii) Those of the form consonant plus vowel plus the multi-functional terminative \textsuperscript{11v)}, e.g. T.\texttt{ares} (stir meat in a pot), N.\texttt{ges} (catch), T.\texttt{gie} (run away), S.\texttt{tes} T.\texttt{gse} N.\texttt{gse} (shout), S.\texttt{eg} T.\texttt{tie} N.\texttt{tie} (possess, become rich).

(iv) Those whose first syllable consists of a nasal only\textsuperscript{v}). This is the case only with S.\texttt{aka} (\textit{take}), S.\texttt{nakhe} T.\texttt{nahe} N.\texttt{phka} (\textit{smell}), S.\texttt{na} T.\texttt{na} N.\texttt{na} (\textit{it denotes}

\textsuperscript{1}) Cf. Term., p. 819. Such stems are probably due to the fact that UB.\texttt{Y} is no longer represented, cf. Phon., p. 89.
\textsuperscript{11} For more examples cf. App. G.
\textsuperscript{111} For more examples cf. Appendices Cl and C2.

\textsuperscript{11v}) Such stems are probably due to the fact that UB.\texttt{Y} is no longer represented, cf. Phon., p. 89) above; although in S. some such stems are due to the elision of \texttt{b} (UB-\texttt{Y}), e.g. S.\texttt{phge} = S.\texttt{phge} (\textit{cook}), cf. Those phske (\textit{cook}).

\textsuperscript{v}) Cf. Chapter 1§6.(a).
the idea of continued action; in T. and N. it means also: occupy, inhabit; and in T.: also: be), T.meye (distil as dev, exude as gum, perspiration, etc.), S.meye N.meye (it denotes the idea of nevertheless, but, in N. also: do the opposite), T.mye 1) N.mye (as ka, as in: mwe = take here), S.mye T.meye N.mye (take out).

C. Trisyllabic simple stems. These stems belong in all probability to a transitional stage; they have been fully dealt with in Chapter 1 as well as in §6 above, to which reference should be made for examples.

7. The number of simple stems in S: the is enlarged as a result of the following processes:

(1) Change of the root-consonant, due to consonant-strengthening, as a result of which secondary simple stems are formed (cf. §6 above).

(2) Change of the stem-vowel. Reference to this phenomenon was already made in Chapter 1A dealing with the verbal root, as it is primarily a root-affecting process; but I intend dealing with it in this chapter as well, for the same reasons as in the case of consonant-strengthening (cf. §6 above). It will be observed that the following stems are related in meaning, though not synonymous; that their consonants remain unchanged; and that the only element undergoing a change is the stem-vowel, e.g. N.phake (cut a split or flap in the ear), S.phake (split in two), S.phakha (smash, break); S.tila (strike the ground with the foot as a sign of joy), S.tule N.tule (stamp, crush); S.batla T.batla (sack, look for), T.batla (search for hidden things); etc. For more examples cf. App. G, where it will be noticed from the stems quoted, that in a few cases stems with different

1) Obtained from my informants.
stem-vowels are synonymous -- this however, is the exception, not the rule. As pointed out in Chapter 1, it is not possible to decide which of the stems in each of the sets quoted in App. 6 is the original stem, by virtue of its having the original verbal root from which the others have been derived. Such a classification, if at all possible, can only be made if detailed information on this point is available for various Bantu languages. Neither is it possible, in this process of vowel change, to attach any specific semantic function to the various root-vowels, as was done, to a certain extent, by Westermann for Sudanic.

It has already been observed by Neushof that this process of vowel change is present in Bantu. I quote below examples from a few other Bantu languages, viz. Thosa, Venda and Tonga. Thosa: gaqa (creep on hands and knees), gwa (stoop, kneel down); qaf (choose, pick, give preference to, hire), qafa (hire, employ a servant); and qaka (disappear, vanish so as to be lost) qake (wander away among strangers and be unknown, to be lost to view). Venda: thatha (remove the leaves from a branch or stick, chase away, vanish), thuta (wipe out, destroy, pull out, annul). Tonga: hindu (pass, go through) hunda (pass by, pass away).

(2) Through a probable process of transposition of the consonants, e.g. S. Lala T. Lala H. Lala (threw away, forsake, give up), S. Lala T. lala H. lala (divorce, forsake); H. lala (but,udge, strike), H. lala (beat, cudgel), etc. 111)


11) Fehr, p. 47.

111) For more examples cf. App. H.
Although the stems in these pairs are related in meaning, they are mostly not synonymous. One concludes therefore, that if these stems are examples of a process of consonant transposition then this process is not merely of phonetical, but also of semantic significance. So far no semantic value has been attached to the process of consonant transposition, but in spite of this the above examples definitely seem to point in this direction.


ii) There are in Sotho stems to which the process of consonant transposition, as expounded by Neinhof (*Phon.*, p. 16), has been applied, e.g. *nelooba* (beak, talk nonsense), *bohela* (beak, talk nonsense), *bophela* (beak, talk nonsense), *fulela* (castrate), *fulela* (castrate), *futele* (beak, talk nonsense), *fulela* (castrate), *futele* (beak, talk nonsense), *fulela* (beak, talk nonsense), *fulela* (beak, talk nonsense).
CHAPTER 4.

The connecting vowel.

1. By the term connecting vowel is meant:

(a) The vowel between the last stem-consonant and the first suffix-consonant\(^1\), e.g. the first \(a\) in S.bō̂̂̂nā T.bō̂̂̂nā H.bō̂̂̂nā (see one another), cf. S.hō̂̂̂nā T.hō̂̂̂nā H.hō̂̂̂nā (see); the \(o\) in N.fī̂̂̂lōla (bring out of the hiding-place), cf. T.fī̂̂̂lā N.fī̂̂̂lā (hide); the \(o\) in S.tūlā T.tūlā H.tūlā (give for, in at), cf. S.ṭ.ī̂̂̂ H.ṭ.ī̂̂̂ (give); the second \(a\) in S.kō̂̂̂bō̂̂̂lā (grow in beauty and strength, prosper of plants), cf. S.kō̂̂̂bā T.kō̂̂̂bā H.kō̂̂̂bā (be beautiful, sprout); the second \(i\) in S.pī̂̂̂lā (hide, keep secrets), cf. N.pī̂̂̂lā (cover)\(^1\).

(b) The vowel between the suffix-consonants, e.g. the second \(a\) in S.ḥatīlālās (seek for each other), cf. S.hātālā T.ḥatīlā H.ḥatīlā (seek); the second \(o\) in S.lāhēlālōmānā T.lathēlōmānā H.lāhēlālōmā (lose sight of one another), cf. S.lāhī T.laṭhī H.lāhī (throw away, forsake); the \(o\) in S.khābō̂̂̂lā (of. (a) above); the second \(o\) in H.kō̂̂̂bēlōlō (disenchant) cf. H.ṭēlō (charm, bewitch)\(^1\).

Connecting vowels may be grouped under the following sub-heads:

1) Unstandardised connecting vowels, i.e. connecting vowels which are provided merely to prevent the juxtaposition

---

1) For a discussion on suffixes and suffix-consonants, cf. Chapter 5.

ii) In cases where the stem-consonant preceding the stem-vowel has dropped out the connecting vowel and the stem-vowel will of course be juxtaposed, e.g. in S.ḥō̂̂̂bā T.ḥō̂̂̂bā H.ḥō̂̂̂bā (return to), cf. S.ḥō̂̂̂bā T.ḥō̂̂̂bā H.ḥō̂̂̂bā (seen) (return). The stem-consonant \(b, y, y\) has dropped out.

iii) In cases where a suffix-consonant has dropped out two connecting vowels will be juxtaposed, e.g. in S.ḥō̂̂̂bā T.ḥō̂̂̂bā H.ḥō̂̂̂bā (kill for), cf. S.ḥō̂̂̂bā T.ḥō̂̂̂bā H.ḥō̂̂̂bā (kill). The suffix-consonant \(b, y, y\) has dropped out.

---
of two consonants and which have no semantic force. Un-
standardised connecting vowels again may be of two types:

(a) Those which are identical with the stem-
vowel, e.g. the second ɒ in T.robota (collect thoroughly),
cf. S.robota T.robota N.robota (gather, collect); the
second ɒ in S.robhela (bend as under the wind), cf. S.rhba
(bow, incline). Such connecting vowels may be called
homophonic unstandardised connecting vowels. The Sotho
vowels which may function in this way are the following:
3.0 T.0 N.0, S.ɒ T.ɒ N.ɒ, S.ɒ T.ɒ N.ɒ, S.ɒ
T.ɒ N.ɒ, S.ɒ T.ɒ N.ɒ and S.ɒ T.ɒ N.ɒ, and they can be used
as homophonic unstandardised connecting vowels before all
Sotho derivative suffixes excepting the passive S.ɒ T.ɒ
N.ɒ, and the factitive S.ɒ T.ɒ N.ɒ.

(b) Those which are not identical with the
stem-vowel, e.g. the ɒ in N.robhela (mix snuff with ash),
cf. N.robha (mix tobacco with ash); the ɒ in N.rhena
(swell, puff up), cf. N.robha (swell). Such connecting
vowels may be called heterophonic unstandardised connect-
ing vowels. The same Sotho vowels which may function as
homophonic unstandardised connecting vowels may also
function as heterophonic unstandardised connecting vowels.1)
They are however less commonly heterophonic than homophonic.
Heterophonic unstandardised connecting vowels are met with
before all Sotho derivative suffixes excepting the passive

1) The unstandardised connecting vowels ɒ and ɒ, whether
homophonic or heterophonic, are always closed if the stems are
in their negative, habitual or perfect conjunctival forms, e.g.
N.robhela (do not mix snuff with ash), cf. N.robhela (mix
snuff with ash); T.robhela (have loved as a cow), T.robhela
(as in: a tie ɒ poromhela = it usually loves), cf. T.robhela
(love as a cow), and S.robhela (escape on the same place), cf. S.robhela
(remain burning on the same place), and S.robhela
(hot spagyphetic fire).

11) Root-vowels ɒ or ɒ are changed to stem-vowels ɒ or ɒ
respectively if the heterophonic unstandardised connecting
vowel is ɒ, ɒ or ɒ.e.g. T.ricycle N.ricycle (become shrivelled
as dry corn, become lazy), cf. S.robhela T.robhela N.robhela
(rot, decay), S.ricycle N.ricycle (pull down, pull off), cf. S.rhela
T.ricycle N.ricycle (pick out, choose), S.rhela
T.robhela N.robhela (become muddy of water), cf. S.rhela
(hot spagyphetic fire).
(b) Standardised connecting vowels i.e. connecting vowels which form an integral part of the suffixes. The standardised connecting vowels may be divided into the following sub-heads:

(a) Semantic significant standardised connecting vowels, i.e. connecting vowels which have a semantic influence on the following suffix. The only vowels which do have such an influence are 8-a T.a H.g, 3-t T.g H.g and 3-a T.o H.g, and they have this influence only when occurring in the following manner before the suffixes 8-a T.a H.g, 8-a T.o H.g, 3-t T.a H.g, 3-a T.o H.g, 8-a T.a N.me, 8-a T.o N.me, 3-t T.a N.me and 3-a T.o N.me, giving N. me.

In contrast to the unstandardised connecting vowels which will not be indicated when suffixes are written separately, the standardised connecting vowels will be written joined to the suffixes when so represented, e.g. the suffix of *balleia* is *bala*; 8 is here a standardised connecting vowel but the suffix of *pantaha* is *ka*, 8 is an unstandardised connecting vowel.

11) Which becomes 8-a T.a H.g if the stem is in its perfect, negative, or habitual, conditional forms, e.g. 8.1.w.1.2 T. h. -m. (have believed, have agreed), 8.1.w.1.2 T. h. -m. (do not believe, do not agree). 8.1.w.1.2 T. h. -m. (as in: 8.1.w.1.2 T. h. -m. (I usually believe), cf. 8.1.w.1.2 T. h. -m. (believe, agree).

111) No examples could be found of 8-a T.a H.g, although, as will be seen later, this suffix is found in 8.a. H.g.
When these suffixes are preceded by s.a T.e N.a, s.a T.e N.o or s.o T.e N.a (1) in the manner indicated above, they may, as will be seen later on, in this treatise, have special force, which, while akin to, is Nevertheless not identical with that of s.a T.e N.a, N.ea, S.e T.e N.ea, S. e T.e N. a, S. e T.e N. ea, S. e T.e N. ea and s. o T.e N.ea respectively, preceded by the unstandardised connecting vowels. For this reason the connecting vowels s.a T.e N.a, s.a T.e N.ea, s.o T.e N.a and s.o T.e N.ea are written joint to the suffixes referred to above (1).

Semantic significant standardised connecting vowels may sometimes be homophonous with the stem-vowel, i.e. in cases where the stem-vowel happens to be identical with the connecting vowel, thus the connecting vowel s.a T.e N.a is homophonous in: P. netsa N.netsa (tramp or tread much), cf. S. netsa T. netsa S. netsa (tramp, tread on); N. kwechla (become strong), cf. S. kwechla N. kwechla (be strong), and N. batana (lie flat on the stomach), cf. S. netsa T. netsa N. batana (beat with a flat thing); but heterophonic in N. bipana (cover entirely),

1) It should be noted that these suffixes are sometimes, even though preceded by homophonous unstandardised connecting vowels s.a or s.o, in such a manner that it is impossible to tell only from the form of the derivative stem whether the connecting vowel is actually unstandardised and not postposed standardised. In such cases the suffix will indicate what type of connecting vowel has been employed. So, e.g. the connecting vowel is unstandardised in the following cases: S. ensae (advance stealthily), cf. M. na (move carefully); T. tsesa (walk elastically, softly), cf. M. tsata (walk on the toen); H. kwehwa (become muddied with water), cf. H. lepe (make water muddy); T. kwele (be troubled with a useless cough), no corresponding simple stem; P. mumhwa (flutter as hanging clothes or stuff blown by the wind), cf. B. phapa (fly, run).

11) It is of course not necessary to deal specially with the connecting vowels of compound suffixes (cf. Chapter 5) such as, e.g. the first o in s. netsa T. netsa N.ea = S. netsa T. netsa N.ea + S. netsa T. netsa N. ea; the o in s. netsa T. netsa N. ea = S. netsa T. netsa N. ea + S. netsa T. netsa N. ea, the i in S. netsa T. netsa N. e a = S. netsa T. netsa N. e a + T. netsa T. netsa N. e a, etc., as the nature of the connecting vowels of such suffixes will depend upon the nature of the connecting vowels of their first component parts.
of. S.\textit{hina} T.\textit{hina} N.\textit{hina} (cover), N.\textit{taka} (get half-full) of. N.\textit{taka} (fill up half). So also S.\textit{ šu} T.\textit{ šu} N.\textit{ šu} is homophonic in S.\textit{šutšušu} N.\textit{ šutšušu} (out for, chisel for), cf. S.\textit{šutšušu} N.\textit{šušu} (out, chisel); but heterophone in S.\textit{bopšušu} T.\textit{bopšušu} N.\textit{bopšušu} (make for), cf. S.\textit{bopšušu} T.\textit{bopšušu} N.\textit{bopšušu} (mould, form). And S.\textit{ šu} T.\textit{ šu} N.\textit{ šu} is homophone in S.\textit{okole} T.\textit{okole} N.\textit{okole} (shim off), cf. N.\textit{šušu} (skim); but heterophone in S.\textit{okole} T.\textit{okole} N.\textit{okole} (throw up and down), cf. S.\textit{štīna} T.\textit{štīna} N.\textit{štīna} (swing about, toss up).

(b) Semantic non-significant standardized connecting vowels, i.e. connecting vowels which have no influence on the following suffixes. There are two such connecting vowels, viz. T.\textit{i} N.\textit{i} and S.\textit{u} T.\textit{u} N.\textit{u}, and they are only met with as follows:

The connecting vowel \textit{i} when preceding the passive suffix T.\textit{wa} N.\textit{wa} (giving a passive suffix T.\textit{iwa} N.\textit{iwa}) out of which has developed S.\textit{nuša} T.\textit{nuwa} N.\textit{nuwa} as a result of assimilation, e.g. N.\textit{ratwa} = N.\textit{ratwa} = N.\textit{rutwa} (be taught) of. S.\textit{ruta} T.\textit{ruta} N.\textit{ruta} (teach).

The passive suffix will of course be fully discussed later, but such examples as S.\textit{naša} T.\textit{naša} = N.\textit{naša} (be raised), cf. S.\textit{naše} T.\textit{neša} N.\textit{neša} (raise), N.\textit{neša} = N.\textit{neše} < N.\textit{neša} (be drank), cf. S.\textit{neše} T.\textit{neše} N.\textit{neše} (drink), S.\textit{jaja} T.\textit{jaja} N.\textit{jaja} < S.\textit{jaja} T.\textit{jaja} N.\textit{jaja} (be eaten), cf. S.\textit{je} T.\textit{je} N.\textit{je} (eat) prove, I think, that the passive suffix is sometimes preceded by a vowel \textit{i},

1) In S. permuted to \textit{y}.


111) Cf. Chapter 16.
which often combines with the terminative ə of monosyllabic stems, or even with the stem-vowel ə as in T.fo\textsubscript{e}\textsubscript{e} < T.\textsubscript{fe}\textsubscript{e}\textsubscript{e} T.\textsubscript{fe}\textsubscript{e}\textsubscript{e} (be taken) cf. T.\textsubscript{fe}\textsubscript{e}\textsubscript{e} (take). One seems therefore justified to regard ə as an integral part of we, and to write it joint to we thus giving a passive iwe.

The connecting vowel ə when preceding the dura-
tive suffix S.əə T.əə N.əə giving a dura-
tive suffix S.əə T.əə N.əə. This is a very rare suffix in Sotho, it occurs only with 16 derivative stems e.g. S.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} T.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} N.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} (kill), cf. S.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} T.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} N.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} (rot, decay);
N.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} (shake about, move to and fro), cf. S.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} T.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} N.\textsubscript{bela}\textsubscript{e} (sprinkle, wave to and fro) and purely from the Sotho point of view the first ə of S.əə T.əə could have been classed as a heterophonic unstandardised connecting vowel.

This has however not been done because the UB. parallel of S.əə T.əə N.əə, viz. əə also commences in ə, and this UB. form has of course been postulated only because parallels in other Bantu languages have justified it. For this reason the first ə in S.əə T.əə N.əə is regarded as a standardised and not as an unstandardised connecting vowel 1).

Semantic non-significant standardised connect-
ing vowels may of course sometimes be homophonous with the stem-vowels, but this will only be the case if the stem-
vowel happens to be identical with the connecting vowel e.g. N.\textsubscript{papa} (walk on the side of the foot, walk with an uncertain gait) cf. N.\textsubscript{papa} (feel; grope); T.\textsubscript{bidiwa} N.\textsubscript{bidiwa}

---

1) A similar process of coalescence is often met with in performative stems with corresponding monosyllabic simple stems e.g. S.\textsubscript{je}\textsubscript{e} T.\textsubscript{je}\textsubscript{e} N.\textsubscript{je} (cause to eat) cf. S.\textsubscript{je} T.\textsubscript{je} N.\textsubscript{je} (eat).

11) Cf. also N.\textsubscript{ngwe\textsubscript{e}} (be obstinate) probably from N.\textsubscript{ng\textsubscript{e}} (of being obstinate) + əə.

---
(be called), cf. S. bita T. bita N. bita (call) and UB. ville (call).  

2. As regards connecting vowels in UB. the position is briefly as follows:  

a as a standardised connecting vowel is found in eko, eka, aya, eka, aya, and ona;  

b as a standardised connecting vowel is found in eko and eka;  

c as a standardised connecting vowel is found in aya and ulo;  

d as a standardised connecting vowel is found in iyo the passive suffix which also occurs as va.  

From the way in which Heimsoth has classified his UB. verbal suffixes, it would appear that he regards the suffixes commencing in a consonant as the primary forms. Those commencing in a vowel are therefore secondary. It should also be noticed that all Sotho verbal suffixes, with the exception of S. ako T. aka N. aka, N. oko and S. ataka T. ataka N. ataka, having a standardised connecting vowel, have representatives in UB. also commencing in a vowel; and also that all UB. verbal suffixes commencing in a vowel have representatives in Sotho with standardised connecting vowels, excepting UB. aka whose initial vowel however belongs actually to the non-verbal stem.  

3) These four suffixes, which are strengthened forms of S. ana T. ana N. ana, N. ana and S. ana T. ana N. ana respectively, are dependent upon their corresponding un-strengthened forms for connecting vowels.  
4) The Sotho suffixes preceded by standardised connecting vowels will be called secondary suffixes, and those preceded by unstandardised connecting vowels will be called primary suffixes. The difference between these two types of suffixes will be discussed in Chapter 5.  
3. It will be seen in what follows that I agree with Meinhold's view that the derivative suffixes primarily commence in a consonant or semivowel. I could not succeed in explaining the origin of the connecting vowels of such Sotho secondary suffixes as have also UB. representatives commencing in a vowel. In such cases then, I shall not try to come to a final settlement of the question, but shall approach it only as far as my observations in Sotho allow me, referring only occasionally to other Bantu languages1), as to the occurrence of the preceding the occurrence of the other connecting vowels. Other connecting vowels, however, an explanation is offered below.

In Sotho the primary suffixes exceed the secondary suffixes in number, as only some of the primary suffixes are provided with a standardized connecting vowel thus becoming secondary11).

4. With a view to illustrating the occurrence of un-standardised connecting vowels I propose to deal very briefly, in what with the manner in which primary suffixes are employed to form derivative stems. They are so employed with:

(a) non-verbal stems (b) verbal roots.

(a) Primary suffixes employed with non-verbal stems

N. be e.g. N. tihtho (cause to burst), cf. tihtho found in S.

leltho (potsherd, fragment of glass); S. fe T. fe N. fe e.g.

1) It should perhaps be emphasised here that S. ba T. ba N. ba are the only two suffixes before which all three the standardised connecting vowels r, a and a occur, the others which do not take a standardised connecting vowel take a only.

11) It is perhaps noteworthy that all living derivative suffixes (cf. Chapter 8) in Sotho are secondary, with the exception of the passive suffix S. ba T. va N. va which is primary.

111) I quote only a few examples here. Derivative stems formed from non-verbal stems will be fully dealt with in Chapter 20.
S. sköfa T. sköfa N. sköfa (make haste), cf. sko also found in N. bonso (speed); N. bu; e.g. T. tüköra (become weak), cf. S. tükö (a weak thing); T. elha, e.g. T. rukrutla (brawl, riot), cf. S. ruktha; in S. serukha (a big noise); N. ka e.g. N. lodika (sing as birds), cf. S. loli T. lodi N. lodi in S. mololi T. mololi; N. mololi (whistle, song of birds).

In the same way all the other primary suffixes, excepting N. kya T. atha and S. fa T. ma N. ma, are employed with non-verbal stems to form derivative stems. It should be noted that when the primary suffixes are employed with non-verbal stems no connecting vowels are required as such stems end in a vowel, thus rendering the juxtaposition of two consonants impossible.

(b) Primary suffixes employed with verbal roots1):
S. fa e.g. S. pipia (hide, keep secrets), cf. N. pipa (cover up); N. ha; e.g. N. rynanya (drag the legs along through being exhausted), cf. T. wanya (come or go softly); S. bia; e.g. S. kurbula (notch), cf. T. kura N. kura (guav, crack, bite off, plough hard dry land); S. ke; e.g. S. tekena (beat), cf. S. teko N. teko (strike, hit); N. ha; e.g. N. kwhilina (shake into a slanting position, glide), cf. N. khilina (shake, be loose); N. ha; e.g. N. kibina (beat), cf. S. kiba T. kiba N. kiba (knock with the stick against the ground when walking); S. tha; e.g. S. swatha (eat indiscriminately, cram), cf. S. suma (eat meat); N. thu; e.g. N. thilama (fill in a lot, shovel in a great deal), cf. S. thupa N. thupa (fill in a pot, drink a lot of beer).

1) I quote only a few examples here. This type of derivation will be fully dealt with in subsequent chapters.
5. It is a striking phenomenon that in Sotho, the unstandardised connecting vowel is, (a) in by far the majority of cases identical with the stem-vowel; cf. examples in §4(b) above, (b) s.ã T.ã N.ã, S.ã T.ã N.ã or s.ã T.ã N.ã in some cases where the stem-vowel is a; e.g. T.ţrapha (shake about and run over as water while being carried), cf. T.ţrapha N.ţrapha (push out with the hand as grain from a vessel), N.ţrapha (strike a match, write, draw a line), cf. T.Nţware N.Nţware (strike a match, scrape with a knife)\(^1\), (c) s.ã T.ã N.ã, S.ã T.ã N.ã or S.ã T.ã N.ã in some cases when the preceding consonant is a labial, e.g. N.nyame (lament for the dead) cf. S.nyama N.nyama (become sad), and (d) only in a comparatively small number of cases of a form which would appear to be not subject to any regulating factors.

The following figures will indicate the importance of this phenomenon in the construction of the Sotho verbal derivatives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of derivative stems with single(^{11}) suffixes (primary and secondary)(^{111})</th>
<th>± 2300</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No. of derivative stems with single primary suffixes</td>
<td>± 800</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) This deviation, when the stem-vowel is a, from the general position of absolute vowel harmony between the stem-vowel and the vowel of the following syllable, has been observed also in other Bantu languages, where this type of vowel harmony, although not due to the same causes as quoted here for Sotho, is found; cf. Meinhofer Grundzüge einer vergleichenden Grammatik der Bantusprachen, p. 63, Block A Comparative grammar of South African languages, p. 63.

\(^{11}\) A suffix is in its single state when it is employed unaccompanied by any other suffix, cf. Chapter 5. With a very few exceptions all verbal derivatives, ending in a primary suffix in its single state, are trisyllabic.

\(^{111}\) Not counting (a) the derivative stems in the reactiv t 8.ţeTa N.ţe or the passive S.ţe T.ţe N.ţe, as these suffixes are directly attached to the roots without any intervening connecting vowel; (b) those trisyllabic stems (about 850 in number) whose first two syllables are identical, and which have probably been formed as a result of prefix-formation (cf. Chapter 19).
Of these 300 derivative stems: (i) 520 have complete vowel harmony between the stem-vowel and the connecting vowel, and for 220 of these corresponding simple verbal stems could be found in Sotho; (ii) 30 have e as stem-vowel and 3.9 T.7 N.8, 3.9 T.7 N.8 or 3.1 T.5 N.1 as connecting vowel, and for 20 of these corresponding simple verbal stems could be found in Sotho; (iii) 140 have neither of the qualities described in (i) and (ii), and for 80 of these corresponding simple verbal stems could be found in Sotho; 50 of these 140 derivative stems have a labial as final stem-consonant followed by 3.8 T.7 N.8, 3.9 T.7 N.8 or 3.0 T.5 N.5, and for 15 of these corresponding simple verbal stems could be found in Sotho).

1) This phenomenon is not limited to Sotho, though I cannot say to what extent it is found in other Bantu languages. At any rate it does not require a thorough search through any Bantu dictionary to convince one that this phenomenon is also met with outside the boundaries of Sotho, as will be illustrated by the following references and examples:

In Karanga with the suffix in, e.g. dirige (pour in torrents), cf. dirje (pour) Marucanes A Grammar of Central Karanga p. 199.

In Kikuyu with the suffix in, e.g. temenge (out about) cf. tembe (out) Narwary Tentative studies in Kimwara Grammar 1911, p. 74.

In Nyanki: (the following examples have been taken from Scott and Netherwick Dictionary of the Nyanki language): achachin (cut, saw, carve), cf. chach (cut grass with a knife), disinda (strike with something heavy), cf. disha (give a blow with the elbow); dedom (stammer), cf. deoga (jump from branch to branch).

In Venda: (the following examples have been taken from v. Warmelv Sekhanga dictionary) dedona (feel, prove with one finger) and dedona (run with frequent halts to cover down and hide), cf. deoda (walk, walk carefully, watchfully as when after game); fanemanga (seek an object which has been mislaid, turning over everything in doing so), cf. funa (desire, want).

In Merero: (the following examples have been taken from Brincker Wörterbuch und Grammatik des Otji-Harero) diringe (be covered up, block up, bury), cf. gira (sorps in, bury); kurange (be loose), cf. kura still found in kurasura (shake, be unsteady).


6. This phenomenon of trisyllabic derivative stems with complete or partial vowel harmony depends upon the nature and origin of the vowel of the second syllable. Let us now examine the various possible factors to which the occurrence of the unstandardised connecting vowel may be due:

(1) It may be an integral part of the suffix, in the same way as e.g. a and o are integral parts of the suffixes pla and pla respectively. It will be seen later that each of the vowels a and o when prefixed to the suffix le, causes the resulting secondary suffixes to differ in force not only from le, but also from one another. If the position had been that all vowels found between the final stem-consonant and the suffix-consonant, in a verbal derivative, formed integral parts of the suffixes, then one would expect these vowels to have some influence or other on the force of the suffix. Thus there should then have been a difference between S.aka T.aka N.aka, S.aka T.aka N.aka, S.aka T.aka N.aka and S aka T.aka N aka; or between S.ama T.ama H.ama, S.ama T.ama H.ama, S.ama T.ama H.ama, S.ama T.ama H.ama and S. ama T.ama H.ama; or between S.ana T.ana N.ana, S.ana T.ana N.ana, S.ana T.ana N.ana, S.ana T.ana N.ana and S. ana T.ana N.ana; or between S.ama T.ama H.ama, S.ama T.ama H.ama, S.ama T.ama H.ama, S.ama T.ama H.ama, etc., or at least between some or these forms in each of these sets, but this, as will be seen later, is not the case. The only difference that does exist is between aka, ama and ana on the one hand, and la, ma and na on the other hand. One concludes therefore that the unstandardised connecting vowel does not form an integral part of the suffix.
(2) It may be due to vowel assimilation. Here one proceeds from the standpoint that the derivative suffixes under discussion all have an initial vowel, whatever that vowel may be, which is then assimilated to the stem-vowel. This view is advocated by Meinhof in connection with the change of the initial vowel of the suffixes *en* and *en* in e.g. Duala 1) also by Hees in connection with the change of the initial vowel of the representative of UB.**eve** in Yaunde 11).

Apart from the fact that assimilation of this kind presupposes that the suffix must have an initial vowel which could have assimilated to the stem-vowel, it is also evident that the suffix with the assimilated vowel must have the same force as the suffix with its original initial vowel. The suffixes, whose initial vowels, according to Meinhof and Hees, are, subject to vowel assimilation, in the languages dealt with subject to vowel assimilation, by them have initial vowels, i.e. they are secondary suffixes, and the suffixes with assimilated initial vowels do not differ in force from the suffixes with the original initial vowels. The Sotho counterparts of these original suffixes are also secondary, viz. 3.**e** T.**e** N.eve, 3.**e** T.**e** N.**e** and 3.**e** T.**e** N.**e**. However, the Sotho primary suffixes 3. *s* T.**e** N.eve and 3. *s* T.**e** N.**e** preceded by 3. *s* T.**e** N.eve, 3. *s* T.**e** N.eve, 3. *s* T.**e** N.eve, 3. *s* T.**e** N.eve, etc., do not have the same force as the corresponding secondary suffixes referred to above 111). Furthermore this phenomenon of

1) Grundriss einer Lautlehre der Bantusprachen, pp. 157 and 166

11) "Kontinuativ und Imperativ im Jaunde" Z.f.K.S. 4, pp. 73 ff

111) I could detect no difference between 3.**e** T.**e** N.eve and 3. *s* T.**e** N.**e** (durative) preceded by the various un-standardised connecting vowels. But 3. **e** T.**e** N.eve is a very rare suffix, occurring only in 18 derivative stems, it is therefore quite conceivable that the initial *e* has lost its force.
vowel harmony is even met in such suffixes as $s.n$ha $t.n$ha $n.n$ha, $s.m$pa $n.m$pa, $s.n$la $t.n$la $n.n$la, etc., i.e. suffixes which, when occurring in UB., or in any of the individual Bantu languages examined by me, would appear to be primary only and never secondary, with such suffixes then, as far as can be ascertained, there has never been an initial vowel which could have assimilated with the stem-vowel, thus causing vowel harmony. Again, if this process had operated in Sotho, then one would have expected, that all, or at any rate most of, e.g. the multiplicative and the positional derivative stems with stem-vowels other than $a$, would have had as suffix not $s.n$ka $t.n$ka $n.n$ka and $s.m$na $t.m$na $n.m$na respectively, but $s.n$ka $t.n$ka and $s.m$na $t.m$na preceded by a connecting vowel determined by the nature of the stem-vowel. The fact is, however, as will be indicated later, that the multiplicative and positional suffixes are $s.n$ka $t.n$ka $n.n$ka and $s.m$na $t.m$na $n.m$na irrespective of the nature of the stem-vowel, aside with the other secondary suffixes the nature of the connecting vowel is not influenced by the nature of the stem-vowel.

Finally, as far as vowel assimilation is in Sotho still a living process with both the derivative suffixes as well as the verbal terminatives, it is regressive and not progressive$^1)$, e.g. $s.n$rika $t.n$rika $n.n$rika (sell), cf. $s.n$ka $t.n$ka $n.n$ka ($buy$), the open $a$ has become closed under the influence of the $i$ of $s.n$la $t.n$la $n.n$la; $n.m$pala (dig out), cf. $s.n$pa $t.n$pa $n.n$pa ($dig$), the open $a$ has become closed under the influence of the $g$ of $s.n$pa $t.n$pa $n.n$pa; the compound suffix $s.n$pa usually becomes along in $t.; t.$spaya (cook) and $t.$maya (give).

$^1)$ Although regressive vowel assimilation is occasionally met with, e.g. $t.n$ritsa $< N.$ritsa (be taught), cf. $s.n$rita $t.n$rita $n.n$rita (teach).
have corresponding durative-applicative stems *sôsâla (cook for) < *nasâla and *mâsâla (hand over to one) < *nasâla respectively; and T.sikârela (unslung) < *sikârela may be compared with G.sikâra T.sikâra N.sikâra (slung or carry a thing slung over the shoulder). Under the influence of the perfect, the negative and the habitual terminatives the open e and open o of the preceding syllable always become closed, e.g. S.bôlile T.bôlile N.bôlile (have decayed) of S.bôla T.bôla N.bôla (decay, rot).1

From what has been said above, I think it is clear, that the unstandardised connecting vowel in Sotho cannot be attributed to a process of vowel assimilation.

(3) It may be that the vowel called by me the unstandardised connecting vowel belongs to the stem, from which the verbal stem has been derived, by affixing to it a primary derivative suffix, this undervived stem being an ideophone, containing, in cases where the stem-vowel and the vowel preceding the suffix (i.e. the unstandardised connecting vowel) are alike, the same vowel in its various syllables. Such derivative verbal stems are very common in Lamba.11

It is true that verbal stems derived from ideophones are sometimes found in Sotho, but ideophones are not so common in Sotho that they could serve as a basis of so common a phenomenon in the Sotho verbal construction as the one referred to above. In fact as compared with e.g. Xhosa or Lamba, Sotho is relatively poor in ideophones. Furthermore, many of the ideophones used in Sotho have been derived from verbal stems and not the other

1) For further examples of vowel assimilation cf. Phon., p. 71.

way round, (I quote from S. only): tlele (I) (of jumping into) from tlele (jump into), cf. tlole (jump), e.g. A re ka mokoting tlele (he jumped into the hole): pote (of disappearing round) from pote (disappear round), cf. pote (go round), e.g. A re ka atlo pote (he disappeared round the house); nango (of separating fighters) from nangola (separate, interfere), cf. nang (spread out, extend), e.g. A re bo nango "nango bo" (he said to them: "stop fighting").

In the following cases again derivation could have taken place either in the one or in the other direction (I quote from S. only): rophe (appear), cf. ropo (of appearing suddenly), cf. also ropam (become visible); blakel (seize and shake), cf. bleke (of getting spoiled or mixed up), cf. also N. wahlê (disorder); khurhe (make a noise with the throat), cf. khure (of clearing one's voice before talking); sethe (jump down), cf. sethe (of jumping down), cf. also UB. tithe (jump out); kutum (roar, rumble) and kutumun (make a slight noise like a mouse), cf. kutu-kutu (of making a slight noise like a mouse), cf. also UB. kuluma (produce a guttural sound), nyarâ (look into), cf. nyar (of looking into).

From the above it is evident that it is extremely difficult in some cases to say definitely which was first, the ideophonic or the verbal stem, while in other instances it is quite clear that the ideophonic is a later development. The vowel termed by me the unstandardised connecting vowel can therefore only to a certain extent be regarded as belonging to an ideophonic stem, but I think, owing to the scarcity of ideophones in Sotho, it can be safely assumed that only a small number of the unstandardised connecting vowels can at all be explained in this way.

1) The vowel o is not quite open - only semi-open.
2) The vowels o and u are not quite open - only semi-open.
(4) With the exception of the last one, and there probably only to a small extent, none of the previous explanations throws any light on the possible origin of the unstandardised connecting vowels. I therefore offer the following explanation:

The unstandardised connecting vowels, which occur, excepting in a very few cases, only between the verbal root and a primary suffix, are employed merely to prevent the juxtaposition of two consonants; they do not form an integral part either of the suffix or of the root from which derivation is affected; they have no semantic influence on the suffix; and their nature depends upon that of the preceding syllable. In the case of trisyllabic vowel.

1) Bleek regards the connecting vowels as being the result of a process of both analogy and assimilation, C.f. A Comparative grammar of South African languages, p. 56. He quotes only two examples in support of his theory, viz. lándiga and bonalakelema which, he thinks, have attained their present forms through the following stages: *lándiga ← *lándāga and *bonalakelema ← *bonalakelema respectively (A represents a suppressed vowel). The probable line of development postulated by Bleek does not seem to me convincing, but apart from this, these examples contain only secondary suffixes no reference being made to primary suffixes.

ii) With verbalised derivatives the vowel preceding the primary suffix belongs of course to the non-verbal stem and is not a connecting vowel (cf. §(a) above); such derivative stems are therefore not covered by the following explanation.

iii) An exhaustive list of these exceptions will be given in chapter 5.

iv) Because of the form of the 500 verbal stem this means that such connecting vowels occur practically exclusively in the second syllable of the stem, the only exceptions being those referred to above and here the unstandardised connecting vowel occurs never beyond the third syllable.

v) Of the 600 derivative stems with a single primary suffix in the basic position 140 are not covered by this rule. The nature of the connecting vowel of 52 of these 140 is determined by the nature of the final stem consonant (cf. below). For the connecting vowels of the remaining 110 which are e.g. of the form *nikāna (mix earth with soil), *w. naka (mix tobacco with sand), *bipena (swell, puff up), cf. *b. bipa (swell), I can offer no definite explanation. It is however possible that such stems are verbalised derivatives, and not verbal derivatives i.e. that, e.g. wakana has been derived from a non-verbal stem *wakAna and not directly from a verb *wakA which will then of course be the basis of both waka and Bipana; again a stem like, e.g. *bipena may have developed out of *wiping.
stems this vowel will be the stem-vowel, e.g. the first u in S.lukule T.dukule (take out a thorn, take something out of a person's tooth), cf. N.duka (poke, pick one's tooth); and in the case of stems having more than three syllables, this vowel will be the connecting vowel (standardised or unstandardised) of the first component part of a compound suffix e.g. the second o in T.taboleka (ravage, destroy), cf. S.ahoba (take much of something). They agree in quality with the vowel of the preceding syllable excepting when that vowel is a, when the unstandardised connecting vowel may sometimes be either S.o T.o N.o, S.e T.e N.e, or S.i T.i N.i.

The above explanation is based on the following considerations:

(i) The unstandardised connecting vowel has no semantic influence on the following suffix; this has already been referred to above, and I do not intend here to explore this point any further; it will be fully proved by the examples quoted in the various chapters below dealing with the individual suffixes.

(ii) Vowel harmony is in Sotho not a rare occurrence but one of the most outstanding features of its sentence-construction, and a common feature of its word-construction. The phenomena apparent in this process are in general well enough known, but I wish to recapitulate them briefly here, and to draw attention to some of their features which are not so generally realised.

(a) With most Sotho noun-classes, resemblance, if not always identity, between the vowels of the concords and those of the noun-class prefixes to which they refer,
is one of the most outstanding features of the so-called
Alliterative concord. The following sentences will make
this clear (I quote from 3. only): Ke banu bathe le ka
ba bolelloše ng here ba thil bango ba bôma bo 'ng (Here
are the people whom I have told to bring their children
to me); Ke gona giesa ng ka se redišeleng (Here is the
dish which I have bought); Ke buna bohobo bo ka bo
apalaleng (Here is the bread which I have baked). In
these sentences we find repeated not only the consonant
of the prefix of the noun round which each of these sen-
tences turns, but also the vowels of these prefixes, with
the result that we get here vowel harmony of a specific
type: the recurrence right through each of these sentences
of a vowel which gives to the sentence a definite eploung).

(b) Vowel harmony is common in compound verbal
stems \(^{11}\) e.g. T.fare-tlatedwa (be in a state of confusion),
N.kili-boga (keep on jumping), S.kho la-kenya (speak with
force, call loudly), N.jorit-fetširš (rub or stroke continually),
T.phura-phutša (feel about).

(c) When words of foreign origin have two con-
sonants in a juxtaposition foreign to the genius of Sotho,
these consonants are separated by inserting a vowel between
them. Very often the vowel so inserted is the same as the
vowel already existing in the foreign word \(^{111}\) e.g. S.kalaka
T.kalaka N.kalaka (lime) from Afrikaans kalk, S.tarata
T.tarata N.tarata (wire) from Afrikaans draad, S.tar onto

1) Cf. also Term., p. 47.

\(^{111}\)/v. Warmelo “European and other influences in Sotho”
Bantu Studies 3, pp. 409-410, and Rademans “Über die Wieder-
gabe von fremdwörtern und -namen in Bantusprachen” Z.f.N.S. 5,
pp. 284 ff.
It will also be noticed from the examples quoted by both Jacottet and v. Hespero that where a foreign word ends in a consonant, it is provided with a terminal vowel when taken over into Sotho, and this vowel very often, although not always, is the same as the vowel immediately preceding the consonant, e.g. S. tomo T. tomo N. tomo (bride) from Afrikaans tomo, S. ambr T. ambr N. ambr (pail) from Afrikaans embr, S. tårak T. tårak N. tårak (town) from Afrikaans dorp.  

If now in connecting the suffix to the root a vowel is chosen whose nature depends upon the nature of the root-vowel — thus affording vowel harmony — nothing extraordinary takes place, but 44 is merely another application of a firmly established and widely applied process.

1) For more examples in S., cf. Jacottet and Jankie A Practical method to learn Seputo, pp. 531 ff.

11) The process of applying vowel harmony when adapting foreign words is also met with in other Bantu languages, e.g. Tonga xerache (church) from Afrikaans kerk, xoko (yoke) from Afrikaans lox, and Xosa isiala (a poor man) from Afrikaans arm (poor), isitala (street) from Afrikaans straat, xolose (town) from Afrikaans dorp.

111) It should also be noted that the disyllabic noun-prefixes found in some Bantu languages, have frequently vowel harmony between the vowels of the two syllables of the prefix, cf. Phon., pp. 46-48.

IV) As indicated above there are a few derivative stems of more than three syllables ending in a compound suffix the second member of which is a primary suffix. The process of linking up the primary suffix by means of an unstandardised connecting vowel has here been extended to the linking up of two suffixes, the last being the primary suffix (usually the position is the other way round), thus the g preceding ka in Ndebele (cf. above), is an unstandardised connecting vowel which has taken its form from the initial vowel of the secondary suffix dlo. More examples of this nature will be quoted in Chapter 6 §10.
There is a certain number of trisyllabic derivative verbal stems (for actual number cf. above) with connecting vowel \( S \), \( \theta \), \( \Lambda \), \( T \), \( G \) \( T \), \( N \), \( Y \) \( T \), \( R \), \( Y \) \( H \), \( Y \), which however are not identical with the stem-vowels, the final stem-consonants of these derivative stems being a labial, e.g. \( T.\text{nyapula} \) (go along as a blind man, grope one's way along), cf. \( N.\text{papa} \) (grope with the hands); \( N.\text{nyampeka} \) (lament for the dead), cf. \( N.\text{nyawe} \) \( N.\text{nywe} \) (become sad or discouraged); \( N.\text{جابكة} \) (stop running), cf. \( N.\text{جابة} \) (jump along); \( T.\text{kabuka} \) (stap many times, make many wounds by stabbing), cf. \( T.\text{kabba} \) (pierce as a branch).

Here again the type of vowel inserted after a labial consonant to split up a consonant combination (the first member of which is a labial), found in a foreign word, taken into the language, may throw light on the question why, in the verbs under discussion, the connecting vowel is \( S \), \( \phi \) or \( Y \). It has been indicated by both Endemann\(^1\) and V. Wermelo\(^{11}\), that a consonant combination, one member of which is a labial, and which appears in a foreign word taken over into Sotho, is very often split up by inserting one of the above three vowels. I quote some of the examples given by V. Wermelo: \( A\text{felana} \) (a farm) from Afrikaans \( A\text{felana} \); \( A\text{pilana} \) (a plan) from Afrikaans \( A\text{plan} \); Endemann: \( A\text{kulana} \) (flag) from Afrikaans \( A\text{plan} \); \( A\text{chutsha} \) (tax) from Afrikaans \( A\text{plan} \);\(^{111}\) It will also be noticed from various examples quoted by V. Wermelo, Endemann and Jacottet that, a foreign word ending in a labial and taken over into Sotho, very often gets as a terminal vowel \( S \), \( \phi \) or \( Y \), e.g. \( A\text{fame} \) (a ram) from Afrikaans \( A\text{fame} \); \( A\text{jabaf} \); \( A\text{jabuf} \) \( A\text{fame} \) (a spead) from Afrikaans \( A\text{fame} \).

From what has been said above one concludes that there is in Sotho an inclination to follow a labial consonant with either \( S \), \( \phi \) or \( Y \). This is perhaps the reason why in the derivative stems referred to above the unstandardized connecting vowel is one of

---

\(^{1}\) \( A\text{endemann} "\text{Uber die Wiedergabe von Fremdworten und -Namen in Bantusprachen}" E.T.F.K.3, 1, p. 254.

\(^{11}\) \( V.\text{Wermelo} "\text{European and other influences in Sotho}" Afrika-Studies 5, p. 410.

\(^{111}\) Cf. also Jacottet and Jankie A \text{Practical method to learn Sotho} pp. 281 ff.
these three vowels. This becomes more probable, if one takes into consideration that in § 1 the passive suffix is very often preceded by the vowel u especially when the final consonant of the verbal stem is a labial, e.g. boquda (be created, moulded), of. bona (create, mould); tleqoe (be bound up, be tied), of. tleme (bind, tie)ii).

6. The semantic non-significant standardised connecting vowel; this type of connecting vowel is found with the following suffixes only: (a) the passive suffix and (b) the durative suffix (A) The passive suffix. The non-significant standardised connecting vowel preceding the passive suffix is basically jii) This can best be seen in § iv) and v) where iwe is still used independently, e.g. T. aqee (be built), cf. S. she T. aqwe (build); T. tamawa (be walked, be travelled), cf. S. tswa, T. tamaya N. tswa (walk); T. aqwa N. iwe (be dipped in, be drawn up as water), cf. T. an N. xwe (draw water); N. asewe (be reported), cf. S. shea N. xwe (report); N. xive (be cut), cf. S. xwea N. xive (cut)vi).


ii) In other Bantu languages it is sporadically found that verbal stems in their multi-functional conjugational form end in a, o or u when the final consonant is a labial, e.g. Herero namu (suck), cf. Meinhof Grundzüge einer Lautlehre der Bantu-Sprachen, p. 46; Sisa xwe (not to be able) and kweive (rather) Pfenning, "Das Ndebele" N.S. O.S. 8, p. 76.

iii) That the standardised connecting vowel j is semantic non-significant is proved by the fact that either the primary or the secondary passive suffix, may be attached to the same root without causing any difference in meaning, in the resulting passive stem e.g. S. ratja = S. ratwe (be loved), N. xweiva = N. xwejweiva (be sought), cf. Chapter 18 dealing with the passive suffix.

The connecting vowel i may be permuted to y. This happens rarely in T.\(^1\) and N., but is much more frequent in S.\(^11\), e.g. T.\(\text{tupa}\) (be said), N.\(\text{putua} = \text{N.putua}\) (be taught); cf. S.\(\text{ru} \text{t} \text{t} \text{a} = \text{N.ruta} \text{t} \text{a}\) (teach); S.\(\text{rou} \text{ta}\) (be sent); cf. S.\(\text{rome} \text{t} \text{o} \text{me} = \text{N.rome} \text{t} \text{o} \text{me}\) (send), S.\(\text{rute} \text{p} \text{a}\) (be loved), cf. S.\(\text{rute} \text{t} \text{a} \text{t} \text{a} \text{t} \text{a} \text{t} \text{a} \text{t} \text{a}\) (love).

(2) The durative suffix; the non-significant standardized connecting vowel preceding the durative suffix is a and \(\text{e}\) is found in S., T. and N. It is not necessary here to enlarge on what was already said on this connecting vowel in §1.2((b) above.

7. Semantic significant standardized connecting vowels:

(1) The connecting vowel B.\(\text{a}\) T.\(\text{a}\) E.\(\text{a}\) for suffixes having a as a semantic significant standardized connecting vowel, cf. §1.2((a) above. The occurrence of a vowel \(\text{a}\) preceding the representatives of these suffixes in many Bantu languages, leading to the reconstruction of UB. suffixes commencing in a vowel \(\text{a}\), is a definite proof, I think, that the initial vowel \(\text{a}\) of these suffixes must be a standardized connecting vowel; i.e. a vowel forming an integral part of the suffixes. This is also supported by the following:

(a) Although there is a resemblance in meaning between each of the secondary suffixes referred to above and

---

1) The second \(\text{a}\) in T.\(\text{utlu} \text{u}\) (be heard), cf. E.\(\text{ul} \text{u}\) (hear) is not a standardized connecting vowel, but is the semi-vowel \(\text{a}\) reverted back to a vowel, cf. U.\(\text{xal}\) (I\(\text{a}\)am) (bear) the parallel of S.\(\text{ut} \text{la} \text{s} \text{a} \text{u}\). These remarks will also apply to T.\(\text{du} \text{u}\) the passive corresponding to T.\(\text{hlu}\) (some out) which has an UB. parallel \(\text{lu}\) (some out). In Chapter 18 more examples will be quoted of the vocalization of the semi-vowel B.\(\text{a}\) T.\(\text{a}\) E.\(\text{a}.

its corresponding primary suffix, they are nevertheless not semantically identical. In form there is only one point of difference between them and that is the presence of the connecting vowel \( a \) in the secondary suffix. It seems to me one can therefore conclude that the element causing the difference in form, viz. the connecting vowel \( a \), is also the cause of the difference in meaning. The standardised connecting vowel has therefore a semantic force. Compare e.g. *M.kiaraka* (chase a long way) and *T.cherika* (go very quickly) cf. *N.klaro* (chase away); *S.alama* N.alama (take up an extended position, hatch) and *S.alima* T.alima N.alima (lend, borrow i.e. extend the possession of); cf. *S.ale* T.ale N.ale (spread out); *T.ekama* N.ukama (overhang, overlook, stand over) and *N.ekama* (lean against e.g. a door), cf. *N.ska* (look down upon, circle over as a bird); *N.pitana* (hate each other i.e. scowl at each other) and *N.pokama* (give a light, flicker), cf. *N.poka* (glance over the shoulder, scowl at). More examples of this type will be given in the chapters dealing with the individual suffixes.

(b) As far as the reciprocal suffix \( \nu \) and the positional suffix \( \nu \) are concerned it will be apparent, I think, from the following examples, that the initial \( a \) is an integral part of these two suffixes: (1) The reciprocal stem corresponding to *T.iwe* (know) is *itane*; Xhosa thi (say) is *thano*; Duala ipe (boil) is *ipane*; (2) The positional stem corresponding to Duala pane (hang up) is *pane*; In all these cases the simple stem does not end in \( a \), now if \( a \) does not belong to the suffixes in these cases where else could it have come from? I could find no examples of this type for the other secondary suffixes referred to above.

---

(2) The connecting vowels 3.9 T.# N.3 and 3.2 T.# N.2. These vowels occur as semantic significant standardised connecting vowels before the three suffixes S.°a T.£a N.£a, N.£a¹, and S.1a T.1a N.1a only, giving the secondary suffixes S.0°a T.0°a N.0°a, S.01a T.01a N.01a, S.31a T.31a N.31a and S.0la T.0la N.0la. The occurrence of vowels 3 and 9 (or their representatives) preceding the representatives of S.°a T.£a N.£a and S.1a T.1a N.1a in many Bantu languages, leading to the reconstruction of UB. suffixes commencing in a vowel (viz. ska, uka, eka and ula) as a definite proof, I think, that the initial vowels of these suffixes must be standardised connecting vowels i.e. vowels forming integral parts of these suffixes. This is In Sothe 

also supported by the specialised meanings conveyed by these suffixes, as compared with the more general force of the primary suffixes S.°a T.£a N.£a and S.1a T.1a N.1a. This point will be fully illustrated in Chapters 10 and 12, dealing with these two suffixes respectively, and I quote here only a few examples: S.°illa N.°illa (grind for, in N. also: rub in ointment on a wound) and S.1illa N.1illa (rub, e.g. a sore place, iron); cf. S.illa T.illa N.illa (grind, grind to powder); S.°akhohle N.°akhohle (throw or kick away e.g. rubbish) and S.°akhohle (kick about), cf. S.°akhohle (stretch or kick out the legs).

It is noteworthy that in every Bantu languages, the initial vowels of UB. ska, ska, eka and ula are subject to certain vowel harmonising influences exercised by the stem-vowel. These changes are not in all languages met with to

1) Only 9 occurs before £a and only two examples of ska could be found. Cf. Chapter 10, ska is the strengthened form of ska from which it obtains its connecting vowel.
the same extent, but as regards the actual changing of these two vowels it always amounts to either remaining unchanged or else becoming \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) either remaining unchanged or else becoming \( \eta \) according to the nature of the stem-vowel, cf. e.g.: Venda, Shona, Ila, Haenga, Dzangha, Lamba, Nyanyi, Kikuyu, Ganda, Konga, Herero and Kwanyama.

These changes are of course due to nothing else but a phonetic law operating in these languages. But what makes this phenomenon very interesting is the fact that the languages in which it does not occur, are comparatively few, e.g. Sotho, Hagua, Tonga and Duala. It is remarkable that Duala in the North-west, like the other three languages, quoted above, in the South does not have this law, while in between there are numerous languages where this law applies.

Watkins regards the effects of this law as sufficient ground to maintain that the initial vowels, viz. \( \alpha \) or \( \beta \) of the applicative, stative (capable), passive and performative suffixes do not form integral parts of these suffixes, but that they "answer to phonetic requirements only". The validity of Watkins's statement cannot be tested in Sotho as the phonetic law, referred to above, does not operate here; let us however test it in Ila where this law does apply:

\( \text{dala} \) (close) has a corresponding applicative stem \( \text{ya} \text{dila} \) (shut against) and a corresponding stative (destructor)

---

1) In the languages where this law operates, the initial vowels of the passive and performative suffixes are affected in the same way as the initial vowel of the applicative suffix.


ii) The only four suffixes tested by him.

stem *yula* (open). The simple stem is the same in each case and so is the last part of the suffix, and yet the two derivative stems differ entirely in meaning: the same remarks apply to *shimika* (raise, erect, i.e. cause to be in a standing position) and *shimaka* (start, leave, i.e. be no longer in a standing position) of *shima* (stand). According to Watkins's view the *j* preceding *ka* does not form an integral part of the suffix, but “answers to phonetic requirements only”. But what then is the *o* preceding *ka* in *shimaka*? And what are the *j* and *g* in *yudila* and *yula*? The difference in form between *i* on the one hand and *o* and *g* on the other hand each of these sets of vowels is not explained by the phonetic law referred to above, and upon which Watkins bases his statement, and in addition to this they vitally affect the meaning of the suffix.

If again we take the suffixes *ika*, *eka*, *aka* and *eka* found, e.g. in *ahka* (be divisible), cf. *aha* (divide); *heten* (be visible), cf. *heta* (see); *rhakaka* (be uncovered) i.e. be in a state of having been uncovered), cf. *ryumaka* (cover); and *leboka* (escape after having been caught, i.e. be in a state of having escaped) cf. *loba* (catch fish with a hook); we see that there is a common idea to all, viz. a stational idea, which in all probability conveyed by the element common to all, viz. *ka*, and which again includes two subordinate ideas, viz. a state of capability denoted by *ika* and *eka* (the form of the vowel preceding *ka* being determined according to the phonetic law referred to above); and a state, the reverse of that expressed by the simple stem, denoted by *aka* and *eka* (the form of the vowel preceding *ka* being determined according to the phonetic law referred to above). The element responsible for the difference between these two subordinate ideas is undoubtedly the vowel preceding *ka*,
83. viz. 1, 2 and 3 respectively, the form of which, in each
individual set, but not in the two sets taken together, is
determined by the phonetic law referred to above. In view
of what has been said above, it seems, that one is not
justified in regarding these vowels as not being integral
parts of the at-tional suffix be. Watkins was misled be-
because he examined suffixes with one set of connecting vowels
only.

3. Suffixes used without connecting vowels:

(i) All primary suffixes, whether they occur singly or as the initial component part of a compound suffix,
employed to form verbalized derivatives 1).

(ii) The primary passive suffix S. ba T. ve H. ve em-
ployed to form verbal derivatives 11).

(iii) The factitive suffix S. ba T. ve 1. ve, or a com-
pound suffix with the factitive as its initial component
part, employed to form verbal derivatives 111).

(iv) The durative H. ge, S. ba T. ve H. ve, or a compound
suffix with a or ve as its initial component part, in the
few cases when employed with mono-syllabic stems. In such
cases it is attached to the verbal stem and not to the
verbal root (cf. also the passive S. ba in S. ge (be raised
upon) with corresponding simple stem S. ba T. ge H. ge (rain),
for example. H. ge (get accustomed), cf. H. ge (bear), H. ge
(place, put away), cf. S. ge T. ge H. ge (be); S. ge (be),
(wet a thing), cf. S. ge H. ge (go to the stool, idea: make
wet) and S. ba T. ba H. ba (rain). For more examples cf.
Chapter 5 § 11, and Chapter 8 § 4) § I a(1) and § II a(1).

11) Cf. Chapter 18;
111) Cf. Chapter 17.
CHAPTER I.

DERIVATIVE SUFFIXES.

1. The term derivative suffix (a) is used to denote a suffix employed to form derivative stems (ii) either from verbal roots or from non-verbal stems.

2. It will be seen later that derivative suffixes are divided into single and compound suffixes. The following are the component parts of a single derivative suffix (iii):

   (a) a connecting vowel, i.e., in the case of secondary derivative suffixes only (iv); (b) a suffix-consonant (v), found with all derivative suffixes excepting with those mentioned under (a) below; (c) a suffix-essential vowel, found with the following suffixes only: the primary passive 3.3a T.28 E.38, the secondary passive 3.33a T.34a E.34a and its commuted form 3.33a T.34a N.38, the factitive 3.3a T.38a E.38a, the primary durative 3.3a T.38a E.38a and the secondary durative 3.33a T.34a E.38a.

As was indicated in chapter 2 §10, the a given as final vowel with the various suffixes does not actually belong to the suffixes; it is the multi-functional a merely employed here to conform with the existing practice, but when splitting a compound suffix up into its various component parts, it will only be employed once, viz., at the end of the final component part, since the applicative (intensive) is represented by S.28a and it is said to consist of 3a + 38a.

(a) For a definition of the term suffix, cf. Term, p. 206.
(b) Cf. Chapter 6.
(c) The component parts of a compound suffix depend upon the component parts of a single suffix and need therefore not be dealt with here.
(d) Cf. Chapter 4.
(e) With the primary durative suffix 3.3 T.38 E.38 the suffix-consonant has disappeared. This suffix consists therefore only of a latent component which is sometimes represented by 3.3 T.38 E.38 as in 3.3a T.34a E.38a, the other form of the primary durative suffix (cf. Term, p. 40).
3. A suffix-consonant or suffix-semivowel is that sound which remains after the derivative suffix has been stripped of its connecting vowel, i.e. with such suffixes as have a connecting vowel, e.g. the S.1 T.1 N.1 in the applicative suffix S.21 T.21 N.21, the S.k T.k N.k in the multiplicative S.ak T.ak N.ak and the S.k T.y N.y in the durative S.ad T.y N.y. Suffixes having no connecting vowel consist of a suffix-consonant or a suffix-semivowel only, e.g. the actional S.1 T.1 N.1, the stational S.b T.g N.x and the passive S.g T.w N.w.

4. The following consonants and semivowels are found in single suffixes:

(a) Unstrengthened consonants: a latent consonant found in all three sub-groups of Sotho as one of the forms of the durative suffix (W. representative: x), S.b T.b N.b, S.č T.č N.č, S.b T.g N.x, S.bl N.hl, S.č T.č N.č, S.č T.T N.č.

(b) Consonants derived from those under (a) through a process of strengthening1); such strengthened suffix-consonants are not always found in all three sub-groups; in some cases the nasal, the cause of the strengthening, is still retained: S.nk T.nk N.nk, S.k T.k N.k, S.p T.p N.l, N.kx, T.1th, S.t T.t N.t, T.1th, S.th T.th N.th.

(c) S.č1 T.č1 N.č1 which is neither a strengthened nor an unstrengthened consonant, in the sense in which these terms are employed in this treatise11).

6. If the suffix-sonnant is one of the unstrengthened consonants referred to in §4(a) above, the derivative suffix is said to be unstrengthened; and if it is one of the strengthened consonants referred to in §4(b) above the suffix is said to be strengthened. Suffices which have as consonant or semivowel one of the other consonants or semivowels referred to in §4(c), (d) and (e) above, do not fall under this classification.

As will be seen the semantically dominant element in a derivative suffix is the suffix-sonnant and unstrengthened and strengthened derivative suffixes which have phonetically related suffix-sonnants are also semantically related. The strengthened suffix as a rule conveys an idea which is of a more intensive nature than that conveyed by its unstrengthened counterpart.

1) The change of the suffix-sonnant 1 into 2 if the sonnant of the preceding syllable in the same verbal stem is a nasal, is a common phenomenon in some Bantu languages e.g. in Lambe, Konge, Nyere and although this phenomenon is not common in Sotme it is nevertheless operationally met with in T., e.g. tindii = tinti (debate, dispute), cf. mma (refuse) (cf. Wookoy and Brown lwakway krammer p. 14); siihia = siiwla (start) cf. m.d.a., tshwane = thwana (set apart), cf. iswana "ethnographic texts in the Sokwane dialect of Sechelagadi" Bantu Studies 12, No. 5, p. 1%). Also in the following cases there is an interchange between 1 and 2: N. biema = bidiwla (puff up), cf. S. bina N. bina (comes to termity); N. bidia = S. bidi (be west) (cf. m.d.a.). For a few more examples cf. Wookoy and Brown lwakway krammer p. 14.

11) The undermentioned consonants, whether found in the initial roots of verbal stems, as roots in the second syllable of simple verbal stems, or as consonants in the following suffixes, convey in each case a more or less related meaning: S. nha T. nda N. nda (Chapter 11), S. ama T. ama N. ama (Chapter 15), S. ssa T. ssa N. ssa (Chapter 14), S. nk T. nk N. nk (Chapter 9), and S. mla T. mla N. mla (Chapter 15) (the undermentioned numbers quoted after each consonant below refer to App. 1 and those in brackets to App. 2): S. ssa T. saa N. saa 25, 29, 80, (4), cf. the idea of making some or other rustling sound; S. nha T. nda N. nda 96, 97, (6), cf. the idea of closing, or being in contact; S. ssa T. ssa N. ssa 27, (7), cf. the idea of hindering, bringing together; S. nk T. nk N. nk 102, 180, (6), cf. the idea of being or bringing into contact; S. mla T. mla N. mla 161, 165, (18), cf. the idea of making short abrupt violent movements.

It is true, as will be seen from the chapters dealing with the suffixes referred to above, that some of them, especially mla and ama, have much more specialised force than that of the consonants concerned found as roots or in roots, but this is to be expected of formative constantly used as suffixes.
6. Derivative suffixes used with unstandardised connecting vowels are called primary derivative suffixes, and those having standardised connecting vowels are called secondary derivative suffixes.

7. All suffixes, whether primary or secondary, excepting 3.\(\text{fe}\) T.\(\text{fe}\) N.\(\text{fe}\), can be used with verbal roots to form verbal derivatives and they may then be termed verbal suffixes.

Only primary suffixes can be used in a basic position\(^1\) with non-verbal stems to form verbalised derivatives, and they may then be termed verbalising suffixes. I could find no examples of N.\(\text{ka}\), T.\(\text{pka}\) and S.\(\text{ka}\) T.\(\text{ka}\) N.\(\text{ka}\) used as verbalising suffixes, while on the other hand S.\(\text{fa}\) T.\(\text{fa}\) N.\(\text{fa}\) is only used as a verbalising suffix.

8. Derivative suffixes may be:

(A) Single, when only one suffix is used with a verbal root/the suffix is said to be single.

The following is an exhaustive list of all the derivative suffixes, primary or secondary, which appear singly, their designations are also given:\(^{ii}\)

- the durative S.\(\text{ga}\) T.\(\text{ga}\) N.\(\text{ga}\)
- the durative S.\(\text{ba}\) T.\(\text{ba}\) N.\(\text{ba}\)
- the durative S.\(\text{aba}\) T.\(\text{aba}\) N.\(\text{aba}\)
- the durative (intensive) S.\(\text{bka}\) T.\(\text{bka}\) N.\(\text{bka}\)
- the durative (intensive) S.\(\text{ka}\) T.\(\text{ka}\) N.\(\text{ka}\)
- the durative (intensive - multiplicative) S.\(\text{aka}\) T.\(\text{aka}\) N.\(\text{aka}\)

\(^1\) Cf. §9 below.

\(^{ii}\) These designations will of course be discussed in the Chapters dealing with the individual suffixes.
the operative \textit{s.\textipa{ba} t.\textipa{ba} n.\textipa{ba}},
the operative (intensive) \textit{s.\textipa{ra} t.\textipa{ra} n.\textipa{ra}},
the stational \textit{s.\textipa{ha} t.\textipa{ha} n.\textipa{ha}},
the stational (capable) \textit{n.\textipa{kra}},
the stational (capable) and the stational (causative) \textit{s.the t.\textipa{ra} n.\textipa{ra}},
the stational (destructive) \textit{s.\textipa{he} t.\textipa{he} n.\textipa{he}},
the stational (intensive) \textit{n.\textipa{kra}},
the stational (capable – intensive) \textit{n.\textipa{kara}},
the stational (destructive – intensive) \textit{n.\textipa{kara}},
the confusive \textit{s.\textipa{dle} n.\textipa{dle}},
the confusive \textit{t.\textipa{dha}},
the actional \textit{s.la t.la n.la},
the actional (capable) \textit{s.\textipa{dle} t.\textipa{dle} n.\textipa{dle}},
the actional (applicative) \textit{s.\textipa{dle} t.\textipa{dle} n.\textipa{dle}},
the actional (destructive) \textit{s.\textipa{dle} t.\textipa{dle} n.\textipa{dle}},
the actional (intensive) \textit{s.\textipa{la} t.\textipa{la} n.\textipa{la}},
the protractive \textit{s.\textipa{ma} t.\textipa{ma} n.\textipa{ma}},
the protractive (positional) \textit{s.\textipa{ma} t.\textipa{ma} n.\textipa{ma}},
the additive \textit{s.\textipa{ma} t.\textipa{ma} n.\textipa{ma}},
the additive (reciprocal) \textit{s.\textipa{ma} t.\textipa{ma} n.\textipa{ma}},
the punctative \textit{s.\textipa{pa} t.\textipa{pa} n.\textipa{pa}},
the punctative (contactive) \textit{s.\textipa{are} t.\textipa{are} n.\textipa{are}},
the punctative (contactive – intensive) \textit{s.\textipa{the} t.\textipa{the} n.\textipa{the}},
the punctative (intensive) \textit{t.\textipa{the}},
the punctative (intensive) \textit{s.\textipa{the} t.\textipa{the} n.\textipa{the}},
the disruptive \textit{s.\textipa{the} t.\textipa{the} n.\textipa{the}},
the passive \textit{s.\textipa{la} t.\textipa{la} n.\textipa{la}},
the passive \textit{s.\textipa{ma} k.\textipa{iva} n.\textipa{ima}},
the factitative \textit{s.\textipa{ma} t.\textipa{ma} t.\textipa{ma} t.\textipa{ma}},
the exclusively verbalising \textit{s.\textipa{ma} t.\textipa{ma} n.\textipa{ma}}.

\textit{The term verbalising is defined}

1) To the designations of the above primary suffixes used as verbalising suffixes, is prefixed the term verbalising \textit{of.} (b) below.

\textit{...}
The following are the general principles according to which terms are employed to indicate the various single suffixes: (a) When employed to form verbal derivatives the basic term is taken: the term employed to indicate the primary unstrengthened suffix, i.e. with suffixes that fall under the classification unstrengthened and strengthened, and every change in its form accompanied by a change in its force is indicated by suffixing a term in brackets, e.g. \( la \) is called actional, \( a_{la} \) actional (capable), \( b_{la} \) actional (applicative), \( c_{la} \) actional (destructive) and \( d_{la} \) actional (intensive); or, the term employed to indicate the primary suffix, i.e. with suffixes that do not fall under the classification unstrengthened and strengthened, and every change in its form accompanied by a change in its force is indicated by suffixing a term in brackets, e.g. \( e_{la} \) is called protractive and \( f_{la} \) protractive (positional).

It sometimes happens that a single suffix has two semantically related functions; this is indicated by suffixing by a hyphen another term to the one already in brackets\(^1\), e.g. \( g_{la} \) may be either actional (destructive-intensive) or actional (destructive-reversive).

Sometimes the force of a secondary suffix denoted by the term in brackets, is so dominating that for practical purposes it was thought advisable to use only this term, so e.g. \( h_{la} \) will be called applicative only. Such suffixes will be referred to in each of the chapters below dealing with the suffixes concerned.

---

1) This could not be done with the suffix \( \text{la} \) which has two subordinate functions so different from one another that it was not possible to correlate them. For this reason the two terms indicating the two subordinate functions are used separately in brackets. The fact that there is only one basic meaning, viz. stational, underlying the force of \( \text{la} \) proves that we have here only one and not two suffixes (this point will be dealt with fully in chapter 10).
(b) When employed to form verbalised derivatives, 
the scheme adopted here is to put in brackets the term employed to indicate the suffix when used to form verbal derivatives, and to prefix the term verbalising to it. So there may, e.g., be a verbalising (actional) S.1a T.1a N.1a or a verbalising (durative intensive) S.ka T.ka N.ka.
This scheme was thought justifiable as the suffixes retain their force whether they form verbal derivatives or verbalised derivatives. They are, however, used more often as verbal derivative suffixes, and for this reason the shorter term is used in such cases.

The suffix S.1a T.1a N.1a whose only function is to form verbalised derivative stems is denoted by the term exclusively verbalising, but, as there is no danger of ambiguity as far as this suffix is concerned if only the second member of the term is employed, this will be done in future when referring to 1a whether used singly or in a compound.

Both 1a as well as the other primary suffixes may be attached to various types of non-verbal stems, e.g., noun-stems or adjectival stems, etc., to form verbalised derivatives. The term verbalising is therefore only sufficient as a general term, but in any given instance a more accurate term will be necessary. For this reason the term denominative or deadjective, etc., will be put in brackets immediately after the term verbalising. Thus there may be a verbalising (denominative) (actional-reciprocal) S.1ana T.1ana N.1ana, or a verbalising (denominative) S.1a T.1a N.1a, or a verbalising (deadjective) S.1a T.1a N.1a.
(b) Compound, a suffix consisting of two or more single suffixes is said to be compound.

In the various chapters dealing with individual suffixes only such compound suffixes as are of special phonetic or semantic importance will be dealt with, compounds of this nature consist mostly of two single suffixes. It is not considered necessary to give an exhaustive list of all the compound suffixes given in the three dictionaries. Such lists of compounds will take up much space without yielding anything of particular interest.

The following are the general principles according to which terms are employed to indicate compound suffixes:

As basic term is taken the term employed to indicate the suffix in the basic position 1 when used singly, and the term of each subsequent suffix is joined to it by a hyphen, e.g. S.šēla T.šēla N.šēla is called actional (destructive)-statival (destructive); S.šēla T.šēla N.šēla when attached to a verbal root is called durative (intensive)-applicative, when attached to a non-verbal stem it is called verbalising [durative (intensive)-applicative], and when the non-verbal stem to which it is attached is, e.g. a noun-stem it is called verbalising (denominative) [durative (intensive)-applicative]; S.šēla T.šēla N.šēla is called verbalising-actional (capable); and S.ša (≪Š.ša + S.ša) T.šēha (≪T.ša + T.ša) N.ša (≪N.ša + N.ša) verbalising-factitive. S.ša T.šēha N.ša cannot be called verbalising (factitive) as this term is reserved for factitive S.ša T.ša N.ša when attached to non-verbal

1) Cf. § 9 below.
stems; similarly if tale is termed verbalising [actional (capable)] it would seem that the suffix referred to is aly and not aly. Finally, it should be noted that e.g. with the verbalising (factitive) 3.5n T.ya N.ya we have only a single suffix, whereas with 3.ya T.teha N.ya we have a compound consisting of exclusively verbalising 3.f T.yz N.f + factitive 3.5n T.ya N.ya --- hence the hyphen in such cases. Sometimes however, a compound suffix has developed a standardised function, and in such cases it has become advisable not to adhere strictly to the above principle, but to use instead a term indicating directly the force of the compound suffix as, e.g. 3.1na T.1na N.1na _
3.3na + 3.5n T.5za+T.ya N.5za+N.ya is called performative and not actional (capable)-factitive. This happens however very seldom

9. The derivative suffix appearing as the first component part of a compound suffix is said to be in a basic position, and the derivative suffix or suffixes following it are said to be in a non-basic position.

10. Secondary suffixes are found in a basic and in a non-basic position, primary suffixes on the other hand, with the exception of the following few, only in a basic position:

(a) the primary passive 3.5a T.ya N.ya, which is very commonly found in a non-basic position, almost without exception occupying the final position in a compound suffix with the passive as one of its component parts;

1) It will be noticed that when dealing with a compound which has as one of its component parts a suffix denoting one general idea with however, two or more subordinate ideas, the term employed is based on the general idea only, and the examples quoted are classified according to the general idea only. Thus the actional (destructive) 3.1na T.1na N.1na has two subordinate functions, viz. actional (destructive-reversive) and actional (destructive-extensive), but 8. okana T.ogana N.ogana is termed only actional (destructive)-reciprocal and not actional (destructive-reversive)-reciprocal and actional (destructive-extensive)-reciprocal. Once the subordinate functions of the single suffixes were explained, it was not found necessary to continue this detailed classification any further. The rules concern the compound suffixes are concerns, there are of course occasional exceptions to this rule.
(b) The factitive 3.Će T.Će Eya, also very commonly found in a non-basic position, but not necessarily in the final position;

(c) The causative 3.ćin, but only when it is the compound suffix ćila and only in one example, viz. 3.čerstitla (run nicely), cf. 3.čerstila H.čerstla (move the wings without flying).

(d) The durative 3.Će T.Će only in the following cases: 3.meye T.meye (get a thing), cf. 3.mye ćaye (go to the stool, idea: make wet) and 3.Će T.Će H.Će (rain).

(e) The durative (intensive), only in the compound suffix as used below, and only in the following examples:

T.ćećččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččččczy-lvly
(f) The disruptive, only in the compound suffixes as used below, and only in the following examples: N. tšolobela (cause strife), cf. N. tšeloba (= N. tšolobela); N. tšolobela (greeting expressed by those sent away to guess something), cf. T. tšēleka (examine carefully); S. tsulubutla (agitate, plague, throw in struggling); cf. S. tsulubane (agitate violently).

(g) The actional, only in the compound suffixes as used below, and only in the following examples: T. stilobela N. stilobela (stretch out as the hands or arms) (but cf. S. stilobela (stretch out, pull straight) here the ć vowels are closed) and N. stilobela (stretch out towards), N. kxalala (pluck out, tear to pieces), cf. N. kraye (mark by cutting the ear) and S. kha N. kye (pluck, tear off).

(h) The actional, only in the compound suffixes as used below, and only in the following examples: N. tšeloba (sure slowly, happen slowly), cf. S. tśe T. tše N. tše (nurse), T. stilobela N. stilobela (be or become stretched out), cf. S. stilobela (become stretched out) here the ć vowels are closed.

S. nětšelola N. nětšelola (walk slowly), cf. N. něke (walk slowly) T. někšelola N. někšelola (be leth or slow to do a thing); T. tšėtšelga (act defiantly, be headstrong, despise food); N. hlaspirixa (make tired, push under), cf. N. hlaspire (become tired).

11. The suffixes employed with verbal derivatives corresponding to monosyllabic simple stems are with the following few exceptions all secondary: the factitive S. je N. ye only in S. nye N. nya (go to the stool idea; make wet), cf. S. nje T. nje N. ne (rain); the passive S. ēs only in S. nēs (be rained upon), cf. S. nās T. nās N. na (rain); the
durative Na T.xa N.xa in e.g. T.nua (place down, put down); of. S.xa T.xa N.xa (be), N.nuwa (mark, brand), of. N.xwa (burn), N.ti/'nuwa (get accustomed), of. N.ti/'nuwa (hear). A few more will be found in Chapter 8 § A 10(1) and II 6(1).

12. The simple stems corresponding to some verbal derivatives with single suffixes, are mostly transitive while those corresponding to others are mostly intransitive; but as will be seen from the chapters dealing with the various individual suffixes there are, with the exception of the following few, no verbal derivatives which have either exclusively transitive corresponding simple stems, or exclusively intransitive corresponding simple stems. The exceptions to this rule are the verbal derivatives in: T.nuha, of which I could find only one example; N.kaa, of which I could find only two examples; N.aka, of which I could find only two examples; N.kwa, of which I could find only two examples; and S.niha T.niha N. 

13. As will be seen from the chapters dealing with the various individual suffixes, by far the majority of suffixes can be employed to form either transitive or intransitive derivative stems. Some are however preferably used to form transitive derivative stems, and others again to form intransitive derivative stems.

1) For a general discussion on the lack of a solid foundation in the distinction between transitive and intransitive verbal stems (not necessarily Finite verbal stems), cf. Vendryes Language, pp. 105-106.
14. Owing to the proximity in meaning between some of the suffixes a possible process of substitution of one suffix for another may have taken place as indicated below:

The stational (capable) S.**aha T.**aga N.*ixa has perhaps been substituted for the following suffixes: the stational S.aha T.ga N.xa, the stational (capable) S.*aha T.**aga N.xa (found only in N.) and the actional (capable) S.aSA T.ala N.ala.

The performative S.**aT.**a N.**a for the stative S.**a T.ya N.ya and the stational (causative) S.aha T.xa N.xa.

The verbalising-actional (capable) S.ala T.ala N.ala for the verbalising S.ala T.xa N.xa and in T. (dialectally) for the stational (capable) S.ala.

Each of these substitutions will be dealt with in the chapters dealing with the suffixes concerned.

15. As far as I could ascertain the following are the only derivative suffixes employed to form verbal derivatives from words with a European origin:

S.aka T.aka N.aka 14:

S.**aT.**a N.**a 14:

S.aka T.aka N.aka 14:

S.**aT.**a N.**a 14:

S.**aT.**a N.**a 14:

S.**aT.**a N.**a 14:

1) S.*aha T.**aga has probably been entirely replaced by S.aha T.**aga.

2) I.e. words newly taken into the language.
S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa e:

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa (vaccinate for), cf.
S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa (vaccinate) from
Afrikaans en (vaccinate).

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa e:

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa (speed along on
horseback), cf. S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa (race) from
Afrikaans ras (race).

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa e:

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa (be vaccinated)
from Afrikaans en of. above.

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa e:

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa (get fastened),
cf. S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa (fasten) from
Afrikaans vas (fastened).

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa e:

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa (untie, unfasten),
from Afrikaans vas of. above.

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa e:

S. Efa T. Efa N. Efa (get united)
from Afrikaans vas of. above.

It may perhaps be concluded from this that the
suffixes referred to above are the only living suffixes in
Sotho, although of course not necessarily the only com-
binations of such suffixes.

16. The spheres of usage of the various suffixes dif-
fer very much—e.g., as far as I could ascertain, the
operative be is used with only about 25 roots, whereas ac-
cording to the dictionaries the applicative ila is used with
about 600 roots; and as ila is a living suffix this number
can be almost arbitrarily increased by attaching ila to any
verbal root, provided some permits. This can however not
be done with non-living suffixes such as, e.g. ba, ila, ela,
and, etc.
I think the difference in the spheres of usage of the various suffixes may be attributed to the following:

(a) That some suffixes are living others non-living, the spheres of usage of the former being limited only by the meaning of the roots to which they are to be attached, those of the latter being limited to stems already formed at some past stage when these suffixes were still living and being incapable of further extension.

(b) A possible process of substitution such as described in 14 above.

(c) That the genius of Sothe does not seem to have felt the need of expressing certain verbal notions which could have been expressed by regular morphological means, through adding certain suffixes to given roots, or has chosen to express these notions in some other way. There are possible verbal stems whose non-occurrence can only be attributed to what has been said above; from the semantic point of view they would appear to be quite permissible. This applies not only to cases where a living suffix might have been used, but also to cases where a non-living suffix might have been used. Thus (1) with living suffixes one gets, e.g. 3. ratana T. ratana N. ratana (love one another), but not 3. retella T. retolola N. retolola which according to the force of its suffix would have meant: unlove, i.e. stop loving of 3. rate T. rate N. rate (love); 3. rēkē T. rēkē N. rēkē (buy for), but not 3. rekolohe T. rekolege N. rekolema 1) (be in a state of not having been.

1) If the stem-vowel is e it becomes o under the influence of a connecting vowel o, cf. Chapter 13 §(a)II(8)).
bought), cf. S. ṭhēka T. ṭhēka N. ṭhēka (buy). S. jēla T. jēla N. jēla (eat for), but not S. joloha T. jologa N. joloxa (be in a state of not having been eaten, get uneaten), cf. S. ja T. ja N. ja (eat). (ii) With non-living suffixes one gets, e.g. S. inola T. inola N. inola (take out of water), but not S. inala T. inala N. inala (become dipped into water), nor S. inihla T. initha N. inihla (dip into water in a confused and disorderly way), cf. S. ina T. ina N. ina (dip into water), T. okama N. okama (overhang, overlook), but not S. okoa T. okoa N. okoa (overlook habitually), cf. N. oka (look on from above).

(d) The nature of the meaning of each suffix: There are certain suffixes, which, as a result of their meaning, are debarred from being attached to certain roots. So e.g. one gets N. ḫethoxa (get separated), but not S. ḫathara T. ḫathara N. ḫathara or S. ḫathama T. ḫathama N. ḫathama which would make no sense, cf. S. ḫētha T. ḫētho N. ḫētha (choose, pick out); similarly T. gassama (become spread out in all directions; but not S. hasa T. gasa N. xasa (spread); N. utama (get bent down), but not S. utura T. utura N. utura, cf. N. utha (hide).
CHAPTER 6.

THE DERIVATION OF VERBAL STEMS THROUGH SUFFIX-FORMATION.

1. Derivation of verbal stems through suffix-formation takes place by attaching a derivative suffix, single or compound, to a verbal root or a non-verbal stem. If the suffix to be attached to a verbal root is primary then a standardised connecting vowel is of course employed.

2. Sotho verbal stems of more than two syllables are mostly derivative stems. Thus S. nātētē T. nātētē N. nātētē (buy for) is a derivative stem derived from the root S. nāk T. nāk N. nāk by means of the suffix S. ñē T. ñē N. ñē and so is S. nātētē T. nātētē N. nātētē (became nine) derived from the non-verbal stem nātē, found also in S. nāmātē T. nāmātē N. nāmātē (sweetness, nice taste), by means of the suffix S. ū T. ū N. ū.

There are, however, a certain number of verbal stems of more than two syllables which: (a) are derivative stems not through suffix-formation but through prefix-formation, (these stems will be dealt with in Chapter 19), or (b) are not derivative stems at all, but compound stems such stems will be dealt with in Chapter 21.

The following S. verbal stems of more than two syllables are not compounds, neither do I regard them as derivative stems through suffix-formation as I did not succeed in identifying the components of their third

1) In the majority of cases, owing to their very form, prefix-formation is excluded as a probable process through which these stems might have been formed. For the one or two cases, whose form does not exclude this process, no corresponding simple stem could be ascertained, there is therefore no proof that even such stems are the result of a process of prefix-formation.
syllables as suffix-consonants. I have been able to do with all the other Sotho verbal stems of more than two syllables excepting the compound stems, the verbalised derivative stems derived from non-verbal stems of more than two syllables, and the verbal derivatives derived through prefix-formation. With the exception of two or three cases, I could not indicate for these stems corresponding simple verbal stems or corresponding non-verbal stem. These stems therefore fall outside the scope of this treatise and are probably of foreign origin; especially those containing a click which may all have a Nguni origin, some of them have actually been derived from this source.

The following are the verbal stems concerned:

\textbf{hobeshana} (quarrel, wrestle), \textbf{ghobeshana} (quarrel, wrangle, be crowded), \textbf{ghobeshana} (= ghobeshana), cf. Zulu \textit{gushu/hana} (but one another as when crowded); \textbf{ghobosha} (push aside), cf. \textit{ghoba} (drive, push on); \textbf{ghobosha} (fix with a pin), cf. Xhosa \textit{ghobo/ela} (fix with a pin); \textbf{gholosha} (walk bravely);

\textbf{gobosha} (supplant), cf. Xhosa \textit{ghobo/a} (pin, button); \textbf{ocosha} (anoint with), cf. \textit{gogga} (purify a man who has killed another in battle); \textbf{gobesha} (go away); \textbf{gamachela} (stick to, adhere to), cf. Xhosa \textit{noomathela} (adhere to); \textbf{gamachela} (= gamachela);

\textbf{pekecha} (read about without taking notice of people); \textbf{geecha} (speak much), cf. \textbf{gecha-gecha} (prattle) and Xhosa \textit{gega/a} (train); \textbf{gokoche} (smear one's head with red clay), cf. \textit{goka} (smear one's head with antimony); \textbf{khophohecha} (make something crooked), cf. \textit{khop\={e}} (crookedness); \textbf{chokoche} (chase, drive cattle, urge), cf. \textit{chokha} (pursue, drive about); \textbf{khomaga} (make lumps, become thick of kafircorn bread); \textbf{gekega} (draw out with difficulty, do something which is difficult and which causes pain, stab); \textbf{ghol\=oqha} (speak much of an affair); \textbf{segogo\=lotse} (weep); \textbf{gethantsetsa} (deceive, lure).
The following stems found in B. and H. have definitely been taken over from Aguni: S.hlōnpha N.hlōnpha (respect, 
honour), cf. Those hlōnpha (be bashful, keep at a distance 
through reverence), S.hlōnpha N.hlōnpha has been abbreviated 
to S.hlōnpha N.hlōnpha as a result of the elision of e.
S.kholophala (become fat, strong), cf. Zulu kholuphala (become 
fat, strong), S.chibilika (melt), cf. Zulu sabilika (melt).

3. A certain number of the derivative verbal stems in 
other are disyllabic, viz.:

(a) Derivative stems in simple suffixes, having 
monosyllabic corresponding simple stems, e.g. S.tane N.tana 
give to one another, cf. S.təa T.əa N.əa (give); N.kuəa 
(listen to), cf. N.kəa (hear); S.khole T.kəola N.kəola (pluck, 
pull out), cf. S.kha N.kəa (pluck fruit).

(b) Passive stems with corresponding disyllabic 
simple stems or corresponding disyllabic derivative stems, 
e.g. S.rəkəa T.rəkwa N.əkuəa (be bought), cf. S.rəka T.rəka 
(boy) S.jələa T.jəlua (be eaten with respect to), cf. 
S.jəlea T.jəla N.jəla (eat for, at) and S.jəa T.jəa N.jəa (eat).

(c) Factive stems with corresponding disyllabic 
simple stems or corresponding disyllabic derivative stems, 
e.g. S.tətəa T.tətəa N.tətəa (finish, make an end of), cf. 
S.təla T.təla N.təla (come to an end); N.nətəa (cause to 
sink down in liquid), cf. S.nəbəla T.nəbəla N.nəbəla (get 
drowned) and S.nəbə T.nəwa N.nəwa (drink).

(d) Disyllabic verbal stems abbreviated from tri-
syllabic verbal stems, e.g. T.bəla (place for), cf. S.bəla 
T.bəla N.bəla (place for), and S.bəa T.bənya N.bəa (place).

1) For more such examples cf. Chapter 5.
(e) The following three stems, of which it is very difficult to say whether they are simple or derivative, but which are nevertheless, for reasons given below, regarded as derivatives: S.rola T.rola M.rola (take up a burden), cf. US.tu-ala (carry on the head, take away) (Phon., p. 225); S.rola T.rola M.rola (unload, take off); and S.tšoana T. tšhwana M.awana (resemble), cf. US.pš-ana (resemble) (Phon., p. 220). The elements ala, ola and ana occurring in these stems are in all probability identical with the secondary derivative suffixes having the same forms respectively, they have the same semantic force, but they are attached in these cases to elements which cannot be identified as verbal roots or non-verbal stems. I regard these three verbal stems as derivative, however, notwithstanding the unidentifiability of their initial consonants. Firstly because of the nature of the elements ala, ola and ana, and secondly because, although I cannot prove it, it seems as if the elements S.rollo T.rollo M.rollo, S.rollo T.rollo M.rollo (rollo is probably an abbreviation from *rollo thus *rolola >-rola) and S.tšő T.tš ŵa M.awa originally constituted roots now lost.

(f) Derivative verbal stems derived from monosyllabic non-verbal stems by means of primary suffixes, e.g. S.bipa T.bipa M.bipa (cover up, another) and N.ribela (cover bones up with a heap of stones), cf. N.bi also found in N.mbi (a heap of stones over bones); S.hôšala T.gwala M.xwela (copulate) and N.xwera (make friends), cf. N.xwela also found in N.moxwela (friend) and S.hôša T.gwë M.xwë also found in S. bóhôs T.bóxwë M.óxwë (place, duties, etc., of the bride's father; in N. also: marriage (of the bridegroom)), S.hlûsala
T. tlhòle N. hlòle (look at, spy), cf. S. hlò T. tlhò N. hlò.

Also found in S. leihlò T. leithlò N. leihlò (eye). 

kaba T. kaba N. kaba (close, shut a whole), N. kaba (catch with both hands), T. kava (tie a cow’s legs together for milking), S. kaka T. kaka (take something as a whole), T. kana N. kana (seal, cement), N. kama (catch something thrown), S. kama T. kama (catch, receive with the hands), S. kika (keep a flock well together), T. katla (gather in, in sewing), cf. S. ka also found in S. 'moka (assembly, also in: ka 'moka = all of them), and N. ka also found in N. moka (the whole, also in: ka moka = all); T. diig N. diya (detain, delay), N. diba (restrain, pull up) and S. lika T. diika N. dika (surround, tarry), cf. N. di also found in N. sedi (caution, circum-spection); N. hlòfa (get thick of milk, lose the taste), cf. T. tlba N. hlb also found in T. botla N. bohle (sourness); N. kwafa (be lazy), cf. N. kwa also found in N. lekwa (slug-gard); N. tsefa (become pretty) of N. tse also found in N. botse (beauty).

4. In view of the fact that ka is a generally recognised verbalising suffix hlòfa, kwafa and tsefa can be classified as derivative verbal stems without any further remarks. The mere fact that with these derivative stems ka has been attached to monosyllabic non-verbal stems, whereas in the case of, e.g. T. koa (be weak) of S. koa T. koa also found in S. seko T. seko (weak or sickly person), natefa (cf. §2 above), etc., it has been attached to disyllabic

1) The nonverbal stem tse in botse (cf. above), tši in N. nțhi (many) etc. may at the same time be roots, but for my purpose it is of importance that they can also be stems.
non-verbal stems, does not affect \( \text{fa} \) in any way either structurally or semantically. But if this can be said of \( \text{fa} \) it can also be said of the other suffixes quoted in § 3, above. It is true that they are not so generally recognised as verbalising suffixes, but that does not exclude them from being such suffixes\(^1\). I quote also a few examples where some of these suffixes are used with non-verbal stems of more than one syllable: \( \text{N.koaba} \) (be exhausted), \( \text{T.koama} \) \( \text{N.koama} \) (sit down helpless, be exhausted), cf. \( \text{sekoa} \) above; \( \text{N.xołaña} \) (keep on bellowing), cf. \( \text{N.xoła} \) also found in \( \text{N.moxoła} \) (gullet, throat)\(^11\).

Now, if we compare \( \text{tsefə}, \text{xwəra} \) and \( \text{bitla}, \) we may say that all three are derivative stems for the reason that in all three cases a derivative suffix has been attached to a noun-stem. The suffixes are primary, and all three can be attached to non-verbal stems of more than one syllable to form derivative verbal stems. There is therefore no difference in nature between the suffixes employed, excepting that both \( \text{ra} \) and \( \text{tlə} \) may also be affixed to verbal roots to form verbal derivatives -- a quality not possessed by \( \text{fa} \).\(^6\)

But this will not affect their verbalising force; neither is there any difference in nature between the formatives to which these suffixes are attached -- they are in all three cases noun-stems. It does not seem as if one could say anything about the nature of one of these derivative verbal stems, or their component parts, which will not also apply to the other two, e.g. if it is said that both \( \text{bitla} \) and \( \text{sebi} \)

---

1) In e.g. Herero ya the parallel of \( \text{S.ba} \) \( \text{T.ba} \) \( \text{N.ba} \) is a common denominative suffix of, Meinho\(f\) Grundriss einer Lautlehre der Bantu-Sprachen, p. 137.

11) For more examples cf. Chapter 20.
have a common root bi, and that bitla is not a derivative verbal stem but merely a simple verbal stem consisting of a compound root bitl + the terminative a, the first member of the compound root being accidentally identical with that of a noun, then exactly the same can be said of xwara and taefa, as well as of kwara and hlafa (also referred to in §3 above); or again if it is said that the derived form here is sabi and not bitla, the same statement can be made of xwara, taefa, kwara and hlafa.

5. The question may now be asked: what is the difference between those stems which I consider to be disyllabic simple verbal stems with compound roots as bases, and disyllabic derivative stems derived from monosyllabic non-verbal stems? For the purpose of this treatise such disyllabic stems are regarded as derived if the following condition is complied with: if the formative to which the derivative suffix has been affixed, can also be a non-verbal stem i.e. if it is possible to form, e.g. a noun from it without suffixing anything to it. As will be seen the various noun-stems quoted above comply with this condition; they are provided with a prefix but not with a suffix.

For this reason I do not regard N. beba (form a cream) as a derivative verbal stem. It is true that be is found in S. lebese T. lebese N. lebese (fresh milk) and in T. lebebe N. lebebe (cream), but it occurs as a noun-root and not as a stem, to form the noun-stem it must be provided with another element, in the one case se and in the other case be; beba is therefore a simple verbal stem. For the same reasons N. hafla (be stupid or clumsy) is a simple and not a derivative

1) The same applies e.g. to the adjectival stem täi found in N. ntau (many), cf. the derivative stem N. täifa (increase).
stem, ḥa is found only as a root in, e.g. M.lehemdi (a stupid or clumsy thing).

5. Much more delicate than the question dealt with in § 5. above is the following question – why cannot these stems which I consider to be disyllabic simple verbal stems with compound roots as bases, be regarded as derivative verbal stems. In view of the definition given to a derivative stem in § 1. above, viz. that it can be formed inter alia by attaching a derivative suffix to a verbal root, the main point to be settled here is whether the formatives, regarded by me as roots, and found as the second element of what I call compound roots, should not rather be regarded as derivative suffixes and not as roots. For the purpose of considering this point it is convenient to classify these stems which I regard as simple stems with compound roots as bases into the following sub-heads: (i) those which have in their second syllable a formative which is semantically related to the suffix having the same consonant\(^1\), e.g. S.khatha T.katha M.kxatha (crush, break in new ground); (ii) those which have in their second syllable a formative which is not related to the suffix having the same consonant, but whose force can nevertheless be indicated\(^{11}\), e.g. S.hlaba T.tlhaba M.hlaba (stab)\(^{11}\); and (iii) those which have in their second syllable an element which can be proved to be a formative, but for which no specific force can be indicated\(^{1}\), e.g. S.lena T.lena M.lena (observe the stars, pay attention).

\(^{1}\) Cf. Chapter 5 § 5. and App. B.

\(^{11}\) It should be noted that most of these formatives, regarded by me as roots and found as the second element of what I call a compound root are of this type, cf. App. B.

\(^{11}\) Cf. App. B.1.

\(^{1}\) Cf. Chapter 1 § 7.
It was indicated above that a verbal derivative is formed by attaching a derivative suffix to a verbal root, thus S. rēkāla T. rēkāla N. rēkāla (buy for) consists of a root rēk (− rē) cf. also S. rēka T. rēka N. rēka (buy); similarly S. rethathē (beat a skin with a stone in order to make it supple) consists of the root +rēth (bhē + the) cf. also S. retha (strike), but S. kathē T. kathā N. kathē (crush, break in new ground) also consists of a root, viz. S. kē T. kē N. kē.

In both S. rethathē and S. kathē T. kathā N. kathē a formative the has been attached to a root to form a verbal stem. The formative the employed in the case of S. rethathē is semantically related to the formative the employed with S. kathē T. kathā N. kathē, and it may even be the same formative. It would therefore appear that one has no option but to regard the formative the employed in the above two cases, as being of the same type. The occurrence of an unstandardised connecting vowel in the one case but not in the other does not affect the value of the; this vowel is merely used for phonetic reasons. I admit that no serious objection can be raised against the the of S. kathē T. kathā N. kathē being regarded as a suffix. But what now is the position with ba of S. khašā T. khašā N. khašā (stab)? There is no semantic relation between this ba and the ba used as a suffix in the manner described in Chapter 9. Should this ba now be regarded as another derivative suffix? This would mean that we have two suffixes identical in form but entirely different in meaning — indeed a very extraordinary state of affairs1). The position becomes still more complicated if we

1) There is actually yet another set of stems with ba as their final syllable, cf. App. B 2., although it is possible that we have here one and the same formative with two subordinate functions.
consider such stems as *S.lepa T.lepa N.lepa* (pay attention, observe the stem) with a final syllable *pa* which can be proved to contain a formative *p*, but whose force cannot be indicated. Semantically it does not seem to conform with the suffix *pa*, although this might have been the case in the past; but, on the other hand, it is equally likely that through further investigation it may prove to have a force entirely different from that of the suffix *pa*. There are more cases like that of *pa*\(^1\). Now if one goes out from the standpoint, that the second member, in what I call a compound root, is a derivative suffix and not a root, where should one class such formatives as *pa*? And again what should be done with the *pa* referred to above? One will have to recognise two suffixes of the form *pa* and there may perhaps be more if it is taken into consideration that there are about 200 disyllabic simple stems with *pa* as their last syllable, while the disyllabic stems found in App. B1. and 2. number only just over 20. Such a classification will undoubtedly give rise to many difficulties\(^2\), but apart from this, one will have only a very indefinite basis from which to operate. It is true that *S.khatha T.khatha N.khatha* can with a fair amount of certainty be regarded as a derivative stem in view of the force of *tha*. But where is one then to draw a distinction between what can be called simple stems (and there will have to be such a classification to cover such stems as *S.r̥̄ka T.r̥̄ka N.r̥̄ka*).\(^1\)

\(^1\) Cf. Chapter 1 § 7.

\(^2\) That roots of the same form often convey entirely different ideas has also been observed by Bourquin Cf. *A.U.B.U.* pp. 193 ff. *This is demonstrated by suffixes expressing properties or characteristics that are expressed by suffixes.*
buy) which, as far as our present knowledge goes, can definitely not be regarded in anyway as a possible derivative stem and what can be called derivative stems?

In view of what has been said above, and as it seems to me essential to have some definite basis to work from, it was decided to regard all disyllabic stems of the type 3. 
katha T.kgatha N.kxatha, 3.blaba T.thaba N.blaba and 3.lepa T.lepa N.lepa as simple stems, and to take only such disyllabic stems as are referred to in § 3. above as being derivative stems.

7. From what has been said in § 5. and 6. above, it is evident that when analysing the Sotho disyllabic verbal stems, one will come upon a certain number of which it will be extremely difficult to say whether they are derivative or simple. In some cases, such as 3.katha T.kgatha N.kxatha, one has to be almost arbitrary in classifying these stems.

One is here also at a point where verbal stems, which are regarded as simple, may turn out to be derivative stems on the discovery of a monosyllabic non-verbal stem in Sotho, e.g. as far as can be ascertained the stems 3.köpa (embrace, seize, surround), N.köra (catch, snatch), N.költa (hold tightly) are simple, but if a noun *sekö, where *kö has a meaning related to that of kö in the abovementioned verbal stems, were discovered, then these three stems would be derivative and no longer simple stems.
CHAPTER 7.

SCHEME OF CLASSIFICATION OF VERBAL DERIVATIVE SUFFIXES.

1. The verbal derivative suffixes are classified according to the consonants or semi-vowels of their primary and secondary forms in the basic position. All suffixes, whether single or compound, which have in the basic position respectively un strengthened and strengthened forms of the same original consonants, are grouped together.

2. Scheme of classification:

A) Unstrengthened ¹)

I) Primary:

C) Single:

i) Designation and form,

ii) Definition and function.

B) Compound:

1. Primary suffix in basic position:

i) Designation and form,

ii) Definition and function;

2. Primary suffix in non-basic position ¹¹) :

i) Designation and form,

ii) Definition and function.

¹) Only applicable to such suffixes whose consonants are un strengthened, cf. Chapter 5 ½.

¹¹) It will be noticed that as a rule very little is said about suffixes (primary or secondary) when occurring in a non-basic position. The reasons for this are: (a) as already stated above, only a few compound suffixes, i.e. only those which are of special interest, are being dealt with, and (b) a suffix as a rule does not change its force whether used in a basic or in a non-basic position; the force of a suffix is therefore fully discussed when it occurs in a basic position and is merely referred to when it occurs in a non-basic position; in this way unnecessary repetition is avoided. In the majority of cases therefore, when referring to a suffix which occurs in a non-basic position, only a few examples will be quoted mainly with a view to illustrating its form.
II Secondary:

\( \alpha \) Single:
  i) Designation and form,
  ii) Definition and function;

\( \beta \) Compound:
  i) Secondary suffix in basic position:
    i) Designation and form,
    ii) Definition and function;
  ii) Secondary suffix in non-basic position:
    i) Designation and form,
    ii) Definition and function;

B) Strengthened:

I Primary:

\( \alpha \) Single:
  i) Designation and form,
  ii) Definition and function;

\( \beta \) Compound:
  i) Primary suffix in basic position:
    i) Designation and form,
    ii) Definition and function;
  ii) Primary suffix in non-basic position:
    i) Designation and form,
    ii) Definition and function.

1) Only applicable to such suffixes whose consonants are strengthened, cf. Chapter 5 § 4.
II Secondary:

(C) Single:

1) Designation and form,
2) Definition and function.

(B) Compound:

1. Secondary suffix in basic position:
   1) Designation and form,
   2) Definition and function;

2. Secondary suffix in non-basic position:
   1) Designation and form,
   2) Definition and function.
CHAPTER 5.

called multiplicative, S. & T. & H. &.

A) Unstrengthened:

I Primary : o(’) Single :

1) Durative S. & T. & H. &, S. & T. & H. & e.g. S. 
etes (roam about in search of something), cf. N. &ita (walk
about, surround); S. &tubes (stab repeatedly as when killing
an animal by stabbing it in the heart), cf. S. &tubes S. &tubes
(scratch, make a mark); T. &kraphes (shake about and run over
as water while being carried), cf. T. &kraphes S. &kraphes (push
out with a hand as grain from a vessel); N. &ruma (depart,
swarm out as bees), cf. S. &ruma (fly); N. &kare (mark, draw,
brand), cf. N. &gare (burn, scorch); T. &kare = T. &kare (portion),
N. &kare (mark by cutting the ear), cf. S. &kare S. &kare (pluck,
tear off). In most cases one cannot be definite as to
whether S. & T. & H. & of the durative suffix S. & T. & H. &
is a later addition in the form of a glide, or the original
initial sound of the suffix. Sometimes durative stems de-
uced from the same root appear with either the suffix

1) UB. & T. Phen., pp. 44 and 76.

11) UB. ws, UB. ws mostly disappears in Satho, but is some-

iii) UB. ws Phen., pp. 44 and 76.

iv) No UB. parallel is given by Heinhof.
(add water to a pot) no corresponding simple stem, T. khikhie
T. khikhiwa (run slowly)\textsuperscript{11} no corresponding simple stem.

Whereas in these cases the semi-vowel S. NY could perhaps be a glide\textsuperscript{11}, it certainly is not a glide in
N. kholva (go in a file); no palatal glide can be inserted
between S and Ny\textsuperscript{11}.

\textbf{iv}) Primary durative S. T. N. and S. T. Ya N.

are semantically identical and they indicate that an
action is performed continually and sometimes also habitually\textsuperscript{7}. This is a rare suffix in Sotho\textsuperscript{\textit{vii}}, its force can however be
seen from the following examples as well as from the examples

\textsuperscript{1} Of. also the verbalised (denominative) stems S. buyiša
T. thobia N. bōdia N. bōdiwa (assay, worry), T. wiliwa T. wiliwa
(go about to and fro as a wanderer), T. diwa T. diwa N. diwa (delay)

\textsuperscript{11} Of. Phen., p. 59.

\textsuperscript{111} Cf. also the simple stems S. bolwa T. boya T. boya N. boya (re-
turn), Bolwa (return) Phen., p. 35; S. lēka T. lēka N. lēka (bew-
itch), (35. lēka (bewitch) Phen., p. 110; and S. bōdia T. thobia
N. bōdia (hate).

\textsuperscript{iv}) Endemann regards final S. T. Ya N. ya in trisyllabic
verbal stems as identical with the simple stem S. T. Ya N. ya
(go), cf. W. d. &. S. p. 30. The meaning of most of these stems
however does not justify the acceptance of S. T. Ya N. ya (go)
as one of their component parts. Furthermore, as already
indicated, the suffix S. T. Ya N. ya has an OB. parallel, viz.
Ya, which in form differs entirely from the OB. parallel of
S. T. Ya N. ya (go), viz. Ya (go), cf. Phen., p. 196. For these
reasons I consider a simple equation of the stem S. T. Ya
N. ya with the suffix S. T. Ya N. ya as dangerous, although I
do not deny that some semantic connection may exist between
them, as instanced by some of the derivative stems in g which
imply an idea of going or roaming about.

\textsuperscript{v}) A formative which would appear to be a representative of
this suffix is used in some languages as a conjugational ter-
minative, cf. Grundzüge einer vergleichenden Grammatik der
Bantusprachen, p. 87.

\textsuperscript{vi}) There are only about 70 derivative stems in Sothe ending
in this suffix.
quoted in 1) above:

\[ \text{N. krathna (till, plough), cf. S. khathe T. kratha} \]
\[ \text{N. krathna (break in new ground);} \]
\[ \text{N. pane (beat or tap lightly with the open hand),} \]
\[ \text{cf. N. pana (touch, knock with the hand);} \]
\[ \text{S. nana T. gaba N. naba (chase about, harass,} \]
\[ \text{i.e. keep on striving at), cf. S. naba N. naba (be} \]
\[ \text{greedy, envious, strive for);} \]
\[ \text{N. nana (go about from place to place), cf. N.} \]
\[ \text{nana (move slowly, carefully);} \]
\[ \text{S. pina (hide, keep secrets, tell things in an} \]
\[ \text{indirect way), cf. N. pina (cover);} \]
\[ \text{T. krathna (gather a number of different things} \]
\[ \text{together at the same time), cf. T. gokha (gather} \]
\[ \text{pumpkins etc.).} \]
\[ \text{N. pinya (allay, appease, soothe), cf. N. pina} \]
\[ \text{(cover);} \]
\[ \text{N. tiva (get accustomed to, i.e. keep on paying} \]
\[ \text{attention to), cf. N. tiva (bear);} \]

(b) The suffix has sometimes lost its durative
\[ \text{force, e.g. T. natala (soften as food), cf. T. nala} \]
\[ \text{(be wet as in e.g. ground after rain); T. ferah} \]
\[ \text{(sit cross-legged, the} \]
\[ \text{idea here is perhaps that of keeping the legs bent), cf. T. ferah} \]
\[ \text{N. ferah (bend, bend the leg).} \]

(a) In a few cases the semantic relations between
\[ \text{the durative stem and the probable corresponding simple stem} \]
\[ \text{are vague, e.g. T. baja (place down, put down), cf. S. ba T. ba} \]
\[ \text{N. ba (be').} \]

(d) Some durative stems are transitive while
\[ \text{others are intransitive, e.g. T. karpea (intransitive (shake} \]
\[ \text{about and run over as water while being carried), cf. T. karpea} \]
\[ \text{N. karpea (transitive (push out as grain from a vessel)); N.} \]
\[ \text{nanaa (intransitive (go about from place to place), cf. N. nanaa (intransitive (move slowly, carefully)), N. panea (transitive (beat} \]

116.
lightly with the open hand), cf. *k. pape* intransitive (knock with the hand); *s. pape* transitive (hide, keep secrets etc.); cf. *h. pape* transitive (cover).

(e) As can be seen from (d), some simple stems corresponding to durative stems are transitive, while those corresponding to others are intransitive.

(f) There are durative stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stem1), neither could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible cases of these derivative stems2); a comparison with other derivative stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g.

T. *rheba* move about excitedly and in all directions as a speed), cf. *s. xalela* (dance), *h. xalelala* (wander about);

*xaulela* (do badly, jumble), cf. *t. veletlhla* (speak about what one does not understand);

S. *pape* (stir, roam), cf. *s. papelela* (shake, move into place);

S. *kate* (lounge, roam about), cf. *s. katele* (make room, get away);

T. *bitia* *h. bitia* (patch, close a lid very tightly), cf. *s. bitilela* *h. bitilela* (undo a patch, remove a lid);

T. *garoa* (run or gallop as a wildbeest);

1) In view of the fact that I am quoting as far as possible simple verbal stems corresponding to verbal derivatives, each of the following chapters dealing with verbal derivative suffixes will be provided with a similar section.

ii) Such stems are classed as verbal derivatives on the assumption that they have been derived from verbal roots; if however it can be shown that they have been derived from non-verbal stems, they will have to be classed as verbalized derivatives, and not as verbal derivatives. These remarks will apply to all derivative stems in a primary suffix for which no corresponding simple verbal stem or corresponding non-verbal stem could be indicated, and which are referred to in subsequent chapters.
T. tsubuha N. tsahasa (shake a tree, knock water about from side to side) of S. tsubuha (wash a pot by shaking it in water);

N. babes (chew, said of somebody without teeth e.g. a baby or a very old person) of S. babes (gnaw);

N. kediya (beat);

T. babes N. babes (walk softly an account of tender or sore foot, walk stealthily);

T. tsubuha (way as corn or trees in the wind)

θ) Compound:

The compound suffixes based upon the primary durative suffix will be dealt with below together with the compound suffixes based upon the secondary durative suffix.

These two types of compound suffixes are being dealt with simultaneously, not only because their bases do not differ semantically, but also because there is a fair amount of interchange between their respective forms.

II Secondary (/) Single:

1) Durative S. apa 1) T. apa 1) N. apa 1), e.g. S. bela

T. belaha N. belaha (kill), of S. bela T. blela N. blela (decay, rot); N. yokaya (away to and fro, shake), of S. foke T. foke N. foke (blow, fan, wave to and fro); N. duma (tremble, shake, rumble), S. luna T. duna N. duna (thunder, rumble); N. sana (walk hesitatingly, walk on the side of the foot), of N. papa (grope or feel about like a blind person); S. tata (walk a little like a small child), of S. tata (act in a hurry, hasten); S. tama T. tama N. tama (walk) of N. tama (walk along stopping every now and then).

1) As will be seen later the suffix semivowel often disappears in a compound suffix resulting in the juxtaposition of two vowels, e.g. S. bela T. belaha N. belaha (kill for), of S. belaha T. belaya N. belaha (kill).
I shall now attempt to give an explanation of the difference in the form of the suffix in such semantically identical derivatives as T.\textit{spay}, S.\textit{apāya} and N.\textit{spē} (cook); T.\textit{hēlēnā}, S.\textit{hēlēna} and N.\textit{hēlēnā} (put a pot on the fire). To enable me to arrive at some explanation it has been found necessary to deal at the same time, not only with verbal derivatives in the primary durative suffix S.\textit{ya} T.\textit{ya} N.\textit{ya}, found, e.g. in T.\textit{taya} (put down), cf. S.\textit{tēna} S.\textit{tē} and N.\textit{tē} (put down), but also with such semantically identical simple stems as, e.g. T.\textit{theva} N.\textit{theva}, S.\textit{thēna} S.\textit{thē} and N.\textit{thē} (lay a foundation). The difference in form of the above stems seems to depend upon the following two considerations: (a) as regards both simple and derivative stems, the manner in which U.B.\textit{y} is represented in their final syllables; (b) as regards derivative stems, in addition to the above, also the manner in which there has been an interchange between the suffixes S.\textit{ya} T.\textit{ya} N.\textit{ya} or S.\textit{āśa} T.\textit{āsya} N.\textit{āsya} on the one hand and S.\textit{aśa} T.\textit{aśya} N.\textit{aśya} on the other hand. These two points will be treated together, and before drawing any final conclusions I shall first quote examples of the kinds of stems referred to above, at the same time analysing such of these examples as allow of analysis\textsuperscript{1}.

1) Some of these stems have different U.B. representatives.

11) \textit{Phon.}, p. 226.

1ii) \textit{N.U.B.W.}, p. 214.

iv) \textit{Phon.}, p. 224.
Dempwolff suggests that the original UB. form has been *vaika*11). As far as the derivative stems here referred to, are concerned it seems fairly certain that two entirely different suffixes have been employed: in S. the stational (causative) *bea* and in T. and N. the durative ye and *a* respectively.

An interchange between these suffixes may also have taken place with some of the following derivative stems: 

\[ \text{T. ye}a \text{ N. ye}a \text{ (name, say, tell), cf. N. re (say); S. pe} \text{ N. de} \text{ (name, say to), cf. S. pe} \text{ T. re N. re (say); T. bi} \text{hlatle}a \text{ = S. bi} \text{hlatle}a \text{ = N. bi} \text{hlatle}a \text{ (put a pot on the fire), cf. N. bi} \text{hlatle}a \text{ (get quite full), especially in view of the reciprocal stem N. bi} \text{hlatle}a \text{ (get on top of each other), cf. also S. bi} \text{hlatle}a \text{ T. bi} \text{hlatle}a \text{ N. bi} \text{hlatle}a \text{ (remove a pot from the fire), and UB. te} \text{le}a \text{ = UB. te} \text{le}a \text{ (put on the fire)111); T. sp} \text{e}a \text{ = S. spo} \text{e}a \text{ = N. spo} \text{e}a \text{ (cook, bake). Bourquin postulates here an UB. simple stem *en* (bring into contact)11v); cf. also S. em (be in distress, think much), and N. em (talk about a subject, touch upon a subject in a conversation).} \]

In S. the *a* and *b* of the final syllable of the stem are sometimes interchangeable, e.g.: S. *ga*na = S. *gaha* = S. *ga*na (give pap to a child), S. *wana* = S. *waha* (be afraid, look out) S. *gaha* = S. *gaha* (reap much), S. *waha* = S. *waha* (give a

1) Phon., p. 239.


111) Phon., p. 235.

little, be quiet), S. bija = S. bike (put reeds in a pot to prevent water from spilling), S. tela = S. taha (intoxicate), cf. T. tare N. tara (= S. taha). S. nyaha = S. nyaha (moisten), cf. T. nyaya (= S. nyaha).

In T. the \( y \) of the final syllable of disyllabic stems is sometimes dropped, especially if the stem-vowel is \( a \), e.g. T. kuya = T. kaa (tie a cow's legs together for milking), T. kjava = T. kaaa (apportion), cf. S. kha N. kaa (pluck fruit); T. kya = T. kaa (copy or catch sight of anything), cf. N. kaa (feel, hear); T. beya = T. boya (return) cf. S. beza N. beza N. bya (return) and UC. yaya (return)\(^1\).

The following general conclusions may be made from the above examples and analysis:

1) Where there is an interchange between the durative and stational (causative) suffixes S. prefers the latter and T. and N. the former (T. usually \( \text{\textit{a}} \) or \( \text{\textit{u}} \) and N. \( \text{\textit{a}} \)). This division is however not always strictly adhered to. Of interest here are the following stems, probably of foreign origin: S. talaka T. tiyara T. tiyaa (report, accuse), cf. Afrikans kla (report, complain).

2) In the case of a simple stem the T. forms consist of a consonant \( \text{\textit{a}} \) \( \text{\textit{u}} \), while the forms in the other two languages consist of a consonant + either \( \text{\textit{a}} \) (only in N.), or \( \text{\textit{e}} \) (in S. and N.), or S. \( \text{\textit{e}} \) or S. \( \text{\textit{a}} \) or \( \text{\textit{a}} \) (only in N.).

3) In S. the representative of UB.k tends to disappear\(^1\), a process of attrition is therefore met with in S., but in most cases both the full as well as the abbreviated forms are still in existence.

---

1) Phon., p. 232.

ii) Cf. in this connection Tucker The comparative phonetics of the Suto-Chuana group of Bantu languages, p. 44.
4) In S. as in the other two languages the representative of UB. as a rule disappears\(^1\), leaving two vowels in juxtaposition. But in this language there seems to be also another process at work, viz. the development of UB. into S. do, in addition to S. do S. do (say a foundation) quoted above, of S. facebook S. Facebook (stir), and T. facebook N. Facebook (stir), as well as UB. kiloya (stir)\(^11\). There is therefore in S. an interchange between the representatives of UB. and UB. (intercal.)

\(\chi\). Of also takə and takə nyaka and nyaka\(^11\) quoted above.

\(\text{ii}(a)\) The secondary durative S. ane T. ava N. awe conveys exactly the same force as the primary durative\(^4\) e.g. N. fohya (shake to and fro), of S. fofo T. foko N. foka (blow, sprinkle); N. duwya (tremble, shake), of S. lum T. duwa N. duwa (thunder, rumble, reverberate); N. papa (walk on the side of the foot like one having a thorn in the foot), cf. N. papa (grope about e.g. a blind person); S. tawamana T. tawamaya N. tawamaya (walk, march), cf. N. tawana (walk along stopping in between).

\(\text{b)}\) The suffix S. ane T. ava N. awe has sometimes lost its durative force, e.g. S. bolona T. belaya N. belaya (kill), cf. S. bela T. bala N. bala (rot); T. mawa (cook bake), cf. N. awe (touch upon a subject in a conversation).

\(\text{1) In a few cases it becomes} S. \text{ T. Y N. Y of} \text{ Phon., p. 59, e.g.} S. bela T. bala N. bala (return) and mawa (return).

\(\text{ii) Phon., p. 283.}\)

\(\text{iii) In the perfect conjugational form the S. T. Y N. Y of the final syllable, whether it belongs to the durative suffix or to the simple stem, always disappears, e.g. S. belala T. belalala N. belalala (has killed), cf. S. bela T. belaya N. belaya (kill); S. kallya (has chased), cf. S. kallya (shop); N. kallya (has chased or beaten in two), cf. N. kallya (shop or beat in two); T. tawala (has failed to reach), cf. T. tawala (fail to reach); and in T. the vowel preceding \(\text{y}, \) if it is \(\text{i} \), is sometimes changed into \(\text{e} \). e.g. bela (has put down), cf. baya (put down); noole (has beckoned), cf. noola (beckon); noole (has dug), cf. noole (dig); this change is undoubtedly due to the influence of the \(\text{i} \) of \(\text{ilg}.\)

\(\text{iv) The secondary durative suffix is a very rare suffix, these} \text{ being only about 15 secondary durative stems.}\)
The semantic relation between the secondary durative stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is sometimes vague, e.g. S.hotla T.hotlaya N.holaya (kill), cf. S.hola T.hola N.hola (rot).

Some durative stems are transitive; others are intransitive, e.g. S.hola T.holaya N.holaya transitive cf. S.hala T.hola N.hola intransitive, and S.taemia T.taemaya N.taemaya intransitive, cf. N.taema intransitive.

There are durative stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stem; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stems shows, however, in some cases a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. T.hladlaya (put a pot on the fire, put on or above), cf. S.hlatlola T. thlatlola N.hlatlole (remove a pot from the fire); T. hwalaya (work carelessly or badly).

β) Compound

1. Primary or secondary durative in basic

1) In this chapter, as well as in subsequent chapters, it will be necessary to employ in the § on the compound suffixes terms not yet defined. This is inevitable, and to avoid unnecessary repetition of definitions, reference should be made, in the case of each new term, to the chapter dealing specially with the suffix denoted by the new term.

11) Cf. § I β) above.
124.

as 1) Durative-applicative S.bhile T.nila H. 

nile < S.bhile T.nila H.nila, S.nila T.nila H. 

nile; e.g. S.bhile T.bhile H.bolela (kill for), cf. S. 

bolela T.bolela H.bolela (kill); H.bolela (perceive in 

fear), no corresponding durative stem, cf. S.bolela T.bolela 

H.bolela (wash, bathe); H.bolela (surge, ripple over), cf. 

T.bolela (shake about and run over as water while being 

carried); S.bolela (put stones against the door so as to 

shut it tightly), no corresponding durative stem, cf. S.bolela 

T.bolela H.bolela (tread, press with the foot), e.g. S.bolela 

T.bolela H.bolela (become accustomed to get used), cf. H. 

bolela (acquire a habit) and N.bolela (hear).

1) The primary durative mostly contains no consonant or semi-

vowel, and where it does contain a semi-vowel, viz. S. T. H. 

this semi-vowel mostly disappears in compound suffixes; the same 

happens with S. T. H. of the secondary durative S. T. H. 

H. H. The result is that we get in such compounds two vowels 

in juxtaposition, the first of which bears a connecting vowel 

employed with the durative. In this way various verbs may 

precede the connecting vowel of the second component part of 

the compound suffix, depending upon the connecting vowel 

employed with the durative; this is the case, e.g. in S.bhilela 

H.bolela (kill for), cf. S.bolela T.bolela H.bolela (kill); 

H.bolela (shake about, e.g. of water carried in a vessel), 

cf. T.bolela (shake about and run over as water being 

carried in a vessel); S.bolela T.bolela H.bolela (put on 

a patch, cover over), cf. T.bolela H.bolela (patch). In all 

three cases Bila is in a second position. In the case of 

bolela the ə is a standardized connecting vowel and forms an 

integral part of the suffix, one can therefore talk of a suf-

fix əbila, but in the other two cases the vowels preceding 

bila, being unstandardized connecting vowels, do not form in-

tegral parts of the suffix. There are therefore no such suf-

fixes as əbila or əbila, and to use merely əbila would be mislead-

ing as there is actually a single suffix əbila, viz. the applica-

tive. In the case of S.bolela H.bolela əbila is definitely a 

resumpt of əbila (əbila) and this may also be the case with the 

other examples quoted above. For these reasons it was 

decided to use the sign ə before such suffixes, indicating that these 

suffixes may be preceded by various vowels and that the suf-

fix-semivowel has disappeared, i.e. of course only in such 

cases where a semi-vowel has existed. So e.g. the suffix of 

bolela is indicated by əbila.

11) In T. retrogressive assimilation sometimes takes place if 

the vowel preceding əbila is ə, may be the stem-vowel as e.g. 

the first ə in here (place), so hər > əbila > habila (place for); 

or the standardized connecting vowel of the suf-

fix are, e.g. the second ə in water (book), so əwəy > əbila > 

appila (look for); or, in this connection words 

(water) from Washed (Phon. p. 72).
ii) a) The durative-applicative adds the applicative idea to the idea expressed by the durative stem, e.g. S. *fokəla* N. *fokaβla* (saddle, sway about), cf. N. *fokaβe* (sway about), and S. *fokə* T. *fokə* N. *foke* (blow, sprinkle); S. *lumoβla* N. *lumelə* (resound, murmur, in N. also: tremble for fear), cf. N. *duweya* (tremble, shake), and S. *lumə* T. *duwe* N. *duwe* (thunder, reverberate); N. *blanpleβla* (cf. above); S. *kadile* (swing), cf. T. *kaβa* N. *kaβa* (hover, float in the air); S. *kaβela* (cf. above).

(b) With durative-applicative stems like S. *bolaβla* T. *balaβla* N. *bolaβla* (cf. above), S. *tamaβla* T. *tamaβla* (walk towards), cf. S. *tamaβə* T. *tamaβa* (walk), as well as with some of the derivative stems quoted above, the applicative force of S. *βle* T. *βla* N. *βla* is still clearly seen. With others again, this force is hardly noticeable, e.g. N. *blanpleβla* (cf. above); S. *bolaβla* T. *balaβla* N. *bolaβla* (be anxious, dissatisfied), cf. S. *bala* T. *bala* N. *bala* (boil); T. *tetelə* (contuse, bruise), cf. S. *tetə* N. *tetə* (beat with the fist, knock) (more examples will be quoted in (c) below). These derivatives sometimes contain an intensive force which is probably due to the presence of the durative suffix. This possibility is supported by the fact that the compound suffixes S. *sola* T. * sola* N. * sola* and S. *aαa* T. *aαa* N. *aαa*, both of which contain the durative suffix, have also an intensive force (cf. below); a force, which, as will be seen later, is only partly conveyed by S. * βla* T. * βla* N. * βla* and

---

1) Where in the following cases no durative stems are indicated no such stem could be found.

ii) From the roots forming the bases of these derivative stems may of course be formed applicative stems, e.g. S. *fokəla* N. *fokeβla* (blow towards, for, sprinkle on), S. *lumoβla* T. *lumelə* N. *duweβla* (consent, agree), S. *blanpleβla* (wash for), S. *kaβela* T. *kaβela* N. *kaβela* (fill up for, press against).

iii) It has been noticed in other Bantu languages that when the counterpart of S. *βle* T. *βla* N. *βla* is preceded by a no extensive force is conveyed (in Bembo the preceding vowel need not necessarily be a), e.g. Kweseeke *A Grammar of Central Shona*, p. 197, Smith *Handbook of the Luba Language*, pp. 191-199, Helen Lindek *Kadish*, p. 46, Boke *Textbook of Luba Grammar* (new edn.), p. 204.
S.ise T.ise N.ise (in the latter case only to a very small extent), the other component parts of S.ola T.ola N.ola and S.era T.era N.era respectively. It should furthermore be noted that the main function of S.eka T.eka N.eka, the strengthened form of the secondary durative suffix, is to denote intensive and violent action.

(c) For some durative-applicative stems no corresponding simple stems could be indicated, although corresponding durative stems may be extant, while for others again neither of these corresponding stems could be ascertained: N.kwakwala (skid along on the knees, stagger along), cf. N. kwakwara (skid on the knees); N.bakaka (be doing something silly, get mentally deranged); N.ngamkala (go about very carefully); S.bakaka (walk stupidly, thoughtlessly, quickly); S.kirila (bloom, rear), cf. S.kirila (sound, thunder); T.kwakwala (fall suddenly as into an unforeseen hole).

We) 1) Durative-actual (destructive): S. sola T.sola N.sola ≠ S.aka T.aka N.aka; S.sola T.sola N.sola (strike, hit very hard), cf. S.baka T.baka N.baka (strike, chop); S.ngabala T.ngabala (knock one about as with a knobkerrie), cf. S. ngaba N.ngaba (strike on the head); S.beola T.beola N.beola (shave, shear, i.e. remove the beard etc.), cf. S.bea T.bea N.bea (place) and S.be T.be N.be (be); S.kaola T.kaola N. kaola (divide, separate, cut), cf. T.kaoya = T.kea (apportion), N.kaoya (mark by cutting the ear), and S.kea T.kea

1) cf. (b) II below.

ii) This is a very rare suffix, only about a dozen durative-actual (destructive) stems could be indicated.
i) The durative-actional (destructive) adds the actional (destructive) idea to the idea expressed by the durative stem, e.g. S.bolea T.bolea N.bolea (cf. above); in the majority of cases however it conveys in addition to the above also an intensive force\(^1\). It is possible that the durative suffix may have here contributed to the intensive force (cf. § 11)(ii)(b) above), thus strengthening the intensive force sometimes conveyed by the actional (destructive) suffix \(\text{bul} \text{ba}\). Mostly, in these cases, neither a corresponding simple stem nor a corresponding durative stem could be indicated\(^{iii}\), e.g. S.bataola N.bataola\(^{iv}\) (cf. above), S.blanesa N.blanesa (insult very much, curse') of N.blasa (deny, disown, give up), S.balesa (tear across an open space e.g. a train, wander extensively), N.galesa (cry —used when criticising somebody), S.palesa (raise the cry of alarm), S.palabola (strike on the head).

(co) 1) Durative-stational (capable)\(^{v}\): T.alwa N.alwa \(\sim\) T.balwa N.balwa, S.alwa T.alwa N.alwa, e.g. N. bolawa (get killed), cf. S.bolasa T.bolasa N.bolasa (kill);

\(^1\) It has also been noticed in other Bantu languages that when the counterpart of S.olea T.olea N.olea is preceded by a an intensive force is conveyed, e.g. Edwin Lenje handbook, p. 48, Smith Handbook of the Ila language, p. 132, Konnemann A Grammar of Central Karanga, p. 132, Schoeffler Bemba grammar, p. 80, Doke Textbook of Limga grammar (new edn.), p. 204, Brinker Lehrbuch der Osikunguwa, part I, p. 57, Tunjes Lehrbuch der Ovambo-Sprache, p. 110.

\(^{ii}\) Refer in this connection to the suffixes gula and angula in Ndonga, both of which have an intensive force, gula probably and angula surely shows the presence of the durative suffix. For \(\text{us.} \text{y} \sim \text{Ndonga} \text{y} \text{of.} \text{alwa} \sim \text{palwa} \sim \text{turn back} \) (cf. Brinker Lehrbuch der Osikunguwa, part B, p. 1), and \(\text{us.} \text{y} \text{ela} \sim \text{turn} \) cf. N.\text{w.}\text{w.}, p. 20.

\(^{iii}\) In e.g. Ovambo a durative stem corresponding to the durative actional (destructive) stem seems also to be non-extant, cf. Tunjes Lehrbuch der Ovambo-Sprache, p. 120.

\(^{iv}\) Cf. S.batoala T.batoala N.batoala (forge by hammering, sharpen a grindstone).

\(^{v}\) Cf. N.blanesa (insult).

\(^{vi}\) This is a very rare suffix in Sotho only about 20 durative-stational (capable) stems could be indicated.
128

T. spełga: N. spełxa (become cooked), cf. T. speva N. spēva (cook),
mit T. spełga N. spełxa (cook); N. kadišna (dangle, toss about of
something hanging down), cf. T. kala N. kala (hover over something
as a bird of prey) no corresponding durative stem; S. fadžha
T. budža (be agitated, be stirred up), cf. S. redua T. kudās
(stir); T. krēga (be carved or cut up), cf. T. kuva (apparition)
N. krava (mark by cutting the ear), and S. kwa N. kwa (pluck, tear of

11) The durative-stational (capable) adds
the stational (capable) idea to the idea expressed by the
durative stem. In most cases no corresponding simple stem
could be indicated. The following examples are given in addi-
tion to those quoted in (1) above: T. helēga (be impudent,
be of a ready mind), T. tōweša (be proud, be haughty) T.
khiša (be wakeful, be haunted by the memory of evil deeds)
cf. T. khidin (make wakeful, haunt).

(66)((4)) 11) durative-performative S. aina T. aina
N. ania < S. *anja T. *avina N. *avina, S. aina T. *ain T. an,
e.g. S. bolisa T. bolise N. bolisa (cause to kill), cf. S. bolisa
T. bolasa N. bolasa (kill); T. speśa >,
T. *speśa > T. *avina cf. T. speva (cook); T. budusa N. buduša
(cause to ripen) < T. *budusa N. *buduša, cf. S. buduša T.
budša N. budša (ripen) and UB. *yula (ripen)iv).

11)(a) The durative-performative adds
the performative idea to the idea expressed by the durative

1) In T. retrogressive assimilation sometimes takes place if
a precedes āya, cf. also the durative-applicative.

11) In some Bantu languages where the counterpart of S. kha
T. āga N. āxa is sometimes found immediately preceded by a, the
compound suffix so obtained conveys an intensive force, cf.
Smith Handbook of the Ilu Language, p. 132; Ndau Language

111) In T. retrogressive assimilation sometimes takes place
with this compound suffix.

stem e.g. S.neteine (help a child to walk, lead gently), cf. S.neteine (walk a little, like a child) and S.nete (act in a hurry); S.teanine T.teanne N.teane (cause to go), cf. S.teanea T.teanaya N.teanaya (walk); and N.teanne (walk along stopping every now and then); S.beine T.beina N.beina (cause to place), cf. S.bein4 T.bear N.bear (place down) and S.be T.be N.be (be); T.kenpeine (shake, spill), cf. T.knape (shake about and run over as water while being carried), and T.knape N.knape (push out as grain from a vessel).

(b) For some durative-performative stems no corresponding simple or corresponding durative stems could be indicated, e.g. T.kenpea (turn over the earth, etc., in seeking); S.kanpea (in: kanpea nai = move the eye in order to avoid those of others), T.kampea (use a weak thing carefully or gently).

((8)) 1 Durative (extensive)-performative:
S.qaaaa T.qaaa N.qaaa < S.qaa T.aaa N.aaa < S.taane

1) S.2 T.2 N.2 > S.3 T.3 N.3 under the influence of the i of S.ian T.ian N.ian; cf. Chapter 10.

11) A term applied to a special form of the durative-performative, which, as will be indicated below, also conveys a special force.

111) There are also other suffixes of the same form, viz. (a) the contactive-performative S.aaa T.aaa N.aaa which is a contraction of the normal contactive-performative S.aaa T.aaa N.aaa and found in S.aaa T.aaa N.aaa (dress, give clothes to); cf. S.aaa T.aaa N.aaa (put on, wear) (cf. Phan., p. 78 and chapter 15); (b) the performative S.aaa T.aaa N.aaa, e.g. in S.beena T.beena N.beena (cause to carry, load a pack animal); cf. S.beena T.beena N.beena (take on the back).

The initial vowel of the performative suffix S.iaaa T.iaaa N.iaaa combines with the terminative 1 of some monosyllabic verbal stems (cf. Chapter 10 §4a II (12) (b) 3 a), e.g. 7c: S.iaaa T.iaaa (cause to eat); cf. S.iaa T.iaa N.iaa (eat). Resulting in what would appear to be, but actually is not, a suffix S.aaa T.aaa N.aaa.
130

1. Devis 2. Examplei 3) : N. hantaga (hear well), cf. T. kwe (earp. catch sight of anything hidden) and N. kwa (hear); N. hange T. hange N. hentaga (light, make clear, enlighten), cf. S. hinga T. hinga N. hinga (see); N. hlabia (aim, bring into line), cf. S. hla T. hla N. hla (stab); N. labia (look at very carefully), cf. S. laba T. laba N. laba (look); N. lemba (plough thoroughly), cf. S. lema T. lema N. lema (plough); T. tlemba (fix rafters etc. in a house), cf. S. lemba T. lemba N. lemba (plant, stick in); N. releba (break well, just as was required), cf. S. rebea T. rebea N. rebea (break); N. lembia (see above) with S. lemba T. lemba N. lemba (of above).

The suffix S. ona T. ona N. ona is no longer a living suffix in Sotho: its place has probably been taken by S. isi T. isi N. isia which is still a living suffix, compare S. hentaga N. hentaga (see well) with S. hentaga T. hentaga N. hentaga (of above).

2. Primary or secondary durative in a non-basic position as far as I could ascertain the primary durative occurs in this

1) Cf. Phem, p. 76.

ii) Only in one case a corresponding durative stem could be indicated.

iii) Cf. N. kwa (cause to hear).

iv) Cf. S. piena T. piena N. piena (many) < S. piena T. piena N. piena. S. i T. i N. i under the influence of the o of S. ona T. ona N. ona. The i of S. isi T. isi N. isi has a similar influence on preceding b (cf. Chapter 18.).

v) Cf. S. lemba T. lemba N. lemba (cause to look at).

vi) S. lemba T. lemba (cause to plough, help to plough).

vii) T. tlemba (cause to hunt).

one case, viz.

position only in / S.nyæ T.øvæ (wet a thing), cf. S.næ N.
nye (go to the stool, idea: make wet) and S.øa T.øa N.øa (rain).

The secondary durative occurs in this position only as part
of the durative (extensive)-performative S.øa T.øa N.øa, e.g.
in:

the applicative-durative (extensive)-performative ølæ as
in N.øløba (look carefully at), cf. S.øløba T.øløba N.
øløba (look after, watch) and S.øba T.øba N.øba (look
towards);

the durative (extensive)-performative-durative (extensive)-
performative N.øløba only found in N.øløba (understand well)
of. N.øba (understand, listen carefully) and N.øa (hear);

the applicative-durative (extensive)-performative-
stational (capable) T.øløba N.øløba as in T.øløbaøa N.
øløbaøa (be treatable, become untreated) of. N.øløbaøa
(entreat urgently), S.øløba T.øløba N.øløba (entreat) and
N.øba (invite, call up).

B) Strengthened :

I Primary : 1.e.) Single :

1) Durative (intensive) S.øka T.øka N.øka, 3 ke T.
ke N.øka). Semicastically these two suffixes are identical. The
suffix øka is very rare; the following are the only derivative
stems I could find ending in this suffix : T.ødæka (dig in
very hard ground), no corresponding simple stem; S.øtæka (walk
heavily) of. S.øta T.øta N.øta (tread, trample), N.øtæka
(bay the drum), of. S.ølæ (strike the ground with the foot, as
a sign of joy), N.øtæka (stagger along), no corresponding simpl
stem; S.øææka N.øææka (walk fearlessly, walk with legs wide
apart), no corresponding simple stem; N.øææka (be low, take
matters easily), no corresponding simple stem; N.øæææka (think,
suppose), of. S.øææøa N.øææøa (think, suppose). The primary

1) There are about 180 durative (intensive) stems in øa.
durative (intensive) has been formed from the primary durative through the influence of a nasal\(^1\), and I think the suffix *aka* can be regarded as an intermediate stage between the primary durative on the one hand and the primary durative (intensive) *ke* on the other hand, e.g. *S.katanka* (walk heavily) and *S.katake* *T.katake N.katake* (trample, crush); *N.tidinaka* (beat the drum) and *N.tidiike* (beat the drum); *N.mamaka* (be slow, take matters easily) and *N.mamaka* (be slow, take matters easily), *S.mamaka* (pet a child, take great care of). A few more examples of stems in *ke*: *S.kaeka* (strike much) < *S.kale* of. *S.kae\(^{11}\)* (strike, chop); *T.taehaeks* (dodge as an animal refusing to be caught) < *T.taehaeka* < *T.taehaeka* of. *T.tahaya\(^{11}\)* (turn aside).

\(^{11}\) (a) The durative (intensive) *S.aka T.aeka N.aka*, *S.ka T.ca N.ca* indicates that an action is done continually and intensively, e.g. *S.paleka* (cut furrows in the ground), of. *S.pala T.pala N.pale* (make a first cut in the skin, rip open); *S.eheheka* (drive a herd of cattle violently without giving them time to graze), of. *S.eheka* (drive many things); *T.tahayaka* (go very quickly), of. *S.haka* (chase away); *S.katake N.katika* (trample much, try to cover of a bull), of. *S.kata T.kata N.kata* (trample); *T.patake N.patika* (oppress, compel to do, surround, press together on all sides), of. *S.pata* (hide) and *N.pata* (oppress, press together); *T.tiika* (keep back the truth, prevaricate), of. *T.tile N.tile* (avoid, refuse); *N.moseka* (suck, suck in the cheeks when eating something sweet), of. *S.mose T.mose N.mose* (suck, suck up); *N.nuamaka* (hold a lamentation for the dead) of. *S.nuapa N.nuapa* (dwindle, be sad); *N.taba* (Break a lot of things said e.g. of a servant continually breaking crockery), of. *S.ta B. taba N.ta* (break); *T.taheka* (come together of a number of things, become one lot), of. *S.tacha* (take much of something);

\(^{11}\) (a) The durative (intensive) *S.aka T.aeka N.aka*, *S.ka T.ca N.ca* indicates that an action is done continually and intensively, e.g. *S.paleka* (cut furrows in the ground), of. *S.pala T.pala N.pale* (make a first cut in the skin, rip open); *S.eheheka* (drive a herd of cattle violently without giving them time to graze), of. *S.eheka* (drive many things); *T.tahayaka* (go very quickly), of. *S.haka* (chase away); *S.katake N.katika* (trample much, try to cover of a bull), of. *S.kata T.kata N.kata* (trample); *T.patake N.patika* (oppress, compel to do, surround, press together on all sides), of. *S.pata* (hide) and *N.pata* (oppress, press together); *T.tiika* (keep back the truth, prevaricate), of. *T.tile N.tile* (avoid, refuse); *N.moseka* (suck, suck in the cheeks when eating something sweet), of. *S.mose T.mose N.mose* (suck, suck up); *N.nuamaka* (hold a lamentation for the dead) of. *S.nuapa N.nuapa* (dwindle, be sad); *N.taba* (Break a lot of things said e.g. of a servant continually breaking crockery), of. *S.ta B. taba N.ta* (break); *T.taheka* (come together of a number of things, become one lot), of. *S.tacha* (take much of something);

1) Cf. PhoN., p. 79.

\(^{11}\) The palatal semivowel of the root is changed into \(\_\) in the derivative stem.

\(^{11}\) The stem-vowel \(\_\) \(\_\) \(\_\) as a result of retrogressive assimilation.
S. thōfa (pick up), cf. K. thōfe (take out with two fingers); T. phuthuka (collect thoroughly), cf. S. phutha T. phutha K. phutha (gather, collect); N. tuduka (crush in a mortar), cf. S. tula N. tula (crack a nut etc., knock against the ground); T. krabuka (stab many times, make many wounds by stabbing), cf. T. kraba (pierce as a branch); T. nābuka (kill off large numbers of game, finish off food at a feast), cf. S. nāba K. nāba (be greedy).

(b) The suffix ka has sometimes lost its durative (intensive) force, e.g. M. ānaka (be slow), cf. M. ōnga (work slowly, bend); S. mēnaka (twist, roll), cf. S. mēne T. mēne N. mēne (twist, roll up).

(c) In other cases again the semantic relation between the durative (intensive) stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague; e.g. S. khōthuka (do something nicely, speak well, remove weeds), cf. S. kōthe T. kōthe N. kōthe (choose, pick out); T. teroka (be of no use or profit), cf. T. fera M. fore (sheet); S. neleka T. releka N. relēka (make round), cf. M. rela (bind).

(d) Some simple stems corresponding to durative (intensive) stems are transitive; others again are intransitive, e.g.¹ M. nnepeka (enpe intransitive); S. rēleka (rēle transitive) T. tilharika (hilare intransitive); M. rēhe (rēhe transitive).

(e) Some durative (intensive) stems are transitive others intransitive, e.g.¹ M. lēnēle intransitive, (simple stem transitive), T. tilharika intransitive (simple stem transitive), M. nnepeka intransitive (simple stem intransitive), T. tilika intransitive (simple stem transitive), S. relēka transitive (simple stem transitive), T. nēbuka transitive (simple stem intransitive).

¹) For the meaning etc. of examples quoted here cf. (a) above.
Most durative (intensive) stems are however transitive.

(f) There are durative (intensive) stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems, nor could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these derivatives; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stems or corresponding non-verbal stems, shows, however, in some cases a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem e.g.,

\[\text{T.telaka (cf. telaka pha - speak so as to conceal one's meaning), cf. T.telapa (chest);}\]

\[\text{T.kolika (examine carefully, search into intently), cf. T.kolika (seek carefully);}\]

\[\text{N.tondula (scatter much), cf. S.tsulubanya (agitate violently);}\]

\[\text{N.pānda (become entirely naked), cf. N.pāna-pāna (= pānkha);}\]

\[\text{S.tela T.ṭela (be shaky);}\]

\[\text{N.xvidika (swallow without showing);}\]

\[\text{S.xnleka (walk in great numbers in a line);}\]

\[\text{T.humuke (pull from side to side as a tight pole);}\]

(g) There are not many durative (intensive) stems for which corresponding durative stems could be indicated, but the following examples are instructive: N.fonye (make rebellious, mutinous, idea; mix up), cf. T.fore (sit cross-legged) and T.fore N.fore (bend, fold up); S.tete (beat repeatedly), cf. S.tete (beat without effect) and S.tete N.tete (strike, hit); N.xvelleka (bungle), cf. N.xvella (bungle) no corresponding simple stem; S.pitik T.pitika N.pitika (roll on the ground, writhe with pain, turn a thing over), and T.pitika (move continuously), no corresponding simple stem; S.kölaka N.kölaka (march one behind the other in a file), and N.kölaka (march one behind the other) no corresponding simple stem; N.tnubula (haul, drag about) tease, worry), and T.tnubua (shake a tree, knock water about) no corresponding simple stem; S.phaleka
T. pholeka (puzzle, say something people do not understand), and T. pho-leen (have an impediment in speech as if the tongue was too large for the mouth) no corresponding simple stem.

(ii) Both Neinboer and Endemann give a suffix oka for Setho, and Endemann maintains that it conveys a meaning opposite to that expressed by the simple stem; he quotes the following three examples in support of his statement:

kyobekana (come together) and krobokele (gather together) which according to him have been derived from a root krobo, cf. also N. krobo (distribute); and boloka (preserve) which according to him has been derived from a root bōl, cf. also S. bōla T. bōla N. bōla (rot). It seems however more likely that krobokeana and krobokele have been derived from a root S. krobo N. krobo, cf. also S. krobo N. krobo (make up a large flock or call or invite many people), in which case there can be no question of an inverse force being attached to (e)ka. No pertinent objection can be raised against a root bōl, also found in bōla, as the basis of boloka, but (i) it would be dangerous to assume a suffix oka with inverse meaning on the strength of one example only; and (ii) on the analogy of krobo rather than kroeb (cf. krobo and kroba respectively) as the basis of krobokeana and krobokele, one might be justified in regarding the basis of boloka as bol rather than bōl and there may perhaps even have been a corresponding simple stem bōla.

1) Phen. p. 79.
2) Endemann Grammatik des Setho, p. 67.

iii) It may perhaps be mentioned here that kro found as first syllable of kroba, krobokeana and krobokele has a high tone, whereas the first syllable of kroeb has a low tone.

iv) The change of $g$ in a preceding syllable to $g$ if the following suffix contains a standardised connecting vowel $g$, will be observed with the secondary suffixes S. ola T. ola N. ola and S. ohe T. oge N. ohe below.
\( \theta \) Compound:

1. **Durative (intensive) in basic position:**

a) i) Durative (intensive)-applicative-factitive S.kosan T.kosan N.koša, e.g. S.\textit{fomoketsa} (do something roughly).

ii) (a) This suffix adds the factitive idea to / expressed by the durative (intensive)-applicative stem, e.g. N.\textit{fomoketsa} (do something slowly), cf. N.\textit{fomoketsa} (do slowly), N.\textit{fomoketsa} (be slow) and N.\textit{fomoketsa} (work slowly).

(b) It occurs mostly in S. where it has acquired a special force, viz. that of indicating the idea of speaking or pronouncing badly and in a few cases the idea of doing roughly. In T. it also sometimes conveys the former idea, and in T. and N. sometimes the latter. For most of these stems no corresponding simple, or corresponding durative (intensive)-applicative stems could be indicated, where such stems could be indicated they will be quoted together with their corresponding durative (intensive)-applicative-factitive stems:

\begin{itemize}
  \item S.\textit{petroketsa} (speak a language badly)
  \item T.\textit{petroketsa} (talk so that as not to be understood)
  \item S.\textit{lokelo} (sing badly), cf. T.\textit{lokelo} (talk immoderately) and T.\textit{lokelo} (bellow much)
  \item T.\textit{goleketse} (talk much and noisily), cf. T.\textit{golobetsho} (make a shriveling noise)
  \item S.\textit{boketsa} (articulate badly), cf. S.\textit{boketsa} (stammer)
  \item S.\textit{tomoketsa} (speak at length), cf. S.\textit{tomoketsa} (speak at length on a matter, make plans)
  \item S.\textit{tomoketsa} (speak in a low voice), cf. S.\textit{tomoketsa} (make a noise with one's mouth)
  \item S.\textit{tomoketsa} (whisper)
  \item T.\textit{tomoketsa} (swallow without much chewing)
  \item T.\textit{tomoketsa} (swallow with much fat)
  \item T.\textit{tomoketsa} (cause to swear the mouth with fat), cf. S.\textit{tomoketsa} (cause to swear the mouth with fat when eating)
  \item S.\textit{tomoketsa} (force something into a place where it cannot enter), cf. N.\textit{pltse} (press close), N.\textit{releketse} (prepare the way, i.e. remove rubbish, etc.)
\end{itemize}
bb) 1) Durative (intensive)-reciprocal T.kena T.kena, e.g. S.menokana N.makana (get writhed, get wrung), cf. S.mesika (twist, wring) and S.mena T.mena N.mina (roll up, fold).

ii) The durative (intensive)-reciprocal suffix adds the reciprocal idea to the idea expressed by the durative (intensive) stem. In a few cases the reciprocal force is mutual, but in by far the majority of cases it is either associative or reagentive: 1)

(a) Where one has a reciprocal (mutual) force: S.bolokana T.bolokana (keep one another), cf. S.boloka T.boloka N.boloka (preserve), no corresponding simple stem; T.kadikana N.kadikana (annoy one another), cf. T.kadika (annoy) no corresponding simple stem.

(b) Where one has a reciprocal (associative) force: N.kratikana (trample about), cf. N.kratika (trample, tread) and S.kata (catch with a trap that crushes); S.isobokana (gather from all sides), cf. S.isoboka (gather) no corresponding simple stem; S.khobokana T.khobokana N.khobokana (crowd together), cf. N.khoboka (gather corn by picking ears at different places) and S.khoba (call or invite many people) N. khoba (swipe together, call many people together); S.putukana (sit together, e.g. a big crowd of people), cf. T.putuka (being together as different droves of cattle) no corresponding simple stem.

(c) Where one has a reciprocal (reagentive) force: S.bilikana (writhe on the ground from pain), cf. S.bilika (make round), no corresponding simple stem; S.bolokana (become round), cf. S.boloka T.boloka N.boloka (make round) and N.mofa (Mifki).

1) For a definition of these terms cf. Chapter 18 § II.
S. Durative (intensive) in a non-basic position, it is in this position only in the few cases mentioned in Chapter 5 § 10.

II. Secondary (') Single:

1) Multiplicitative S.aka T.aka N.aka. e.g. T.aba
N.aba (distribute with both hands), cf. S.aha T.aha N.aha (divide), S.aka T.aka N.aka (scrape with force), cf. S.fala T.fala N.fala (scrape); N.thuna (stone), cf. S.thuna T.thuna N.thuna (crush, grind fine); T.tibaka (stamp very hard on the ground) cf. S.tihe T.tihe N.tihe (stamp with the foot).

11) (a) The multiplicative S.aka T.aka N.aka denotes an intensive action performed forcefully and in some cases habitually, e.g. S.batake (strike much), cf. S.bates T.bates N. bate (strike); T.dikaka (do much, often, violently), cf. T. dika (do); T.ranaka N.ranaka (shop much, shop off) cf. S.rana T.rana N.rana (shop); S.taaka (work hard, work here and there), cf. S.tahe T.tang N.tang (tire, disgust, tire out); T.catlaka (strike much or often with a stick), cf. T.catla N.catla (strike with a stick); S.atlaka N.atlaka (beat much and indiscriminately), cf. S.atla N.atla (beat); N.biptaka (cover entirely and indiscriminately), cf. S.bipta T.bipta N. bipta (cover); S.bopaka (make indiscriminately), cf. S.bopa T.bopa N.bopa (would, form); S.twaka (talk indiscriminately), cf. S.bua T.bua (talk); S.pabaka (roam about, fly about), cf. N.aba (jump along); S.thabaka (roam about, go from place to

(ii) The dictionaries consulted by me give only about 90 multiplicative stems. In spite of the fact, however, that S.aka T.aka N.aka is still a living suffix, so the actually has many more multiplicative stems.
place), cf. S.tshha T.tshha H.tshha (slip away, desert); H.tōhake (keep on going to the same place), cf. H.tōba (keep on speaking); N.tōhake (rustle continually of the rain), cf. N.tōha (rustle of the rain); N.kopa (beg), cf. S.kopa T.kopa N.kopa (ask).

(b) The suffix tōhake has in a few cases lost its multiplicative function, e.g. H.tōhake (take one thing out of a number of things), cf. T.tōha (bend down the head and body); S.tīmaka (put strong reeds or sticks at the entrance of a lelapa to form a kind of frame) no corresponding simple stem.

(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the multiplicative stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. N.xōmaka (take in the arms), cf. S.xhoma.T.xoma N.xoma (milk); N.xomaka (think hard about something), cf. S.xhoma N.xoma (strangle, throttle); N.tōmaka (cf. (b) above); cf. T.tōma (cf. (b) above).

(d) Most simple stems corresponding to multiplicative stems are transitive, there are however some which are intransitive: H.rāhake (rave, rage, be mad), cf. H.rofe intransitive (be mad); S.rōhaka (fly about, rom about, walk quickly), cf. H.rāka intransitive (jump along); S.tānaka (do many things at a time, work much), cf. S.tōne intransitive (get sad, tired); T.tānaka (wrap round thoroughly, bind completely), cf. S.tōna T.tōna N.tōna transitive (bind into a bundle); S.tīlaka N.tīlaka (beat much and indiscriminately), cf. S.tīle N.tīle transitive (beat).

(e) Most multiplicative stems are transitive, there are however about 30 which are intransitive: H.katāka intransitive (gallop like a horse), cf. H.kate intransitive (gallop); H.rōtāka intransitive (cf. (d) above), cf. H.rofe intransitive (cf. (d) above); T.tīhake intransitive (stamp very hard on the ground), cf. S.tīha T.tīha N.tīha transitive (stamp with the foot or fist); S.batāke transitive (cf. (a) above), cf. kate transitive (cf. (a) above); T.shaka N.shaka (cf. (a) above), cf. shaka transitive (cf. (a) above).
(f) There are multiplicative stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems; comparison with other derivative stems, also having no corresponding simple verbal stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. T. tloabaka (move about very much, be very busy in doing different kinds of work), cf. S. tloba-tloha (change one's residence frequently, enter here and there); H. kataka (swing the legs far apart while walking), cf. H. katalala (stand with legs far apart); S. tlöetlaka (thunder), cf. S. tlöetlataa (crackle, crack, make a noise); H. nvalaka (play, of children, while running from each other), cf. S. nvalaga (walk freely, in peace).

(g) The close relation between the suffixes ka and nka can best be seen by comparing durative (intensive) and multiplicative stems having the same corresponding simple stems, e.g.

N. hlaraka (chase far away) and T. tilharae (go very quickly), cf. N. hlarae (chase away);

S. röbaka N. röbaka (break to pieces, smash) and H. röbaa (break a lot of things as e.g. a servant who keeps on breaking crockery), cf. S. röba T. röba H. röba (break);

T. phuthaka (gather much or thoroughly) and T. phuthaka (collect thoroughly), cf. S. phutha T. phutha H. phutha (gather, collect);

S. kataka T. kataka N. kataka (crash, trample) and S. kala T. kala N. kala (try to cover (of a bull) trend), cf. S. kala T. kala N. kala (tramp, tramp down);

S. hlabaka N. hlabaka (kill right and left, much, indiscriminately, pierce much) and T. tilhabaka (pierce much), cf. S. hlabae T. tilhaba H. hlabae (stab).

Note also the following cases where no corresponding simple stem could be indicated:


3. *tobaka* (wander about, change one's residence frequently) and *N. tobeke* (stir); 3. *tlabaka* (be agitated, walk firmly, roam) *T. tlabaka* (be busy, be active in doing one work after another) and *S. tlabika* (walk about).

It will be seen from these examples that although the derivative stems are semantically related, they are nevertheless not synonymous. It would appear, not only from these examples, but also from those quoted in § I (8) and § II (8) ii) above, that *ka* almost always denotes an action performed continually and intensively, while *ka* denotes an action performed forcefully but not necessarily continually. One concludes that the same formative causing the difference in form between *ka* and *aka* viz. the standardised connecting vowel *u* is also the cause of the semantic difference between these two suffixes. The function of *u* is of a qualifying nature, it does not itself possess a multiplicative intensive force, it merely emphasises or concentrates the force denoted by *ka*. In the following cases derivative stems in *aka* and *ka* are actually synonymous: *S. thôsaka N. thôsaka* = *S. thônôka* (pick up), cf. *N. thôna* (take with two fingers); *N. tôbeka* = *N. tôsôka* (frequent a place), cf. *N. tôsha* (keep on speaking, keep on interrupting).

(b) In *T.* the multiplicative stem is often followed by a formative *ka*¹, e.g. *a sôbaka ka dup* (he used things much).

¹ Cf. Woolley and Brown Swahili Grammar p. 118.
3) Compound:

1. Multiplicative in basic position:

   an) i) Multiplicative-applicative *s.aka* T. 
   *aka* N.aka, e.g. *s.hata* T. *hata* N. *hata* (trample on oppress), cf. *T.ata* N. *ata* (trample much) and *s.kata* T. *kata* N. *kata* (tread, tramp).

   ii) The multiplicative-applicative adds the 
applicative idea to the idea expressed by the multiplicative 
stem. It is perhaps remarkable that these multiplicative-
applicative stems given in the dictionaries, have almost exclusively such 
corresponding simple stems as indicate the idea of trampling 
or crushing e.g. *s.kata* T. *kata* N. *kata* (crush 
under the feet, trample on as a crowd) cf. *s.kata* T. *kata* 
N. *kata* (crush, trample very much) and *s.kata* T. *kata* N. *kata* 
(tramp, tramp down); *s.pitaka* T. *pita* (trample under the feet) cf. 
N. *pilaka* (squeeze entirely into a hole) and *s.pitla* T. *pila* 
N. *pila* (squeeze, press); *s.setakla* T. *seta* (trample under the 
feet), cf. *N. seta* (crush very fine), and *s.setla* T. *setla* 
N. *setla* (crush); *s.kanakla* T. *kana* (trample on or in), cf. *T. kana* 
(squeeze an insect between the nails) no corresponding mul-
tiplicative stem; *s.binakla* T. *binaka* (trample under the feet), cf. 
N. *binaka* (squeeze) no corresponding multiplicative 
stem.

   There are however cases where the corresponding simple 
stem do not indicate the idea referred to above, e.g. 
*s.tanakla* (worry much about, make a mess of), cf. *s.tanka* 
(harass, do many things at a time) and *s.tane* (get tired, 
got sad).

   bb) i) Multiplicative-reciprocal *s.aka* T. 
   *aka* N.aka, e.g. *s.rahaka* T. *rahaka* N. *rahaka* (curse one another
much), cf. S. robaka T. rozae N. rozae (curse much) and S. robu T. roza N. roza (curse).

ii) The multiplicative-reciprocal adds the reciprocal idea to the idea expressed by the multiplicative stem. The suffix ana has only with six of the 25 multiplicative-reciprocal stems, a reciprocal (mutual) force, with all the others it has either a reciprocal (associative) or a reciprocal (reagentive) force.

(a) Where ana has a reciprocal (mutual) force: S. robakana N. rozaakana (cf. (1) above); S. khlabakana (wound one another much), cf. S. khlabaka N. khlabaka (kill right and left) and S. khlab T. tlababa N. tlabba (stab); T. thulakana (collide with one another, knock much against one another), cf. S. thulaka (strike much) and S. thula T. thula (knock, strike).

(b) Where ana has a reciprocal (associative) force: T. lagakana (be knit or woven together like two hearts), cf. S. laba T. loppa N. loppa (knit) no corresponding multiplicative stem; S. lubakana (get mixed up), cf. S. lubaka (knead much) and S. luba T. luba N. luba (knead).

(c) Where ana has a reciprocal (reagentive) force: N. kramakana (consider, think something over), cf. N. kramaka (think hard about something) and S. khama N. kampa (strangle); N. fapakana (writhe, bend to and fro), cf. T. fapaka (wrap round thoroughly, bind completely) and S. fapa T. fapa N. fapa (wind round).
1) Multiplicative-reciprocal-factive 8.

akanye T. akanye N. akanye e. g. S. thubakanye T. thubakanye
(break up completely, smash completely), of. N. thubakanye
(smash one another's heads), N. thume (smash) and S. thube
T. thube N. thube (break).

ii) (a) The multiplicative-reciprocal-factive adds the factitive idea to the idea expressed by the multiplicative-reciprocal stem, e. g. T. logakanye
(be knit or be woven together like two hearts), of. T. logakane
(be knit or be woven together like two hearts, of. bb)
ii) (b) above); S. lubakanye (mix many things, set people against one another), of. S. lubakane (get mixed up of.
bb) ii) (b) above); S. mapakanye (embroid, mix up), of. S.
apakane (be very much mixed), and S. bape T. bape N. bape
(vind round); T. gasekanye (drive away with impatience)
N. gasekanye (beat away with the open hand) of. T. gasekane
(get splashed about), N. gaseke (spread far away) and S.
base T. base N. base (spread).

(b) In some cases the idea conveyed by the suffix would appear to be merely of a forceful nature — more forceful than the idea conveyed by the suffix sk1), e. g. T. gasekanye (kick out in all directions),
of. N. gaseke (kick much) and S. raba T. raba N. raba (kick),
S. rabakanye (smash up), of. S. rabeke N. rabeke (break to pieces) and S. rabe T. rabe N. rabe (break); S. thumakanye
(throw thoroughly), of. N. thumeke (stone) and S. thume T.
thume N. thume (grind fine and in N. also: throw stones at).

1) As will be seen in Chapter 14 § II (b) 1. (a), the suffix
S. ama T. ama N. ama sometimes conveys an intensive force;
therefore: the first component part of akanye always has an
intensive force while the second component part may have this
force.
In some such cases no corresponding multiplicative stem could be indicated, e.g. S.tabakanya (throw down violently) cf. N.taha (smash); S.nilakanya (trample to pieces) N.nilakanya (crush to dust), cf. S.nila T. nila N.nila (grind) S.thukanya (smash) cf. S.thua (break).

2. Multiplicative in a non-basic position: it does not seem to be used very often in this position; it is much less than some of the other secondary suffixes, e.g. S.aka and S.naka. The undermentioned are a few examples of S.aka in a non-basic position:

aa) Applicative-multiplicative S.aka T.aka N.aka as in: T.aka  N.aka

bb) Actional (destructive)-multiplicative S.aka T.aka N.aka as in: T.aka  N.aka

The contribution of S.aka T.aka N.aka to the force of these compound suffixes is that it adds the multiplicative idea to the idea expressed by the suffix without S.aka T.aka N.aka.
CHAPTER 9.

Operative S. bg T. bg N. bg
Operative (intensive) S. bg T. bg N. bg

A) Unstrengthened:
I Primary (\^) Single:

1) Operative S. bg T. bg N. bg, e.g. S. hi\'laba (catch after a hard pursuit, run down), cf. S. hele (remain with, do repeatedly); N. h\'ny\'n\'aba (drag the legs along said of a tired person), cf. T. \'ny\'n\'a (come or go softly); N. \'a\'a\'\'a\'\'a (crack, split), cf. S. \'a\'\'a\'\'a (strike on the head); T. \'a\'a\' \. N. \'a\'a\' (walk as e.g., very tired person), cf. S. \'a\'a\' N. \'a\'a\' (become thin, weak).

ii)(a) The operative is a very rare suffix \textsuperscript{iii}, and it denotes that the subject of the derivative stem is effectively performing the action implied by the simple stem, e.g. N. h\'n\'laba (presume upon, take into one's head, i.e. adopt a point of view with some obstinacy), cf. N. h\'laba (stay, sit down); N. h\'\'\'\'a\'\'aba (stretch out the legs), cf. N. h\'e\'e (walk along carefully); N. h\'\'\'\'a\'\'aba (strike about, jolt), cf. N. h\'e\'e (sprinkle); N. \'a\'\'a\'\'a\' (cf. (i) above); N. \'i\'i\'i\'aba (roll about on the same place like one mortally wounded), cf. N. \'i\'i\'i (be in the last agonics); N. \'a\'\'a\' (pile up, heap up), cf. T. \'a\'\'a\' N. \'a\'\'a\' (garner corn), T. \'i\'k\'a\'\'a\' \. N. \'i\'k\'a\'\'a\'\'a (walk with sore feet, walk carefully, creep on hands and feet), cf. N. \'i\'k\'a (support, lean); T. \'a\'\'a\' N. \'a\'\'a\'\'a\'\'a (guav as a dog a bone, cut a big opening), cf. N. \'a\'\'a\' (cut open a swelling, wound the head).

i) U.B. \textsuperscript{wa} cf. Phae, pp. 45 and 79.

ii) U.B. \textsuperscript{wes} cf. Phae, p. 46.

iii) Only about 30 operative stems could be found.
The difference between the operative and the stational (capable) 
S.\textit{she} T.\textit{hia} N.\textit{hia} is that the former indicates 
that the subject of the derivative stem is performing the 
action implied by the simple stem; while the latter indi-
cates that the subject can either undergo that action, or 
else come into the state expressed by the simple stem\(^1\).

The following are the only examples I could find of opera-
tive and stational (capable) stems derived from the same 
root: \textit{N.\textit{naya}wa} (drag the legs along of a tired person) 
and \textit{N.\textit{naya}wa} (become so tired that one has to sit down), 
of. \textit{T.\textit{naya}wa} (come or go softly); \textit{N.\textit{t\textit{hira}ba} (break, split 
something)} and \textit{N.\textit{t\textit{hira}ba} (get cracked or split)} of \textit{S.\textit{t\textit{hira}ba} 
(strike on the head)}.

(b) Sometimes he has lost its operative force, 
e.g. \textit{N.\textit{thitha}ba (be apart, be aloof)}, of. \textit{N.\textit{thitha}ba (shop off)}; 
\textit{T.\textit{tsalha} (be pleasing to, be satisfactory)}, of. \textit{T.\textit{tsala} (be 
good, have connections with)} and \textit{T.\textit{tsalana} (be friendly with)}.

(c) In some cases the semantic relation between 
the operative stem and the probable corresponding simple 
stem is vague: \textit{S.\textit{ara}ba T.\textit{ara}ba N.\textit{ara}ba (answer, reply, 
idea; become open)}, of. \textit{T.\textit{ara}a N.\textit{ara} (cut open)}; \textit{N.\textit{okho}ba (get 
on another's back, crouch)}, of. \textit{N.\textit{oka} (sear over, look down 
from above)}.

(d) The simple stems corresponding to some 
operative stems are transitive, while those corresponding 
to others are intransitive\(^{11}\), e.g. \textit{N.\textit{bih\textit{alaba}, \textit{bih\textit{a} 
intransitive; \textit{N.\textit{nahaba}, same intransitive; \textit{N.\textit{jah\textit{a, jaha}} 

\(^1\) Cf. Chapter 10 § A) II)((B),\(^{12}\) ii) A)(d).

\(^{11}\) For the meanings of examples here quoted cf. (a) above.
transitive; N. *tlöte, *tlo TRANSITIVE.

(e) Operative stems are mostly transitive.

I could find only 8 transitive operative stems, e.g. 1) N. *tlöte transitive and *tlö TRANSITIVE, N. *roore TRANSITIVE and rore TRANSITIVE, N. *bhalë TRANSITIVE and bhale INTRANSITIVE, N. *nabo TRANSITIVE and nabo INTRANSITIVE, N. *baa TRANSITIVE and ba TRANSITIVE, N. *thetha TRANSITIVE and thë TRANSITIVE.

(f) There are operative stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems, neither could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these derivative stems, e.g. N. *rotabo (be upright), N. *kate (lie in a sitting way), N. *rotabo (be able to walk again after having been ill).

A) Compound:

1. Operative in basic position, as e.g. in the operative-actional (capable) S. bala T. Bala N. bala, e.g. T. *atlabale N. atlabale (become extended, enlarged), cf. S. *atla N. *atla (be prosperous); N. *rotho (become big, raised), cf. N. rot (rise, ascend).

This suffix adds the actional (capable) idea to the idea expressed by the operative stem, e.g. 11) N. *akabala (lie down, bake in the sun), cf. N. *akha (get on another's back, crouch) and N. *akha (sear over, look down from above); T. *kakabala (lie with arms and legs stretched out), cf. T. *kaka (be drawn two ways); N. *atlabale (be obstinate), cf. N. *atla (be weak-minded); S. *akabala (be quite alone, stand at the same place for a long time), cf. S. *kaka (be standing motionless);

1) For the meanings of examples here quoted cf. (a) above.
ii) Mostly no corresponding operative stem could be indicated.
T. runubale (fly or flap in the wind as the garments of a runner), cf. T. rura (fly).

2. Operative in a non-basic position, this suffix does not occur in this position.

II. Secondary: The operative has no secondary form.

B) Strengthened:

I. Primary " Standards:

1) Operative (intensive) S. na T. na N. na) e.g.
   S. khērēpa (scrape, nibble), cf. N. khāra (gnaw, bite off); S. khūrapa T. kwaripa (scratch, or claw with the nails), cf. T. kwara N. kwara (scrape with a knife).

 ii) (a) The operative (intensive) is a rare suffixii), it denotes intermittent action, and for most of these derivative stems no corresponding simple stems could be indicated.
   Examples: N. tsatepa (walk slowly and warily), cf. N. tatepa (tiptoe); S. khōhōpa (shake about, shake a bag up and down when pouring grain out of it), cf. N. kōhōla (be loose, shake).
   T. anapa (feel after, grope), no corresponding simple stem; S. kutela (walk slowly, not continuously) no corresponding simple stem; S. ṭečela (go in zig-zag) no corresponding simple stem; S. monopa N. monopa (be restless, writhe), cf. N. sōna (fold). For more examples cf. (c) below.

   (b) The suffix pa has sometimes lost its common force, e.g. N. xwahlapa (glean), cf. N. xwahla (glean); N. theclepa (go about in swarms) no corresponding

1) Cf. N. prempana (flare high up of flames), N. rura (crackle of a fire) and T. runubale (flutter in the wind).
   This is the only example I could find, where the nasal, the cause of the strengthening of the suffix-consonant b, has been retained.

ii) Only about 40 operative (intensive) stems could be indicated.

iii) Cf. also (f) below.
simple stem; S.kötlöpa (put or keep in a corner, herd near the village), of. S.kötlala N.kötlala (press in); N.kxöröpa (shrink together) no corresponding simple stem.

(c) The simple stems corresponding to some operative (intensive) stems are transitive, those corresponding to others are intransitive, e.g. N.xwahlapa (glean), of. N.xwahla transitive (glean); S.köllöpa (put or keep in a corner, herd near the village), of. S.kötlala N.kötlala transitive (press in); S.khööpa (scrape, nibble), of. N.kxöra transitive (gnaw, bite off); N.tsatsapa (walk slowly and warily), of. N.tsatsa intransitive (tiptoe); S.khöölapa (shake about, shake a bag up and down when pouring grain out of it), of. N.kxööla intransitive (be loose, shake).

(d) Some operative stems are transitive, others are intransitive, e.g. 1) N.xwahlapa transitive, S.köllöpa transitive, S.kötlöpa transitive, N.tsatsapa intransitive, S.kutlapa intransitive.

(e) There are operative (intensive) stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stem, neither could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these derivatives; a comparison with other derivative stems shows, however, in some cases a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. T.kalapa N.kalapa (skip about as young animals); N.kwalapa (change the mind); N.kwatapa (gallop), of. S.köatalla (run); S.blöölapa (strike, beat); N.kxöölapa (swing as somebody holding on to a beam);

1) For the meanings of these stems cf. §'s (a), (b) and (c) above.
1. Operative (intensive) in basic position: There are several such compounds, e.g. the operative (intensive)-applicative S.pola T.pala N.pala as in N.tsatsanëla (stretch oneself up on the toes, walk towards on tiptoes), cf. N.tsatsapa (walk on the toes). Here the applicative idea is added to the idea expressed by the operative (intensive) stem. The operative (intensive)-reciprocal S.pana N.pana as in S.sonopana N.sonopana (write about), cf. S.sonopa N.sonopa (write). Here the reciprocal idea is added to the idea expressed by the operative (intensive) stem.

2. Operative (intensive) in a non-basic position: this suffix does not occur in this position.

II Secondary: The operative (intensive) has no secondary form.

\[1\] Bendermann also means that `pa` denotes the intensive of `be` cf. W.M.S. p. 54.
CHAPTER 10

Stat. S.he T.re N.xa 1
Stat. (causative) N.xa 1
Stat. (capable) ii) N.xa 1
Stat. (capable; iii) and Stat. (causative)
S. the T.re N.xa 1
Stat. (destructive) S. the T.re N.xa 1
Stat. (intensive) N.xa 1
Stat. (capable-intensive) N.xa 1
Stat. (destructive-intensive) N.xa 1

A) UNESTRENGTHENED

I Primary: (a) Single:

1) Stat. S.he T.re N.xa, e.g. S.phere (become

1) U.B.aka Phon., pp. 65 and 76.

ii) The reason for employing the same term for two different suffixes is given in II (1) II below.

III) U.B.aka Phon., pp. 64 and 76. A representative of this suffix is found in N. only.

IV) U.B.aka, cf. Phon., pp. 44, 46 and 76. As will be explained in § A) II (2) I below, I recognize only one suffix S. the T.re N.xa with however two sub-functionas indicated by the above two terms. It will be seen in the course of this treatise that there are several other single secondary suffixes having two or more sub-functions e.g. the case with the stat. (destructive) S. the T.re N.xa which has two sub-functions, viz. the stat. (destructive-reversive) and the stat. (destructive-extensive). There is however a difference between S. the T.re N.xa on the one hand, and the other suffixes having two or more sub-functions on the other hand, viz. that with the latter I could still indicate the general force, covering the sub-functions, denoted by each of these suffixes; while with S. the T.re N.xa the general force of the secondary suffix covering both the stat. (causative) and the stat. (capable) is no longer apparent. This may be due to the extensive interchange that has taken place between the suffixes S. the T.re N.xa, N.xa and the stat. (capable) S. the T.re M.xa (cf. below) as well as to the exceedingly rare occurrence of the stat. (causative) S. the T.re N.xa. Now, in view of (a) the position with the other suffixes referred to above, as regards their general force, (b) the improbability of the existence of a suffix side by side of two suffixes semantically different, but identical in form, and (c) the possibility of S. the T.re N.xa having lost its general force, I suppose that one might perhaps reconstruct the following general term for S. the T.re N.xa: stat. (77) (77 representing the lost force). The two sub-functions of the suffix may then be denoted as stat. (77-capable) and stat. (77-causative). It is however not essential to keep on using the sign 77. As far as this suffix is concerned, I am therefore, deviating from the practice of employing a general term when speaking of a suffix in general, instead of this, the designation for each of the individual sub-functions will be employed on occasion demands.

V) U.B.aka Phon., pp. 64 and 76.

VI) Found in N. only, no U.B. representative is given by Meinhof.
very bad of a wound), cf. N. phare (get cured with difficulty); S. theleha (fall down, tumble down of a wall), cf. N. thèle (slide, slide); N. obé (hang down i.e. be bent down), cf. S. Oba T. Oba N. Oba (bend down); S. khawaha (get worn out); cf. N. khaw (pool, take off the fibres); T. woola E. wula (pant, breathe hard), cf. S. vwa T. vwa N. vwa (throb, beat of the heart, in N. also; blow the bellows); S. ruthaha (resound dully), cf. S. ruha (draw in air with force) and T. rutha (blow strongly as the wind).

The connecting vowel of the phrase is found preceding S. ha only - it is not found preceding T. ha N. ha.

A few more examples are given in addition to the above; S. kwessha (change your opinion, retract), cf. N. kwessa (= S. kwessa) and S. kiena N. kiena (turn, turn round); S. këtëha (get up), cf. T. kwëtha (appear, come into sight) no corresponding simple stem; S. petësha (slide out of one's hands) no corresponding simple stem. It is possible that we do not have here a suffix ha preceded by e as an unstandardised connecting vowel, but she a dialectal form of the stational (capable) ha, especially in view of the fact that in two cases the other two languages have T. she N. she where S. has she. But closed e occurs as unstandardised connecting vowel with practically all primary suffixes, therefore why not also with the stational suffix? It is true that with the other suffixes it is not limited to one language only, but I do not think that this is sufficient reason not to classify it here as an unstandardised connecting vowel. Unfortunately the force of the stational suffix does not help us here; it is a rare suffix, and as will be shown below, no difference in force would be indicated between the stational and the stational (capable) suffixes.

For the reasons mentioned above I have provisionally recognised 1) The common idea between the simple and derivative stems is probably that of wearing away.
an unstandardised connecting vowel y preceding S.be. In such cases, however, where the S.derivative stem has a parallel in one of the other languages, ending in T.une N.une the suffix is to be regarded as she a variant of she and not as ha preceded by an unstandardised connecting vowel e.

Endemann has indicated a suffix yxe for N.1), but, as far as I can see, there seems to be no justification for recognising a suffix S.ype T.ype N.ype, unless perhaps as a dialectal variant of S.pha T.oca N.oca (cf. below). It is true, as will be seen in ii) below, as well as from examples quoted above, that a few stational stems with y as unstandardised connecting vowel have a destructive force; but, as far as I could ascertain, this is only the case when such a force is also denoted by the corresponding single stem. It would therefore appear as if this force is contained in the roots underlying these stems11).

ii) The stational suffix S.be T.ape N.ape is a very rare suffix111), and in most cases it denoted the same as the stational (capable), viz. an intransitive state or

1) W.A.G., p. 55. In his Phon., p. 48 Weinhof says that if Ub.ka is suffixed to a stem ending in Ub.g we get a suffix Ub.ype. It would, however, appear that in such cases the g rather belongs to the stem and not to the suffix.

ii) A few derivative stems, of which the following is practically an exhaustive list, and either in the stational (destructive) suffix or in S.be T.ape N.ape preceded by y, e.g. T.kaona = T.kaona (swell), S.giruka = S.giroha = N.giroha (stand aside), T.isekore = T.isekore (die suddenly), this may be due to dialectal difference or, in view of the scarcity of such examples, merely to the difference in pronunciation of individuals, e.g. also N.ypeka = S.ypeka T.ypeka (swell), S.ypeka = S.ypeka (become intelligent or a child). It is difficult to say whether here S.ypeka T.ypeka N.ypeka > S.ypeka T.ypeka N.ypeka or S.(e)ka T.(e)ka N.(e)ka), S.(e)ka T.(e)ka N.(e)ka. There is no question in either of the S.ypeka T.ypeka N.ypeka becoming S.ypeka T.ypeka N.ypeka because of the stem-vowel being y, as there are many derivative stems in S.ypeka T.ypeka N.ypeka with stem-vowel y, e.g. T.ypeka (be in a bad temper), N.ypeka (be in a bad temper), S.ypeka (break), S.ypeka (become rooted out).

11) Only about 35 stational stems could be indicated.
condition without any special reference to an agent determining that condition, e.g. 1) N.kubura (dive up, appear, i.e. be in a visible state), cf. T.kubusa (wake up from sleep, i.e. be in a state of having woken up) or T.kura (rise up as smoke); S.suruba (get out of the way) no corresponding simple stem; S.bersha (become spoiled) no corresponding simple stem; S.taomha (come out, be pulled out) no corresponding simple stem.

(b) A few stems may be cited in which it would appear that the suffix S.he T.ge N.xa has a function other than that which it has in the majority of stational stems. These are S.heleha (fall down of a wall), cf. S.heha (now, resp); S.heleha (fall down of a wall), cf. N.thale (slide, slide); S.petleha (run in great numbers) no corresponding simple stem; N.piraha (fall down sideways) no corresponding simple stem; T.sria N.ura (finish a journey, go home) no corresponding simple stems. Unfortunately their number is so small that I cannot indicate with any accuracy what the function of the suffix may be. On the other hand it may be possible to regard the suffix in these stems as identical in function with those in the other stational or stational (capable) stems by interpreting, e.g. T.sria N.ura as go home but as be in a state of going home; and piraha not as fall down sideways but as be in a state of falling sideways. It is however not certain whether such an interpretation is correct, it was therefore thought advisable to designate S.he T.ge N.xa by a term other than that employed for N.xa and S.he T.ge N.ura.

(c) All derivative stems in S.he T.ge N.xa are intransitive.

1) Refer to 1) above for more examples.
(d) The simple stems corresponding to some 
stational stems are transitive, while those corresponding 
to others are intransitive, e.g. 1) N.śḇxa, cf. S.śba T.śba 
N.śba transitive; S.ḵuyu, cf. N.ḵuyu transitive, S. 
phere, cf. N.pherā intransitive; N.ḵubuxa, cf. T.ḵubu in-
transitive.

(e) There are stational stems which are not 
associated with any extent simple verbal stems neither could 
on-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of 
these derivative stems, & comparison with other verbal stems that 
also having no corresponding simple verbal stems or cor-
responding non-verbal stems, shows, however, in some cases, a 
probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. T. 
ḵubuxa (turn the head and move away); cf. T.ḵubula (snatch 
away); S.tsowu (be pulled out); cf. S.tsowu (pull out).

(f) For some stational stems corresponding 
actional11) stems in 1g could be found, In addition to those 
quoted in (e) above, cf. also N.ḍhūx (hang down) and N.ḍhūlə 
(let something hang down), T.ḵuguxa (wake out of sleep) and 
T.ḵubula (waken out of sleep).

β) Compound :

1. Stational suffix in basic position, as e.g. in 
the stational-factitive S.əs T.əs 11) Ṣga Ṣgə < Ṣyə + Ṣyə 
T.ə + T.ə ə + T.ə, e.g. N.ḵuduxa (expel, turn out), cf. 
N.ḵuduxa (remove one's abode) no corresponding simple stem.

1) For meanings of examples here quoted, cf. 1) as well as 
ii)(a) above.

ii) For a definition of 1a, cf. Chapter 12.

11) In the following instances also təba in T.: goətəba = 
gorax (cause to arrive), cf. gorəx (arrive); ḫudutəba = 
ḵudus (expel, turn out), cf. ḫudus (remove one's abode).
This suffix adds the factitive idea to the idea expressed by the stational stem e.g. N. khudwe (expel, turn out), cf. N. khudwa (remove one's abode) no corresponding simple stem; T. hudwa (expel, turn out) cf. T. hudwe (remove one's abode) no corresponding simple stem, but cf. N. tola (flee); T. goras 1) N. xorba 1) (cause to arrive, bring home), cf. T. goroga N. xorba (go home arrive) no corresponding simple stem.

2. Stational suffix in a non-basic position: With the exception of the few cases mentioned in chapter 5 §10(h) this suffix does not occur in this position.

II Secondary:

((1)) Single:

1) Stational (capable) N. exa, e.g. N. kwarake (get bigger, get round of fruit) no corresponding simple stem, N. kwara (knead, curve, crumple) no corresponding simple stem. These are the only two stems I could find ending in exa, and it could therefore be argued that the suffix is ex and not exa, the a preceding ex being an unstandardised connecting vowel (the root-vowel in both these cases being also a). The probable existence of a suffix exa is however supported by the following:

(a) In other Bantu languages there exists a suffix which is the parallel of exa, e.g. in Khosa as in phalake (run or rush out as water from a vessel), cf. phale (go to and fro, go about in search); and in Tonga 1) as in vona (be visible), cf. vona (see), and phale (get spoiled)

1) e > o under the influence of Chapter 17.

cf. caha (spoil)\textsuperscript{1}.

(b) It appears as one of the component parts of such compounds as \textit{akale}, \textit{akana} and \textit{akala}\textsuperscript{11).}

\textit{a}ke denotes the same as the stational (capable) S.\textit{aka} T.\textit{aga} N.\textit{ake}\textsuperscript{iii), vis. an intransitive state or condition without any special reference to an agent determining that condition. The same term is therefore employed to indicate both suffixes.

\subsection*{Compound:}

1. Stational (capable) S.\textit{aka} T.\textit{aga} N.\textit{ake}

in basic position:

\textit{ake}\textsuperscript{i} Stational (capable)-actional

\textit{ake}\textsuperscript{ii}

\textit{aka} is only found in certain dialects. In \textit{fla}ing, one of the dialects, in which \textit{akale} does not occur, the suffix \textit{ake} denotes the force elsewhere denoted by \textit{akale}\textsuperscript{vii). It is therefore possible that in

1) In Laka there is a suffix \textit{ake} (Laka \textit{k = N.k}) but it has an extensive force, cf. Deke \textit{Textbook of Laka grammar} (new edn.) p. 204.

11) Cf. Deke, p. 76.

iii) This is also the case in Tonga cf. Juced \textit{Elementary Grammar of the Thonga-Shangana language}, p. 74.

iv) Cf. \textit{mb. akala Pos.} p. 76. Jacottet maintains that S.\textit{aka} = \textit{kaha} + E.\textit{aka} (cf. \textit{A Grammar of the Seselwe language} p. 30).\textsuperscript{50} and Endemann that S.\textit{aka} = T.\textit{aka} + E.\textit{aka} (cf. \textit{Ph. E. R.}, p. 80), through retrogressive assimilation, although this is quite possible in some cases; it does not exclude S.\textit{aka} N.\textit{ake} from being the best in other cases, especially in view of the fact that S.\textit{aka} N.\textit{ake} has a parallel in certain other languages, e.g. Sela \textit{ake} (cf. Deke \textit{Textbook of Laka grammar}, p. 150), and Tonga \textit{aka} (cf. Juced \textit{Elementary Grammar of the Thonga-Shangana language}, p. 75). Laka has also been able to reconstruct a suffix \textit{ake} for U. of \textit{ake}, cf. \textit{Pos.} pp. 43 and 76. As indicated above the suffix \textit{ake} is a very rare suffix and no semantic difference between \textit{ake} and \textit{ake} can be shown, for this reason it is not possible to say in which cases the basis of S.\textit{aka} T.\textit{aka} N.\textit{ake} is S.\textit{aka} T.\textit{aka} N.\textit{aka} (permuted to S.\textit{aka} T.\textit{aka} N.\textit{aka}), and in which cases original S.\textit{aka} T.\textit{aka} N.\textit{aka}. I could trace no suffix S.\textit{ake} T.\textit{ake} N.\textit{ake}.

such dialects \textit{agale} has been replaced by \textit{fala}. Also in S.
and N. an interchange between \textit{S.ahala} N.\textit{axela} and \textit{fala} has
taken place, cf. II(e) below.

As the suffix \textit{agale} does not occur in Theaping\textsuperscript{1}, the
examples here quoted for T. will not be found in Brown's
\textit{Sevvanese-English dictionary}, which is written in that dialect;
they have been obtained from my informants. T.\textit{diraxala} N.
\textit{diraxala} (happen, come to pass, become done), cf. T.\textit{dire N.
dire} (act, do); S.\textit{daxala} T.\textit{b:naxala} N.\textit{daxala} (become
of. S.\textit{b:na T.b:na} N.\textit{b:na} (see));
visible, evident, appear); S.\textit{k:phala} (become suitable,
right, true) of. S.\textit{b:na N.\textit{k:na} (be right); S.\textit{kh:th:hal:ale}
(be noticeable) of. S.\textit{kh:the N.k:the} (pick out,
choose); S.\textit{ph:th:hal:ale} N.\textit{ph:th:hal:ale} (become accomplished, take
place) of. S.\textit{ph:the N.ph:the} (complete); N.\textit{t:taxala} (become
hidden), of. S.\textit{t:ta N.t:ta} (hide); S.\textit{h:k:hal:ale} T.\textit{h:k:hal:ale} N.
\textit{h:k:hal:ale} (be scarce, be lacking, be no more), of. S.\textit{h:lo} T.
\textit{h:k:hal:ale N.h:k:lo} (lack).

\textsuperscript{11}(a) \textit{S.ahala T.agale N.agale} denotes
the idea of entering into a certain state\textsuperscript{11}, e.g. S.\textit{hi:ph:hal:ale}
(become beautiful), of. S.\textit{hi:ph:ha T.\textit{hi:ph:ha} N.hi:ph:ha} (adorn, ar-
range); N.\textit{k:taxala} (hurt oneself by knocking against some-
thing), of. T.\textit{k:tha N.k:tha} (knock against something with the
foot etc.); S.\textit{daxala} T.\textit{b:naxala} N.\textit{daxala} (become visible),
of. S.\textit{b:na T.b:na} N.\textit{b:na} (see); T.\textit{diraxala} N.\textit{diraxala} (happen),
of. T.\textit{dire N.dire} (work, do); S.\textit{t:beb:hal:ale} N.\textit{t:beb:hal:ale} (become
known) of. S.\textit{t:be} N.\textit{t:be} (know).

\cite{11b} Cf. MacKay and Brown \textit{Sevvanese grammar}, p. 115.

\textsuperscript{11} There seems to be no semantic difference between S.
(b) The simple stems corresponding to stationals (capable)-stationals (capable) stems are almost exclusively transitive, an exception being N. impala (become heavy) of T. impa N. impa (become pregnant), intransitive.

(c) All derivative stems in S. abala T. abala N. abala are intransitive.

(d) For the following stem in abala no corresponding simple stem could be indicated: N. abala (contradict very strongly), cf. T. abala (be furious).

(e) In a few cases there seems to have been some interchange between S. abala N. abala and S. fafa N. fafa, e.g. S. netafa N. netafa (become true) of S. neta T. neta T. neta T. neta T. neta (truth); N. imimpala = N. impala (become heavy), cf. T. impa N. impa (become pregnant) and impa found in S. boima T. boima N. boima (weight).

1) Stationals (capable)-applicative T. abala. I have only once come across this suffix, viz. in Phen. p. 76, where the example T. dirastela (be done for someone) is quoted.

cc)(i) Stationals (capable)-reciprocal


11) Haehof maintains that T. impa > apa if followed by apa; as far as I could ascertain however T. impa + apa > abala e.g. phemphela (rush upon), ribebele (become broken off), jemphela (backslide, turn away from), temphela (rush together),cf. however also S. sibhaketsa (strike with a stone) where the suffix in the basic position may perhaps have been apa, but there seems to be no reason why it could not have been apa.
S. ahana T. agana N. oxana, e.g. N. vetakana (pass each other),
cf. S. peta T. peta N. peta (pass); S. khōthakana (get apart,
differ), cf. S. khōtha T. khōtha N. khōtha (choose); T. hopagana
(com close together, become of one shape), cf. S. hopa T. hopa
N. hopa (shape, create).

(11)(a) With S. ahana T. agana N. oxana the
reciprocal idea is added to the stational (capable) idea. It
is remarkable that this suffix is almost exclusively attached
to roots denoting the following two ideas:

(A) Association; in which case the derivative stem conveys
also an idea of association. It is in the majority of cases
attached to such roots, e.g. T. betakana (be congested as a
crowd, choke one another as a crowd), cf. S. peta T. peta N. peta
(grasp by the throat, strangle); T. metakana N. metakana (be
connected), cf. N. yoka (entice, tempt); T. khalamakana N.
khokhlarana (be close together, touch or press upon each
other), cf. N. khola (run against); S. pétakana N. pétakana
(be thickly own, be too close), cf. N. peta (press close);

1) This suffix may in some cases be an assimilated form of
of the Beutó language, p. 55, and Phon., p. 76, but this does not
exclude S. yoke T. yoka N. yoka from being the basis in other cases,
cf. S. ahala T. yala N. yala above. S. ahana T. agana N. oxana has
also parallels in other Beutó languages, cf. Term., p. 55. As
far as I could ascertain only about one half of the roots in
both taking S. ahana T. agana N. oxana also take S. kha T. kha N. kha.
The suffix kha is a very rare suffix and no semantic dif-
ference could be indicated between N. kha and S. kha T. kha N. kha.
for this reason it is not possible to say in which cases the
basis of S. ahana T. agana N. oxana is S. yoke T. yoka N. yoka (permutated
to S. yola T. yola N. yoka) and in which cases it is original S. peta
T. peta N. peta. There exists a suffix S. yekana N. yekana, which, we
will be indicated below, is semantically identical with S. ahana
T. agana N. oxana. A few derivative stems in N. and either in
oxana or yekana, e.g. yokkzana = yokkzana (connect, attach to
each other), cf. gila (blind), yokkzana = yokkzana (be doubled up,
interwined), cf. peta (bend). In these cases oxana is probably
a permutated form of yekana.

11) Cf. W. d. 'o p. 38, Jastrow A Grammar of the Beutó language,
p. 55. The suffix S. ahana N. oxana which appears more often in
N. than in S. has also an associative force, e.g. N. thokzana
(get intertwined), cf. T. thara N. thara (bend).
S. ahana T. agana N. oxana has a parallel in other Beutó
languages conveying the same force, cf. Term., p. 55 as well as
S. phuthabane (become shrivelled up), cf. S. phutha T. phutha N. phutha (fold, gather); S. lenaphane N. lenaxane (adhere to one another), cf. S. lona T. lona N. lona (pinch one's mouth, suck); S. lenaphane T. lenaxane N. lenaxane (adhere to one another, be joined together), cf. S. lona T. lona N. lona (bite); S. lenaphane (get strongly bound together), cf. S. lana T. lana (bind); T. lenaxane (become knit or twisted together), cf. S. lona T. lona N. lona (knit, weave).

(b) Separation, in which case the derivative stem conveys also an idea of separation, e.g. N. fetaxane (pass each other) of. S. feta T. feta N. feta (pass), N. fetaxane (remove from one another), cf. N. feta (remove); S. phuthabane (break into pieces, get t smashed), cf. S. phutha (break), T. setlhagane N. sithlexane (become separated or sawn asunder), cf. S. sithla T. sithla N. sithla (cut); N. thukxane (break asunder), cf. N. thuka (break off); T. sumxane N. sumpxane (break up, become broken up into parties or groups), cf. S. kume T. kume N. kume (tear off, break into small pieces); T. sumxane N. sumxane (break each other, be cracked), cf. S. thuba T. thuba N. thuba (smash).

(b) Most simple stems corresponding to derivative stems in S. shane T. shane N. shane are transitive, a few are however intransitive, e.g. S. fetaxane (get scattered), cf. S. feta T. feta N. feta (dig a hole, hollow out) transitive; T. setlhagane N. sithlexane (become separated or sawn asunder), cf. S. sithla T. sithla N. sithla (cut) transitive; N. getxane (lie on the side), cf. S. nake T. nake N. nake (incline) intransitive.

1) S. shane is very seldom found with such a force.
(c) The following is the only simple stem, as far as I could ascertain, having both a corresponding stationals (capable)-reciprocal and reciprocal-stationals (capable) stem: N.phatha (press close, squeeze), cf. S.phathana (be hard pressed, overworked, contracted, in straits) and S. phathanāna (be very busy, taken up by much work).

(d) For some derivative stems in S. ahana T.ekana N.ekana no corresponding simple verbal stems could be ascertained, e.g. S.kāmahāna (draw oneself together), T.karagana (make a clacking noise as the hoofs of animals running).

2. Stational (capable) S.ēaha T.ēaga N.ēga in a non-basic position. This suffix occurs very seldom in this position, e.g. T.tlaorāna N.tolāxana (jump about, step across), cf. S.tla T.tlea N.tlēa (jump) and S.tle T.tlē N.tlē (come); T.tōhverotāhāna (become very soft) no corresponding simple stem.

((2)) (a) Single:

1) As indicated above two designations are employed to indicate the suffix S.ēga T.ēga N.ēga. This procedure will be further discussed in ii) below. The terms are:

(a) Stational (capable), found e.g. in S. bopēha T.bopēga N.bopēga (become shaped, formed), cf. S.bopa T.bopa N.bopa (shape, create); S.tleōha T.tleēhēga N.tleēhēga (be wanting, scarce), cf. S.tleēga T.tleēga N.tleēga (lack something, be in need of something); S.ēha T.ēga N.ēga (be edible), cf. S.ē T.ē N.ē (eat), T.kādēga N.kādēga (become
known as, become esteemed as) < T. karaga N. karaga, of. T. kava N. kava (count as, regard as); S. bulu T. bulu (be worthy of being spoken of), of. S. buu T. buu (speak); 

(b) the stational (causative), found e.g. in S. helehe T. gelge N. xilexe (tie, bind, insun), of. N. xile (tie); S. manhe T. manhe N. manhe (glue, cover), of. N. mane (cling to, embrace, wind round).

11) The suffix S. she T. shee N. shee falls functionally into two sub-heads, viz. (A) the stational (capable) and (B) the stational (causative). The existence of two apparently semantically different suffixes, both of a form which can be referred back to UB. shee, seems to be common in Bantu languages, so much so that Meinhof actually postulated two UB. suffixes both of the form shee. He does not regard these two suffixes as being of the same origin, because, (a) according to him these two suffixes are semantically distinct; and (b) the final vowel of the stational (causative) suffix is subject to vowel-assimilation in Herero; which is not the case with the final vowel of the stational (capable) suffix.

In view of the fact that S. she T. shee N. shee has two functions parallel to those given by Meinhof to his two UB. suffixes of the form shee, I shall have to discuss here briefly the plausibility or otherwise of Meinhof's postulation of two semantically different suffixes of equal form; and, as S. she T. shee N. shee has very rarely a stational (causative) function, I was forced to refer to a considerable extent to

1) A definition of this term will be given below.

II) Phon., pp. 43 and 44.

III) Phon., p. 44.

IV) It has this function only in about 50 cases. It is perhaps noteworthy that also in the other members of the southern group of Bantu languages the parallel of S. she T. shee N. shee seldom has a stational (causative) force.
other Bantu languages\(^1\) as well. As far as I could ascertain the representative of UB.\textit{oka}, when it has a stational (capable) force, indicates, in the various languages examined by me, the being in or passing into a certain state, and when it has a stational (causative) force, the causing to be in or the causing to pass into a certain state. The stational (capable) suffix is therefore intransitive, the stational (causative) transitive. Furthermore, stational (capable) stems mostly have transitive corresponding intransitive simple stems, and stational (causative) stems mostly intransitive corresponding simple stems.

These two functions are therefore actually closely related, inasmuch as both lay stress on the state of the subject of the derivative stem.

The difference in form noted by Neinhof for Herero exists also in Ovambo, a language belonging to the same group as Herero, but in none of the other languages examined by me did I observe a difference in form between the representative of UB.\textit{oka} with stational (capable) force, and that of UB.\textit{oka} with stational (causative) force. The question therefore arises, whether one is justified in excepting in these languages two distinct suffixes. As far as I could judge the position in these languages, it would appear, that there is functionally no justification for making such a distinction.

\(^1\) The following are the most important languages examined in this connection:

Kongo \(\text{cf.}\) Bentley \textit{Dictionary and grammar of the Kongo language}, pp. 481-482.
Yao, cf. Sanderson \textit{A Yao grammar}, p. 94.
and as to the form; as far as I could ascertain, only one group of languages suggests here a probable difference. Is this not perhaps a peculiarity of this group? It may be. Therefore, as far as both are concerned, there would appear to be no definite reason either for accepting two distinct suffixes I regard both as having the suffix S. T. as N. or T. only, with however two semantically related functions. Both indicating a state, resulting in the one case in an intransitive derivative stem, and in the other case in a transitive derivative stem. I shall now proceed to deal with each of these functions more in detail.

(A) Stational (capable) S. T. N. T. N.

(a) It denotes "an intransitive state or condition without any special reference to an agent determining that condition. In many cases the force of the English suffix able or ible expresses this ...... form; in others the idea of get or become as opposed to the passive use of be seems to be the nearest equivalent"ii), e.g. T. bôkone N. bôkone (become cut into thin slices), of. S. bôka T. bôke N. bôka (cut meat into slices). T. ñáloko N. ñáloko (become dug, be digable), of. S. ñálo T. ñálo N. ñálo (dig); S. pahõña (get separated, offended), of. S. pahola (affront, daze); T. ñáloko N. ñáloko (get praise), of. T. ñáloko N. ñáloko (blame); S. pahõña N. pahõña (get chosen), of. S. pahõña T. pahõña N. pahõña (choose).

(b) The suffix S. T. N. T. N. has sometimes lost its stational (capable) force, e.g. T. sôloko (dislike e.g. mothe o sôloko me ding = the person dislikes the food), of. T. sôlo (tire of a thing); S. hopõña (feel pain) no corresponding simple stem.

ii) Of. Term., p. 150, where this definition is given to the term nature which I have replaced by the term stationa (capable).
(a) Sometimes the semantic relation between the stational (capable) stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S. dbbaha (have patience, be patient), cf. S. dbbaha (place); N. yubura (get frightened), cf. S. yuba T. yuba N. yuba (shr. knew).

(b) The vast majority of stational (capable) stems have transitive corresponding simple stems; with some however the corresponding simple stems are intransitive. When the corresponding simple stem is transitive there is identity between the subject of the derivative stem and the object of the corresponding simple stem; the subject of the derivative stem being fit to undergo or actually undergoes the action expressed by the simple stem, e.g. S. amana (be concerned in an affair), cf. S. amon T. amon N. amon (concern, hint at); N. get soaked) dburra (become soft, cf. N. bura (soak); S. bulbha T. bulbha (get open, become opened); cf. S. yula T. yula N. yula (open); T. sibara (be near to death, be about to die), cf. T. sara (bring near to death); T. kabbara N. kabbara (become closed up of the ear or a hole); cf. S. kaba T. kaba N. kaba (plug up); N. kadbiba (get satisfied), cf. N. kuddenly (satisfy); S. kulbha (have grass or hair removed), cf. S. rule (clear, cleanse); N. phulbha (get burst open), cf. N. phula (pierce); T. sibllag (get inscribed), cf. S. rule T. rule N. rule (draw a line, rip open); S. kadbha (be admirable, beautiful), cf. S. baba N. bora (admire, look at); S. bhaha N. baha (be visible, appear), cf. S. bana T. bana N. bana (see); T. sambha (be milkable), cf. S. sana T. sana N. sana (milk); S. kada (be impossible), cf. S. kasa T. kasa N. kasa (refuse); S. jilbha T. jilbha N. jilbha (be

1) Only 45 of the 300 simple stems corresponding to stational (capable) stems are intransitive.
hateable, become repugnant, hateful), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (avoid, hate); T.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (be persuasible, become persuaded), of. T.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (persuade); S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a (be flexible), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (bend); S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (be arable), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (plough); S.\_i\_a (be fit for gathering, be gathered), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (gather); S.\_i\_a (be fit to be cut, get cut), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (cut), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (cut). When the corresponding simple stem is intransitive there is identity between the subject of the simple stem and that of the derivative stem, e.g. T.\_i\_a (become increased), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (increase); T.\_i\_a (be envious or jealous in an envious sense), of. T.\_i\_a (be jealous); S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (become shy, timid), of. S.\_i\_a (be shy, timid); S.\_i\_a (become clear e.g. liquid), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (become clear); S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (become startled, break out as a light), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (start up, appear); T.\_i\_a (be faint or tired, melt as the heart), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (become tender, week); S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (become unhappy, worried), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (be worried, be withered up); T.\_i\_a (be fit of being moistened), of. T.\_i\_a (be or become wet); T.\_i\_a (be astonished, marvellous), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (be surprised); T.\_i\_a (be in or get into a permanent state), of. S.\_i\_a T.\_i\_a N.\_i\_a (remain, spend some time, continue).

(c) There are stational (capable) stems which are not associated with any present simple verbal stem; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stem, shows, however, in some cases a
probable common non-extant simple stem, e.g. 1. N. karëga (become weak in the feet so that one is unable to stand), cf. N. karala (walk with legs wide apart); T. rëpëga (be lying on the side), cf. S. rëpëga T. rëpëga N. rëpëga (recline, lie on the side); T. nyabëga (be short of time); S. fasëba (become depressed); T. ëla (be delivered of a child while being in a stooping position); T. ñënda (be of one piece with anything).

(f) Although all statinal (capable) stems are intransitive, a certain number take an object, which is, however, merely of a subsidiary nature, e.g. T. gorëga mathe (dry of the saliva; used of a person who has talked much), T. kalëga matlhë (be blind, dazzled), N. klaëwa borëga (be troubled while sleeping), N. klaëwa taka (interrupt, stop something), S. uila robëga letsefa (your arm will break), S. u ila gotëga molala (your neck will become sprained), S. kobo e phunëga legoba (the blanket bursts a hole), S. kobo e klaëwa ñëla (the blanket gets clean of dirt).

(g) About half of the roots taking the statinal (capable)-actional (capable) suffix S. aha N. aha N. axa, take also the statinal (capable) suffix S. ñëla T. ñëla N. ñëla, and the latter suffix is much more common than the former, e.g. S. ñëla N. ñëla (be reliable, trustworthy) and S. ñëla (be reliable, trustworthy), cf. S. ñëla T. ñëla N. ñëla (hope, trust, rely), S. klaëwa T. klaëwa N. klaëwa (be wanting, scarce, precious) and S. klaëwa T. klaëwa N. klaëwa

1) The term subsidiary object is not only applied to the object sometimes taken by an intransitive verbal stem, but it has a wider use of. Term, p. 205.

ii) There are about 320 statinal (capable) stems and only about 30 statinal (capable)-actional (capable) stems.
N. hlôxamale (become scarce, be no more), cf. S. hlôxa T. thôke
N. hlôke (lack); S. patôba (be conceald) and S. patôbala (be concealable), cf. S. pata N. pate (conceal); S. khonôba T. khôpôna (get scandalized, offended) and S. khonôbala (become crooked, immoral), cf. S. khôpa (trip) T. khôpra (displease, vex)\(^1\).

(b) The stational (causative) suffix S. 3(un) T. ñka N. ñka-
(a) It denotes the causing to be in or the causing to pass into a certain state or condition\(^1\), e.g. T. phôrêga (hold a thing in a slanting position i.e. cause to be in a slanting state), cf. T. phôra N. phôka (hold agent's leg under one's knee when milking); S. manôba T. manôdra N. manôtra (glue, cover, i.e. cause to be in a covered state), cf. N. man (wind round); S. phôrêba (put in a patch, i.e. cause to be in a patched state), cf. S. phôra T. phôra N. phôra (plaster, smear roughly); S. ribôba (turn upside down, i.e. cause to be in an upturned state) T. ribôga (place a thing so as to cover another thing with it, turn upside down), cf. N. riba (steep, bend); T. tekkôga (hold in a slanting position i.e. cause to be in a slanting position), cf. N. tekkra (become crooked, oblique); S. holôba T. gôlôga N. gôlôga (tie, inspar i.e. cause to be in a tied state), cf. N. gôla (bind).

(b) Sometimes the relation between the stational (causative) stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S. tenôba (beat violently), cf. S. jen T. jen
N. jena (tire, disgust); N. pôra (praise, glorify), cf. T. ñna (tell, relate, use a proverb) S. ñna N. ñna (take an oath).

\(^1\) It will be noticed that some of these derivative stems do not differ semantically, for a similar phenomenon cf. Dake Textbook of Yuma Grammar, p. 130. It is perhaps possible that S. phôla T. phôla N. phôla has been replaced on the one hand by S. lôna T. lôna N. lôna, and on the other hand by S. ñna T. ñla N. ñla (cf. Chapter 12).

\(^{11}\) S. lôna T. lôna N. lôna has only in about 30 cases a stational (causative) force.
(c) The simple stems corresponding to the stational (causative) stems are almost exclusively transitive; exceptions are S. ribitha T. ribitha (cf. (a) above), cf. N. ribih intransitive; and T. techiha (cf. (a) above), cf. N. techi intransitive.

(d) There are stational (causative) stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems; a comparison with other derivative stems, also having no corresponding simple stems, shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple stem, e.g. T. kapar (put to lie on the back), cf. S. kana T. kanaa N. kanea (lie on the back); T. tlhehede (put a person to lie on his back, turn over the carcass of an ox when skinning it), cf. S. hlamalale T. hlamalale N. hlamalale (be or become stiff); S. nelhhe (sear the tests of a cow with dung so as to prevent its calf from sucking), cf. T. nelheka N. nelheka (offend the taste); S. nhletha (use certain tricks in order to have a cow covered); S. phelhha (do unwillingly, slowly), N. phelheka (excuse, exempt).

(e) It is perhaps remarkable that in a fair number of cases the simple stems corresponding to stational (causative) stems indicate the idea of clinging to or embracing:

exx S. manita T. manata N. manata (cf. (a) above), S. phurudu (cf. (a) above), T. matiha (cling, i.e. cause to be in a clung state) cf. N. maha (cling to).

1) In other languages examined by me in this connection, the simple stems corresponding to the stational (causative) stems, are mostly intransitive.

172.

1. **Compound:**

- **1.((A))** S.?he t.??e N.??e in its statinal (capable) force in basic position:

  (i) Stational (capable)-passive

S.??e S.??e S.??e e.g. S.??e S.??e N.??e (be come together, be congregated), cf. S.??e T.??e N.??e (come together) and S.??e T.??e N.??e (gather).

(ii) This suffix adds the passive idea to the idea expressed by the stational (capable) stem.

Statational (capable)-passive stems are not commonly used in Sotho\(^1\), and as far as I could ascertain are less commonly found in T. and N. than in S. Such stems are always used with the subjectival verb concord of the S.?e T.?e N.?e noun-class. This concord is then used in an impersonal sense, e.g. S.?e tile ??e S.?e tile ??e S.?e tile ??e (there will be assembled). It would furthermore appear to be of such stems are preferably used in the perfect conjunctival form, e.g. S.?e ??e ??e ??e ke m?eke ke s?eke ?e ke s?eke (the car has been inclined by the chief).

As far as I could ascertain these stems are mostly used in S. when referring to somebody in a good natured way, and the one spoken of is not supposed to hear what is said; in such cases the nouns ?ekeke (fellow), ?ekeke (gentleman), ?ekeke (grandfather) and ?ekeke (grandmother) are preferably used to indicate the agent, e.g. ??e ??ekeke ke ?ekeke (it has been prospered by the gentleman), ke ?ekeke

---

1) This form seems to be more common than ??e. It should also be noted that the ??e of ??e becomes ??e under the influence of the ?? of the secondary passive suffix ??e, cf. also Chapter 3.

11) Stational (capable)-passive stems are not given in the three dictionaries, knowing the existence of such stems I thought it worth while to mention them here in view of the interesting combination of the stational (capable) so far mostly referred to in the literature as the neutral-passive, and the passive suffixes.
bo akhehiloe ke moko (I found it fainted by the fellow),
ho febelewisi ke akhono (it is vexed by grandmother),
ho lebelewisa ke states moholo (it is lost by grandfather).

bb) (1) Stational (capable)-reciprocal
S. shana N. oxana e.g. S. beherana (be agitated) no corresponding simple or stationa (capable) stems; N. menehane (writhe),
of. N. menehane (get bent) and S. mene T. mene N. mene (bend).

(ii) S. shana N. oxana is a rare suffix and is only given here because it is semantically identical with the much more commonly used S. shana T. agana N. oxana (cf. above). Like S. shana T. agana N. oxana, so also S. shana N. oxana is dependent upon the meaning of the root for its force. If the root denotes some idea of association the suffix has an associative force, e.g. N. ferexana (get intertwined), of. N. ferexa (get bent) and T. ferex N. ferex (bend); N. menehane (get intertwined), for menehane and mene cf. 1) above; S. ferexana (be in despair be unable to understand, i.e. be confused as to the mind), no corresponding simple or stationa (capable) stems could be indicated.

If the root denotes some idea of separation the suffix has a separative force; only one such example could be found, viz. N. ferexana (burst asunder), cf. N. ferexa (burst) and S. ferexa (strike on the head).

((B)) S. shana T. oxa N. oxza in its stationa (causative) force in basic position:

1) Only 9 derivative stems in S. shana N. oxana could be indicated.
(1) **Stational (causative)-passive**

S. **höö** or S. **húhú** T. **júra** N. **júva** e.g. S. **hööhe** or **húhúhe** T. **néte** (be plastered), N. **néte** (be glorified).

(ii) **Definition and function**: This suffix adds the passive idea to the idea expressed by the stational (causative) stem, e.g. S. **hööhe** T. **júra** N. **júva** (be fastened, tied), cf. S. **hööhe** T. **júra** N. **júva** (fasten, tie); S. **mára** T. **mére** N. **mére** (be glued, covered), cf. S. **máre** T. **mére** N. **mére** (glue, cover).

(ii) **Stational (causative)-stational (capable)** T. **jére** N. **jére**

(iii) This suffix adds the stational (capable) idea to the idea expressed by the stational (causative) stem, e.g. T. **phöre** (be held in a slanting position), cf. T. **phöre** (hold a thing in a slanting position); T. **jöre** N. **jöre** (be fastened, tied, inspanned), cf. S. **jöre** T. **jöre** N. **jöre** (bind, tie, inspan); T. **jöre** N. **jöre** (be in such a position that it can be carried), cf. T. **jöre** N. **jöre** (carry a burden).

((i)) **Compounds about which it is not certain whether the suffix in the basic position is S. **höö** T. **jére** N. **jére** in its stational (capable) or in its stational (causative) form:**

as (i) **Performative**

---

1) In the dictionaries no such stems are given for S., and only a few for T. and N. Most of the examples here quoted for these languages have been obtained from my informants. The reason why this suffix is at all referred to is merely for the sake of contrasting it with the stational (capable)-passive, the former is regular, the latter not.

ii) No stational (causative)-stational (capable) stems are given in the dictionaries, but knowing about their existence in T. and N. I thought it worth while to mention them here because of the interesting combination of the two forms of T. **jéra** N. **jéra**. As far as I could ascertain this combination does not occur in S.

iii) The term performative is here employed and not the term stational (capable)-factitive or stational (causative)-factitive because the suffix S. **jéra** T. **jéra** N. **jéra** has acquired a specialised form. There are about 400 performative stems.
(a) S. bavia T. bavia N. bavia < 
S. Kána T. bavia N. bavia 1) < S. Ká + S. bavia T. bavia + T. bavia N. bavia 11) 1.e. S. bavia T. bavia (make rich), of. S. bavia T. bavia (become rich); S. bavia N. bavia (cause to carry; help to carry), of. S. bavia bavia (take on the shoulders); T. bavia (cause to take shelter from the sun) < T. 

bavia, of. T. bavia (take shelter from the sun); S. bavia (as in phage bavia = contest with, argue with), of. S. bavia (bet); T. bavia 111) (cause to take) < T. 
bavia, of. T. bavia (take); N. bavia (give in marriage i.e. cause to take), of. N. bavia (take); S. bavia T. bavia N. 
bavia (make firm, fasten) < S. bavia T. bavia N. 
bavia, of. S. bavia T. bavia N. bavia (be firm, be fixed); S. 
bavia 111) T. bavia 111) (cause to return) < 
S. bavia T. bavia N. bavia < S. bavia T. bavia N. bavia 
< S. bavia T. bavia N. bavia, of. S. bavia T. bavia N. bavia; 
S. bavia (return); S. bavia T. bavia (cause to speak), of. S. bavia 
T. bavia (speak); T. bavia (cause to hear) < T. bavia.

utlæs T. utlæs (cause to hear), of. S. utlæs T. utlæs 
(hear) and GE. utlæs and Ylæ 11) T. utlæs N. bavia (cause to

1) Of. (b) below.

11) Of. Phoa., p. 64 and 77.

111) Due to a process of retrogressive assimilation.

11v) Due to a process of progressive assimilation and elision: T. bavia is however due to a process of elision only.

v) The y preceding iæs is sometimes vocalised to y, where-upon the i of iæs is elided giving a form utlæs.

When the performative suffix is attached to a syllabic root whose final consonant is  

n, the combination S. *nina T. *nina N. *nina > S. *noko T. *noko N. *noko, e.g. S. bintasa T. bintasa (cause to sing, cause to dance); cf. S. bina T. bina N. bina (sing, dance); S. bintasa (make red hot); cf. S. biana (be red hot); T. bintasa (cause to dry); cf. S. maina T. maina (become dry); S. bintasa T. maina N. maina (cause to refuse); cf. S. maina T. maina N. maina (refuse).

In the following cases, however, N. has both the combinations nina and atha: teniha = teniha (cause to be disgnastad), cf. S. teena T. teena N. teena (tire, disgust); knothena = knothena (enable, cause to be able), cf. S. kenga T. kenga N. kenga (be able, manage to do something). In the case of N. ama (administer an oath), cf. N. ape (take an oath), no contraction is attached probably, to distinguish it from eathha (cause to be sufficient), cf. S. ama N. ama (become rich, become sufficient).

When the performative suffix is attached to a syllabic root the final consonant of

1) Cf. Phon. p. 67. T. budvia N. budvia may be: (a) an abbreviated form of T. *budvia; *budvia arrived at through the following processes: i. vocalisation y *v > w thus giving: T. *budwina N. budwina; ii. retrogressive assimilation y *v > w thus giving: T. *budwina N. *budwina; iii. reversion of *v > w thus giving T. budwina N. budwina; iv. elision of the i thus giving T. budvia N. budvia; in this case the root upon which the performative stem is based is budvia; or (b) a direct derivation of an Um. form *budwina *v > T. budwina N. *budwina the i of which is then elided.


iii) This contraction of *v + S. giga T. giga N. giga also takes place if *v is a suffix-consonant, e.g. S. lekanasa T. lekanasa make sufficient, make equal); cf. S. lekanasa T. lekanasa N. lekanasa (be sufficient, be equal); T. hufana (be jealous of each other);  

ji (be jealous of each other).
which is 1, the 1 is changed into 8.1 (8) 5.4 under
the influence of the 1 of S. lal T. lal N. lal, e.g. S.
nalā (teach to read), cf. S. nāla T. nāla N. nāla (read, count); S. tālās nēgal nēgal (hard, cause to grade),
ct. S. tāla T. nāla (grade); T. nēgal (cause to abuse, re-
vile), cf. T. nēla (abuse, revile); S. nēgal T. nēgal N.
bedī (make to boil), cf. S. nēla T. nēla N. nēla (boil).
iv. Under the influence of
the 1 of S. lal T. lal N. lal an open 1 or an open 1 in the
preceding syllable becomes closed, e.g. S. liṅga T.
liṅga (cause to lack), cf. S. likā T. liṅga
N. likā (lack); S. nāliṅga nāliṅga (cause or help to
adorn) cf. S. nāliṅga T. nāliṅga N. nāliṅga (adorn); S. nāliṅga
T. bōnās bōnās (bowl), cf. S. nāla T. nāla N. nāla (see);
N. kvenāliṅga N. kvenāliṅga (cf. S. kvenā T. kvenā N. kvenā (cf.
11 above); S. nāliṅga T. nāliṅga N. nāliṅga (cause to rot), cf.

1) a) The 1 of S. lal T. lal N. lal has a similar effect on a
preceding suffix-consonant, e.g. S. liṅga T. liṅga N.
liṅga (saint, bid farewell), cf. S. likā T. likā N.
likā (greet). In S. the 1 preceding the 1 of likā, whether
as a suffix-consonant or as a suffix-consonant in itself, also,
as a result of vowel-clinics, immediately preceded by another
1, in such cases the 1 has as a rule no phonetic influence on
the preceding 1, e.g. līla (cause to cry) cf. S. lāla T. lāla
lāla (cry), S. likā (cause to glide), cf. S. likā T.
likā (glide), cf. S. likā T. likā a likā (help the
the disciples of the Rājputana group of India, compare p. 70), but with
speakers the second 1 is in such cases slightly prolonged, so
much so that in the case with 1 appearing singly before 1.

11) Cf. Prop., P. 17. As a rule, this narrowing influence of the
1 of S. lal T. lal N. lal affects the vowels of all preceding
syllables, if 1 end e.g. T. lāliṅga (cause to flow), cf. T. lāliṅga
N. lāliṅga (flow), S. liṅga (replant, reunite), cf. S. likā
T. līliṅga N. līliṅga (plant for or on); S. dāliṅga T. dāliṅga
(don't escape, make smooth), cf. S. likā T. likā N. likā (glide,
slip) T. līliṅga (escape); S. dāliṅga (send into agreement
with one another), S. dāliṅga T. dāliṅga N. dāliṅga (agree
with one another); S. dāliṅga (cause to stick), cf. S. likā
N. k Tripāla (stick fast). But as far as I could ascertain this
narrowing effect of 1 is not always extended to the syllable(s)
beyond the one preceding 1; however, this seems to be a peculiar-
ity of individual speakers and is certainly not common so, e.g.
in T. I found both rejection and rejection (cause to slip) cf. S.
liṅga T. liṅga N. liṅga (slip); in the same language also:
liṅga and etalās (cause to sing), cf. S. valla T. valla N.
valla (sing); and in S. kliṅga and etalās (finish boiling,
next to death), cf. S. valla (next for) T. valla (put to death).
cf. S. këtha T. këtha N. këtha (roth); S. këthisi T. këthisi N. këthisi (tax, impose a tribute), cf. S. këtha T. këtha N. këtha (choose); S. këthiisa (send cattle to a place of safety), cf. S. këtha (go to a place of safety of cattle); S. nyekësa (cause nausea), cf. S. nyëka (feel sick); S. rekiisa T. rekiisa N. rekiisa (sell, cause to buy), cf. S. rëka T. rëka (buy); N. entësa = N. enëka, cf. N. enë (cf. ii above).

v. When the verbal root is consonantal the performative suffix S. jësa T. jësa N. jësa" is in some cases used regularly, i.e. it is attached to the root; in other cases however it is attached to the corresponding simple stem, with the result that the connecting vowel j combines with the terminative of the simple stem, resulting in what would appear to be a suffix S. jësa T. jësa N. jësa. I could not ascertain the reasons why such a procedure is adopted here, neither could I indicate any rules as to when this combination takes place and when not.

Examples: S. jësa T. jësa N. jësa (give food to eat), cf. S. jë T. jë N. jë (eat); S. jësa T. jësa N. jësa (cause to rain), cf. S. jë T. jë N. jë (rain); T. jësa (cause to disappear as darkness, night etc.), cf. S. jë T. jë N. jë (disappear of darkness); S. shëssa (cause to die), cf. S. shësa T. shësa (die); S. noësa N. noësa (cause to drink) \( \text{cf.} \) S. noë T. noë N. noë (drink); T. jësa (cause to burn), cf. T. jë (burn) \( \text{cf.} \); N. jësa

---

1) A similar procedure is sometimes adopted (a) with the perfect conjugational form of some monosyllabic simple stems, e.g. S. shësa (have burnt), cf. S. shësa (burn); N. kële (have heard), cf. N. kësa (hear) \( \text{cf.} \) Chapter 2 § 8 c); (b) with the secondary passive stems corresponding to some monosyllabic simple stems, cf. Chapter 18 § II.

11) Cf. S. noësa T. noësa N. noësa (cause to drink) probably from S. noësa T. noësa N. noësa (cf. De. noës = drink Phen. p. 264) also N. kësa (keep back, cause to stay behind) probably from N. kësa, cf. N. kësa (stay behind). In both these cases S. jë T. jë N. jë has been vocalised to g and the j of the suffix subsequently elided.

111) No simple stem T. jë N. jë (burn) seems to exist.
(cause to burn) cf. T. tya (burn)

vii) No simple stem T. tya (burn) seems to exist.

ii) T. tya (hear well) is not a performative but a durative (extensive-performative stem.

iii) Cf. also T. tya = T. tya.

iv) Cf. T. tya (= S. tya) < T. tya, here the vowel y has been vocalised to e and the I of the glide; whereas with T. tya N. tya (= S. tya) < T. tya, T. tya we have vocalisation y > e, progressive assimilation e > I and subsequent elision of I of also N. tya (fall) Phen. p. 192.

v) Due to a process of elision, cf. also N. tya (cause to retreat, conquer).

vi) The S. tya E. tya of S. tya T. tya N. tya is the cause of the initial vowel of S. tya T. tya N. tya being closed (cf. Phen., pp. 71 and 77). To the same cause must be attributed the change of e into i if the former is the vowel of the root to which S. tya T. tya N. tya is attached.

vii) Identical in form but not in origin with the durative (extensive) - performative of. Chapter B § 4(II). 6(1d)(16)). Such an identity in form is apt to cause confusion; and this is perhaps the reason why performative S. tya T. tya N. tya is such a scarce suffix — it having mostly developed a stage further.
S. kōsense 1) N. kwanā (cause to withdraw, turn away from), cf. S. kōsense N. kwanā (become a renegade, change an opinion) and S. kōsense N. kwanā (bend, turn); S. palesa N. palesa (blossom, cause to burst open), cf. S. palesa N. palesa (crack, snap, burst open) no corresponding simple stem; T. thelessa (supply, give food) cf. N. thelēna (give support) and S. thēla (do homage to, pay tax); S. belessa T. belessa N. belekkā 11 (load a pack animal, put on a load), cf. S. pēlēna T. pēlēga N. pēlēna (give birth to a child) (no corresponding simple stem) and T. pēlēga N. pēlēga (carry a burden) no corresponding simple stem.

(11)(a) The performatives denote the "promoting, speeding" 111 of the action expressed by the simple stem. It implies one or other of the following as regards the action denoted by the simple stem: that the action in caused, the suffix may here be described as performatives (causative), it is of this nature in about 50 cases; that the performance of the action is desired, the suffix may here be described as performatives (assistive), it is of this nature in about 40 cases; that an element of intensity is added to the action, the suffix may here be described as performatives (intensive), it is of this nature in about 15 cases. Each of these various subordinate functions will now be dealt with in turn. It will be noticed that in several cases one and the same performatives stem has two of the above-mentioned subfunctions.

1) Cf. S. kōsēchīsa = S. kōsense N. kwanā.


111) Cf. the definition given by Marconna to the Karanga parallel of S. lere T. lere N. lere in A Grammar of Central Karanga, p. 188.
The suffix S.ing T.ing N.ing in its performative (causative) sense denotes that the subject of the performative stem, causes the object \(^1\) of the performative stem (i.e. the subject of the corresponding simple stem) to perform the action denoted by the corresponding simple stem \(^1\). The force denoted by the suffix is mostly of an indirect nature, as distinct from the factitive (causative) which is mostly direct \(^\text{iii}\). Examples:

S. kea ba buis T. kea ba buis (I cause them to speak), cf.
S. ba buis T. ba a buis (they speak); S. ba a blois T. ba a re tlois (they cause us to hate), cf.
S. rea blois T. re a tlois (we hate);
S. kea a jariis N. ke a re jariis (I cause you to carry), cf.
S. na jere N. o a jere (you carry); S. kea no lefis T. ke a no lefis N. ke a no lefis (I cause him to pay i.e. I fine him), cf.
S. en lefa T. o a lefa N. o a lefa (he pays).

The suffix S.ing T.ing N.ing in its performative (assistive) sense denotes assistance to perform the action expressed by the corresponding simple stem \(^iv\), e.g.
S. batliss T. batliss (help to seek), cf.
S. batla T. batla (seek); N. fatliss (cause to scratch, help to scratch), cf.
S. fatla T. fatla N. fatla (dig a hole, scratch); A. helissa (help to mow), cf.
S. hella (mow);
S. blois (cause or help to beat), cf.
S. blois N. blois (overcome); S. jeliss (cause or help to sow), cf.
S. jela T. jela N. jela (sow); S. ekissa (help to nurse), cf.
S. eksi T. eksi N. eksi (nurse); T. tibodissa (help to bear a burden), cf.
S. skhola T. tibola N. skhola (take); N. skholla (help or cause to chop wood),
cf.
N. skhla (chop); S. jariis N. jariis (help or cause to carry),
cf.
S. jere N. jere (carry); S. lewissa T. lewiss N. lewiss (cause or help to plough), cf.
S. lewiss N. lewiss N. lewiss (plough).

---

1) i.e. the principal object cf. Term., p. 177.


iii) For a discussion on the semantic difference between the performative and factitive suffixes, cf. Chapter 17.

The suffix s.isa T.isa N.isa in its performative (intensive) sense adds intensity to the action expressed by the corresponding simple stem1, e.g. S.hopisa (would well, help to mould), cf. S.hopsa T.hopsa N.hopsa (would); T.hopisa (drive away by causing to run very fast), cf. S.hopsa T.hopsa N.hopsa (scrape, sweep away); S.batisa (shut or close very tightly), cf. S.batisa T.batisa N.batisa (make a floor, fill up a hole); S.otila (cause to strike well), cf. S.otila N.otila (strike); S.polisa (help to thrash, thrash well), cf. S.pole N.pole (thresh); S.lemisa (cause to plough, plough well, help to plough), cf. S.lemisa T.lemisa N.lemisa (plough); S.totila N.totila (praise, glorify), cf. S.totila T.totila N.totila (honour, make praiseworthy).

It is perhaps noteworthy that in comparison with the position in other Bantu languages, e.g. in Tswa and Tsili, where the counterpart of S.isa T.isa N.isa is only used with an intensive force11), in Sotho this suffix is very seldom used with this force. The reason why in Sotho the performative suffix has practically lost its intensive nature, is probably due to the fact that there exists in Sotho a reduplicated form of the performative suffix, viz. S.isisa T.isisa N.isisa which conveys the intensive of the performative12), and

1) Cf. Phem. p. 45, Jacottet A Grammar of the Sotho language footnote (b), Th. Grig Magw. thewara 1. Sotho grammar p. 26. It is perhaps noteworthy that in some languages the parallel of S.isa T.isa N.isa is purely intensive, e.g. in Tswa, cf. Phem. p. 45, 11a, cf. Smith Handbook of the Isi language p. 129 and Ambala, cf. Meitner Linguistische Studien in Ostafrika" U.S.O.S. vol. 7 p. 284. Debe in his Term. p. 106 suggests the term intensive, to indicate the suffix termed by us performative intensive, as opposed to causative. This way of forming the suffix is however not suitable for Sotho, where as will be observed and the same stem ending in this suffix may sometimes be both causative and intensive and even causative, some coordinating term would therefore seem to be necessary.


12) In e.g. Tswa the counterpart of S.isa T.isa N.isa has not got an intensive force at all, this force is conveyed by the reduplicated form of Isi language, cf. Phem. p. 106.
which has probably replaced S.ise T.isa N.iša as far as its performative (intensive) force is concerned. The procedure of reduplicating a suffix to convey an intensive idea is also adopted with the actional (capable) S.ala T.ala N.alä, the applicative S.ła T.ła N.ła, and the actional (destructive) S.ola T.ola N.ola.

(b) The suffix S.ise T.ise N.iša has sometimes lost its performative force, e.g. S. batliša (try to sell), cf. S.batla T.batla (seek); T.gakisa (disguise), cf. S.hake T.gaka N.xaka (escape one's memory, puzzle); S.hl̩elša (look, observe from above), cf. S.hl̩ela (spy out); N.kxopiša (drink out the drags), cf. N.kxopa (drink out everything); S.supiša (show to), cf. S.supa T.šupa N.šupa (point out, show); S.kho̩hiša T.kwetlisa (cheat), cf. S. kho̩hiša T.kwetlha N.kwēhla (become loose, unstable).

(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the performative stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S.hlakiša (exercise oneself, practice), cf. S.hlaka (be bright, visible); S.tšelša T.tshedisa (console, comfort), cf. T.tshaha (live); N.thaiša (cause to be zigzag), cf. T.thaya N.thaya (mark out for a foundation, draw a line); N.robiša (render it more difficult for somebody), cf. S.robba T.robba N.robba (break); S.kho̩hiša T.kwetlisa (cheat), cf. S.kho̩hiša T.kwetlha N.kwēhla (become loose, unstable).

(d) About 240 of the simple stems corresponding to performative stems are intransitive and 150 intransitive.

1) Cf. Chapter 12.
When the corresponding simple stems are intransitive, 
S. is a T. is a N. is a in its performative (causative) sense conveys the idea of producing a certain state or effect, e.g. 
N. krušōle (whitewash, i.e. cause to be in a white state) cf. 
N. krušōla (get whitewashed); S. atis a T. atis a (increase, multiply i.e. cause to be in an increased state) cf. S. ata T. ata N. ata (become numerous, become increased); S. belis a T. béaling N. béaling (cause to boil i.e. cause to be in a boiling state), cf. S. běla T. běla N. běla (boil); S. belis a T. béaling N. béaling (cause to rot i.e. cause to be in a rotting state), cf. S. běla T. běla N. běla (rot); S. fihilis a T. fihilis a N. fihilis (cause to arrive), cf. S. fihla T. fihla N. fihla (arrive); 
S. folis a N. folis a (make cool), cf. S. folis a T. folis a N. folis a (become cool); N. krušōle (cause to shake), cf. N. krušōla (be loose, shaking); S. melis a T. medis a N. medis a (cause to grow, cause to sprout), cf. S. melis a T. melis a N. melis a (grow).

When the corresponding simple stems are transitive S. is a T. is a N. is a in its performative (causative) sense conveys the idea of causing an action to take place, e.g. S. skišiši (cause to betray), cf. S. skišiši N. skišiši (betray); T. fihilis a (cause to hide or cause to bury), cf. T. fihilis a N. fihilis a (hide); S. folis a T. medis a N. medis a (herd, cause to graze) cf. S. folis a T. bala N. bala (graze); T. atis a (cause to wag), cf. T. atis a (wag as a tail); S. rekišišiši T. rekišišiši N. rekišišiši (cause to buy, sell), cf. S. rekišišiši T. rekišišiši N. rekišišiši (buy); S. lekišišiši T. lekišišiši N. lekišišiši (cause to pay, fine), cf. S. lekišišiši T. lekišišiši N. lekišišiši (pay).

(e) All performative stems are transitive excepting N. phanális a (run, splash in water) no corresponding simple stem.

(f) There are performative stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stems shows, however, in some
cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. T. phitseisa (kill an insect by rubbing it between the finger and thumb), cf. T. phitseña (become bruised or broken); T. tseping (collect in small quantities), cf. T. tsepole (milk a cow dry); S. mzipisa (spit on, make wet with spittle); N. kxapila (tame).

(g) Performative stems whose corresponding simple stems are transitive may take two objects, a principal and a subsidiary\(^1\) object, e.g.

\begin{align*}
\text{S. ke a tsebling ba the litlhla} & \quad \text{N. ke a tsebling ba the litlhla (I tell the people the news)}; \quad \text{cf. S. ke a tsebling ba xokwaka (know)}; \\
\text{S. ka jwisa manla morela} \quad & \quad \text{N. ka jwisa manla morela (I cause the men to carry the burdens)}; \quad \text{cf. S. jwisa N. jwisa (carry)}; \\
\text{S. ka lefisa morela moa} \quad & \quad \text{N. ka lefisiga morela moa (they fine the men a sheep)}; \quad \text{cf. S. lefisa T. lefisa (pay)}.
\end{align*}

In T. both the principal and the subsidiary objects may be represented by objectival verbal concords, the concord of the principal object being the nearest to the verbal stem, e.g. ke a a ba jwisa (I tell it - i.e. the news - to them). In S. and N. the principal object is as a rule represented by an objectival verbal concord, the subsidiary object by an absolute pronoun, e.g. S. ke a tsebling tsho N. ke a ba tsebling tsho (I tell it - i.e. the news - to them); if however, the principal object is to be emphasised, the subsidiary object may be represented by an objectival verbal concord, and the principal object by an absolute pronoun, e.g. S. ke li tsebling kapa N. ke a di tsebling kapa (I tell it - i.e. the news - to them).

1) Cf. Form, pp. 165 and 176.

11) A similar process is adopted in T. for the sake of emphasis, e.g. ke a izising kena (I tell it - i.e. the news - to them).
In all three languages the principal object may be represented by an objective verbal concord, the subsidiary object being retained as a noun, e.g. ke no teebi la ditaba T. ke no itaise mb uke N. ke a no teebi la ditaba (I tell him the news). For the sake of emphasis the positions may be reversed, e.g. S. ke li teebi la wana T. ke a itaise wana N. ke a di teebi la wana (I tell it — i.e. the news — to the man).

The principal object is the object of the performative idea and this is also, the general state of affairs in all three languages. In S. the position is however sometimes reversed — the subsidiary object being the object of the performative idea1), e.g. u tla re shaping tichere (you will make the teacher beat us), u tla be lesa tay (you will cause the lion to eat them), cf. in this connection a semantically identical construction with the stem etea (do, make), e.g. u tla etea here tichere u re shene (you will make the teacher beat us), u tla etea here tou e be it (you will make the lion eat them).

(i) The performative (intensive)
S. itise T. itise N. itise.

(ii) The same term is here employed as is employed for one of the subordinate functions of S. itise T. itise N. itise, because, as far as I could ascertain, the same denoted by S. itise T. itise N. itise is in all respects semantically identical with that denoted by the performative (intensive) S. itise T. itise N. itise1), and, as indicated in § 11 above S. itise T. itise N. itise has probably displaced to a large extent the performative (intensive) S. itise T. itise N. itise.

11) Cf. § 11(ii)(a) above.
Examples of stems in S.jishe T.jishe N.jiisiše S.batlisise T.batlisise (search carefully), cf. S.batlisise T.batlisise (help to seek) and S.batla T.batle (seek); S.fetisise N.fetiisiše (exceed very much), cf. S.fetisse T.fetisse N.fetiisa (cause to pass, exceed) and S.feta T.feta N.feta (pass); N.tsebiisse (know well), cf. S.tsehise N.tebiisa (cause to know) and S.tseba N.tseba (know); S.tebisise (look very carefully), cf. S.tehise (show) and S.shiba T.shiba (look at); S.bontisise 1) N.bontiisse (see well), cf. S.bontise T.bontise N.bontis (show cause to see) and S.bong T.bong N.bong (see).

All simple stems corresponding to performative (intensive) stems in S.jishe T.jishe N.jiisiše are transitive.

1) The performative-stational(capable)

S.jishe T.jishe N.jiisiše occurs as well as the stationary (capable) - performative S.ochrome T.ochrome N.oxide, but not one example could be found of a root taking respectively both these suffixes. Examples of derivative stems ending in S.jishe T.jishe N.jiisiše: T.katise (be broken in, trained), cf. T.katise (break in, train) and T.kate (become trained); S.kabalishe (be glad, pleased), cf. S.kablishe N.kablishe (please) and S.kabha T.kablisa N.kabla (interest); N. kodiliše (be respectable), cf. S.koldise T.koldise N.kolda (cause to grow, educate) and S.kole T.kola N.kola (grow).

Examples of derivative stems in S.ochrome T.ochrome N.

oxide: S.ochrome (cause to be dreadful), cf. S.ochrome T.ochrome (be dreadful) and S.ochrome T.ochrome N.oxide (fear, flee from); N.rocexiše (cause to be knowable), cf. S.tebiše N.tebiše (get known, be known) and S.teba N.teba (know); T.rocexiše (cause to be afraid), cf. T.roboge (be afraid) and

1) S.bontisise = S.bontisise.
T.τρα (terrify).  

2. (a) S.συν T.τρα N.δόω in its stational (capable) sense in a non-basic position; it occurs commonly in this position, and I am quoting only a few examples below. The contribution of S.συν T.τρα N.δόω to the force of these compounds is that in each case the stational (capable) idea is added to the idea expressed by the suffix without S.συν T.τρα N.δόω. The actional (capable)-stational (capable) N.δόω, e.g. N.δόωξα (be within the range of sight, be in a state of becoming visible), cf. S.δόωξα T.δόωξα N.δόωξα (appear, become visible) and S.δόω T.δόω N.δόω (see). The applicative (intensive)-stational (capable) S.δήλοθα, e.g. S.μασσώλοθα (be bearable), cf. S.μασσώλα N.μασσώλα (bear patiently) and S.μασσώλα N.μασσώλα (listen to) no corresponding simple stem. 

The reciprocal-stational (capable)-applicative T.αντάλλα, e.g. T.αντάλλα (be too much for), cf. T.αντάλλα (be too much or superabundant as food) and S.ατλα N.ατλα (prosper).

The stational (destructive)-applicative-stational (capable) S.μαρτύρα, e.g. S.μαρτύρα (be acceptable), cf. S.μαρτύρα T.μαρτύρα N.μαρτύρα (accept); S.μαρτύρα T.μαρτύρα N.μαρτύρα (take away) and S.μαρτύρα T.μαρτύρα N.μαρτύρα (touch).

The stational (capable) is not found immediately following the stational (destructive) suffix.

(b) S.συν T.τρα N.δόω in its stational (causative) sense is not found in a non-basic position.

1) On p. 71 of his Grammatik des Sethos Endemann maintains that ἱά ὄλος > ἵκολος, and ἵκολος ὄλος > ἵκολος, and quotes in support one example in each case, viz. ἓκολος (cf. below) and ἵκολος (move out of a place), cf. S.τλεσσω T.τλεσσω N.τλεσσω (remove) and S.τλεσσω T.τλεσσω N.τλεσσω (come). These two compound suffixes are extremely rare - the above-mentioned are the only examples I could find. To make such an important conclusion supported by two examples only is certainly very dangerous, not to mention that of T.βεγγαλος (take vengeance upon), T.βεγγαλος N.βεγγαλας (averte, repel, or answer the words of a previous speaker, in N. also: bring the cud back into the mouth as does a beast), for S.βεγγα Τ.βεγγα N.βεγγα (cause to return) cf. sa(1) above.
((5)) Single:

1) Stational (destructive) S.oh T.oh N.oxa
e.g. T.ohoboxa (become searched or sinned), cf. S.ohoboxa
T.oho N.oho (be bitter, smart as an inflamed eye, prick as fine thorns); S.khohoboxa T.lhohoboxa N.lhohoxa (part with, give up for good), cf. S.lhohoboxa T.lhohoboxa N.lhohoxa (pluck off); N.
phoxa (deviate, swerve) < N.phaoxa cf. N.phaya (fling open, tear open); S.inpaha T.inpaha (get out of the water), cf. S.inpaha T.inpaha N.inpaha (put into water); N.krsoxa (get loose of a bundle), cf. N.krarsa (tie together); S.trhoxa T.trhoxa N.trhoxa
(go away, leave), cf. S.trh T.trh N.trh (some).

If S.oh T.oh N.oxa is attached to a root whose vowel
is S.oh T.oh N.oh or S.oh T.oh N.oh this vowel becomes S.p T.p N.p or S.p T.p N.p, e.g. S.fenoxa N.fenoxa (be thrown over, be turned over), cf. N.fene (bend, turn); S.klepoxa (emerge off),
S.klepoxa (emerge of), S.klepoxa (get apart),
cf. S.klepoxa T.klepoxa N.klepoxa (choose, pick, out); T.poxa
(go away, get out of the way), cf. S.pox T.pox N.pox (stand);
S.poxa T.poxa N.poxa (turn round, turn back, get un-
furled), cf. S.poxa T.poxa N.poxa (fold up); T.krsboxa N.
krsboxa (become freed, be rubbed off, fall off an earh),
cf. N.krsboxa (notch); S.khrobha (cast teeth) N.khrobha (fall
cut as grain cut of a cob), cf. N.krora (chisel, hollow out);
T.oxoxa N.oxoxa (become warm), cf. S.oxm T.oxm N.oxm (become
dry); N.oxoxa (become free), cf. N.ox T.ox N.ox (tie).

ii) The stationl (destructive) denotes a state of undoing or destroying of the action or state expressed by the corresponding simple stem. It implies either of the following:

That the action or state is reversed.

The suffix may here be termed the stationary destructive-
reversive); it has this force in about 150 cases, e.g. S.amebe T.amebe N.amebe (take away from), cf. S.ame T.ame N.ame (touch); T.alege (become dim of the eyes), cf. T.ale (open the eyes wide); S.amebeha T.amegena (get detached, break off), cf. N.akega (touch); N.lemoxa (get loose e.g. the handle of an axe), of. N.lam (fix to, stick to); S.amebeha (get torn violently), cf. N.ame T.amega N.ameba (get drawn back as extended legs), cf. S.ame T.ame N.ame (stretch out e.g. the legs); T.amega N.ameba (run fast), of. N.ame (be slow); T.abege (peel off, become peeled off), of. N.obe (get covered); T.abege N.abebe (move out of the way), of. S.abebe T.abebe N.abebe (stop); S.hetjebe T.atega N.ataxa (leave off treading on), of. S.hate T.ata N.ata (tread); T.atega (turn back the head after looking round, turn away from), of. S.shetjebe T.ateba (look, look around); N.arae (be in such a state that it can be disentangled), of. S.arae T.arae N.arae (spin, get entwined).

That the action or state is extended, the suffix may here be called the stational (destructive-extensive); it has this force in about 150 cases, e.g. S.amebe N.ameba (become separated, get divided) cf. T.ame N.ame (cut open a swelling); T.alege (rise to the surface as saw in a pot or refuse in a river), of. S.alega T.alega N.alega (boil); T.arae N.arae (become torn or rent, become torn down altogether), of. N.arae (wound the head); T.atege (be blotted out, become wiped out), of. N.atege (extinguish a fire); T.arae (start to run fast, run with all one's might) N.arae (rebound), of. S.arae T.arae N.arae (kick); N.taero (smash, tear to pieces), of. S.ta (strike on the head); S.taero (get snatched away, wiped away, swept away), of. T.taero (grab food and run away
with it); 8.napaga (get up slowly, walk languidly), cf. N.napna (be sticky or liquid, stick together); 8.phatleh T.phatloza N.phatloza (burst open, get split or rent apart), cf. 8.phatel (break, burst of the water pouch); 8.phateha (get turned over), of 8.pheta T.pheta N.pheta (repeat, do again); N.phapheza (wake up from day dreaming), cf. 8.phapha (jump up); 8.nathoza (go to pieces of old cloth), cf. N.natho (grind - idea/breaking into pieces).

(b) The suffix 8.she T.she N.she has sometimes lost its stational (destructive) function, and it would appear that the force of 8.she T.she N.she is not that of 8.she T.she N.she is semantically dominant in these derivatives, e.g. 8.bebhe (become small, light), cf. N.beba (be as light as a feather); 8.shehe (get peeled), cf. N.she (skin); N.shehe (be light), cf. N.safe (be light); T.simoza N.jimoxa (begin, be begin), cf. N.she (plant).

(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the stational (destructive) stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. 8.ileha T.ileza (become strong, be revived), cf. 8.ile T.ile N.ile (feel disgust for, avoid); T.ileza (wander away from, become estranged), cf. S.ile lele (lie down, spend the night); 8.ilehe T.ileza N.ilehe (think, be grateful), cf. 8.ileha T.ileha N.ileha (look at); N.kyomza (gather all together), cf. N.kyomza (touch); T. phetloza (be dim of the eyes), cf. 8.phetla (be purulent).

1) As can be seen from the above I regard the difference between the two functions of 8.she T.she N.she as merely secondary and not primary. This is in agreement with K.Endemann's contention as far as N. is concerned, cf. W.N.A., p. 59. A similar phenomenon has also been observed as regards the function of the representative of 8.she T.she N.she in other Bantu languages, e.g. by Narquens for Karanga, cf. A Grammar of Central Karanga, p. 197, and by Bowles for Kituyu, cf. Kituyu Grammar, p. 106. Both disagree on this point and think that we should in this case accept two suffixes identical in form but not in function, cf. Form, p. 89. What the position is in Bantu languages generally I do not venture to say, but as far as Betho is concerned, this suffix has, as indicated above, only one function, viz. indicating, which, however, falls into two sub-heads vis. reversing and extending. It may perhaps be added that it would be extraordinary to have in Betho two suffixes identical in form but different in function, and in origin.
(d) Simple stems corresponding to stational

(destructive) stems are in some cases transitive in others

intransitive\(^1\), e.g. (for meanings of examples here quoted, cf.
(a) above) : S.aruma T.aruma N.aruma, cf. S.ama T.ama N.ama

(transitive), T.atalo, cf. T.ala (transitive); S.komohe T.

komohe, cf. N.komo (transitive); S.aruma N.aruma, cf. T.ama

N.ama (transitive); T.arama N.arama, cf. N.ama (transitive);

S.wvomo of N.wvomo (intransitive); T.arama of S.ama T.

ala (intransitive); S.wvomo of N.wvomo (intransitive); N.

phomohe cf. S.aphohe (intransitive).

(e) Most stational (destructive) stems are

intransitive, the following few are however transitive: S.

hlemhe T.tlhabohe N.hlebohe (leave, part with), cf. S.hlebo

T.tlebohe N.hlebo (pluck off, out); S.lemhe T.lemhe N.lemhe

(observe, pay attention), cf. S.lemhe N.lemhe (be well acquainted

with, know well); S.amhe T.amhe N.amhe (take away from, de-

prive), cf. S.ama T.ama N.amhe (touch); T.ahpohhe (twist, draw

a little water), no corresponding simple stem; S.aphohe (noteh),

of. N.komo (touch); S.komohe (desire something much without

getting it), no corresponding simple stem; S.ahbohe T.ahbohe

N.hlebohe (thanked), cf. S.ahbo T.ala N.ala (look at).

(f) There are stational (destructive) stems

which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stem;

a comparison with other derivative stems also having no cor-

responding simple stems shows, however, in some cases a probable

---

1) Endemann maintains (Grammatik des Setho, p. 64) that when

stational (destructive) stems have corresponding intransitive

simple stem, the stational (destructive) stem are semantically

the opposite of the simple stem, but when the corresponding

simple stems are transitive, the stational (destructive) stems are

the opposite of derivative stems in S.ama T.ama N.ama derived

from the same roots. I have made a thorough and comprehensive

examination of derivative stems in S.ama T.ama N.ama and S.ama

T.ama N.ama derived from the same roots, but it seems to me there

is no justification for making such a differentiation, e.g. S.

amohe T.amoho N.amohe (take away from, deprive), and S amohe

(be conceived in an affair), and S.ama T.ama N.ama transitive (touch).

N.alamohe (become loose), and S.alahe T.alahe N.alahe (tie, bind).

N.alahe transitive (bind); T.kateno N.kateno (move back, move a little distance away) and T.kateno (get filled up), and S.

kato T.kato N.kahe transitive (treat, press); N.korohe (get

separated, detached), and S.korohe N.korohe (be chosen or

picked out), and S.korohe T.korohe N.korohe transitive (choose).
common non-extant simple stem, e.g. T. *halega* (be in season of a female animal), cf. S. *haleka* (go from one cow to another of a bull); T. *kamora* (swell), cf. S. *kamotha* (swell); S. *paroa* (split open), cf. N. *paroxane* (tear in two); N. *thawepora* (split out); S. *yrokohe* (come out, e.g. a stone); N. *tatoxa* (change the mind, become disloyal); T. *kataoga* (break out into a rash or eruption).

B) Compound:

1. Stational (destructive) in basic position:

   a) (1) The stationa( destructive) - reciprocal

   S. *ehana* T. *agama* N. *umana*.

   (11) There are only about twenty derivative stems ending in this suffix, and with the exception of three or four they all indicate one or other idea of moving or going away from each other, e.g. S. *ehana* T. *amogana* N. *amoxane* (take away from each other), cf. S. *amhe* T. *amogo* N. *amora* (take away from, deprive) and S. *ame* T. *ana* N. *ame* (touch); S. *ehana* N. *aroxane* (get separated from each other), cf. S. *eroha* N. *aroxa* (become separated, divided) and T. *ara* N. *ara* (cut open a swelling); N. *leposana* (get separated from the handle), cf. N. *lemore* (get loose, e.g. the handle of an axe) and N. *lema* (stick to);

   T. *katogana* N. *katoxane* (move away from each other), cf. T. *katone* N. *katoxa* (move back, away) and S. *kato* T. *kato* N. *kato* (tread, press); S. *lephane* (notice one another), cf. S. *lepho* T. *lepara* N. *lemore* (observe, pay attention to) and S. *lame* N. *lame* (be well acquainted with); T. *leborana* N. *leboxane* (thank one another), cf. S. *leboha* T. *leboga* N. *leboxa* (thank) and S. *lebo* T. *lebo* N. *leba* (look at).
bb)(i) The stational (destructive) factitive \( S.\text{on} \ T.\text{on} N.\text{en} < S.\text{on} T.\text{en} N.\text{en} \)

(ii)(a) This suffix adds the factitive idea to the idea expressed by the stational (destructive) stem, e.g., \( S.\text{tloea} \ T.\text{tloea} N.\text{tloea} \) (remove, take away), cf. \( S.\text{tloea} \ T.\text{tloea} N.\text{tloea} \) (come); \( S.\text{khloea} N.\text{khloea} \) (cause to hope, promise), cf. \( S.\text{khloea} N.\text{khloea} \) (be convinced) and \( N.\text{khloea} \) (satisfy); \( S.\text{lemoga} N.\text{lemoga} \) (advise, draw one's attention to), cf. \( S.\text{lemoga} N.\text{lemoga} \) (observe, pay attention to) and \( S.\text{lemoga} N.\text{lemoga} \) (be well acquainted with); \( S.\text{namoga} N.\text{namoga} \) (draw back, take back), cf. \( S.\text{namoga} N.\text{namoga} \) (drawn back) and \( S.\text{namoga} N.\text{namoga} \) (stretch out); \( S.\text{namoga} N.\text{namoga} \) (make warm), cf. \( S.\text{namoga} N.\text{namoga} \) (become warm) and \( S.\text{lemoga} N.\text{lemoga} \) (become dry); \( S.\text{thiboga} N.\text{thiboga} \) (cause to move out of the way), cf. \( S.\text{thiboga} N.\text{thiboga} \) (move out of the way, give place) and \( S.\text{thiboga} N.\text{thiboga} \) (step).

(b) The following derivative stems in \( S.\text{ips} \ T.\text{ips} N.\text{ips} \) and \( S.\text{ips} \ T.\text{ips} N.\text{ips} \), with identical corresponding simple stems, are given for comparison purposes. It will be observed that in some cases \( S.\text{ips} \ T.\text{ips} N.\text{ips} \) indicates the opposite of \( S.\text{ips} \ T.\text{ips} N.\text{ips} \); but this is not always the case: \( S.\text{hatiqa} T.\text{hatiqa} N.\text{hatiqa} \) (cause to tread, put the foot on, press), \( T.\text{hatiqa} N.\text{hatiqa} \) (cause to move off, move one thing off another), cf. \( S.\text{hata} T.\text{hata} N.\text{hata} \) (tread), \( S.\text{namoga} N.\text{namoga} \) (cause to extend), \( S.\text{namoga} N.\text{namoga} \)


11) In the following case \( T.\text{etsh} + T.\text{en} > T.\text{etsh}:\text{lemotsh} \) (make evident), cf. \( \text{lemoga} \) (observe).
(draw back), of. S. name T. name H. name (extend); S. ilile N. ilile (cause to hate or to avoid), H. ile (and the period of mourning); of. S. ilia T. ilia H. ilia (hate, avoid); S. katise (shut, close very tightly), T. katosa N. katola (remove a thing back) of. S. kata T. kata H. kata (press); S. kholise N. kxedila (satisfy, convince, persuade), S. kholeza N. kxoloza (cause to hope, promise) of. N. kxola (satisfy); S. omisa T. omisa N. omila (cause to dry); S. omasa T. omasa H. omusa (make warm), of. S. omu T. omu H. omu (become dry); T. phamise (turn another's word artfully aside), H. phamola (turn away from the road, withdraw), of. N. phama (make parallel).

(c) The following two stems in S. omu N. omu are intransitive: H. tomoze (brag but be unable to hold your own), no corresponding stational (destructive) stem or corresponding simple stem; S. hlobasa (be nice or sweet to the taste), no corresponding stational (destructive) stem or corresponding simple stem.

cc) Stational (destructive)—performative S. chima N. oxoza: the undermentioned are the only two derivative stems I could find, ending in this suffix. They are given here because they are semantically identical with the derivative stems in S. omu N. omu derived from the same verbal roots: S. hlobohisa (help to give up, console by the gift of a present), of. S. hloboza (= S. hlobobisa), S. hloboa T. tlhobere N. hleboa (part with, give up, leave for good) and S. hlobo T. tlhoba N. hloba (pluck off); H. lemoxila (convince, draw attention to), of. S. lemoga N. lemoga (= N. lemoxila) S. lemoga T. lemoga N. lemoga (pay attention to, observe) and S. lemza N. lemza (be well acquainted with).
2. Stational (destructive) in a non-basic position, the contribution of S.\_p\_ T.\_p\_ N.\_o\_ to the force of these compounds is that in each case the stational (destructive) idea is added to the idea expressed by the suffix without S.\_p\_ T.\_p\_ N.\_o\_.

an) Actional (destructive)—stational (destructive) S.\_p\_ T.\_p\_ N.\_o\_ T.\_p\_ N.\_o\_ (be relieved of a burden), cf. T.\_p\_ N.\_o\_ (unburden) and N.\_o\_ (become heavy).

bt) Protractive—stational (destructive) S.\_p\_ T.\_p\_ N.\_o\_ S.\_p\_ T.\_p\_ (be startled), cf. S.\_p\_ T.\_p\_ N.\_o\_ (get a fright), no corresponding protractive stem; N.\_o\_ (glide out, glide away), cf. N.\_o\_ (glide along) and N.\_o\_ (glide); S.\_p\_ T.\_p\_ N.\_o\_ (pant, start), cf. S.\_p\_ T.\_p\_ (throb, sigh, be moved), no corresponding protractive stem.

B) Strengthened

I Primary \(\rightarrow\) Single:

i) Stational (intensive) N.\_a\_\_1) It is found only in the following two cases: N.\_p\_ N.\_o\_ (do business), no corresponding simple stem; N.\_p\_ N.\_o\_ (deceive by lying), no corresponding simple stem, but cf. S.\_a\_ (be in fault, be wrong).

ii) Semantically there would seem to be no relation between \_a\_ and \_a\_\_1) and it may therefore be argued that \_a\_\_1) is an independent suffix still found in the abovementioned two

1) S. and T. do not have a parallel form.
197.

Although I admit this possibility, I submit, in view of the following points that it is at least just as likely that \textit{kra} is a subordinate form of \textit{xa}:

1. phonologically \textit{kra} is related to \textit{xa}, \textit{kra} having been derived from \textit{xa} through a process of strengthening;

2. other suffixes having similarly related consonants are also semantically related.

I think that when with a given suffix the examples in which it occurs are so few in number, one can hardly avoid being to a certain extent arbitrary in one's classification -- such a classification is perhaps pardonable provided one bears in mind that it is not final.

\(\beta\) Compound:

1. Stational (intensive) in basic position: Only one example could be indicated, viz. the stational (intensive)-reciprocals T.\textit{krana} found in T.\textit{phothkrana} (roll or tum about as a sick person, turn on one side or from side to side), no corresponding simple stem, cf. \textit{phothkrana} in § II (§ 1) (\(\beta\)) below.

2. Stational (intensive) in a non-basic position: this suffix does not occur in this position.

\textbf{II Secondary:}

\((1)_{\nu}^c\) Single:

The stational (capable-intensive) N.\textit{skra}^1

1) S. and T. do not have a parallel form.
found in two examples only, viz. phathakä (press under the knee or under the arm), cf. Ṛ. phatha (press in), phathakä (ephathakä), cf. S. phētha (twist, plait) and Ṛ. phetha (get folded).

The relation between akra and S. Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. akra will be seen from phathakä quoted in (1) below.

(1) Compound:

1. Statistical (capable-intensive) in basic position: The statistical (capable-intensive)-reciprocal T. akra Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. akra found only in the following examples: T. phathakä (turn on one side, roll or toss about as a sick person) for phathakä and phetha of (1) above; Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. phathakä (be in a difficult position, be in straits), cf. S. phathaha (be hard-pressed, be in straits, be over-worked), phathaka (cf. (1) above) and phathā (cf. (1) above).

2. Statistical (capable-intensive) in a non-basic position: this suffix does not occur in this position.

((2) (1)) Single:

Statistical (destructive-intensive) Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. akra, found only in the following examples: Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. phathaka (turn from one side to the other), cf. S. phatha (turn over), S. phētha (twist, plait) and Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. Ṛ. phetha (get folded); Ṛ. Ṛ. phonyaka (escape, break through an enclosure), cf. S. phonya (escape) and Ṛ. Ṛ. phonya (enclose).

(1) Compound:

I could not ascertain a compound suffix with the statistical (destructive-intensive) as one of its component parts.


11) S. and T. do not have a parallel form.
CHAPTER II.

i) Confusive S.lla N.lla, confusive T.t.lha.

A) Unstrengthened;

I Primary; C$Single$;

1) Confusive S.lla T.t.lha N.lla.

Interesting are the following confusive stems with different stem-vowels and connecting vowels but related in meaning:

S.khôrêhla (snore, rattle), S.khôrêhla (walk on a stony place), T.karitlha (scraper round and round in a pot), S.khîrîhla (snore), S.khôrêhla (make a noise like a boiling pot); S.khêrhla (boil loudly, whirl), cf. S.ôrêhla (speak foolishly), S.phôrêhla (boil of water and meal in a pot, speak stupidly).

11) (a) The confusive suffix denotes the idea of bringing into or being in a confused state; it is a very rare suffix and found only with about 35 derivative stems, e.g.

T.karatlha (run hither and thither as cattle shut up in a kraal, be restless of the eyes, turn from side to side as a sick person), cf. B.kara (whirl, turn round, break out as cattle out of the kraal); S.khôrhla (walk on a stony place, cf. the slipping on the stones and the subsequent rolling about of the stones), cf. S.khôra N.khara (climb a mountain a long way up, walk about on a mountain); S.lôrêbêhla (put in disorder), cf. S.lôba (plunge up and down in water); T.yêgitlha (rub between the hands or knuckles as in washing clothes), cf. T.yêga N.yôra (tan, rub a skin); S.sêhêhla (spoil, destroy), cf. T.yêga N.yôra (tan, rub a skin).

i) UB. le of Phon., p. 46

ii) T. does not have an unstrengthened form lla, but only the strengthened form t.lha which is semantically identical with S.lla T.lha. T.t.lha will therefore be treated together with the unstrengthened forms found in S. and N., and the same term will be employed for both strengthened and unstrengthened forms.
(b) The suffix *s.hla* T. *tilha* N. *hła* has sometimes lost its confusive force, e.g. *T. gamotilha* (cling tightly with the arms and hands round something), cf. *S. hama* T. *gama* N. *xama* (milk); *N. kherhla* (cry aloud), cf. *N. kešera* (cry aloud); *T. kherhla* (metch), cf. *N. kešera* (gum).  

(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the confusive stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. *S. kherhla* (rattle, snore), cf. *T. kešera* (plough dry ground); *N. thukhuhla* (tan by rubbing with the hand), cf. *S. thukha* (break); *S. shoohla* (spoil, destroy), cf. *T. šogha* N. *šore* (tan, rub e.g. a skin).  

(d) Simple stems corresponding to some confusive stems are transitive while those corresponding to others are intransitive, e.g. *S. lčebela* cf. *S. lčeba* intransitive; *N. kherhla*, cf. *N. kešera* intransitive; *T. šogotilha*, cf. *T. šogha* N. *šore* transitive; *T. gamotilha*, cf. *S. hama* T. *gama* N. *xama* transitive.  

(e) Some confusive stems are transitive others are intransitive, e.g. *T. kešeralha* intransitive, *N. xara* intransitive; *S. kherhla* intransitive, *S. kešera* N. *xara* intransitive; *S. lčebela* transitive, *S. lčeba* intransitive; *S. kherhla* transitive N. *šore* transitive; *T. gamotilha* transitive, *S. hama* T. *gama* N. *xama* transitive.  

(f) There are confusive stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stem, nor could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these derivational stems; a comparison with other derivational stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stems or corresponding non-verbal stems, shows, however, in some cases a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. *T. şevelicha* (speak about what one does not know or understand), cf. *S. šeblea* (stammer);  

*S. šeblea* (shake, move into place), cf. *S. šebea* (move about)  
*S. kherhla* (snore), cf. *S. kešíte* (scrape the surface of the ground)  
*S. kherhla* (speak stupidly), *N. šoraha* (wipe off).  

1) For meanings of examples here quoted, cf. (a) and (b) above.  
2) For meanings of examples here quoted, cf. (a), (b) and (c) above.
(b) Compound:

1. Confusive in basic position;

   I) (1) Persistsive

   S. sóla T. sóla N. sóla derived

   from an UB. form sókula; Meinhof does not give such a form,

   but for UB. k > sóto the s under influence of e cf. Phon.

   p. 64. S. sóla T. sóla N. sóla must therefore be a very old

   compound as in more recent formations S. hla T. hla N. hla (UB. k)

   is not affected by e that the form of the applicative,

   the final component part of S. sòla T. sóla N. sóla, is S. sóla

   N. sóla and not S. otsa T. otsa N. otsa, proves that the s of

   this suffix does not contain the factitive S. S. T. Y N. Y.

   __________________________________________________________________________

   I) Not called confusive-applicative because of its

   specialised force (cf. (f) below). In fact as will be

   seen there actually exists a confusive-applicative

   S. hla T. hla N. hla. There are about 50 pers-

   sistent stems.

   II) cf. Phon. p. 64, also the confusive-applicative

   S. hla T. hla N. hla as in:

   S. foshola (make a hole wider on behalf of);

   T. rukholsha (rub away. grind down. cf. N. foshola

   rub out).

   III) Compare e.g. the factitive-applicative stem S. tseetseetse

   T. tseetseetse N. tseetseetse (arouse for) corresponding

   to the factitive stem S. tseetseetse N. tseetseetse

   (arouse). cf. S. tsoa T. tsoa N. tsoa (get up). See

   also Chapter 17 and Phon. pp. 79 - 80.
In the majority of cases ṁela has been attached to a root by means of an unstandardised connecting vowel, e.g. S.ḥēsēla (swing, rock, shake as e.g. a bunch of feathers, carry something like reeds, plumes etc.), a.f. S.ḥa T.ḥa (swing, rock); S.pēkēsēla (have a deep voice, change e.g. of the voice of a boy), cf. S.pōka (sing badly, scold); S.thēkēsēla N.thēkēsēla (stagger, totter), cf. S.thēma (walk in a swaggering way).

There are however one or two cases in which the suffix ṁela is attached to the simple stem, e.g. N.nētasēla (glue on, rivet to), grasp), cf. N.nēta (glue, rivet).

In four or five other cases, owing to the stem-vowel being a, I could not say whether the ṁela preceding ṁela is a connecting vowel, or the terminative of the multi-functional simple stem, e.g. in S.khabasēla (grow in beauty and strength, prosper e.g. plants), cf. S.khaha T.kgaha N.khaha (be adorned, be beautiful); T.kgaphasēla (splash or dash as waves, vibrate as water after being dashed against a rock), cf. T.kgapha N.krapha (push out as water or grain from a vessel).

1) For a similar phenomenon cf. the performative, Chapter 10 § 1 (11) ((2)) (2) I. ((C)), and the secondary passive Chapter 18.
ii) (a) The persistent indicates action carried out pers- 

cistently and is found mostly in S., e.g.

S. jëksesëla (shake like a bunch of feathers, carry something like reeds, plumes or feathers, swing, rock) of. S. jëksëla (swing, rock);

S. këksesëla (bend as under the wind, i.e., be persistently bent down), of. S. këkësëla (hang down, incline);

S. këksesëla (tremble, shiver, be loose), of. S. kësëla (shake, be loose);

S. këksesëla (grow in beauty and strength, prosper), of. S. këkësëla T. këksesëla N. këksesëla (be adorned, be beautiful);

T. këksesëla (splash or dash as waves, vibrate as water after being dashed against a rock), of. T. këksesëla N. këksesëla (push out as water or grain from a vessel);

N. këksesëla (glue on, rivet, to grasp), of. N. këtsëla (glue, rivet);

S. këksesëla (flap with the wings as e.g. a big bird), of. S. këkësëla (blow hard of the wind);

S. thëksesëla N. thëksesëla (stagger, totter) of. S. thëkësëla (walk in a staggering way);

N. thëksesëla (be entirely consumed by fire), of. S. thëksesëla (burn, calcine);

S. chëksesëla (move to and fro, spread as e.g. the ear of sweet reed), of. S. chëksesëla (throb, go about).

i) cf. Tem., 2. 164. ii) More than half of the approximately 50 verbal derivatives in sëla are found in S. alone, this does not include the approximately 40 stems in sëla derived from non-verbal stems, also here S. alone has more than half of the total number.

iii) S. këksesëla = S. këksesëla, cf. also S. pëksesëla = S. pëksesëla = Zulu s construcción (smile); S. jëksesëla = S. jëksesëla (seize hurriedly) and Zulu mëksesëla (do a thing hurriedly), the suffix sëla found only in S. is undoubtedly due to Nguni influence, for the phonological relation between Nguni g and Sotho ng or ści cf. Phon. pp. 66 and 93; and for Nguni g becoming S. ng cf. Zulu

mañi (trouble, misery) \( \Rightarrow \) S. lenpitsi (want, poverty); Xhosa sësa (help, assist) \( \Rightarrow \) S. sësësa (give, grant).
(b) Sometimes the semantic relation between the derivative stem in ʒ̥e and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g.

T.ḥanasele (melt away as a crowd), cf. S.ḥlπa
T.ḥanasele N.ḥlπa (wash);

S.ḥlπhəsele (scatter about, hurry away), cf.
S.ḥlπha N.ḥlπha (become loose);

N.ḥlπkəsele (away to and fro, tremble), cf. N.ḥlπkə (throw up);

(c) Derivative stems in ʒ̥e are mostly intransitive, there are however about a dozen which are transitive, e.g.

S.ḥəsele (shake like a bunch of feathers, carry something like reeds, etc.), cf. S.ʔəəa
T.ʔəa transitive (swing, rock);

N.ʔəsele (glue to, rivet to), cf. N.ʔəə transitive (glue, rivet);

S.ʔəhəsele (make a rustling noise), cf. N.ʔəəle intransitive (rustle).

(d) Simple stems corresponding to some persistive stems are transitive while those corresponding to others are intransitive. A few more are given in addition to those quoted in (c) above:

S.ʔəhəsele (move to and fro), cf. S.ʔəəa intransitive (go about);

S.ʔəhəsele N.ʔəhəsele (stagger, totter), cf. S.ʔəəa intransitive (walk in a staggering way);

N.ʔəhəhəsele (be entirely consumed by fire), cf.
S.ʔəəhə transitive (burn, calcine).

(e) There are persistive stems which are not associated with any extent simple verbal stems which could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these stems e.g.

S.ʔəhəhəsele (itch),
T.ʔəəsele (talk incessantly),
S.ʔəəsele (try to seize),
S.ʔəəsele (run),
N.ʔəəsele (be sleepy),
S.ʔəəsele (go in numbers, passing one another as e.g. locusts on the move),
S.ʔəəsele (walk or fly noiselessly up and down)
S.ʔəəsele (be shaky, stagger).
(f) As can be seen from the examples quoted above, the suffix ṣōla has to a very great extent lost the respective forces of its individual component parts, although the force of the applicative ṣōla is still noticeable in some cases such as

N. ṭētasōla (glue to, rivet to, grasp), cf. N. ṭēta (glue, rivet)
S. ṭētasōla (move to and fro), cf. S. ṭēto (go about);

while the confusive force of S. Ḍīla T. Ḍīla Ḍīla is probably the reason why more than one quarter of the persistive stems contain also the idea of swinging, trembling or scattering, cf. the following in addition to those already previously quoted;

S. ṭhēnasōla (shake, wave to and fro, move about while hanging
N. ṭhēnasōla (tremble, T. ṭhēnasōla (jolt or bump along
as a vehicle going over stones), S. ṭhēnasōla (roam about),
S. ṭhēnasōla (jump about, work badly, seize loosely,
do something hurriedly), N. ṭhēnasōla (tremble).

For none of these derivatives a corresponding simple stem could be indicated.

bb) the persistive-applicative ṭēlla T. ṭēlla N. ṭēlla,
e.g. S. ṭhēnasōla (arrange in a hurry, seize, hurry), no corresponding simple or corresponding persistive stems;

T. ṭhēnasōla (break in upon, intrude upon a party), cf.
S. ṭhōba T. ṭhōba N. ṭhōba (break through), no corresponding persistive stem; T. ṭhēnasōla (roll to), no corresponding simple or corresponding persistive stems.

---

1) It happens also in other cases that one or both of the component parts of a compound suffix have, that, their—original force, e.g. the performative S. ṭīsā T. ṭīsā N. ṭīsā Chapter 10, and the national (capable) demonstrative S. ṭiṣā N. ṭīsa when conveying a diminutive force, cf. Chapter 13 54A 51 (11) 8

2) The /authentication of S. ṭīsā very often drops out when preceded by ṭ of Chapter 12 54A 51 (12) 8).

3) Perhaps from ṭhēnasōla through retrogressive assimilation.
2. Confusive in a non-basis position:
The confusive suffix is found in this position only when in the compound *sela* of Chapter 5 §10.(g).

II Secondary: The confusive has no corresponding secondary form.

B) Strengthened: I Primary: The confusive suffix is found in its strengthened form *tilhā* in T. only, where, however, the unstrengthened form *hla*, which occurs in S. and N., is not found. The two forms are semantically identical.

II Secondary: T. *tilhā* has no corresponding secondary form.
CHAPTER 18

A) Unstrengthened:

I Primary: a Single.

1) The actional S.la T.la N.la e.g.

S.\*thakhe (kick about), cf. S.\*thakha (stretch out one's leg);

T.\*dubha (be red), cf. E.\*duba (turn red);

N.\*waddle (hollow out, throw up/of a galloping horse);

\*waddle of N.\*wawa (hollow out, scrape);

N.\*kallu (indicate, declare) \*kallu, cf. T.\*kalla (describe, mention);

N.\*\*bela (hang something down), cf. S.\*\*be T.\*\*be (hang down);

N.\*\*thula (cut off), cf. N.\*\*thusa (out off, chop off, plane);

S.\*\*thula N.\*\*thula (pull down e.g. as a branch or a tree), cf. S.\*\*tha T.\*\*tha (herring) N.\*\*thusa (out off, pick out, choose);

S.\*\*bula N.\*\*bula (seize, snatch violently), cf. S.\*\*ba (steal).


vi) Dake suggests the term transitive to indicate the suffix \*la cf. Term., p. 213. This term is however not suitable for indicating S.\*la T.\*la N.\*la which, as will be indicated below, is both transitive and intransitive. vii) If the stem-vowel is \* or \* it becomes \* or \* when \* is employed as connecting vowel, cf. Chapter 4 § 1.
With the exception of seven cases, e.g. \textit{S. retela \textbackslash n. retela}
(remain raw although cooked), cf. \textit{N. reta} (stir up, stir round), \textit{T. retela} (be too difficult), \textit{S. sepela} (roam, wander about), \textit{T. sepela \textbackslash n. sepela} (walk), no corresponding simple stem, \textit{N. âtsela} (whisper), no corresponding simple stem, the connecting vowel \textbackslash o preceding the actional suffix is found in \textit{S. only}, e.g. \textit{S. phetsela} (crush with one's foot) no corresponding simple stem, \textit{S. taekela} (wander about, fall and get up again) no corresponding simple stem, \textit{S. theksela} (thump, butt, break to pieces), no corresponding simple stem. It is possible that we do not have here a suffix \textbackslash a preceded by \textbackslash o as an unstandardised connecting vowel, but \textit{S. âla \textbackslash T. âla \textbackslash N. âla} a dialectal form of the applicative \textit{S. âla \textbackslash T. âla \textbackslash N. âla}. But, \textbackslash o occurs as unstandardised connecting vowel with practically all primary suffixes, therefore why not also with the actional suffix? And in addition to this, \textbackslash la preceded by \textbackslash o does not seem to have an applicative force. Furthermore, as will be noticed below, the applicative \textit{S. àla \textbackslash T. àla \textbackslash N. àla} as a rule becomes \textit{S. òta \textbackslash T. òta \textbackslash N. òta} when the consonant of the preceding syllable is \textit{S. òta \textbackslash T. òta \textbackslash N. òta} or \textit{S. òa \textbackslash T. òa \textbackslash N. òa}. This does not take place with \textbackslash la preceded by \textbackslash o, cf. examples quoted above.

1) \textit{cf. Tucker The Comparative phonetics of the Suto-Chuana of Bantu languages} p. 24 in connection with the dialectal difference between \textbackslash o and \textbackslash ò.
Endemann has indicated a suffix *ila* \(^1\) but as far as I could ascertain there is no semantic difference between \(\text{ii)}\) *ila* preceded by \(\text{i}\) and *ila* preceded by \(\text{a}, \text{e} \) or \(\text{u}\). For this reason it seems to me that one is not justified in recognizing a suffix *ila*. It would appear that when the actional suffix is attached to roots the vowel of which is \(\text{a}\), the connecting vowel \(\text{i}\) is preferred to \(\text{a}\), probably to avoid confusion with the actional (causal) suffix *ala* e.g. *N.xwaila* (hollow out, blow up dust of a galloping horse) < *N.xwayila*, cf. *N.xwaya* (hollow out); *N.kaila* (indicate, declare) < *N.xayila* cf. *T.xaya* *N.xaya* (describe, mention); *N.xwaila* (dash to pieces, grind to powder) < *N.xwayila* cf. *N.xwaya* (dash to pieces, smash); *N.kaila* (knock against something) < *N.xaila* < *N.xayila* cf. *S.kaaa* (hew, chop, strike).\(^4\)

Endemann has also indicated a suffix *ula* \(^1\) but as far as I could ascertain there is no semantic difference between \(\text{la} \) preceded by \(\text{u}\) and *la* preceded by any of the other unstandardized connecting vowels quoted above. It is true, as will be seen from \(\text{ii)}\) below, that some actional stems with \(\text{u}\) as unstandardized connecting vowel have a destructive force, but, as far as could be ascertained, this is only the case when such a force is already contained in the roots.

---

1) cf. W.d.S. p. 35.

11) Such stems as *T.aila* *N.xaila* (walk slowly), *T.xaila* *N.xaila* (walk with sore feet), *S.phaila* (wander about), are regarded as compound stems and they will be dealt with in Chapter 21.

111) For a similar influence of *i* on preceding *a* cf. *T.xaila* (has given) and *T.xaya* (give), also *N.kaila* (tear apart) and *N.kaila* (tear apart).

IV) cf. W.d.S. p. 35.
from which such stems have been derived. It seems to me, therefore, that one is not justified in recognizing a suffix _sula_ T._ula_ N._ula_ unless perhaps as a dialectal variant of _sola_ T._ola_ N._ola_ (cf. above).

V) A few derivative stems of which the following is practically an exhaustive list and either in the active (destructive) suffix _sola_ or in _la_ preceded by _u_, e.g. _s.uthula_ (remove the roughness of, polish) cf. _s.tutla_ N._utla_ (wash something, using a stone or bone to rub off); _s.ankula = S. lukula T._akula_ (pick out, take out e.g. a tooth), cf. _s.mula_ (peck, pick one's teeth); T._tirola_ N._tirola_ = S._tirola_ (treat food with one's teeth), cf. _s.tirra_ (smash the teeth); _s.tsumala = S. _tsomula_ (pull out, draw out as a dagger from its sheath), this may be due to dialectal difference, but in view of the scarcity of such examples, it is perhaps more correct to ascribe it merely to the differences in pronunciation of individuals, cf. also _s.tseola = S. _sumula T. _sumula_ (uproot). It is difficult to say whether here _tola_ T._ola_ N._ola_ > S._ula_ T._ula_ N._ula_ or S.(_ula) T.(_ula) N.(_ula). There is no question in sets of _ola_ becoming _ula_ because of the stem-vowel being _u_, as there are many derivative stems in _ola_ with stem-vowel _u_ (e.g. _s.uthula_ (tear to bits), _s.kupela_ (take out of the mouth), T._tulela_ (take away a child's possessions, disinherit), T._tulela_ (root out), S._kunula (root out, wipe off), S._phumula N._phumula_ (take off the skin, wipe off).
11) (a) The actional suffix *la T.la N.la is not a very common suffix1); it denotes an action on the part of an agent, which is an illustration or consequence of the state or action expressed by the simple stem, e.g.:

| N.kwvilel | strike a match, write, draw a line), cf. T.kwvile N.kwvile (scrape with a knife, make a scratching noise); |
| N.shaba | (hang something down), cf. S.shaba T.shaba N.shaba (hang down); |
| N.kolele | (walk slowly, feebly), cf. S.kole N.kole (be ill); |
| N.khebe | (hook with the beak, peer open), cf. N.hebe (prick, stab with the horn) and T.hebe (break through); |
| S.hebule | (walk briskly), cf. S.hebe (strive for); |
| S.kure | (drain to the last drop), cf. S.kure T.kure N.kure (take the leavings in a pot); |
| T.kudule | (expel, banish from home, drive away out of one's country or home), cf. N.kula (frac, fell back) and T.kudula (depart, go away); |
| S.kutlule | (remove the roughness of, polish, file), cf. S.kutle (wash something, using a stone or bone to rub off); |

Compare also examples quoted 1) above.

(b) In some cases the difference in force between the actional stem and its corresponding simple stem is not very great, e.g.:

| N.kzithule | (cut off), cf. N.kzitha (cut off, chop off, plane); |
| N.zwaile | (hollow; throw up dust of a galloping horse), cf. N.zwaiva (hollow out, scratch in the ground); |
| N.towaile | (dash to pieces, grind to powder), cf. N.towa (dash to pieces, smash). |

1) Only found with about 100 derivative stems.
(c) In other cases again the semantic relation between the actional stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g.

\[ S. \text{sidile} \ (\text{rub, iron}) \quad N. \text{sidile} \ (\text{rub a sore place with the hand})/\text{cf.} \quad S. \text{tile} \ T. \text{tile} \ N. \text{tile} \ (\text{grind, grate}); \]

\[ S. \text{khélála} \ T. \text{gotlhóla} \ N. \text{kholóla} \ (\text{cough}), \text{cf.} \quad S. \text{kholá} \ T. \text{kholá} \ N. \text{kholá} \ (\text{rub, sharpen, grate}); \]

\[ S. \text{khethula} \ N. \text{khethula} \ (\text{pull down e.g. a branch}), \text{cf.} \quad S. \text{khatóla} \ T. \text{khatóla} \ N. \text{khatóla} \ (\text{pick out, choose}); \]

\[ S. \text{khumála} \ (\text{wound, hurt}), \text{cf.} \quad N. \text{khumá} \ (\text{take off the bark}); \]

\[ S. \text{kébela} \ (\text{swagger, walk angrily or boldly}), \text{cf.} \quad S. \text{kóbe} \ (\text{come back from the summer grazing grounds, fight as bulls}). \]

(d) Some actional stems are intransitive; most of them (about three-quarter of the total number) are however transitive, e.g. \[ N. \text{kébela} \ \text{transitive and} \quad T. \text{keve} \ N. \text{keve} \]

\[ \text{transitive of} \ 1), \ \text{above}; \quad N. \text{kúmála} \ \text{transitive and} \quad N. \text{ékwa} \]

\[ \text{transitive of} \ (b) \ \text{above}; \quad N. \text{khálála} \ \text{transitive and} \quad \text{che} \]

\[ \text{transitive of} \ (a) \ \text{above}; \quad N. \text{kóthula} \ \text{transitive and} \quad N. \text{kóthala} \]

\[ (b) \ \text{transitive of} \ (b) \ \text{above}; \quad \text{T. \kudulála} \ \text{transitive and} \quad N. \text{fúla} \]

\[ \text{intransitive of} \ (a) \ \text{above}; \quad S. \text{kóchela} \ \text{intransitive and} \quad S. \text{kócha} \]

\[ \text{intransitive of} \ (a) \ \text{above}; \quad T. \text{pukula} \ \text{intransitive}, \]

\[ \text{cf.} \quad S. \text{fuca} \ \text{intransitive of} \ 1) \ \text{above}; \quad S. \text{thakaha} \ \text{intransitive and} \quad S. \text{thakaha} \]

\[ \text{transitive of} \ 1) \ \text{above}; \quad S. \text{félía} \]

\[ T. \text{gotlhóla} \ N. \text{kholóla} \ \text{intransitive and} \quad S. \text{kholá} \ T. \text{kholá} \]

\[ N. \text{kholá} \ \text{transitive of} \ (c) \ \text{above}. \]

(e) As can be seen from the examples quoted in (d) above, the simple stems corresponding to some actional stems are transitive while those corresponding to others are intransitive.
(f) In Sotho there are actional stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems, neither could non-verbal stems be indicated as possible bases of these derivative stems; a comparison with other derivative stems, also having no corresponding simple verbal stems or corresponding non-verbal stems, shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g.,

*S.edephele* (pinch, break a piece off), cf. *S.edephelele* (pinch and twist the skin); *S.hakile* (be violent, severe), cf. *N.zakale* (become angry); *N.thosela* (bore, drill); *S.bulula*; *T.budula* *N.budula* (below).

\(\beta\) Compound:

1. Actional suffix in basic position;

\(\#\) 1) Actional-factive: *S.tsa* *T.tsa* *N.tsa* < *S.1 T.1 N.2* + *S.2a T.2a N.2a*?

11) (a) The actional-factive adds the factive idea to the idea expressed by the actional stem, e.g., *T.fubitsa* (make red), cf. *T.fubile* (become red) and *S.fuba* (turn red); *S.thefutsa* (cause to pull out), cf. *S.thefula* (pull out, pull down) no corresponding simple stem; *T.fudutsa* (cause to expel), cf. *T.fudula* (expel) and *N.fula* (flee, fall back).

In the following case there is no semantic difference between the actional and actional-factive stems; *N.kxwarila* (strike a match) and *S.khbaritaras* (strike a match).

---

1) for *N.1 + N.2* \(\rightarrow\) *N.5* cf. *phen*, p. 66.
Sometimes no actional stems corresponding to actional-factitive stems could be indicated, e.g. 
S.\textit{thukhuta} (strike badly) cf. S.\textit{thukhe} (break); 
S.\textit{pututa} (push forward) cf. T.\textit{ute N.\textit{ute}} (move away).

(b) In the following few cases the actional-factitive stems have acquired a special force vis-
that of denoting an action done slightly or quickly, 
e.g. S.\textit{nyruta} (take a little of), cf. S.\textit{nyre} (dig wet clay); N.\textit{nyuta} (seek superficially), cf. 
S.\textit{nyuta} (penetrate, dig). See also S.\textit{gheuta} (draw very little milk, milk a little); it is however 
possible that here the idea referred to above is con-
tained in the root.

(c) Of the 35 actional(factitive) stems 8 are
intransitive, e.g. S.\textit{hirita} (scream loudly), N.\textit{zuput\text{\text{"a}}} (creep on hands and knees), S.\textit{buchuta} (walk through a 
thicket), S.\textit{tiikut\text{\text{"a}}} (bubble up), N.\textit{kirita} (speak 
imperfectly); for these stems no corresponding simple or 
corresponding actional stems could be indicated.

2. Actional in a non-basic position;

with the exception of the few examples quoted in 
Chapter 5 § 10, this suffix does not occur in this position.

1) Cf. also S.\textit{ata} N.\textit{ata} S.\textit{ata} S.\textit{eta} T.\textit{eta} N.\textit{eta} below.

ii) When digging wet clay big lumps are usually taken 
on the spade.
II Secondary:

(1) Single:

1) Actional (capable) S.ala N.ala T.ala.

In the case of verbal stems whose stem-vowel is a and whose final stem-consonant is l, the initial a of the suffix is sometimes elided in S. and N., although it is mostly retained in these two languages and always retained in T., e.g. N. phala = N. phala (shout with joy, rejoin), no corresponding simple stem; S. rela = S. rela N. rela (sing and play at night of young men and girls at a marriage feast), no corresponding simple stem; S. phala N. phala (run), cf. S. phala T. phala N. phala (excel); S. ala T. ala N. ala (despise a gift because of its being small size, desire more, cf. S. ala (be a glutton)); N. kwala (become audible), cf. N. kwa (hear).

ii) (a) The actional (capable) denoted the idea of entering into a certain state, cf. (d) below, e.g. N. gala (become light), cf. N. jata (be light); N. xaba (become red), cf. N. xwa (to dawn, i.e. to be red); S. xonala T. xonala N. xona (become visible, evident, appear), cf. S. bana T. bana N. bana (acc); T. kaba (become closed or plugged), cf. S. kaba T. kaba N. krba (plug up, stop a hole); T. dika (happen, come to pass), cf. T. dika (do); N. kwala (become audible), cf. N. kwa (hear).

(b) The suffix ala has sometimes lost its actional (capable) force, e.g. S. pala N. pala (move about, play), T. pala N. pala (gain by trading, collect), cf. N. papa (interweave, entwine); N. taka (fly by moving the wings very slightly), cf. N. taka (refuse);

1) As will be seen below also the a of ala is sometimes elided in these two languages when this suffix is attached to roots with l as final stem-vowel.
N.pharalo (walk in mud), cf. S.phare T.phare N.phare (throw clay or dung, smear roughly).

(c) Sometimes the relation between the actional (capable) stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S.lebela T.lebele N.lehela (forget, i.e. to overlook), cf. S.lebe T.leba N.leba (look at); S.bapala T.bapale N.bapala and N.bapa, cf. (b) above; S.thele N.thile (dance, jump about), cf. S.thele T.thele N.thele (come); S.halele T.raile N.xalela (despise a gift because of its small size, desire more), cf. N.hala (be a glutton).

(a) Most simple stems corresponding to actional (capable) stems are transitive, there are however a few which are intransitive.

When the simple stem is transitive there is identity between the subject of the derivative stem and the object of the corresponding simple stem. The subject of the derivative stem being fit to enter or actually enter into such a state or condition that the action expressed by the simple verbal stem may be applied to it, e.g. T.adde (become separated, distributed), cf. S.adde T.adde N.adde (distribute, divide); S.bonale T.bonale N.bonala (become visible, evident, appear), cf. S.bone T.bone N.bone (see); T.direte N.direte (come to pass, happen), cf. T.dire N.dire (do), S.bale T.bale N.bale (get worn out, become old), cf. N.dine (damage); T.thibe (become obstructed, stopped), cf. S.thipe T.thipe (stop, obstruct); N.tsebele (become known), cf. S.tsebe N.tsebe (know); N.stile (become increased, extended), cf. S.stle N.stle (cause to prosper or to increase); N.talela (become only half full), cf. N.take (make only half full).

1) Of the 80 simple stems corresponding to actional (capable) stems, are transitive.
When the corresponding simple stem is intransitive there is identity between the subject of the simple stem and that of the derivative stem, the subject of the derivative stem being fit to enter, or actually enters into the state or condition expressed by the simple verbal stem e.g.

- **N.xwala** (becomes light), of
- **N.xala** (be light);
- **T.xwalela** N.xwalela (exalt oneself as one who refuses to listen and persists in his own course), of.
- **N.xwale** (refuse to listen or to improve);
- **N.xenala** (get decayed or rotten), of.
- **N.xena** (decay, rot inside);
- **N.xekele** (become strong), of.
- **N.xeke** (be strong).

(c) Actional (capable) stems are mostly intransitive, there are about half a dozen which are transitive, e.g.

- **S.jebele** T.jebele N.jebele (forget), of.
- **S.jeba** T.jeba N.jeba (look at);
- **S.jalala** T.jalala N.jalala (despise a gift because of its small size), of.
- **S.jela** (be a glutton);
- **S.jenele** (drink with a straw dipped into water), no corresponding simple stem.
238.  
(f) There are actional (capable) stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems; a comparison with other derivative stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. T.akačela (rage, be furious); T.ʃeʃe (be accustomed); S.ʃela T.ʃela N.ʃela (look up); T.ʃeceala N.ʃeceala (get scattered, dispersed), cf. T.ʃesala (work carelessly or badly), N.ʃeʃeala (stand with legs apart), cf. N.ʃeʃeala (run).

(g) There are about 4 to 5 times as many statonal (capable) stems as there are actional (capable) stems in Sotho, and in view of the fact that such stems, when derived from the same verbal roots, are sometimes semantically very closely related, it is possible that the actional (capable) suffix has been replaced by the statonal (capable) suffix, which is still a living suffix. Examples of statonal (capable) and actional (capable) stems derived from the same verbal roots:

N.ʃtela (become increased, extended),
S.ʃtela T.ʃtela N.ʃtela (be or become extended, increased, prosperous, fortunate), cf.
S.ʃtela N.ʃtela (cause to increase);
S.ʃala (become smooth on the surface);
S.ʃala (get spread, be flat) cf. S.ʃala T.ʃala N.ʃala (to spread out);
S.ʃona T.ʃona N.ʃona (appear, become visible, evident)
S.ʃona (appear, be or become visible), cf. S.ʃona T.ʃona N.ʃona (see);
T.ʃira N.ʃira (happen, come to pass),
N.ʃira (be performable, be accomplished) cf. T.ʃira N.ʃira (do);
N.ʃebala (become known),
S.ʃeba T.ʃeba N.ʃeba (be or get known), cf. S.ʃeba N.ʃeba (know).
(h) Semantically there is no difference between the station (capable)–actional (capable) S.σαλε T.αλε N.αλε and the actional N.αλε, e.g., N.διρεξαλε N.διραλε (happen, come to pass), cf. T.διρα N.διρα (do);
S.τσεβάλε N.τσεβαλε = N.τσεβαλе (become known); S.κοθάλε N.κοθάλε T.κοθάλε N.κοθάλε (take courage, become cheerful), cf. S.κοθα (get strong, fat, well-looking); N.κουλαξαλε N.κουλαξα (get wounded by knocking against something), cf. T.κουλα N.κουλα (knock against something).

(i) The following are the only simple stems I could find having corresponding actional (capable), stational (capable), as well as the stational (capable)–actional (capable) stems: S.δένα T.δένε N.δένα (see), cf. S.δέναλε T.δέναλε N.δέναλε (appear, become visible, evident), S.δέναδα N.δέναδα (appear, be or become visible), S.δέναξαλε N.δέναξα (become visible, apparent, evident); T.διρα N.διρα (do), cf. T.διραλε N.διραλε (happen, come to pass), N.διραξα (be performable, be accomplished), N.διραξαλε (happen, come to pass); S.τσεβα N.τσεβα (know), cf. N.τσεβαλε (become known), S.τσεβα N.τσεβα (be or get known), S.τσεβάλε N.τσεβαλε (become known,).
1. Active (capable) suffix in basic position:
   a) i) Active (capable-intensive):

   S.alela mostly contracted to alle, T.alela always used uncontracted, N.alela in a few cases contracted to alel and in one case to lala.

   In S. the second e of the suffix drops out excepting in phælabela (enter suddenly, intrude on people), in N. the uncontracted suffix is used excepting with

   M.blæsæla (stand quite still absent-mindedly); N.tæpælla (stretch oneself out without caring where), cf. S.tæpælla (lie face downwards), S.tæpælæta (throw to the ground); and N.fælæla = N.fælælæla (spread of people).

   It should be noted that also the active (capable)-applicative alela is abbreviated to alel in S. and N.; this happens almost always in S. but not so often in N. The factitive of alela is S.alele N.aleln, e.g. S.bætalæte (smooth down, level down) N.bætalæte (cause to lie flat on the ground), cf. S.bætalæle T.bætalæla N.bætalæla (lie flat), the factitive of alela is S.alete N.aleln, e.g. S.ætælæte (make holy), cf. S.ætlæle (be holy);

   ii) M.tæralæte (cause to turn away from), cf. N.tæralæte (turn away from). Therefore if a derivative stem in alel has a factitive form in S.ælatæ N.ælatæ then alel is an abbreviation of alela; if however it has a factitive form

   (cf) in S.ælatæ N.ælæta then alel is an abbreviation of alela.

---

1) According to my informants blæsæla has a factitive form

   blæsalæta (cause to stand absent-mindedly).

ii) Obtained from my informants.

iii) The elided vowel whether e or ê always reappears in the corresponding factitive form.
Endemann maintains that such stems as are termed by me actional (capable-intensive) are not derivative stems in *alala*, but rather compound stems with *lala* (lie down) as their final component part. His main reason for holding this view is that, according to him, derivative stems ending in re-duplicated suffixes are always transitive whereas derivatives in *alala* are mostly intransitive. However, as will be seen below, derivatives in *alala* and *alala* are sometimes also intransitive. Moreover, there are a few derivatives in *alala* which are transitives, cf. below. Endemann's objection to regarding these stems as compounds rather than derivatives therefore falls away.

1) (a) The actional (capable-intensive) suffix indicates the idea of entering intensively into a certain state or condition, often a dispersive state or condition. It is perhaps noteworthy that of the approximately 90 derivative stems in *alala*, only about 15 have a corresponding stem in *ala*, e.g. *N.atlala* (become broad of a way), cf. *N.atla* (increase, extend) and *S.atla* *N.atla* (cause to increase); *S.hutella N.xwatala* (be firm, take up a firm or threatening attitude with determination), cf. *N.xwala* (take up a firm or threatening attitude) and *N.xwala* (walk with firm steps); *N.khutelala* (get very much wounded by knocking against something), cf. *N.kutela* (get wounded by knocking against something) and *T.kutla N.kutla* (knock against something); *S.phatella T.phatlela N.phatlela* (become wide or dispersed), cf.

---

1) Cf. Versuch einer Grammatik des Sotho pp. 68-69
N. phatla (be extended) and S. phatla N. phatla (break, burst);
S. kabalala T. gabalala (become arched or drawn up as a person
drawing up his body when on hands and feet, get bent)
N. kabalala (become stifled as a result of belching), cf. N. xaba
(pull in the stomach) and S. haba T. gaba N. xaba (hollow out);
N. xaba (get very much perplexed), cf. N. xawa (get per-
plexed) and T. wama (perplex); S. sabalala (spread, scatter),
ef. N. xaba (scatter) and N. xaba (trade); T. tibemalala
(stand erect), cf. S. klemu T. tibemlu N. klemu (plant, fix in
on end); T. ibalala (peune down as a hawk), cf. T. iba (flock
with outstretched wings as a hawk); S. namalala T. namalala
N. namalala (lie stretched out on the ground), cf. S. nema T. nema
N. nema (extend, stretch out); S. xablala (run along), cf.
S. kvala (run); T. dutlala (rain very heavily), cf. S. dutla
T. dutla N. dutla (leak); S. phutshalla (spread of water or smoke,
eject water from the mouth), cf. S. phutsa (sprinkle by ejecting
a mouthful of water).

(b) Sometimes the semantic relation between the actional
(capable -intensive) stem and the probable corresponding
simple stem is vague, e.g. T. fatalala (become spread wide apart
as the fingers or legs), cf. S. fata T. fata N. fata (dig a hole,
hollow); S. balala T. balalala N. balalala (lie flat), cf.
N. bala (make even or level through beating); N. phukalala
(get scattered or dispersed), cf. S. phuhalalala (remove, unlead);
S. rkalala N. rkalala (spread out the legs), cf. N. rala (chase away).

(c) The following are the only transitive actional
(capable-intensive) stems I could find: S. phutshalla (eject
water from the mouth, spread of water or smoke), cf. S. phutsa
(sprinkle by ejecting a mouthful of water); S. taballla (bestride)
no corresponding simple stem.

(d) There are actional (capable-intensive) stems which
are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems, or
extant actional (capable) stems; a comparison with other
that derivative stems, also having no corresponding simple verbal
stems, shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. T.phophalala (cower, huddle up), cf. T.phophama (cower, huddle up); S.phoshalla (rum), cf. S.phochaha (get loose, free oneself); S.satala N.satalala (become stiff, be firm), N.satalala (stand with legs apart), cf. N.satala (walk with legs far apart),

(a) It is perhaps noteworthy that only one simple stem could be found having both an actional (capable-intensive) stem and a stational (capable)-actional (capable) stem corresponding to it, viz.: T.khutla, N.khutla (knock against something), cf. N.khutla (get hurt by knocking against something) and N.khutla (get very much wounded by knocking against something).

bb) Actional (capable)-stational (capable) S.alôha

T.alôga N.alôga. This suffix is here of importance in so far as it is found attached to roots to which the stational (capable)-actional (capable) S.alôha T.alôga N.alôga is also attached, and this happens in two cases only, viz.: N.dbôhalôga (be within eyesight, be in a position of becoming visible) and S.bômahala N.bômahala (become visible, apparent), cf. S.bôna T.bôna N.bôna (see); and N.tsêabalôga (be in such a position that it can be recognised) and S.tsêbhalôha N.tsêbhalôha (become known), cf. S.tsêba N.tsêba (know).

cc) 1) Actional (capable)-factitive S.atôsa T.atôsa

N.atôsa < S.al T.al N.al + S.ôa T.ôa N.ôa, the initial a of alô, if it has been dropped, always reappears in this compound, e.g. N.klalôta (please), cf. N.klalla (rejoice).

1) Cf. a) 1) above.

ii) Obtained from informants.
11) (a) The actional (capable) factitive adds the factitive idea to the idea expressed by the actional (capable) stem e.g. S. atlata (open the hands, stretch out) N. atlata (cause to increase or to extend) cf. N. atlata (get increased or extended), cf. S. atlata N. atlata (cause to increase); T. gakata e N. gakata (incite to anger, provoke), cf. S. hakala T. hakala N. hakala (get angry, be indignant), no corresponding simple stems; S. khathata e T. khathata e N. khathata (weary or tire out), cf. S. khathala T. khathala N. khathala (become tired or weary), no corresponding simple stem; S. khatha e T. khatha e N. khatha (exhort, preach, encourage), cf. S. khathala T. khathala N. khathala (take courage, become strong), cf. S. khatha (get strong, well-looking); T. bonata e N. bonata (make visible, cause to be visible), cf. S. bonala T. bonala N. bonala (be or become visible) cf. S. bona T. bona N. bona (see); S. lebata e T. lebata e N. lebata (cause to forget), cf. S. lebala T. lebala N. lebala (forget) cf. S. leba T. leba N. leba (look at).

(b) The actional (capable) factitive suffix has sometimes acquired in S. and N. mostly in S., a special force, viz., that of denoting an action done slightly or quickly; mostly no corresponding stems in S. could be ascertained in such cases, e.g. S. sfatatse (sprinkle, rain slightly, lance the hand of a child), cf. N. sfata (become light) and N. sfata (be light); S. tsearatse N. tsearatse (spit out, spout, gush) cf. N. tseara (spit); S. khathata e N. khathata (spill, overflow), cf. N. khathala (spill against, clinging to, mud) and T. khaphe N. khaphe (push out with the hand as grain from a vessel); cf. Schachata (shrink). sfatatse (smear with fat); S. sfatata e (do superficially, a little), cf. S. sfata e (snatch); S. khathata e (give a friendly slap), cf. S. khatha e (slap).

1) Cf. in this connection T. šata (squirt as from a syringe) < ša (idea of spreading out of. ša = spread out) + the factitive ša.
(c) The following three derivative stems in S.atae are intransitive: S.thelatesa (look on all sides), S.chelatesa (look about distrustfully), S.tilelatesa (crack, make a noise); for none of these corresponding simple stems could be ascertained.

(d) There are actional (capable)-factitive stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems or extant actional (capable) stems, e.g. S.nylatesa (filter without twisting the strainer much, loosen), T.pilatesa (eat up all the food, devour everything), T.phatesa (lance, pierce open as an abscess).

(e) Only one simple stem could be found having both an actional (capable)-factitive stem and a stational (capable)-actional (capable)-factitive stem corresponding to it, viz. S.böna T.böna N.böna (see), cf. S.bonatesa (cause to be visible, show, reveal) and T.bonatesa N.bonatesa (cause to be visible, show, make visible).

(f) The following are the only derivative stems I could find with a common basis and ending either in the actional (capable)-factitive or the actional (capable)-performative suffixes: S.lebatesa T.lebatesa N.lebatesa (cause to forget, divert) and S.lebadisa N.lebadisa (cause to forget, divert), cf. S.lebalesa T.lebalesa N.lebalesa (forget); S.robatosa T.robatosa N.robatosa (cause to sleep, put to sleep, cause to lie on the ground); and

\[i, N.xakatesa\] intransitive (visit, walk about) has probably been derived from English vacation.

\[ii\] T.xulatesa = T.xulatesa (make evil or bad) has been derived from the nominal stem xula also found in pomba (evil), the first a in both verbal stems belongs therefore to the nominal stem and is not a connecting vowel.
N.robâda (put to bed, put to sleep), cf. S.robâla T.robâla
N.robâla (sleep); S.tsaratsu (spout, deluge, gush, spit out)
and S.tsaralisa (cause to spout, deluge), no corresponding
actional (capable) stem; S.bapatsa T.bapatsa N.bapatâ (barter, 
trade) and S.bapalisa N.bapatâ (cause to play, make to play),
cf. S. bapala N.bapala (move about, play), T.bapala N.bapala
(gain by trading, collect).

2. Actional (capable) in non-basic position; e.g.

The actional (capable)-actional (capable) S.abâla
T.agâla N.avâla. This suffix has been fully dealt with in
Chapter 10 § A) II (( 1 )) β) 1.

The actional (capable-intensive) S.alâla, T.alâla
N.alâla cf. 1. β)aa above.

((?) α) Single: 1)

i) Applicative. It has two forms, vis. S.âla T.âla
S.âla and its modified form S.etsa T.etsa N.etsâ. as) Expe-
ting in such circumstances as will be described in bb) below,
the applicative suffix is always âla; but, as will be seen its
initial vowel is sometimes elided in S. and N., but not in T.
It is never elided when the final stem-consonant is any other
than 1, e.g. S.abâla T.abâla N.abâla (distribute to, divide for)
cf. S.âba N.âba (divide, distribute); S.hanâla T.ganâla
N.ganâla (oppose, resist, i.e. refuse with respect to), cf. S.hanâ
T.gana N.gana (refuse); S.phâla (cook for), cf. S.phâna (cook);
T.tsâla (take for or from) T.tsâla N.tsâla, cf. T.tsâna
(take); S.jâla T.jâla N.jâla (eat at, eat for), cf. S.jâna T.jâ
N.jâ (eat). If however the final stem-consonant is 1 the 1 of
âla is sometimes elided in N., although it is mostly retained in
this language, e.g. S.hlêla (degenerate, vary from a type), cf.
N.hlêla (degenerate); N.hlêla = N.hlêla (present, give alms,
III), pick out) no corresponding simple stem.

i) There are about 700 applicative stems.

ii) Due to elision and retrogressive assimilation.

iii) Gt. also T.thibâla N.thîlêla N.hlêla (spy out) and
S.hlêla T.thibâla N.hlêla (spy). In this case however the basis
is not a verbal root but a noun-stem found also in T.leihîlê
T.levîlê N.levîlê (eye).
In S. it is practically always elided when the stem-vowel is a, o or ê, e.g. S.bella T.balôla N.balôla (count for), cf. S.bale T.bala N.bala (count); S.kôla (shut for), cf. S.kôsîla (shut); S.lalla T.lalôla N.lalôla (lie in ambush) cf. S.lala T.lala N.lala (lie); S.thôlla T.thôlla N.thôla (pour in, on), cf. S.tôla T.tôla N.tôla (pour); S.thôlla T.thôlla N.thôlla (slip, slip away), cf. N.tôla (escape); S.tôlla (look down upon, give up for or to), cf. S.tôla N.tôla (renounce, give up); S.ngôlla (write to or for), cf. S.ngôla (write); S.tôla T.tôla N.tôla (gather into), cf. S.tôla T.tôla N.tôla (gather); S.thôlla (pick up for), cf. S.thôlla (pick up). I could find only one exception to this rule, viz. S.palôla T.palôla N.palôla (be too much for), cf. S.pala T.pala N.pala (be too much).

The ê of tôla is however retained in S. if the stem-vowel is u, o, ê or i, e.g. S.buôla T.bulôla N.bulôla (open for), cf. S.bula T.bula N.bula (open); S.tulôla (crush in, for), cf. S.tula N.tula (crush); S.pûlôla (thresh for), cf. S.pola N.pola (thresh); S.hôlôla T.xôlôla N.xôlôla (grow up for or at), cf. S.hôla T.xôla N.xôla (grow up); S.tôlôla T.xôlôla (cross over to), cf. S.xôla T.tôha (cross); S.xôlôla T.xôlôla (grow in, on), cf. S.xôla T.xôla N.xôla (grow); S.xilôla (grind for), cf. S.xîla T.xîla N.xîla (grind); S.xilôla T.xilôla N.xilôla (abstain from, set apart for), cf. S.xîla T.xîla N.xîla (avoid, set apart).

---

The applicative suffix is modified to S. ēta
T. ēta N. ēta in the manner to be described below, if the
final stem-consonant is one of the following: S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta
(or 1), S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta, S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta, S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta.

This modification of the applicative suffix, which does
not take place if the root is consonantal, is, in all pro-
bability, due to analogy with the process of substituting
S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta for S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta when forming such
derivative stems (especially factitive-applicative stems) as
containing compound suffixes in which the applicative follows
the factitive, and in which the consonants preceding the appli-
cative suffix (whether root-consonants or suffix-consonants)
have been so altered by the S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta that they are identical in form with those quoted above. With such
derivative stems the replacement of S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta by S. ēta
T. ēta N. ēta is due to the presence of the factitive S. ēta T. ēta
N. ēta, the S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta of which is also responsible for the 1

1) T. ēratea (bring to or for) is the applicative correspond-
ing to T. ērate (bring).

11) Cf. Than, pp. 79-80 and Chapter 17 below. Although Meinheer
does not specially mention S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta this consonant
when occurring in a derivative stem in the manner indicated
below, also contains the S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta thus:

(a) T. ēotta is sometimes derived from 1. ēta + ita as in
jutta (cause to turn aside), cf. S. ēotta T. ēotta N. ēotta (turn the back); jutta (cause
to eat very much), cf. T. ēotta (eat very much). ii. ēta + ita as in
pitta (encourage), cf. T. ēotta T. ēotta N. ēotta (encour.
age); ēotta (be encouraged). iii. ēta + ita as in
jutta (cause to shine red), cf. T. ēotta (be red).

(b) S. ēta in the following case derived from īta + ēta:
photheha (shrink), cf. N. ēphotheha (takes leave away).

(c) S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta is derived from S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta (cf. Chapter 10 § 1 A HI ((12) ) 1.) as in
S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta (sheep). S. ēta T. ēta N. ēta is a com-
}
of șa becoming ș in S.șera T.șera N.șera.

When the final stem-consonant is S.T.N.1, e.g.
S.șeata T.șeata N.șeata (roast for), cf. S.șeata T.șeata N.șeata (roast); N.șeata (mix in), cf. N.șeata (mix); N.șeata (ram up, block up), cf. N.șeata (fill up a gap in a hedge).

S.șeata T.șeata N.șeata (herd for, watch for), cf. S.șeata T.șeata N.șeata (herd); S.țeata T.țeata N.țeata (help for), cf. S.țeata T.țeata N.țeata (help).

In the following cases the applicative suffix is șia:
T.șia (burn in), cf. T.șia (burn), N.șia (become early), cf. S.șia T.șia N.șia (become clear, leave off raining);
S.șeata (pour on), cf. S.șeata (pour much liquid).

---

1) cf. Phaer, P. 77. If through further investigation it can be proved that the consonant preceding the applicative suffix in some of the examples quoted below is due to the influence of factitive S.ș T.ș N.ș (as their UB. counterparts indicate this is with some of these consonants definitely not the case), then such examples will actually be factitive-applicative stems and will have to be transferred to Chapter IV.

ii) Obtained from my informants.
When the final stem-consonant is S. *T. T. T. N. T. W. S.  
S. *ttesae N. *ttesa (vomit for, vomit on), of. S. *ttesa  
T. *ttesa N. *ttesa (vomit) and UB. *ka = E. *kane (vomit);  
S. *ttesae (help on behalf of), of. S. *tesa T. *tesa (help)  
T. *tesae (know on behalf of), of. T. *tehe (know); S. *tesae  
T. *ttesa T. *ttesa (limp to), of. S. *tesa T. *tesa  
N. *tesa (limp, be lame) S. *tesae (vaccinate), of. S. *tesa  
N. *tesa (lance, make an incision) and UB. *pange (cut off).  

In the following cases however the suffix is Gm: N. *ttesela  
(walk softly to), of. N. *ttesa (walk on the toes); S. *tesela  
T. *tesela N. *tesela (fall into, dose, slumber), of. N. *tesa  
(iv) (be drowsy) and UB. yele (be sleepy); S. *tesela T. *tesela  
N. *tesela (be cold, become frozen), of. N. *tesa (congeal,  
v) coagulate; and UB. kaka (congeal).  

Then the final stem-consonant is S. *tesa T. *tehe N. *tesa (or  
taw). In such cases it seems to be more commonly used than  
its modified form, e.g. S. *tesela T. *tesela = N. *tesela  
(get cooked for), of. S. *tesa T. *tesa N. *tesa (get cooked)  
probably from a form *tesela ; S. *tesela T. *tesela N. *tesela  
(blow the fire), of. N. *tesela (blow the fire), no correspond-  
ing simple stem; N. *tesela (stir in), of. N. *tesa (stir) no  
corresponding simple stem; S. *tesela T. *tesela N. *tesela (stir up as  
porridge), of. S. *tesa, T. *tesa (stir) no corresponding simple  
stem; S. *tesela T. *tesela N. *tesela (go out for or into), of.  
S. *tesa T. *tehe N. *tesa (go out).  

1) N.B.N., p. 82. If the UB. y in kane is in the factitive,  
which it need not necessarily be, then S. *katesa T. *katesa  
N. *katesa is a factitive stem and S. *katesa T. *katesa a  
factitive-applicative. It should be noted that Reinhard does  
not give an UB. pawa (cf. Phon., p. 68).  
ii) Obtained from my informants.  
iii) N.B.N., p. 212.  
iv) N.B.N., p. 36.  
v) Phon., p. 344.  
vi) C. Phon., p. 67.
When the final stem-consonant is 3.ny T. ny N. ny, e.g.
S. thunyetsa (fire, for, to, in), cf. S. thunya T. thunya N. thunya
(fire a gun); T. thwenyetsa, N. thwenyetsa (trouble for), cf.
S. tšenytsa T. thweny N. thweny (trouble); S. sunyetsa (plant
for) cf. S. sunya (plant); S. senyetsa T. senyetsa (damage for, too)
(plant; damage, spoil).

In the following cases however the suffix is _ability : T. nyentša
(smile at, upon), cf. T. nyentša (smile), N. konyša (climb up
a steep hill), cf. N. konya (climb up), S. nyala T. nyala N. nyala
(go to stool, have a motion), cf. S. nya N. nya (go to stool).

When the final stem-consonant is 3.ny e.g. N. awawetsa
(play the fool with somebody, mock), cf. S. bòasa N. awawa
(jest, joke) and S. dësetsa (joke for).

When the final stem-consonant is 3.tš T. th N. thë, e.g.
S. tšetsa T. thsetsa (take out for), cf. S. tšës T. tsës
N. tšës (take out); N. tõtšës (rub for), cf. N. tõtšë
(rub.)

---

1) Only one example could be found not-counting S. sëšëla
T. sëšëla (die for or at), which is of course derived from
a consonantal verbal root S. sëš T. sëš, also found in S. sëša
T. sëša (die).

2) Obtained from my informants.
i) (a) The applicative is used to "indicate the action when applied on behalf of, towards or with regard to some object", e.g.

T.ṣeša N.ọsọ (build for, build on), of. S.ọsọ T.ṣeša N.ọsọ (build); S.ọsọ N.ọsọ (bind for, fasten to), of. S.ọsọ T.ọsọ N.ọsọ (bind, tie); T.ụnụla (tie two things together, i.e. tie with regard to each other), of. T.ụnụla (tie); S.ụmụla N.ụmụla (milk for, milk in), of. S.ụmụla T.ụmụla N.ụmụla (milk), T.ụmụla N.ụmụla (draw to, into, towards), of. T.ọsọ N.ọsọ (draw), S.ọsọ T.ọsọ N.ọsọ (soak or dip into or for), of. S.ọsọ T.ọsọ N.ọsọ (soak, dip); N.ọsọ N.ọsọ (distribute to), of. N.ọsọ (distribute); S.ọsọ (shovel away for or towards), of. S.ọsọ (shovel away); S.ụmụla T.ụmụla N.ụmụla (open for), of. S.ụmụla T.ụmụla N.ụmụla (open); T.ọmọla (throw mud at or on), of. T.ọmọla N.ọmọla (stain, bespatter), N.ọmọla (fasten or clasp to), of. N.ọmọla (clasp, fasten); S.ọmọla T.ọmọla (gather to or into), of. S.ọmọla T.ọmọla N.ọmọla (gather), N.ọmọla (curse, or insult about), of. S.ọmọla N.ọmọla (curse, insult); T.ọmọla (take for, or from), of. T.ọmọla (take); N.ọmọla (rub out or off e.g. dirt on clothes), of. N.ọmọla (rub); T.ọmọla N.ọmọla (strike or knock about with the fist), of. N.ọmọla (batter, break); N.ọmọla (make weary or disgusted about), of. S.ọmọla T.ọmọla N.ọmọla (make weary, disgusted); S.ọmọla (bathe in), of. S.ọmọla (bathe); S.ọmọla (shut for, in or out), of. S.ọmọla (shut); S.ọmọla (beget for, or at), of. S.ọmọla N.ọmọla (beget) T.ọmọla (beget at, or for), of. T.ọmọla (beget); S.ọmọla T.ọmọla N.ọmọla (pour on, in, or for), of. S.ọmọla T.ọmọla N.ọmọla (pour); S.ọmọla T.ọmọla N.ọmọla (grew up at,

1) of. Term. pp. 52-53.
become great for), cf. S. *mela* T. *mala* N. *mala* (grow, become great); S. *melē* T. *melē* (grow for, on, in), cf. S. *mela* T. *mala* N. *mala* (grow); N. *nyamēla* (be sad about), cf. S. *nyama* N. *nyama* (dwindle, get sad.)

When translating applicative stems into English various prepositions may be employed depending upon the context in which such stems are used, e.g. (I quote from S. only) ke *hamēla* wome (I milk for the man); ke *hamēla* khamelone (I milk into the pail); ke *hamēla* pel'e atle (I milk near the house); ke *hamēla* fetle (I milk onto the ground); ke *hamēla* pel (I milk in a forward direction); ke *hamēla* sakeng (I milk in the kraal); ke *hamēla* hem (I milk at home).

(b) The suffix *ēla* has sometimes lost its applicative force, e.g. S. *kubēla* T. *kubēla* (blush, change colour), cf. S. *kuba* (turn red); N. *kubēla* (become red), cf. N. *kuba* (dawn i.e. turn red); N. *kubēla* (beat until bleeding), cf. S. *kuba* T. *kuba* N. *kuba* (spear without piercing the skin, strike against but not penetrate as an arrow); N. *kōrēla* (get cool, stop fermenting), cf. N. *kōra* (get cool of the temperature towards the evening); T. *ētēla* (kill outright, put to death), cf. S. *ēlla* N. *ēla* (strike, beat); S. *ētrēla* (brew, make beer), cf. S. *rita* T. *rita* N. *rita* (stir up, e.g. milk or blood or meat when cooking it); N. *tetēla* (beat without making a wound), cf. S. *teta* N. *teta* (hit e.g. with the fist).
(a) Sometimes the semantic relation between the applicative stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S. nēktēla (entice), cf. T. nēkēla (render friendly offices, consider a person); T. nēkēla (bolt or fasten a door), cf. S. pēka (stop with a cork, put a stopper in a hole); N. pētēla (be thrifty, take only a small quantity of vegetables, etc. to eat with meat), cf. N. pēta (press together); S. pōtēla (splash, pour water on), cf. N. pōtēla (give much milk); N. dūbēla (drive back, cause to turn back), cf. S. lūkā T. dūba N. dūba (make a mess of, stir about, e.g. clay or dough); T. nāmēla (take courage), cf. S. nāma T. nāma N. nāma (stretch out, extend); T. nāpēla (be choked, smothered), cf. S. lūkā N. lūpe (put into the mouth and then close the mouth), T. lūpe (drink a little, take a mouthful of liquid).

(b) Simple stems corresponding to some applicative stems are transitive; those corresponding to others are intransitive, e.g. S. abēla T. abēla N. abēla (distribute to, divide for), cf. S. abē T. abē N. abē transitive (divide); T. abēla N. abēla (build for), cf. S. abē T. abē N. abē transitive (divide); S. abēla T. abēla N. abēla (count for, read for), cf. S. abēla T. abēla N. abēla (count, read); T. abēla N. abēla (lie to, about), cf. T. abē N. abē transitive (lie); S. nēkēla N. nēkēla (be cold, become frozen, congeal), cf. N. nēkēla intransitive (become thick, congeal); S. pētēla (howl for), cf. S. pōtēla N. pōtēla intransitive (rear, cry loudly).

(c) The overwhelming majority of derivative stems in tē are transitive but the following intransitive stems in tē should be noted:

T. nēkēla (walk quickly), cf. S. hēba (strive for); T. nēmēla
(shrink, be diminished), cf. S. ngwâma (clasp, lock); T. ñuméla (eat very much), cf. S. suma (eat meat); T. bobêla (pit as a swelling when pressed, become indented), cf. S. bôba (diminish, decrease) T. bôba N. bôba (hide by stooping, crouch); S. fubêla T. hubêla (become red), cf. S. fuba (turn red); S. natsâla T. gatsâla N. natsâla (be cold, become frozen, congeal), cf. N. natsa (congeal, become thick).

(f) There are applicative stems which are not associated with any simple verbal stems, a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple stems, shows however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g.

T. botêla (draw secrets from a person, pump a man for information), cf. T. beta-beta (be sniffing round like a dog);
S. hloathêla (wander about), cf. S. hloathâna (walk about);
T. kwetêla (bring into sight), cf. T. kwetêna (come into sight);
T. sisêla (carry a heavy thing on the head supporting it with the hands);
S. tsâdetêla (sprain), cf. S. tsâdetâna (get sprained);
N. tsvikêla (walk on after the other);
N. kwabêla (hook in);
N. tômêla (rejoice about someone's misfortune);

(g) In all three languages if a simple verbal stem denoting an idea of motion is followed by a locative adverb it often denotes motion from, and an applicative stem built on the same root as the simple stem denotes in such circumstances motion towards, e.g. (I quote from S. only):

Re tâêla ka ntlê (we come from outside),
Re tâêla ka ntlê (we go outside),
Liphakho tsee u li thota ka? (where do you carry these goods from?)
Liphakho tsee u li thotela ka? (where do you carry these goods to?)
Ke khutla hae (I come from home)
Ke khutela hae (I return home, i.e. I go towards home)
O ka bethang (he falls from the bed)
O dêla bethang (he falls on the bed)
O ile a têla lipereki à ka belekaneng a li nietsela sekothaelong (he took peaches out of the can, and put them into the lid).

Litapele, ke tla li shaka hae, Ke li shakêlo hê seg? (Where shall I dig the potatoes and into what shall I put them?)
(a) When the applicative stem is preceded by the reflexive formative the resulting construction carries the significance of acting by oneself, e.g. S. ke tla itulêlo fêla T. ke tla itulêlo fêla N. ke tla itulêlo fêla (I shall just sit by myself), S. ke ithokêlo mose N. ke ithokêlo mose (I sew a dress for myself), S. ke ipathêla lijê T. ke ipathêla lijê N. ke inyakêla lijê (I seek food for myself).

(b) When used with the interrogative pronoun S.eS. T.eS. N.eS. (what?) the applicative suffix denotes the question "why?" or for "what reason?" S. wêkêla'nê kobo?
T. o wêkêla'nê kobo? N. o wêkêla'nê kobo? (why do you buy a blanket?), S. ba ôtlêla'nê ngwana T. ba boletse'nê ngwana? N. ba ôtlêla'nê ngwana (why do they beat the child?), S. ba lemêla'nê T. ba lemêla'nê N. ba lemêla'nê (why do they plough?).

(j) The infinitive of the applicative stem is often used when indicating the place at which, or in which the action expressed by the corresponding simple verbal stem is performed, e.g. S. ntlo sa ho bincala T. ntlo ya go bincala N. ntlo ya go bincala (a house to dance in), S. sebaka sa ho nêkêla T. sebaka sa ho nêkêla (a place to drink at), S. sajina sa ho jêla T. sajina ya go sajina N. sajina ya go sajina (a dish to eat out of?), S. sebông sa ho baskêla T. sebông ya go baskêla N. sebông ya go baskêla (a rail to run into).
(k) The applicative stem followed by S. ruri T. rure H. rure
(certainly, truly) denotes completion of action or finality,
e.g. S. ba hanša ruri T. ba ganša rure H. ba xanša rure
(they absolutely refuse). S. ke mo tsebela ruri T. ke mo
itsetsa rure H. ke mo tsebela rure (I know him thoroughly).
S. u tla abšala ruri T. o tla švšala rure H. o tla švšala
rure (you will definitely die).

(1) Applicative stems whose corresponding simple stems
are transitive may take two objects, a principal and a
subsidiary; e.g. S. ke abšala monna ntle T. ke agšla monna
ntle H. ke agšla monna ntle (I build a house for the man),
ef. S. aha T.aga N.ana (build); S. ke hanša ndšana likhomo
T. ke ganša ngwana dikgomo H. ke xanša ngwana dikgomo
(I milk a beast for the child), ef. S.hama T.gama X.xama
(milk).

In T. both the principal and the subsidiary objects may
be represented by objectival verbal concords, the concord
is placed of the principal object being the nearest to the verbal stem,
e.g. ke a e no agšla (I build it for him). In S. and H.
it is the principal object which is as a rule represented by
an objectival verbal concord, the subsidiary object by an
absolute pronoun after the verb, e.g. S. ke mo abšala čona
N. ke a mo xššala yeša (I build it for him). If however, the
principal object is to be emphasized the subsidiary object
may be represented by an objectival verb concord, e.g.
S. ke e abšala čona H. ke a e xššala yeša (build it for him).

In all three languages the principal object may be
represented by an objectival verbal concord, the subsidiary

1) cf. Term. pp. 155 and 176.
2) In H. It sometimes happens that both objects are represen-
ted by objectival verbal concords, but here the objectival
concord representing the principal object comes first, e.g.
re a mo di dishšala (we hard them for him), cf. P.H.A. Leuwemans
Koedeza by die nasuif van Transvaal-stoet, p. 165.
3) A similar process is adopted in T. for the sake of
emphasis, e.g. ke a agšla yeša (build it for him).
object being retained as a noun, e.g. S. ke mo átlále
nwana  T. ke mo baletsa nwana  N. ke e mo átlále
nwana  (I beat the child for him), S. ba re laméla
thime  T. ba re laméla thime  N. ba e re laméla thime
(they plough the land for us). For the sake of emphasis
the position may be reversed, e.g. S. ba e laméla monna
T. ba e laméla monna  N. ba e e laméla monna  (they
(i.e. the land)
plough it for the man). The emphasis falls upon the
substantive object.
Compound:

1. Applicative in basic position:

   1) Applicative (intensive) (a) 
      
      S.elle S.ôle both from S.ëlia, T.ëlia, sometimes abbreviated to N.ëlla N.ôle. In S. the second ê of the 1) suffix is nearly always dropped excepting when the final stem consonant is ê, in which case the first ê is sometimes dropped instead of the second. In N. contraction takes place in the same way as in S. but on a much smaller scale. In T. the suffix remains unchanged, e.g. S. pokëla N. bokëla (gather, store up, hoard), cf. N. boka (collect, rake); S. bëlëla (hit on a wound on the head) N. bëlëla (keep on beating something so as to smooth it), cf. S. bata T. bata N. bata (strike, slap with the hand); S. télëla T. télëla N. télëla (go in front of, precede), cf. S. têta T. têta N. têta (journey, travel); S. télëla T. télëla N. télëla (exaggerate, exceed, go ahead), cf. S. têta T. têta N. têta (pass); S. pokëla T. pokëla N. pokëla, or N. bokëla (tell to), cf. T. poka (tell news) N. boka (speak); S. kolëla N. kolëla (thread, string), no corresponding simple stem, but cf. N. kolëla (string); N. kolëla (present with), no corresponding simple stem; S. kolëla (sow again on places where the grain has not grown), cf. S. jëla T. jëla N. jëla (sow, lie one across another in a heap), cf. S. jëla T. jëla N. jëla (lie); S. polëla (thash many times in one day), cf. S. polë N. polë (thash); S. thëlla (slip in, to, away from), cf. N. thëla (slip).

1) In the case of S. télëla (best in a debate, conquer), cf. T. télëla (be too hard for), N. télëla (round off), S. télëla N. télëla (remain raw although cooked), and T. télëla (be too difficult), as well as in the case of S. pokëla (walk awkwardly), the suffix is not ýëla but ýëla i.e. the applicative of the actional, the ý preceding ýëla being an unstandardised connecting vowel.
(b) S.eletsa T.eletsa N.eletsa < S.etsa + ḫla T.etsa + ḫla N.etsa + ḫla. The suffix has therefore this form when the corresponding applicative ends in S.eletsa T.eletsa N.eletsa; and S.etsa + ḫla T.etsa + ḫla N.etsa + ḫla S.eletsa T.eletsa N.eletsa in analogy with such cases as, e.g. N.bitē (found in bitē = call) + ḫla > N.ambilē (call to).

Examples: S.beseletsa (make a fire for) N.beseletē (fire of a pot or of bricks, add fuel to a fire), cf. S.beseletsa (roast for) N.besetē (poker the fire), and S.basa T.basa N.basa (roast, make a fire); T.thuseletsa (help someone again with respect to something), cf. S.thuseletē T.thuseletē N.ambilē (help).

(ii) (a) The applicative (intensive) denotes that two propositional ideas are involved when an action is applied on behalf of, towards, or with regard to, some object; the second propositional idea need not necessarily be an addition to that expressed by the applicative suffix, e.g. N.lalōlē (lie one across another in a heap), cf. S.lalē T.lalē N.lalē (lie in ambush, lie in wait for) and S.lālē T.lalē N.lalē (lie); S.kenōla (interfere i.e. go in with regard to some aim), cf. S.kenēla (go in for) and S.kōna (go in); N.sbolōla (reach out to something in order to take it down), cf. T.sbolē N.sbolē (bend towards) and S.sāba T.sāba N.sēba (bend); S.fihlōla (arrive in succession), cf. S.fihlēla

---

1) In form this suffix agrees with the applicative (intensive)-factitive S.eletsa T.eletsa N.eletsa < S.etsa + ḫla T.etsa + ya N.etsa + ya (cf. b) below.

The second ḫ which has been elided from S.eletsa always reappears, but not the first, e.g. S.kolētsa (continue gathering one by one), cf. S.koletsa (gather one by one, save money) and S.kēla N.kēla (gather).

ii) cf. Chapter 17.

iii) Obtained from my informants.
T. fitihela (overtake, arrive at) and S. fitihla T. fitihla
N. fitihla (arrive); S. fiteléla T. fiteléla N. fiteléla (go ahead, exaggerate, exceed, i.e. go on and on); cf. S. fitela
T. fitela N. fitela (pass on to) cf. S. feta T. feta
N. feta (pass); S. ruléla (put new thatch on old, i.e.
put thatch on and on and on) cf. S. ruléla T. ruléla
N. ruléla (put thatch on, in N. also; to forge on) and
N. rula (forge); S. hatéla T. hatéla N. hatéla (trample
on, oppress), cf. T. hatéla N. hatéla (tread with respect to)
and S. hata T. hata N. hata (tread, trample); S. bokelela
N. bokelela (store up, heap up, heaped, i.e. bring together and
together and together), cf. N. bokelela (scratch to, scrape to)
and N. boke (rake, rake together); S. rokeléla N. rokeléla
(stitch, sew many pieces together, i.e. sew on and on)
cf. S. rokeléla N. rokeléla (sew on) and S. roka T. roka N. roka
(sew).

As a result of the repetition of the same prepositional
idea the intensive force has sometimes entirely over-
shadowed the applicative force, e.g. S. peléla (thresh
many times in one day), cf. S. peléla (thresh for) and
S. pola N. pola (thresh); T. pelélelo (snap off in short

---

1) This reminds one of the perfective suffix elela ilile
etc., found in Central Bantu, cf. Term. 163, and in Zulu cf.
lengths) of T. nôtsa (break off), no corresponding applicative stem could be ascertained; S. jatôla T. jatôla
N. jatôla (follow closely after), cf. S. jatôla T. jatôla
N. jatôla (follow after) and T. jata N. jata (follow) S. jata
(fetch); S. bôrêla N. bôrêla (bind very fast), cf. S. bôrêla
N. bôrêla (bind for or to) and S. bôra T. bôra N. bôra (bind);
S. kôphôla (strike repeatedly), cf. T. kôpha (strike with
the hand), no corresponding applicative stem could be ascer-
tained; S. ômêla T. ômêla N. ômêla (wither, become com-
pletely dry), cf. S. ôma T. ôma N. ôma (become dry), no corres-
dponding applicative stem could be indicated; N. hloxeôla
(join by healing, heal up), cf. N. hloxeôla (grow on to, grow
into) and T. tîbôra N. bôra (grow, sprout).

(b) Sometimes, especially in S., this suffix
has merely an applicative and not an applicative (intensive)
force; in some such cases no applicative stem could be ascer-
tained, e.g. S. jôôela T. jôôela (drug, put charms in, on,
for), cf. S. jôôa T. jôôa (drug a house or field against evil),
no jôôa; S. jôôela (topple down, diminish), cf. S. jôôa
(diminish), no jôôa; T. jôôela (close a door, etc.,
against some one), cf. S. kôba T. kôba N. kôba (close a hole) and T. kôba
(dibble in ground with a crow); S. jôôela (move to), cf. S. jôôa (crawl, creep), no
jôôa; S. jôôela (be astonished at, take notice of),
of S. jôôa T. jôôa (be astonished) no jôôa; N. jôôela
(hang down, dangle, cf. N. kôka (linger, loiter) and kôka,
In other cases again there is an applicative stem, but the stem in ṭélēla nevertheless expresses only one prepositional idea, e.g. S. lefēlla N. lefēlēla (pay instead), cf. S. lefēlē T. lefēlē N. lefēlē (pay for) and S. lefa T. lefa N. lefa (pay); S. habēlēla (walk quickly to), cf. T. gebēlē (walk quickly, i.e. to strive with regard to) and S. habēr (strive for); S. kōnēlē (give drugs to), cf. S. kōndēlē (make a little packet of drugs) and S. kōna N. kōna (give sparingly).

(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the applicative (intensive) stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S. efēlla (gather from all sides), cf. N. efa (take on the shoulder), no applicative stem; S. kōnēlēla (cf. (b) above); S. momēlēla (bind, join together), cf. S. moma T. mōma N. mōma (pinch the mouth, close the mouth) and S. momēlē (gather); N. thēsēlēlēla (stare fixedly at something), cf. S. ṭēlēpa (hope, trust) and S. ṭēlēla (trust for, entrust to); N. kətitlēlē (tan for), cf. S. kətil N. kətla (strike the ground with a pick) and S. kətēlē (scrape a skin).
(d) About 40 out of the 200 derivative stems in ꠮ ꠮ are intransitive, e.g. T.ﾅﾇﾇﾇ (to make a wry face as if about to cry), cf. N.ﾇﾇ transitive (make sad); S.ﾇﾇ (sees out), cf. S.ﾇﾇ (become loose); N.ﾇﾇ (smoke, steam) of T.ﾇﾇ intransitive (smoke, steam); S.ﾇﾇ T.ﾇﾇ (hang down, dangle), no corresponding simple stem; S.ﾇﾇ (emit as foam, saliva); T.ﾇﾇ (talk loudly, rave), cf. T.ﾇﾇ intransitive (foam, froth).

(e) There are applicative (intensive) stems which are not associated with any extant simple or extent applicative stem; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. S.ﾇﾇ (sit idle) of T.ﾇﾇ (fall down in weakness); S.ﾇﾇ (snatch up, precipitate oneself into), cf. T.ﾇﾇ T.ﾇﾇ (snatch, pluck out of the hand); T.ﾇﾇ (fade away); S.ﾇﾇ (affirm, speak firmly); T.ﾇﾇ (press a stooping person down to the ground); N.ﾇﾇ (go down, disappear).

(f) The following applicative (intensive) and actional (capable-intensive) stems are given for comparison purposes; it will be noticed that they are semantically closely related: N.ﾇﾇ (be placed straight, upright, firm), S.ﾇﾇ T.ﾇﾇ N.ﾇﾇ (stand upright, straight, remain standing on one place), of T.ﾇﾇ N.ﾇﾇ (throw a spear so as to make it stick upright in the ground); S.ﾇﾇ (lie flat on the face, spread out), S.ﾇﾇ T.ﾇﾇ N.ﾇﾇ (lie
flat on the ground from fatigue, lie stretched out), cf. N.sena
T.sena N.sena (stretch out); S.senélle (become mouldy, become
dry), S.senalla (become dry, dry up, get stiff), cf. N.sena
(get rotten inside).

bb) The applicative (intensive)-factive S.eletsa
T.eletsa N.eletática < S.eletsa + ŏa T.eletsa + ya N.eletsa + ya,
(cf. a)/(b) above).

This is not a very common suffix, about 50 applicative
(intensive)-factive stems have been found. It is however
given here because in form, although not in derivation, it is
identical with that of one of the applicative (intensive)
suffixes, and also because, as will be seen in dd) below,
it is sometimes semantically interchangeable with one of the
applicative (intensive)-applicative-factive suffixes.

1) The S.e T.y N.y which is present in this suffix has a narrow-
ing influence on the ŏ of the preceding syllable (cf. Phen.
p. 71). As a rule this narrowing influence is extended to the
vowels of all preceding syllables if ŏ or ū, e.g. N.kateleța
(stamp in, force in), cf. S.katélélë N.katélélë (press down of
against); S.fetelleța (finish one's work by doing that of
another), cf. S.fetelleța T.fetélélë N.fetélélë (exceed, exaggerate)
S.lokelața (adapt) N.lokelața (bring near to one another), cf.
S.lokelața N.lokelața (to be in accord with, in N. also; be near
to one another); S.șteleța (send in advance), cf. S.ștelila
T.șteleța N.ștelila (go in advance); S.bloameletsa T.bloameletsa
(longenai out and to), cf. T.bloameletsa (lengthen). But as far
as I could ascertain this effect of y is not always extended to
the syllable(s) beyond the one preceding y; however, this seems
to be a peculiarity of individual speakers and is certainly not a
universal rule, e.g. in T.bloameletsa = T.bloameletsa (cf. above)
in N.șteleța = N.șteleța (dry out) cf. S.șteleța T.șteleța
N.șteleța (become dry); and N.șteleța = S.șteleța
T.șteleța N.șteleța (cf. below).

ii) It is also identical in form with the applicative-factive-
applicative, cf. Chapter 17e(1) 1. bb) 1).
Soteletsa (send in advance), cf. S.štela T.štela N.štela (go in front of, go before one) and S.šta T.šta N.šta (journey, travel); S.šeletsa N.šeletša (add a mistake to what one has already said, go far in speaking), cf. S.štelša N.štelša (exaggerate, override one's fault, go on in speaking) and Sšeta T.sšeta N.sšeta (pass); S.lepeletsa T.lepeletsa N.lepeletša or N.lēpeletša (let down, cause to hang down), cf. S.lēpēša T.lēpēša N.lēpēša (hang down, dangle), no corresponding simple stem.

cc) Applicative (intensive)-applicative; this is a very rare suffix, found, as far as I could ascertain, in S, only, and the reason for giving it here is because it is sometimes semantically identical with the corresponding applicative (intensive) stem. It has three forms; (a) ššida < ššila:

The following are the only examples I could find of applicative (intensive) applicative stems in ššila; ššila (insist upon, go on scolding), cf. S.šmēla T.šmēša N.šmēša (speak of, prevent, stand security for, stand always or repeatedly, stand aside), S.šme T.šmē N.šme (stand); romšila (send indirectly), cf. S.romēla N.romēša (send indirectly) and S.rome T.rome N.rome (send), bokšila (gather for, in, on) of S.bokēla N.bokēla (gather, store up, heap, hoard) and N.boka (scrape together); štēpšila (continue to hope, go on hoping) of S.šēpša (hope), no corresponding applicative (intensive) stem; šnēšila (like very much, love very much), cf. N.nēňa (pick out), no corresponding applicative (intensive) stem.

\(^{21}\) It is remarkable that very often the semantic relation between the applicative (intensive)-applicative stems and the corresponding simple stems is rather vague.
(b) *s.elella* < *s.elelala*, found only with the following example: nehelella (send to), cf. *s.nehella* (send to, give the order to attack) and *s.neha* (give).

(c) *s.elltsa* < *s.eleltsa* < ets + ëlla ( < *ëlla*) or ets + ëla; the suffix has this form when the corresponding applicative or applicative (intensive) has the form etsa or etslsa respectively. The following are the only examples I could find of applicative (intensive)-applicative stems in elltsa: *s.beselltsa* (make a fire under a pot), cf. *s.beselltsa* (make a fire for) *N.beselltsa* (fire a pot, fire bricks, add fuel to a fire) and *s.besa* T.besa *N.besa* (roast, make a fire); *s.phatselltsa* (lance for the second time) cf. *s.phatsetsa* (vaccinate) and *S.phatsa* N.phatsa (lance); *S.tlateselltsa* (come to help), cf. *S.tlatesetsa* (help with respect to) and *S.tletsa* (help); *S.etselltsa* (calumniate, slander) no corresponding simple or applicative (intensive) stems.

1) Identical in form with the applicative (intensive)-applicative-factive, cf. ad) below.
dd) Applicative (intensive)-applicative-factitive.

N.elelēśa < S.elelēśa N.elelēša N.eleleśa
< S.elelēśa + S.ya N.elelēśa + ya.

As far as I could ascertain this suffix occurs in S. and N. only, 11 times in S. and 3 times in N. It is given here because it is identical in form, although not in derivation, with one of the forms of the applicative (intensive)-applicative

1) and also because it is sometimes semantically identical with the corresponding applicative (intensive)-factitive, e.g. N.xapelleśa (enforce, extort),
cf. N.xapelētša (force, obtain by force) and S.xapa T.gapa
N.xapa (snatch, seize), no xapelēlē; N.kateleśa (ram
into), cf. N.kateleśa (press in, press against) and S.kata
T.kata N.kata (tramp down on loose soil, tread), no
katelelē; N.qeleleśa (heap up), cf. N.eka (carry on
the hand) no qeleša or qelēlē; S.eleleśa =
S.eleleša (send in advance), cf. S.ēta T.ēta N.ēta (travel,
journey) no ēlēlē; S.romelleśa = S.romeleśa (send by
opportunity) cf. S.romelleśa (send indirectly), N.romeleśa
(set on as a dog after game) and S.rome T.rome N.rome (send);
S.timeleśa = S.timeleśa (destroy), cf. T.timeleśa
(cause to wander from), N.timeleśa (embarrass) and S.time
T.tima N.tima (beguile), no timelēlē; S.tamelēša
(bind one thing on another), cf. S.tlama T.tlama (bind),
no tlemelēša or tlemelēša.

1) This refers of course only to S.
248

i) Applicative-factitive S. ehtae T. ehtae

E. ehtae < S. ehtae T. ehtae + S. ehtae T. ehtae E. ehtae, e.g.

T. ehtae N. ehtae (lie against, speak falsely about) of.
T. akole N. akole (lie to, lie about) and T. aka N. aka
(lie); S. imteca N. imteca (overload, lay heavy upon), of.
S. imteca T. imteca N. imteca (be heavy upon, be too heavy for)
and T. imteca N. imteca (become heavy); S. tehweateca T. tehweateca
(infect as with a disease), cf. S. tehweateca T. tehweateca (mark
for) and S. tehweateca T. tehweateca (mark). The ő of ő, if
dropped, always reappears in this compound, e.g.
S. leletae T. leletae N. leletae (call together, call to a
feast), cf. S. lelə N. lelə (eat supper).

ii) The applicative-factitive adds the
factitive idea to the idea expressed by the applicative
stem, e.g. N. bəntən (place against each other), cf. N. bəntən
(comes against each other) and S. bəte T. bəte N. bəte
(be parallel, side by side); S. bətən (choke a person, e.g. by
putting a blanket over his head), cf. S. bətən (hide, cover
with regard to something) and S. bəte T. bəte N. bəte
(cover, hide); N. bətən (help along, i.e. cause to go along), cf.
S. bətən T. bətən N. bətən (travel to) and S. bəte T. bəte N. bəte
(travel, journey); N. bətən (bring along, bring on), cf.
S. bətən T. bətən N. bətən (pass on) and S. bəte T. bəte
N. bəte (pass), S. bətən (mix, intertwine), cf. S. bətən
(build with branches) and S. bətən T. bətən N. bətən (strip
off the leaves of a tree); T. həntən (choke, smother, stifla
of. T. həntən (be choked, smothered, stifled) and S. hətən
N. həta (close the mouth after having put something in it);
T. leletae N. leletae (cause to come to an end, spend), of.
S. leletae N. leletae (come to an end) and S. lelə T. lele N. lele
end, get finished).

1) This suffix is identical in form, although not in derivation
with one of the applicative suffixes, cf. ő, above; and with one
of the factitive-applicative suffixes (cf. Chapter 17 ő 3/1
L. bb). ii) In the following case T. steta:nemsteta = nemsteta
(encourage). iii) The S. te T. te N. te of S. te T. te N. te, which is
present in this compound suffix, is responsible for the ő of
(b) The applicative-factitive suffix has sometimes acquired in S. a special force, viz. that of denoting an action done slightly or quickly, e.g. S. hafetsa (rain a little, splash), cf. S. hafia (eat or drink by throwing food or drink into the mouth) and S. hafa (scatter); S. koletse (gather one by one), cf. S. kolla (become numerous) and S. ko (collect), rake together; S. kubetsa (beat or wound slightly), cf. N. kubela (beat till the blood comes out); and S. kupa T. kupa N. kupa (spear without piercing the skin); S. lerestsa (strike slightly), cf. N. lerela (cause to crack) and S. ler (strike on the head).

(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the applicative-factitive stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. T. khotlatse N. khotlala (push the ends of burning sticks into a fire, stir a fire), cf. S. khotla (stir up, stir in) and T. khotla N. khotla (touch, push with the point of the finger); S. tsamatsa (take by surprise), cf. S. tsama T. tsamela (hunt for) and S. tsame T. tsome N. tsone (hunt); T. gona (sign with the fingers), cf. T. gona N. xone (draw in as the hand or foot), no applicative stem; S. heletse (throw down, demolish), cf. S. holle (resp for) and S. hole (mow, resp); N. xwelata (produce or bring a love potion), cf. N. xwala (copulate of sheep), no applicative stem.

(d) About a dozen of the 200 derivative stems in S. etse T. etse N. etse are intransitive and all of these with the exception of one are found in S., e.g. S. teketsa (throb, twinkle of the eye), cf. N. taka intransitive (shake up and down on the water), no corresponding applicative stem; S. hafetsa (rain a little, splash), cf. S. hafia (eat or drink by throwing food or drink into the mouth with the hand) and S. hafa transitive (scatter), S. pharetsa (come out in quantity of blood from a

1) Cf. etsa and etc above.
Tephra 286

wound), cf. S. phara, N. phara transitive (plaster, spread, smear roughly), no corresponding applicative stem, T. gonsea (sign with the fingers), cf. T. gona N. xova transitive (draw in as the hand or foot), no corresponding applicative stem.

(e) There are applicative-factive stems which are not associated with any extent simple verbal stems or extant applicative stems; a comparison with other derivative stems, also having no corresponding simple stems, shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. S. seketa (brandish) of N. sekela (keep on chopping with an axe); S. selesta (do a thing at the end after others, out of time), cf. S. selemany (put in disorder); S. loheta T. logesta (drop in as oil, medicine, etc.); T. selta (pierce with a sharp instrument making a clicking noise); T. sektea (smoothen); N. sekela (spare, save).

(f) The applicative-factive S. este T. sesta N. etea is much more commonly found than the applicative-performative S. elice T. elice N. elice; only about 25 applicative-performative stems could be indicated, while there are about 800 applicative-factive stems, and only the following few applicative-factive and applicative-performative stems have common roots: S. lestes (cause to follow) and S. lastela (cause to follow, follow closely, everywhere), cf. S. lata (fetch) T. lata N. lata (follow); S. relsea (cause to slip) and T. reledes (cause to slip), cf. N. rela (escape, get away i.e. glide off); S. selesta N. theleta (cause to glide) and S. selelisa T. seleldes (cause to escape) N. theledes (polish, smoothen), cf.
N. kemela (glide); S. seleta T. holetas (ask for) S. holelisa (cause to say, speak much of a matter) N. holedes (cause to speak), cf. T. hole (tell news) N. hole (speak);
T. getetsa (make hot, cause to be hot, inflame, excite) and
T. getedisa (make hot), no corresponding simple stem.

It will be seen that some of these stems are
to semantically identical, and the difference between the others
is due to the difference between the factitive suffix and
the performative suffix.

2. Applicative in a non-basic position: It is very
extensively used in such a position, and I quote only a few
examples below. The contribution of this suffix to such
compounds is that it adds, in each case, the applicative idea
to the idea expressed by the suffix without S. ṭla T. ṭla N. ṭla
(or its permuted form). Examples: Reciprocal-applicative:
S. ṭonela T. ṭonela N. ṭonela, e.g. S. ṭokanela Ḿokanela N. ṭokanela
(gather in, on, etc.), cf. S. ṭokana Ḿokana N. ṭokana (assemble,
gather) and N. ṭoka (take together).
Multiplicative-applicative (intensive)-reciprocal S. akellana
e.g. S. katakellana (be crowded, crush one another), cf.
S. katakela Ḿatakela N. katakela (crush under the feet),
S. katake Ḿatakela N. katakela (crush, trample) and S. kata Ḿata
N. kata (press, tramp). Positional-actional (capable)-applica-
tive N. amalola e.g. N. phapha amalola (float out) cf.
N. phaphamela (float, run), ṭ. phaphama (flutter as hanging
clothes in the wind) N. phaphama (run) and ṭ. phapha (run, fly).
Actional (destructive)-applicative S. olola T. olola N. olola:

1) See also: N. sepetsa (cause to walk, teach to walk) and
N. sepedisa (cause to walk, help along), cf. T. sepele
N. sepelula (walk) S. sepele (wander about), these are
actional stems; S. sebetsa (work) and S. sebelisa (cause
to work, use), sebetsa has been derived from Nguni,
sebese (work).

11) cf. Chapter 17.
(the connecting vowel e is not elided in this compound because of the vowel in the preceding syllable —— e.g. S. eólêa (take away the eggs of a young hen that it may not hatch them) T. eólêa (separate a large calf from the smaller ones and let it go with its mother) N. eólêa (take asunder that which has been spread), cf. S. eólê (flee, run away) T. eólê (scatter, drive away) and S. eólê T. eólê N. eólê (spread); S. eólêa (peel for), cf. S. eólê a N. eólê (peel, pare) and N. eólê (skin); T. gomólêa N. xumólêa (squeeze out, squeeze into), cf. T. gomólê N. xumólê (squeeze out) and S. huma T. gomá N. xumá (milk).

Actional (capable)—applicative S. eólêa mostly abbreviated i. to eólê by sliding the connecting vowel e, and in a few cases to lâle by sliding the connecting vowel e; this happens only if the final stem-consonant is l; T. eólêa always kept unabbreviated; N. eólêa mostly kept unabbreviated, but i. in a few cases abbreviated to eólê, e.g.

1) Whether eólê is an abbreviation of eólêa (cf. (1))
(2) 1. aa) i) above, or of eólêa can be seen; i. either from the meaning of the derivative stem, or ii. by comparing the derivative stem in eólê with the corresponding derivative stem ending in S. all N. all + S. na h. ya: all (eólêa — S. de N. ya) > S. eólêa N. eólêa, but all (eólêa) — S. de N. ya) > S. eólêa N. eólêa (cf. (1.))
(3) 1. (a) i) above); or iii. by comparing the derivative stem in eólê with its T. parallels.

II) Whether lâle is an abbreviation of eólêa (cf. 1. aa)
ii. above), or of eólêa can be seen; i. either from the meaning of the derivative stem, or ii. by comparing the derivative stem in lâle with its T. or N. parallels.
S.falala, falala (emigrate to) cf. S.falla, T.falala
N.falala (emigrate, become scattered), no corresponding simple stem; S.phalale (run to, go to the rescue cf., pursue), cf. S.phale, N.phalale (run, run ahead, race, flow) and S.phala, T.phala, N.phala (excel); S.halale, T.halale, N.halale (be holy), no corresponding actional (capable) or simple stems; S.halale (stifle, choke), no corresponding actional (capable) or simple stems; S.loba, N.loba (forget for # #, forgive), cf. S.loba, T.loba, N.loba (look at); N.ngapala (scratch with respect to), cf. T.ngapala (hold fast) N.ngapala (get scratched) and S.ngapa, N.ngapa (scratch); S.lamale (become accustomed to), cf. S.lama, T.lama, N.lama (become accustomed) and S.lama, N.lama (be well acquainted with); N.bonala, N.bonale (appear for), T.bonale (appear) and S.bona, T.bona, N.bona (see); T.kalale, N.bonale (stare at, look hard at), cf. T.kale (gaze hard or stare) and T.kale (open the eyes wide).
254.

((3)) A Single:

1) Actional (destructive) S. ola Tola

N. ola e.g. T. gamole N. xemole (squeeze out, wring out),

of. S. gamo T. xam N. xama (milk); S. namola (extend), of.

S. gama T. gama N. xama (spread out, extend); S. alole

T. julola (fold up, roll up, fake up that has been spread out), of. J. sela T. sela N. sela (spread out);

S. keola (cut down, cut off) < S'kavale N. keola

(split wood), of. S. kafa (hew down, chop), S. tlole T. tlole

N. tlole (jump, jump up or over), of. S. sile T. sile N. sile

(come); N. xemole (untie, unfasten), of. N. xemole (fasten),

S. xemole (lift up stones with a crowbar), of. S. xemole

(lift up).

If S. ola T. ola N. ola is attached to a verbal root whose

vowel is I or a this vowel becomes a or 0, e.g. N. xemole

T. xemole (tilt up, lift up, bend back) of. N. xene (bend,

turn); T. xemole (cause to go away) of. S. xene T. xene N. xene

(stand); N. xemole (take out of the water), of. N. xene (put

into water); S. xemole (shout, lift up one's voice), of.

S. xene (be timid); S. xemole T. xemole N. xemole (take

out as a thorn, root out), of. S. xene T. xene N. xene

(plant, fix in on end); N. xemole (look well after), of.

N. xene (look after); S. xemole (chase, drive animals), of.

S. xene (drive cattle quickly); T. xemole (pick up one by

one as does a fowl), of. N. xene (pick up).

If the root-vowel is 0 or a and the final root-con-

sonant is t, the o of ola is elided in S., and may be elided

in N., although often retained in N., and always retained in

1) T. ola S. kola T. golola N. xolela (untie, loosen), of.

S. kola

N. ola (tie, bind); S. kola/N. kola (wander away, go

astray, become scattered) of. S. kola N. kola (gather, e.g.

1) If the root-vowel is a vowel other than 0 or a the

suffix ola is retained unabbreviated in all three

languages.
locusts with the hands), N.pholla N.pholola (beat corn out of the ear), cf. S.phela (trash); S.tšella T.tšolela N.tšella N.tšoelola (pour out, spill, shed blood), cf. S.tšela T.tšolela (dish up); N.polola N.olla (hatchet, hackle) cf. S.ola N.ola (comb, brush, remove the bulk of the shaft before winnowing).

ii) (a) The actional (destructive) denotes an action of undoing or destroying of the state or action expressed by the corresponding simple stem. It implies either of the following:

That the state or action is reversed; the suffix may here be termed the actional (destructive-reversive), it has this force in about 200 cases, e.g. S.alola T.alola N.alola (fold up, take up or away that which has been spread out), cf. S.alo T.alo N.alo (spread out), N.xunola (untie), cf. N.xuna (tie); S.inola T.inola N.inola (take out of water), cf. S.ina T.ina N.ina (put into water); N.jarola (take off (a burden)), cf. S.jara N.jara (carry); S.xohola N.xoro (lift up a heavy load), cf. N.xora (put down); T.thelela (take skins out of the damp earth where they have been put away to soften), cf. T.thela (bury skins in damp earth to soften them); T.yola (hold back, withhold a person from doing), cf. S.ts T.ya N.ya (go); N.xatela (lift up the foot, shift the foot), cf. S.xata T.gata N.xata (tread, trample); N.thipela (take off the lid), cf. N.thipa (put the lid on); S.phetela N.phetela (turn over, turn to the original position), cf. T.pheta N.pheta (turn). // That the state or action is extended; the suffix may here be termed the actional (destructive-extensive); it has this force in about 300 cases, e.g. S.abola (distribute away from), cf. S.aba T.aba N.aba (divide); S.alola (flee, run away) T.alola (scatter, drive away), cf. S.alo T.alo N.alo (spread); S.arola N.arola (separate, divide, pull off, cut, divide) T.arola (make a large opening in a
more, make a large gaping wound), cf. T.eme N.eme (cut open a swelling); T.sanele N.xanele (squeeze out, wring out), cf. S.xama T.sama N.xama (milk); S.khoba (throw out wholly, carry away, wash away), cf. S.khofo (shovel away, drive out); N.kanola (shame), cf. N.kena (sprain); S.khebo (scold, express dissatisfaction, blame), cf. S.khoba T.khoba N.khoba (reproach, rail at); S.nyefo N.nyefo (speak badly of, abuse, blaspheme), cf. N.nyoka (lie); N.lamola (cultivate land which has been ploughed during winter), cf. S.lama T.lama N.lama (plough); N.fola (give away, distribute), cf. S.fu T.fu N.fu (give); N.khetho (separate, divide), cf. S.khether T.khether N.khetho (choose, pick out); N.nyakola (seek out), cf. N.nyaka (seek); S.phatlola T.phatlola N.phatlola (split, pull asunder as a stick, cut asunder lengthwise, make one's way through people or bushes), cf. S.phatla N.phatla (break); S.batola T.batola N.batola (sharpen a grinding stone, forge by hammering), cf. S.bota T.bata N.bata (slap, beat, strike); N.lekola (examine), cf. S.laka T.laka N.laka (try); N.phatlola (split wood), cf. S.phatla N.phatla (make an incision), N.phatlola (open, crack open as a stone), cf. S.phatla (open as a bag, etc.) N.fokwola (dig out with a crowbar), cf. N.fokwa (dig with a 1 crowbar).

It is perhaps remarkable that nearly half of the actional (destructive-extensive) stems convey an idea of away from.

§ As can be seen from the above I regard the difference between the two functions of ela as merely secondary and not as primary. This is in agreement with K. Endemann's intention as far as N. is concerned, cf. W.d.5, p. 38. A similar phenomenon has also been observed as regards the function of the representatives of S.ela T.ela N.ela in other Bantu languages, e.g. by Horowitz for Karanga, cf. A Grammar of Central Karanga, p. 193, and by Barlow for kikuyu, cf. Kikuyu Grammar, p. 106.

Doke disagrees on this point and thinks that we should here accept two suffixes identical in form but not in function, cf. Term, p. 39. That the position is in Bantu languages generally, I do not venture to say, but as far as Sotho is concerned, this suffix has, as indicated above, only one function, viz. undoing, which, however, falls into two sub-heads, viz. reversing and extending. It may perhaps be added that it would be extraordinary to have in Sotho two suffixes identical in form, but entirely different in function.
The actional (destructive), both in its reverse and in its extensive sense, is sometimes attached to the same verbal root, e.g. S.\_ole, T.\_ole, N.\_ole (fold up, take up that which has been spread out) and S.\_ole, T.\_ole (flee, run away, scatter, drive away), cf. S.\_la, T.\_la, N.\_la (spread, scatter); N.\_ole (move quickly) and T.\_ole (lift up or help to rise from a sitting posture, idea of slowness is here merely extended - not reversed), cf. N.\_ene (move slowly, be slow); S.\_ime (take from, take arms from a man) and T.\_ime (begin), cf. S.\_ime (plant).

(b) The suffix \_ole has sometimes lost its actional (destructive) force, e.g. T.\_epole (pick up, pick up one by one), cf. N.\_epa (pick up); N.\_epole (take on the back), cf. S.\_epa, N.\_epa (take on the back); S.\_hela (pat, caress), cf. S.\_hela (thresh). S.\_bela, N.\_bela (eat a little, eat) vs. N.\_bena (be greedy)?

(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the actional (destructive) stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S.\_o\_he (pluck off, root out), cf. S.\_o\_ha (steal); N.\_u\_ha (rend, tear up, tear in pieces), cf. S.\_u\_ha, T.\_u\_ha (beat with a stick); S.\_hela, T.\_tola, N.\_hela (judge, condemn, decide a question), cf. N.\_hela (open); T.\_g\_hela (cause to be cast down), cf. S.\_g\_hela (clasp, look).
(d) The majority, viz. (about 80%) of the simple stems corresponding to actional (destructive) stems are transitive, the others are intransitive, e.g. N.\textit{bepola} (change the form or destroy), cf. S.\textit{bepa} T.\textit{bepa} N.\textit{bepa} transitive (form, shape); N.\textit{fahola} (take something out of the eye), cf. S.\textit{fahla} T.\textit{fahla} N.\textit{fahla} transitive (hurt the eye); S.\textit{pepola} (crush something wet) N.\textit{pepola} (pull out something sticky), cf. N.\textit{pepa} intransitive (be sticky of liquid); T.\textit{amla} (cause to go away), cf. S.\textit{ama} T.\textit{ama} N.\textit{ama} intransitive (stand); S.\textit{are} N.\textit{are} (separate, out, divide), T.\textit{are} N.\textit{are} transitive (out open a swelling, wound the head); T.\textit{amola} N.\textit{amola} (squeeze out, wring out), cf. S.\textit{ama} T.\textit{ama} N.\textit{ama} transitive (milk); T.\textit{belola} (cause to come to the surface), cf. S.\textit{bele} T.\textit{bele} N.\textit{bele} intransitive (beil); S.\textit{fetola} N.\textit{fetola} (blow about or away), cf. N.\textit{feta} intransitive (be light).

(e) Derivative stems in \textit{ola} are mostly transitive, but there are about 50 intransitive stems in \textit{ola}, e.g. S.\textit{katala} (pass without stopping, in a suspicious way), cf. N.\textit{kata} intransitive (go quickly without looking at somebody); T.\textit{kutola} (project, stick out), cf. T.\textit{kutla} N.\textit{kutla} transitive (nudge with the elbow, knock against a thing with the foot); N.\textit{katela} (fly quickly past or across), cf. S.\textit{kha-kha} (go away quickly), no corresponding simple stem; S.\textit{phala} (pass without stopping), cf. S.\textit{phala} T.\textit{phala} N.\textit{phala} transitive (surpass, excel); T.\textit{tumpla} (refrain from speaking by keeping the mouth shut), cf. S.\textit{tuma} T.\textit{tuma} N.\textit{tuma} transitive (become known); N.\textit{kata} (move away), cf. S.\textit{kata} transitive T.\textit{kata} N.\textit{kata} (press, trample).

(f) There are actional (destructive) stems which are not associated with any extent simple verbal stems; a
comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stems shows, however, in some cases a probable common non-extant simple stem, e.g.

S. hlaphele (cut a branch off, clean, sweep clean), cf. S. hlapheka (take a little); T. kwetole (bring into sight, cause to come into sight), cf. T. kwetole (kwetole) and T. kwetoke (appear); S. nyokela (unearth, cause to appear); S. nyokela N. nyokela (pull out, e.g. a stone or thorn with an instrument), cf. S. nyokonke (dislodge by shaking, e.g. a stone or a tooth); T. jaloja (do a thing very well); N. thenela (pour out so that the which has been poured out is scattered or splashed all over);

T. tipole (cut or sever with one cut); N. isetola (strike with a switch).

(g) It is quite common to find an actional (destructive) and a stationial (destructive) stem with a common verbal root, e.g. S. arale @matoke N. arale (separate, divide) make a large opening (a name) and S. arale N. arale (become separated, get divided), cf. T. ara N. ara (open a swelling); T. balole (cause to come to the surface) and T. balole (rise to the surface), cf. S. bela T. bela N. bela (boil); S. fofole N. fofole (blow about, blow away) and

S. fofoha (be blown away or about) N. fofoha (become light), cf. N. fofoha

S. helle T. helole N. helole (untie, loosen) and N. xolele (get untied), cf. N. xole (tie), S. jolela T. jolela N. jolela (take out of the water), S. jolela T. jolela (get out of the water, be taken out of the water), cf. S. jole T. jole N. jole (put into the water).
(h) In a few cases the actional (destruction) stem seems to denote the destructive of the idea expressed by the applicative stem, rather than of that expressed by the simple stem, e.g. T.kalâsâ N.kalâsâ (fix or let in as one piece of wood into another, bore a hole into a native axe handle for an axe) N.kalâsâ (loosen, e.g. the handle of a tool), cf. S.lomâ T.lomâ N.lomâ (bite); N.kondâ (border, hem) and N.gonâsâ (undo what has been bordered), cf. N.konâ (fold when hemming); S.imêla T.imêla N.imêla (overburden, be heavy for) and T.imêla N.imêla (unburden), cf. T.kunâ N.kunâ (become heavy in weight, become stout, pregnant); S.phumêla (scrape, clean with a cloth, wipe off) and S.phumâsâ N.phumâsâ (take off the skin, wound, e.g. the back of a horse, wipe off), cf. S.phumâ N.phumâ (break); N.klerêsâ (let smash) and N.klerêsâ (smash, tear to bits), cf. S.klêra (strike on the head); S.khnpêla (raise dust with the foot) and S.khnpâsâ (dig a small hole, prepare to fight, raise dust with the foot), cf. N.khnpâsâ (wipe away with the finger).

(i) The following actional (capable), applicative and actional (destructive) stems with common verbal roots are given for purpose of comparison: T.shale (become separated). S.shâsâ T.shâsâ N.shâsâ (divide to, distribute to), N.shâsâ (distribute away from), cf. S.shâ T.shâ N.shâ (divide, distribute); S.shale (become smooth on the surface), S.shalâ (prepare a bed for) T.shale (spread for, put a framework of sticks under meat in a pot) N.shâle (put a framework of sticks under meat in a pot, plaster), S.shale T.shale N.shale (run away, scatter or drive away), cf. S.shâ T.shâ N.shâ (spread out, prepare a bedding for); T.kalale (gaze hard or stare), T.kalâsâ (look upon, gaze earnestly at), S.kalâsâ (make angry eyes, big eyes), cf. T.kalâsâ (open the eyes wide); N.kvatakâsâ (take up a threatening attitude), S.kvatakâ N.kvatakâsâ (threaten, prepare to fight) S.kvatakâsâ (pass without
stepping, in a suspicious way), cf. N.xale (go along without looking at anybody, walk with energy).

(j) The stational (destructive)-factive S.oke T.oke N.oke and the stational (destructive) S.ole T.ole N.ole are very closely related in meaning; the former has more reference to the result of the action than to the action itself, whereas with the latter the position is reversed, e.g. T.akeela N.akeela (cause to move off, cause to stop, stepping or pressing upon) and N.akeela (step off, move the foot away) cf. S.keta T.akeela N.akeela (tread, trample); T.akeela N.akeela (remove a thing back) and N.akeela (move away), cf. S.keta T.akeela N.akeela (press); N.anela (cause to move quickly) and N.anela (move quickly), cf. N.na (move carefully, be slow); T.akeela (cause to take out with the hand or spoon) and T.akeela N.akeela (take out a handful or spoonful) cf. N.take (go begging from house to house); T.akeela (cause to be revealed) and S.akeela T.akeela (reveal), no corresponding simple stem; N.phetela (tip over, overturn, i.e. cause to turn over) and S.phetela N.phetela (turn over), no corresponding simple stem.
1. Actional (destructive) in basic position:

(a) 1) Actional (destructive-intensive) S.olla  
    Ṯ.olla  Ṯ.olla  Ṯ.olla  Ṯ.olla. In S. the second ə of the  
    suffix is almost always elided; I could find only one ex-  
    ception to this rule, viz. S.ćiōlōla = S.ćcōlōla (be  
    unwilling, be slow). In Ṯ. the second ə of the suffix is  
    also elided, but not to such an extent as in S., and often  
    the contracted and uncontracted suffixes exist side by  
    side in this language. In Ṭ. the suffix is never contra-  
    cted, e.g. Ṭ.ćipōlōla Ṭ.ćipōlōla-Ḥ.ćipōlōla (uncover), of  
    Ṭ.ćipō N.ćipō (cover); S.ćpōlōla Ṭ.ćpōlōla Ṯ.ćpōlōla-  
    Ṯ.ćpōlōla (dig out, root out, in Ṯ. also: dig out again), of  
    Ṯ.ćpā Ṯ.ćpā (dig), Ṯ.ćpōlōla (take out of the mouth),  
    of Ṯ.ćpā (take something in the mouth); Ṯ.ćhōlē Ṯ.ćxōlōla-  
    Ṯ.ćxōlōla (pull down a building), of Ṯ.ćpē Ṭ.ćxē Ṯ.ćxē  
    (build); Ṯ.ćpōphēlē (chop very much), of Ṯ.ćpēphē (chisel).  

(ii) (a) The actional (destructive-intensive)

adds an intensive idea to the idea expressed by the actional  
(destructive) stem and it has two sub-functions viz: (1) The  
intensification of the idea expressed by the actional (destruc-  
tive-reversive) stems, the suffix S.olla Ṯ.olla Ṯ.olla (olla),  
may here be termed actional (destructive-reversive-intensive),  
e.g. Ṯ.ćpēlōla (unmake) Ṯ.ćpēlōla (change the form very  
much), cf. Ṯ.ćpēlō (change the form) and Ṯ.ćpē Ṯ.ćpē Ṯ.ćpē  
(form, mould); Ṯ.ćpēlōla Ṯ.ćpēlōla = Ṯ.ćpēlōla (dig out,  
root out, in Ṯ. also: dig out again), of Ṯ.ćpēlōla (dig out) and  
Ṯ.ćpā Ṯ.ćpā (dig); Ṯ.ćxōlē Ṯ.ćxōlē = Ṯ.ćxōlē).  
(replace that which is pressing on one or on something else),  
of. Ṯ.ćxōlē (step off) and Ṯ.ćxē Ṯ.ćxē Ṯ.ćxē (tread);
S. phetella (change, modify), cf. S. phetole N. phetale (turn over, turn back to the previous position) and S. pheta T. pheta N. phete (turn, repeat); S. theophella T. theopholela N. theophelela = N. theophalla (untwist, stretch, unwind), cf. S. theophole N. theophele (dissociate, put out of joint, twist) and S. thêpha T. thêpha N. thêpha (twist, entwine); T. aleolea (roll up a bed or mat), cf. S. aleole T. aleole N. aleole (fold up, roll up, take up that which has been spread out) and S. ale T. ale N. ale (spread); N. xaleole (solve, dissolve), cf. S. hololea T. cololea N. xaleole (untie, loosen) and N. xôle (tie, bind); T. tilhomalola (pull up by the roots as in transplanting, take out as a pole), cf. S. blomola T. tilhomalola N. blomola (take out as a thorn, root out) and S. blôma T. tilhôma N. blôma (stick in, plant).

(2) The intensification of the idea expressed by the actional (destructive-extensive) stems; the suffix S. ale T. aleole N. aleole (ale) may here be termed actional (destructive-extensive-intensive). Of the approximately 200 actional (destructive-intensive) stems about 140 are actional (destructive-reversive-intensive) and only 60 actional (destructive-extensive-intensive), e.g. N. bhola (skin), cf. S. bhola N. bhola (peel, pare) and N. bêba (peel); N. xamolela = N. xamella (milk out entirely), cf. T. xamole N. xamela (squeeze out, wring out) and S. hama T. gama N. xama (milk); T. konolela (unfasten a knot made in sewing, unfasten the rein on a pack ox), cf. N. konole (break) and N. kona (dissociate, sprain); T. kobolela N. kobolela (speak in anger, speak scornfully, revile), cf. N. kobole (bark, talk nonsense) and N. kôba (shout with joy); T. lotelole (continue a communication broken off) N. lotalela = N. lotella (explain something repeatedly to make it quite clear), cf. N. lotola (look
well after) and N.lote (look after); N.phaphella (shop very much), cf. N.phaphola (shop) and N.phupe (seave).

(b) Sometimes the suffix S.ella

T.sicela, N.sicela (ella) has merely an actional (destructive) and not an actional (destructive-intensive) force; in such cases no corresponding stem in ela could be indicated. This happens more often in S. than in the other two languages, e.g.: 

(1) Where S.ella T.sicela N.sicela (ella) is actional (destructive-reversive); S.elella N.xicella (pull down a building), cf. S.aha T.xaca N.xac (build); S.xehella (unload a pack ox), cf. S.xaha (put, place, set up); S.xokella T.xokeola N.xokeola (untie), cf. S.baha T.xaha N.xofo (tie); S.xohella N.xokeola ( unbend, put straight), cf. S.xoha N.xaha (bend); T.xicocola (undo), cf. T.xica (do); N.xumella (open the mouth), cf. N.xuma (close the mouth); S.xibella (open a hole), cf. S.xiba T.xiba (stop an opening); S.xetella (undo), cf. S.xete (do); S.xakella (remove a cork), cf. S.xaka N.xaka (stop with a cork); S.xanella (rest), cf. S.xama N.xama (become tired, weak).

(2) Where S.ella T.sicela N.sicela (ella) is actional (destructive-extensive); S.fumella (draw or pull out a certain quantity of thatch, pluck feathers from a fowl or wool from a sheep), cf. S.xuma T.xuma N.xuma (take the fibres off a plant, strip or peel off bark); N.xelthella (take entirely to pieces, break entirely down), cf. N.xelth (break down, take to pieces); S.xakella (reveal secrets), cf. S.xaka (look in all directions) N.xake (seek), S.xulcola T.xulcola N.xulcola (unthatch entirely, cast down as a house), cf. S.xula T.xulka N.xula (unthatch, break down).
268.
(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the derivative stem in S.olla T.olla N.olla
(olla) and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague; in these cases no preceding stem in olla could be indicated, e.g. S.kubolla (raise the ground of growing seed), cf. T.kube (raise up as smoke); N.phaxolla (take down), cf. N.phaxe (move the open outstretched hand sideways);
S.blhlole (break with other people, undo, pull to pieces), cf. S.blhle (return marriage cattle to the man's father); T.ewlole (let down as a bird its wings or a person the hands, pull anything down), cf. S.jesa T.jesa N.jesa (leave); S.jothlolla (choose the young man one likes best of girls in the game ho kane), cf. S.jotha (propose a riddle, puzzle); N.tsotolola (unbind or loosen the lower garments), cf. N.tsota (pluck out, e.g. feathers or hair).

(d) The derivative stems in S.olla T.olla N.olla (olla) are as a rule transitive; only about a dozen are intransitive, e.g. N.wlholola (roll, whirl round) no corresponding simple stem; N.tlotlolla (become big, get stretched out), cf. S.tlotla T.tlotla N.tlotla transitive (honour, make praiseworthy); T.tumoolola (open the mouth to speak), cf. S.tuma T.tuma N.tuma intransitive (get known); S.tsotolla = S.tsotolola (be unwilling, be slow), cf. N.tsota intransitive (be astonished, be sad).

(e) There are actional (destructive-intensive) stems which are not associated with any extant simple or extant actional (destructive) stems; a comparison with other

---

1) T.e succeeded by ø or ø becomes labialised e, cf. Tucker The Comparative Phonetics of the Suto-Chuana Group of Hanty Languages, pp. 74 ff.
that derivative stems, also having no corresponding simple stem shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. S.\textit{repella} (raise), cf. S.\textit{repella} T.\textit{repelala} N.\textit{repelala} (lie down, lie stretched out); T.\textit{tlokolole} (sift while holding the sieve in a slanting position), cf. F.\textit{tlokotla} (=tlokolola); S.\textit{futaella} (put out, unhatch); S.\textit{ramella} (repel much), N.\textit{foxolla} (unload, unpack).
ii) (a) The actional(destructive)-factitive

adds the factitive idea to the idea expressed by the
actional(destructive) stem, e.g.:

1) Where the actional(destructive) suffix has a rever-
sive force, the suffix S.otsa T.otsa N.otsa may here be
termed actional(destructive-reversive)-factitive: S.holotse
(unstring as beads, pull out as a leaf out of a book)
N.xolotse (rub off, strike off, wipe), of. S.holle T.golola
N.xolole (untie, loosen; and N.xole (bind); S.late (cause to deny), of. S.latole T.latole N.latole (deny, say no)
and S.late (fetch) T.late N.late (follow).

2) Where the actional(destructive) suffix has an ex-
tensive force, the suffix S.otsa T.otsa N.otsa may here be
termed actional(destructive-extensive)-factitive:
S.hkhote (help to stir food in a pot, turn in a pot by
throwing up) N.xkhotse (winnow), of. S.xhola T.xkhole N.xkole
(throw up and down, remove the chaff with the hand when
winnowing) and S.xhete T.xekxe N.xexe (throw, swing about);
N.xekxole (cause a crowbar to lift something out), of.
N.xekkole (lift out with a crowbar) and N.xekxe (dig
with a crowbar); N.xwaxhole (cause to pull out), of.
N.xwaxhole (pull out) and N.xwabe (distribute);
N.ichimola (cry silently, i.e. cause the tears to roll), of.
N.thimole (let the tears roll; and N.thime (force tears
to fall).

1) Cf. 26 1) above.
(b) The actional (deleterious) - factitive suffix has sometimes acquired special force, e.g., that of denoting an action done slightly, e.g. 

*T.a.l.ta.t.ea* (look tenderly at from the side), cf. *S.hê.tê.tê.a* (look behind, turn the head); *S.kho.thê.tê.a* (push slightly, push or pull a thing out of a hole), cf. *T.kho.the* (pull back forcibly, restrain); *S.ko.to.ta* (strike here and there), cf. *S.ko.ta* (peck); *S.uk.to.ta* (speak a little of an affair, fearing to go to the bottom of it, seize slightly), cf. *N.ôa* (skim).

(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the actional (deleterious) - factitive stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague; in such cases no preceding stage in *ôla* could be indicated, e.g. *S.ha.fê.tê.a* (cut one's way through a thicket), cf. *S.ha.fê* (scatter, disperse); *S.ôhê.tê.a* (beat heavily and make a deep wound), cf. *S.ôhê.le* (cut one's way through a thicket, enlarge a hole); *T.opô.ta* (call out to an animal or person searched for but not in sight), cf. *T.ô.pe* (in *ô.pe mekgo.a* = call to a tribal gathering); *S.rokô.ta* *T.rokô.ta* *N.rokô.ta* (suck, draw milk), cf. *S.ro.ôxa* (decant beer from a big pot into smaller ones).

(d) 10 of the 60 derivative stems in *S.o.ta* *N.o.ta* are intransitive, e.g. *S.hâpô.tê.a* (speak foolishly), no corresponding simple stem; *S.ko.pô.ta* (flow strongly) no corresponding simple stem; *S.ô.pô.ta* (speak low, weakly, indistinctly), cf. *N.ô.pe* intransitive (say all there is to say, speak the truth); *S.kólô.ta* *T.kôlô.ta* *N.kôlô.ta* (miscarry of an animal), no corresponding simple stem; *S.ru.lô.ta* (walk with long steps), *T.ru.lô.ta* (run about as calves at play), cf. *S.ru.lê* *T.ru.lê* *N.ru.lê* transitive (draw or cut a straight line) *N.ru.lê* intransitive (run).
(e) There are actional (destructive)-factitive stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems or extant actional (destructive) stems; a comparison with other derivatives, also having no corresponding simple stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g.

N. krokotsa (wag the tail) of S. khakolola T. krokolose
N. krokolose (roll down); S. kototesa (call many people together, drive together), cf. S. kotshana (get close together); S. setotesa (look behind), cf. T. setore (appear);
S. orafotesa (walk much); N. hipsita (take snuff, snuff);
N. yokotse (suck of the calf before the cow is milked);
T. thumotse (milk into the mouth).

(f) The actional (destructive)-factitive S. otote
T. otote N. otote is more common than the actional (destructive)-performative S. olima T. odime N. odima; only about 25 actional (destructive)-performative stems could be found, while there are about 60 actional (destructive)-factitive stems; sometimes these stems have common verbal roots, e.g.
S. teokotesa T. teokotse N. teokotsa (shake, wag the tail, rinse out a vessel) and S. teokolose (shake, clean well),
of S. teoka N. teoka (move about); S. blakotse (parry, avoid) and S. blakolose N. blakodime (save one thing out of many, save) no corresponding simple stem; S. hopettesa N. xopotta (remind), T. gopettesa (cause to think, cause meditation) and T. gopodise (cause to think, cause to meditate), no corresponding simple stem; S. folotesa T. folotesa N. folotesa (miscarry of an animal) and S. fololose T. fololose (cause to miscarry), no corresponding simple stem; T. somettesa (refresh one after work, cause to rest from work) and T. somodise (= somettesa), no corresponding simple stem.
It will be seen that some of these stems are semantically identical, and the difference between the others is due to the difference between the factitive and the per-
1) formative suffix:

cc) 1) Actional (destructive) - stational (destructive) S. oloha T. oloha N.  oloxa, e.g. T. mopolega N. mopolexa (become unmade), cf. N. mopola (change the form, unmake) and S. mopoa T. mopoa N. mopoa (shape, form); S. mopolega N. mopolexa (get delivered, redeemed), cf. N. mopola (redeem) and. S. mopoa T. mopoa N. mopoa (ask, demand).

ii) (a) The actional (destructive) - stational (destructive) suffix adds the stational (destructive) idea to the idea expressed by the actional (destructive) stem, and in such a way that if the actional (destructive) stem has a reversible force the actional (destructive) - stational (destructive) stem has also a reversible force; and if the actional (destructive) stem has an extensive force the actional (destructive) - stational (destructive) stem has also an extensive force. I could find only the following two exceptions to this rule: T. mopolega (get up and go on from a resting place or a sleeping place), cf. 

---

1) cf. Chapter 17.

ii) I could not find an example of the compound suffix S. oholo and only one example each of T. oholo and N. oholo, viz. T. kholo (remove a stump from the ground by pulling it out or breaking it off), cf. S. kha N. kha (pluck off), no S. kholo, T. kloxa N. kloxa; N. tloxa (cleanse i.e., remove dirt), cf. S. tloxa T. tloxa N. tloxa (go away) and S. tla T. tle N. tla (come).

iii) Of the 150 actional (destructive) - stational (destructive) stems only about 30 have an extensive force; the rest are reversible.
Both the verb *N.bothela* (fold up, e.g. a sail) and *S.botha* both have a reverse force (be dug up or out) cf. *N.spola* (dig out) and *S.spe* *N.pe* (dig); *N.xatoloxa* (become loose of something pressed down or stepped upon), cf. *N.xatola* (step off, lift up the foot) and *S.hata* *T.gata* *N.xata* (tread); *N.xupoloxa* (come out from the mouth), cf. *N.xupola* (take out of the mouth) and *N.xupa* (put something into the mouth); *T.lapologa* *N.lapoloxa* (become rested), cf. *N.lapola* (rest) and *T.lepa* *N.lepa* (become tired); *S.lapoloxa* *N.lapoloxa* (get redeemed), cf. *N.lopoloxa* (redeem) and *S.lopola* *T.lopola* *N.lopola* (demand, make a claim against); *S.moloxa* (go away from behind somebody especially from behind a pregnant woman), cf. *T.mola* (cause to go away) and *S.mama* *T.mama* *N.mama* (stand); *T.poloxa* (become unbound, become free) cf. *S.holoxa* *T.goloxa* *N.xoloxa* (untie, loosen, unbind) and *N.xola* (bind, tie); *S.imoloxa* *T.imoloxa* *N.imoloxa* (get unloaded, be eased from a burden), cf. *T.imola* *N.imola* (unburden, relieve of or from a burden) and *T.imana* *N.imana* (get stout, pregnant, heavy in weight).

Almost all derivative stems in *S.ologia* *T.ologia* *N.ologia* with an actional (destructive-reversive) force have a counterpart in *S.olla* *T.olla* *N.olla* (olla) with an actional (destructive-reversive-intensive) force, e.g. (for actional (destructive-reversive)-stational (destructive-reversive) stems of above) *S.spolola* *T.spolola* *N.spolola* (root out, dig out, in N. also dig out again), *S.otoloxa* *N.xatoloxa* (remove that which is pressing on one, or on something else), *N.xoloxa* (solve, dissolve).

*S.ologia* *T.ologia* *N.ologia* is therefore merely the stationa...
2. Where *S.ola* T.olo N.olo has an extensive force, the suffix may here be termed the actional (destructive-extensive)-stational (destructive-extensive), e.g., *N.timola* (get cold, cooled off), cf. T. timola (allay anger) N. timola (add cold liquid to hot liquid to cool it off) and S. tima T. tima N. tima (put out a fire).

*S.batoloha* (fall off of plaster) N. batolona (get cracks or burst of a floor), cf. S. batola T. batola N. batola (hammer) and S. bata T. bata N. bata (slap), *N.kvethole* (get separated) cf. *N.kvethola* (separate, put apart), cf. S. kvetha T. kgthha N. kvetha (choose, pick out); *S.nepola* (trickle down), cf. *S.nepola* (crush something wet) N. nepola (be elastic as e.g. something wet) and N. nepa (be sticky as e.g. something wet); T. tchokolega (turn round), cf. T. tchokela (roll, turn round or even as smoke) and S. tsoha N. thaka (move about); *N.sekolona* (get pure), cf. *N.sekela* (window, separate the straw from the grain) and *N.foha* (become clear).

Derivative stems in *S.ola* T.olo N.olo with an actional (destructive-extensive)-statonal (destructive-extensive) force appear to have no counterpart in *S.ola* T.olo N.olo with an actional (destructive-extensive-intensive) force.

(b) There are several actional (destructive)-statonal (destructive) stems which are not associated with any extent simple verbal stems or extent actional (destructive) verbal stems, e.g. *T.kakologa* (avoid, pass at a distance), *S.khokoloha* T. kghokologa N. khokolona (roll down), *S.phasoloha* (jump up, lift up one's voice), *N.repoloha* (turn), T. repologa (descend in a line as cattle from a hill), *S.thipoloha* (run down, roll down), T. thotologa (appear dissatisfied), *S.suboloha* (become wider, larger), *S.suboloha* (go way very slowly, stretch oneself).
(c) The following actional (destructive)-stational (destructive), actional (destructive)-stational (capable) and applicative-stational (capable) stems are given for the sake of comparison. In view of the fact that there are so few actional (destructive)-stational (capable) and applicative-stational (capable) stems, the comparison does not yield any definite results. e.g.,

Derivatives in S.θολχα T.νολογα H.νολάκα having a common root:

S.θολχα, T.νολογα, H.νολάκα (hang down, trickle down)
and T.νολογα, H.νολάκα (hang towards, hang straight down)

T.μανολογα (become unbelieving, cease to believe) and
S.μανολάκα (be permitted, be permissible),

N.μανολάκα (get open) and S.μανολάκα (get stopped),

T.μανολογα (become altered or different) and S.μανολάκα

having a common root:

S.θολχα (walk slowly) T.θολομα (get up from lying stretched out on the ground) and S.θολομά (be delivered), N.θολομά (get unfolded) and S.θολομά (get unfolded), S.θολομά (fall off of plaster) N.θολομά (burst of a plaster floor) and S.θολομά (become sharp continued a new hoy).

1) Only about 26.

2) Only about 12.

3) No example could be ascertained for T.
of a mill stone) N.hatalæ (flatten a plaster floor by beating it). I could not find derivative stems in S.lâhe T.lâhe N.lâhe and S.lâhe T.lâhe N.lâhe with a common root.

2. Actional(destructive) suffix in a non-basic position: the contribution of S.âle T.âle N.âle to such compounds is that it adds in each case the actional (destructive) idea to the idea expressed by the suffix without S.âle T.âle N.âle, e.g.:
Stational(capable)-actional(destructive-intensive)
T.xalæla N.xalæla e.g. T.xalægena N.xalægena (un-
burden), cf. T.xalæra N.xalæra (carry a burden) no corres-
ponding simple stem.
Actional(capable)-actional(destructive) T.xala N.xala,
 e.g. T.keralæ (make to fit, adapt) N.keralæ (bring
the legs back from an outspread to a natural position),
cf. N.keralæ (walk with legs far apart), no corresponding
simple stem.
Positional-actional(destructive) T.xalela N.xalela, e.g.
T.xalela (stretch out) N.xalela (detrach), cf.
N.xalela (creep of a plant) and N.xata (wind).
Operative-actional(destructive-intensive) S.xella T.xella
N.xella, e.g. S.xerbolela T.xerbolela N.xerbolela (dis-
entangle), cf. S.xera T.xera N.xera (get entwined), no
xera could be indicated.

1) A millstone is sharpened by beating it with a sharp instrument.
B) Strengthened:

1. Primary: a Singel:

i) Actional (intensive) s. te t. te n. te n. e.
S. kobo (get bent, get bowed down); of. koba n. koba
(bend); S. kabetsa (walk slowly); of. T. kaha (carry a
load).

ii) (a) The actional (intensive) is a rare
suffix, it denotes the intensity of the idea expressed
by the actional stem. This can best be seen from a com-
parison between derivative stems in te and in having a
common root; for some such derivatives a corresponding
simple stem can also be indicated, e.g. E. kobola (wound,
pick with a pickaxe) and T. kobota N. kobota (pound, amash,
butt); no corresponding simple stem; and T. kalsa (gaze
hard, stare) and E. kalsa (rebel); no corresponding
simple stem; E. retela E. retela (remain raw although cooked)
and N. retela (remain raw although cooked for a long time)
of. N. reta (turn a thing over by stirring it); E. kosa (pluck out) T. kosa (break or smash a bone) and N. kosa
(give a blow on the forehead); no corresponding simple stem.

---

i) Only found with about 20 derivative stems.

ii) I conceive the common idea to be that of obstinacy.

iii) According to my informants the period of cooking is
longer in the case of retela than in the case of retela.
Other examples: S.kubata (grind much) of S.kuše (grind); S.pate (squeeze out), of N.peta (squeeze); N.pukute (flap the wings), of S.puke (blow hard); S.kunute (speak secretly to somebody), of N.kuna (withhold, keep back); N.koleta (bind together), of S.kole N.kole (gather e.g. locusts).

(b) Sometimes the semantic relation between the actional(intensive) stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S.kabate (walk slowly), of T.kaba (carry a load); N.kabate (go unwillingly), of S.kona (growl, snore); N.kwabata (chop with an axe), of S.köba (parry, fence).

(c) Some actional(intensive) stems are transitive others again are intransitive, e.g. S.kabate intransitive (walk slowly), of T.kaba transitive (carry a load); S.koña intransitive (get bowed down, get bent), of S.köba N.köba transitive (bend); S.komote intransitive, (speak badly, disappointing), of S.kome intransitive (speak angrily); S.komote transitive (eat much), of S.kome transitive (eat soft food like meal), T.kome transitive (eat something hard like sugar); N.pukute transitive (flap the wings), of S.puke intransitive (blow hard).

(d) As can be seen from (c) above some simple stems corresponding to actional(intensive) stems are transitive, while those corresponding to others are intransitive.

(e) There are actional(intensive) stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems, neither
could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these derivative stems; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stem or corresponding non-verbal stem shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extendable simple verbal stem, e.g. S. *kale* (rebel), cf. T. *kale* (prance as a horse); T. tapeta n. tepeta (bruise by stamping or knocking, break into small pieces), cf. T. tapatle (flatten); T. ngobøte (walk with a lordly tread, as a lion); S. kimite (out e.g. a piece of skin); N. kinete (cut off); T. *nudute* (pay, reward).

(c) Compound:

1. Actional (intensive) in basic position; e.g.
in the actional (intensive)-applicative S. têla T. têla N. têla as in: S. têbatêla (make very drunk), cf. S. têha T. têxa N. têxa (intoxicate); T. ngobøtelë (walk with a lordly tread to), no corresponding simple stem; N. komotëla (beat violently or repeatedly against the head), no corresponding simple stem. Such compounds are however not sufficiently interesting for further treatment here.

2. Actional (intensive) in a non-basic position:
this suffix does occur in this position.

II Secondary: the actional (intensive) has no secondary form.
CHAPTER 13.

Proactive Sema Toma Noma, proactive (positional); here called the positional, Sama Toma Noma.

I. Primary: (2) Single:

1) Proactive Sama Toma Noma, e.g. Natakama (move to and fro, rock about, toss about, tumble down e.g. a wall), cf. Natakama (rock about as something drifting on water); Srilokama

Natakama (froth up, boil up), cf. Sriloka (boil over);

Nepheuma = Nepheema (fend off)

< Nepheema < Nephayama, cf. Nepaya (fend off, beat back the hand).

(ii) (a) The protractive Sama Toma Noma is not a common suffix; it denotes an action or state which is to a certain extent prolonged, continued or extended as, e.g. jump along.

i) Ub. ma, cf. Phon., pp. 45 and 79.


(iii) The classification unstrengthened and strengthened cannot be applied to ama and ama as II is not subject to a process of strengthening.

(iv) cf. Semreta > Metsea > Meeetees > Metsea (Phon., p. 71 and W. da.)

(v) Found with only about 110 derivative stems.

(vi) There is to-day hardly any semantic difference between the protractive and durative stems (cf. chapter 9). It is possible that in the past the force of the protractive suffix was limited to denoting continuous-extended action with a special view to the subsequent extended or spread out position to be taken up by the subject of the derivative stem; while that of the durative suffix was limited to denoting continuous-habitual action on the part of the subject of the derivative stem. As will be observed, some of the examples quoted for the protractive and durative stems respectively actually support this possibility, and it is likely that in the course of time the spheres of activity of these two suffixes have become less clearly defined, so much so that to-day their semantic difference has practically disappeared. Such a process is also met with elsewhere, e.g. the stational (capable) Sama Tama Nama (chapter 10) and the actional (capable) Sama Tala Nala (chapter 12); also the performative Sama Tama Nama (chapter 11) and the factitive Sama Tama Nama (Chapter 17).
shake, tinkle, shine, glitter, extend, etc., S.kotema (tinkle, jingle), cf. S.keta (sing); S.kolema (be shaking, be loose), cf. T.kwela (toss up a rider or a burden, rear as a horse)
S.kolema (throw off, parry); S.khalema T.kgalema N.khalema (scold), cf. T.kgala (abuse, revile); S.alima T.adima N.adima (lend, borrow i.e. extend or spread out the possession of something), cf. S.alo T.alo N.alo (spread); N.thedima (glide along), cf. N.thela (glide); N.kitima (go quickly, run), cf. N.kita (go); S.tjolema (jump over and over, move about in the bed), cf. S.tjola (turn over and in the bed when unable to sleep); N.kxholêma (skid, slide, incline towards a certain position as a result of shaking), cf. N.kxholo (be loose, shake);
T.phaphama (flutter as hanging cloth or shawl blown by the wind) N.phaphama (run), cf. S.phapha (run, jump up); S.blablama N.blablama (follow, come after), cf. N.blabla (lead); N.kxthuma (jump quickly towards), cf. N.kxtha (gallop); S.salama (drive away for good, pursue to the end), cf. S.salama T.salama N.salama (remain, remain behind).

(b) The suffix S.ma T.ma N.ma has sometimes lost its protractive force, e.g. S.tyêrama (become weak, get lean), cf. N.tyêma
S.tyêra (become lean, get weak); S.pêrama (be afraid, fear, be shy), cf. S.pêra (be timid, be a coward); T.totoma N.totema (bulge out as a well-filled bag), cf. N.tota (get increased); N.kpêrama (roar), cf. S.pêra (roar as a lion).

(c) In other cases again the semantic relation between the protractive stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. T.tsirima (tinkle, ring as a bell), cf. N.âira (smash the teeth); T.âogoma (be agitated as an excited crowd, be shaky as spokes of a wheel), cf. T.âoga N.âoma (bray a skin in T. also, trample on, trample to pieces); S.alima T.adima N.adima (lend, borrow), cf. S.alo T.alo N.alo (spread).
(d) Most protractive stems are intransitive, i.e.
only about 20% transitive protractive stems e.g. S. *khelemu*
*T.kalamu* N. *kalamu* (scold, chide), cf. T. *kala* transitive
(abuse, revile); S. *alina* T. *adina* N. *adina* (lend, borrow),
 cf. S. *ala* T. *ala* N. *ala* transitive (spread); N. *khuru* transitive (hide), cf. N. *khura* transitive (hide); N. *tehuma* (move, shake), cf.
N. *taka* intransitive (rock about as something drifting on water); S. *salama* (drive away for good, pursue to the end), cf. S. *sala*
T. *sala* N. *sala* intransitive (remain, remain behind).

(e) The simple stems corresponding to some protractive
stems are transitive, while those corresponding to others are
intransitive, e.g. S. *ketema* (tinkle, jingle), cf. S. *kete*
transitive (sing); S. *kalamu* T. *kalamu* N. *kalamu* , (cf. (d)
above), cf. T. *kala* transitive (cf. (d) above); N. *tekema* (move
to and fro, rock about, toss about), cf. N. *taka* intransitive
(rock about as something on water); N. *kitima* (run), cf. N. *kita*
intransitive (go).

(f) There are protractive stems which are not asso-
ciated with any extant simple verbal stem, other could
non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of
these derivative stems; in comparison with other derivative
stems, also have no corresponding simple verbal stems or
corresponding non-verbal stems showed, however, in some cases,
a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g.

T. *badima* (appear of a new moon; shine as lightning,
glisten); cf. S. *balama* (appear of a new moon);
S. *bilohe* (scold, speak noisily) cf. S. *bhote* (cause
discontent);
N. *poxela* (have a rattling in the throat), cf. N. *poxela*
(have a rattling in the throat);
N. *kutupa* (jump down), cf. N. *kutupa* (jump down);
T. *duluma* (be weak in the knees);
S. *tsora* (jump forward);
T. *tadima* (tinkle or ring as a bell);
N. bekxome (hide, get out of the way);
N. hlorome (rain continually with only short breaks in between);
S. lutume (stagger about) T. lutume (be loose, shake a little as a loose tooth).

(β) Compound.

1. Protractive in basic position: it appears in this position e.g. in the protractive-actional (destructive) T. mola, N. mola as in T. kuromola N. kuromola (uncover), cf. N. kuromola (cover up) N. kmura (hide); the protractive-stational (destructive) T. moga as in T. tshogomoga (start, be startled), cf. S. tsocha T. tshoega N. thsoma (get afraid, be startled); the protractive-reciprocal S. mana T. mana N. mana as in S. alimana T. dimana N. adimana (borrow from or lend to one another), cf. S. alina T. alima N. adima (borrow, lend) and S. ala T. ala N. ala (spread out).

Such compounds are however not of sufficient interest for further treatment here.

2. Protractive in a non-basic position: this suffix does not occur in this position.
XI. Secondary: \( a \) Single:

1) Positional \( S.m.a \) T.\( a.m.a \) N.\( a.m.a \), e.g. S.\( a.l.a.m.a \) N.\( a.l.a.m.a \) (brood, hatch), cf. S.\( a.l.a \) T.\( a.l.a \) N.\( a.l.a \) (spread out);
S.\( p.h.e.k.a.m.a \) (lie down) T.\( p.h.e.k.a.m.a \) (lie across, lean, slant), cf. S.\( p.h.e.k.a \) (place across).

ii) (a) The positional denotes the entering into a certain position, mostly that of bending, lying down, spreading out or being straight or upright, e.g. N.\( a.t.l.a.m.a \) (become broad), cf. S.\( a.t.l.a \) N.\( a.t.l.a \) (prosper, increase); T.\( g.a.s.a.m.a \) (become scattered or spread about in all directions), cf. S.\( h.a.s.a \) T.\( g.a.s.a \) N.\( x.a.s.a \) (scatter); N.\( x.u.t.a.m.a \) (lie down of animals), cf. S.\( y.u.t.a \) (stoop); S.\( s.e.k.a.m.a \) T.\( s.e.k.a.m.a \) N.\( s.e.k.a.m.a \) (lie down, be inclined, be slanting), cf. S.\( s.e.k.a \) T.\( s.e.k.a \) N.\( s.e.k.a \) (incline); T.\( t.h.a.s.a.m.a \) (scatter), cf. S.\( t.h.a.s.a \) T.\( t.h.a.s.a \) N.\( t.h.e.k.a \) (smear with fat, grease);
S.\( b.o.r.a.m.a \) (lie flat on the ground), cf. S.\( b.o.r.a \) (lie down);
S.\( i.n.a.m.a \) T.\( i.n.a.m.a \) N.\( i.n.a.m.a \) (stoop, bow, bend down), cf. S.\( i.n.a \) T.\( i.n.a \) N.\( i.n.a \) (dip, dip in); T.\( k.h.u.b.a.m.a \) (kneel, be in labour of a woman), cf. S.\( k.h.u.b.a \) (fall on the knees);
S.\( k.h.e.b.a.m.a \) (bend forward) N.\( k.h.e.b.a.m.a \) (bend down, get bowed down), cf. S.\( k.h.e.b.a \) N.\( k.h.e.b.a \) (bend); T.\( k.h.e.n.a.m.a \) N.\( k.h.e.n.a.m.a \) (be bowed, be bent), cf.

1) About 110 of the 180 derivative stems in \( a.m.a \) denote one or other of these positions.
T.ḍhāna (bend as the head); T.ṛIPA (bend back or slope backwards), cf. T.ṛIPA (bend back); S.ṛIPA (bend down)
N.ṛIPA (lie stretched out face downwards), cf. N.ṛIPA
N.ṛIPA (stoop down); S.ṛIPA T.ṛIPA (stand upright), stand straight, be stretched out in N., also: remain standing in one place), cf. T.ṛIPA N.ṛIPA (stick upright; S.ṛIPA T.ṛIPA (stand upright, stand fast), cf. S.ṛIPA
N.ṛIPA T.ṛIPA N.ṛIPA (plant, fix in on end); S.ṛIPA N.ṛIPA (sit straight up on one's heels), cf. S.ṛIPA
N.ṛIPA (sit on one's heels).

The following are examples of derivative stems in ama not indicating one or other of the positions referred to above, but nevertheless indicating some position, mental or physical, taken up by their subjects:
N.ṛIPA (become lean, weak), cf. N.ṛIPA (become lean);
S.ṛIPA (sulk) N.ṛIPA (sulk, become angry, feel unhappy), cf. N.ṛIPA (stand on end of the hair); S.ṛIPA (be sad, be moved, have pity), cf. S.ṛIPA (be timid, be a coward); S.ṛIPA N.ṛIPA N.ṛIPA (become wide open of the mouth), cf. N.ṛIPA (open); N.ṛIPA (be in a habit of taking on the shoulder), cf. N.ṛIPA (take on the shoulder);
N.ṛIPA (be modest), cf. N.ṛIPA (drop e.g. the head or arms); T.ṛIPA N.ṛIPA (show signs of weakness, be weak-kneed), cf. S.ṛIPA (become empty, small).
Although the relation between the general ideas expressed by 麦 and 麦 is not always very clear, it can nevertheless be observed from those cases where these suffixes have certain subordinate ideas in common, e.g.:

where 麦 conveys the idea of running along, e.g. N.jerema (run, also: steep down), cf. N.jora (drive cattle along); S.jelena (run away), no corresponding simple stem.

where 麦 conveys the idea of shining, e.g. N.therxena (become white hot), cf. S.thokna (burn, calcine); T.pellama (shine forth, be clearly visible), no corresponding simple stem; T.helama (shine forth, be exposed), no corresponding simple stem.

Where 麦 denotes being in a certain position, sometimes an extended position, e.g. N.kâma (keep on burning in a large area without gaining more ground), cf. S.kâa N.kâa (spread of a fire); S.alma T.alma N.alma (lend, borrow i.e. to extend the possession of), cf. S.alu T.alu N.alu (spread); N.sâma (lean against e.g. of a door), cf. N.sâka (scoop over, look down upon) and T.âkama N.âkana (overhang, stand over, overlook); S.parâa (be afraid, fear, be shy), cf. S.pàra (be timid, be a coward) and S.parâma (be sad, be moved, have pity); S.pàma (become weak, get lean), cf. S.pàra N.theâra (become lean, get weak).

1) cf. in each case the definitions given above to 麦 and 麦 respectively.
(b) The suffix *ama* has sometimes lost its positional force, e.g.  
*T. taitlama* (make a wry face after eating or drinking something nasty), no corresponding simple stem could be indicated;  
*S. kóñama* (become hard), cf. *S. koñama* (be cold);  
*S. kóñama* (be stingy), cf. *S. kóña* (give sparingly);  
*S. senama* T. *senama* (show one's teeth), cf. *S. seña* T. *seña* N. *seña* (grin, show the teeth).

(c) In other cases again the semantic relation between the positional stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. *N. batama* (lie flat on the stomach), cf. *S. bata* T. *bata* N. *bata* (slap, beat with the open hand);  
*N. bata* (erect, about to sink, wattle), cf. *M. batua* (sink),  
*S. nyàhama* (become disheartened, discouraged), cf. *S. nyaka* (be quiet);  
*S. pharama* T. *pharàma* N. *pharàma* (lie flat, sink or fall down as an animal from weakness or a person from fright in S. also; squat at ease), cf. *S. phara* T. *phara* N. *phara* (plaster, smear, spread);  
*S. kópama* T. *kópama* N. *krópama* (become crooked, bent), cf. *T. kópá* N. *krópa* (offends vue, insult).

(d) With the exception of about a dozen, all derivative stems in *ama* are intransitive, examples of transitive stems in *ama*;  
*S. alama* N. *alama* (hatch, brood), cf. *S. aalà* T. *aala* N. *ala* transitive (spread out);  
*S. kálama* (ride), cf. *T. kála* intransitive (hover with outstretched wings as a hawk);  
*S. manama* (cleave, stick), cf. *M. mana* transitive (twist, wind round);  
*S. palama* T. *palama* N. *palama* (ride, climb), no corresponding simple stem.

(e) The simple stem corresponding to some positional stems are transitive, while these corresponding to others are intransitive, e.g.  
*S. ahlama* T. *aithama* N. *aílama* (become open, be wide open), cf. *N. ahlà* transitive (open);  
*T. gasama* (become scattered
or spread out), cf. S.batša T.γασα N.κασα transitive (scatter); S.διάταμα T.τίθημαι (stand upright, straight up), cf. S.διάτας T.τίθημαι N.διήμα transitive (plant, fix on end); N.βαράμα (become lean), cf. N.βαρα intransitive (become lean); N.βοβαμα (stoop down so as to get out of sight), cf. T.βοβα N.βοβα intransitive (hide behind something, hide by stooping); N.κθυθαμα (get into a bent position), cf. N.κθυθα intransitive (get bent, stoop); S.ριβαμα T.ριβαμα N.ριβαμα (kneel with bent head, bend the head), cf. S.ριβα N.ριβα intransitive (move the head up and down e.g. of an animal running).

(f) There are positional stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g.

S.ψυταμα (sit doubled up), cf. S.ψυτανα T.ψυταγανα be doubled up, be bowed down);

T.ψφοπαμα (cover or huddle up), cf. T.ψφοπαλα (cover or huddle up);

S.ραπαμα T.ραπαμα N.ραπαμα (go aslant, slope), cf. S.ρπαλα Τ.ρπαλα Ν.ρπαλα (lie down stretched out);

T.τιθαραμα (squat);

Ν.κθυκαμα (kneel, bend the knee);

T.κτιναμα (be firm, strongly fixed);

S.πατλαμα (lie on one's stomach, sit down);

T.παταμα (lie flat);

S.κνυμαμα (kneel down);

T.κνυαμα (hang down as a broken bough);

S.φαναμα (fall to the ground without cause);
(g) The positional and the stational (capable, when employed with the same root, sometimes yield derivative stems which, although not synonymous, are semantically very closely related, e.g.

T.\textit{gasama} (become scattered or spread out in all directions as oxen) and T.\textit{gasana} (become scattered, also; be fit to be scattered), of S.\textit{hasa} T.\textit{gaspa} N.\textit{xana} (scatter); T.\textit{akama} or T.\textit{okama} N.\textit{akama} (overhang, stand over, be bent over) and T.\textit{akata} (overhang, place lightly upon as a hand on a sore), of S.\textit{oka} or N.\textit{oka} (look down upon, scoop off, skin); S.\textit{sekama} T.\textit{sekana} N.\textit{sekana} (lie down, be inclined or aloping or slanting) and S.\textit{sekawa} T.\textit{sekara} N.\textit{sekara} (incline, be in a slanting position), of S.\textit{gaka} T.\textit{seke} N.\textit{seke} (inclined); S.\textit{tekama} T.\textit{tekama} (stand upright, stick in and stand upright, be stretched out in N. also; remain standing in one place) and T.\textit{tekawa} (become fixed or centred), of S.\textit{tapa} T.\textit{tepa} (throw a spear, etc., so as to make it stick upright in the ground); S.\textit{inama} T.\textit{inana} N.\textit{inana} (bow, stoop, lean down) and T.\textit{ina} (become inclined, become bent), of S.\textit{ina} T.\textit{ina} N.\textit{ina} (dip in); T.\textit{shama} N.\textit{shama} (bend forward, bend down) and T.\textit{shaka} N.\textit{shaka} (become bent, be flexible, be supple), of S.\textit{oba} T.\textit{oba} N.\textit{oba} (bend, bend down); S.\textit{pharana} T.\textit{pharana} N.\textit{pharana} (lie flat, sink or fall down as an animal from weakness in S. also; squat at ease) and S.\textit{pharaha} (be at ease, lie flat on the ground), of S.\textit{phara} T.\textit{phara} N.\textit{phara} (plaster, spread).

I think the close semantic relationship between these stems is purely accidental owing to the identity in roots and cannot be attributed to any similarity in force between the two suffixes.

1) This meaning has been obtained from my informants.
(h) The positional and the actional (capable-intensive), when employed with the same root, sometimes yield derivative stems which are semantically very closely related and, in a few cases, even synonymous, e.g. T.phophama (be unable to continue a journey or to return from one, owing to loss of cattle, cower or huddle up) and T.phophala ( = phophama), no corresponding simple stem could be indicated; N.atlana (become broad) and N.atlala ( = atlana ), cf. S.atla N.atla (prosper, increase); N.batama (lie flat on the ground) and S.batalla T.batalla N.batalala (crouch, lie flat so as to hide), cf. S.bata T.bate N.bate (sleep e.g. with the open hand); S.phakama (lie down) T.phakama (lie across, slant, be oblique) and T.phakala (lie across as a button on a door, lie across a path), cf. T.pha N.pha (put across, hold a goat's leg under one's knee when milking it); S.tepama T.tepama N.tepama (stand straight, upright, be perpendicular in N. also: remain standing in one place) and S.tepalla N.tepalala (remain standing in one place) T.tepalala (stand upright, be straight), cf. T.tepe N.tepe (throw a spear, etc. so as to make it stick upright in the ground); S.pharama T.pharama N.pharama (lie flat, sink or fall down as an animal from weakness in S. also: squat at ease) and S.pharalla N.pharalala (spread out, have room in S. also: squat at ease on the ground) cf. S.phar T.phar N.phar (plaster, spread); S.hlôma T.hlôma (stand upright, be firmly fixed, stand fast) and T.hlômalala (stand erect), cf. S.hlôma T.hlôma N.hlôma (plant, fix on end).

I think here again the close semantic relationship between these stems is purely accidental owing to the identity in roots and cannot be attributed to any similarity in force between the two suffixes.
1. Positional in basic position:

aa) 1) Positional-factitive S.\textit{anya} T.\textit{anya} < S.\textit{am} + S.\textit{da} T.\textit{am} + T.\textit{ya}

ii) This suffix adds the factitive idea to the idea expressed by the positional stem, e.g. T.\textit{ukanya} (inspect, look over), cf. N.\textit{ukama} (hang over), no corresponding simple stem could be indicated; T.\textit{phikanya} (overwhelm, crowd upon), cf. T.\textit{phikama} (be dense as a swarm of locusts) and T.\textit{phika} (pour down of rain); S.\textit{khepanu} (bend, make crooked), cf. S.\textit{kopama} T.\textit{kopama} N.\textit{klopama} (become bent, crooked, wrong) and S.\textit{kopa} T.\textit{kopa} N.\textit{kopa} (stumble against, trip);

S.\textit{pena} (be crowded, crush one another), cf. S.\textit{penama} T.\textit{penama} (overflow, be full to the brim in T. also; bend back, slope backwards) and S.\textit{puna} T.\textit{puna} N.\textit{puna} or \textit{pena} (bend back).

This is a very rare suffix, found only in the examples above quoted; it is referred to here only because it is identical in form with the reciprocal-factitive S.\textit{anya} T.\textit{anya}.

bb) 1) Positional-actional (destructive) T.\textit{amola} N.\textit{amola}.

ii) This suffix adds the actional (destructive) idea to the idea expressed by the positional stem, e.g. N.\textit{ahamole} (make straight again), cf. T.\textit{ohama} N.\textit{ohama} (bend forward, bend down) cf. S.\textit{oba} T.\textit{oba} N.\textit{oba} (bend); N.\textit{ahlamole} (open, make open as the mouth of some one else), cf. S.\textit{ahlama} T.\textit{athama} N.\textit{ahlamo} (be or become wide open of the mouth) and N.\textit{ahla} (open), T.\textit{tatamole} N.\textit{tatamole} (unwind), cf. N.\textit{tatama} (creep of a plant) and N.\textit{tata} (wind).

2. Positional suffix in a non-basic position; it occurs very rarely in this position; the undermentioned are practically the only compounds of this nature. The contribution of

1) cf. Chapter 14,
S.ama T.ama N.ama to the force of these compounds is that in each case it adds the positional idea to the idea expressed by the suffix without S.ama T.ama N.ama e.g.:

aa) Durative (intensive)-positional T.kama N.kama

e.g. T.petakama (be confused or mixed up as sounds), no corresponding durative (intensive) or corresponding simple stems could be ascertained.

N.petikama (sit down with legs outspread), cf. T.petika

N.petika (open as a book or the hands), no corresponding simple stem could be ascertained; T.bidikama N.bidikama (roll about, wallow), cf. S.bilika (make round) no corresponding simple stem could be ascertained; N.pitikama (wallow, roll about), cf. S.pitika T.pitika N.pitika (roll on the ground), no corresponding simple stem could be ascertained.

bb) Durative (intensive)-positional-performative:

N.kamisa, e.g. N.pitikamisa (throw down in wrestling, i.e. cause to roll) for pitikama cf. aa) above.

cc) Festitive-positional S.yama T.yama N.yama, e.g. T.manyama (be or become bent as when the chest is pressed out and the head bent backwards, be like a pole bent forwards in the middle and backwards at the top), cf. N.minya (make narrow) and S.mena T.mena N.mena (roll up, fold up, bend back); N.sunyana (scent, smell, poke the nose into), cf. S.sunya N.sunya (press into, plant), no corresponding simple stem could be ascertained, cf. also T.sunya (put together); S.tenyama (break partially, bend without completely breaking), cf. N.tena (bend), no corresponding festitive stem could be ascertained.
Additive S.na T.na N.na, additive (reciprocal), here called reciprocal, S.na T.na N.na.

1) Primary: a) Single:

i) Additive S.na T.na N.na, e.g., N.kibina (beat), cf. S.kiba (catch in a trap) N.kiba (knock with a stick against the ground when walking); S.momona N.momona (suck), cf. S.momna T.momna N.momna (shut the mouth, be silent, in S. also; suck).

ii) (a) The additive, a very rare suffix, denotes a state or action of more or less continuous nature with sometimes an associational force. Examples of na with an associational force: N.zaköna (mix snuff with ash by repeatedly adding ash to the snuff), cf. N.zaka (mix tobacco with ash); S.hobona (take great booty, capture many animals), no corresponding simple stem; T.gogona (draw or push together as the sides of a kaross round a sick person, tuck in), cf. T.göga N.zöna (draw pull, lead); S.nongona (entangle), no corresponding simple stem,

i) UB. na cf. Phon., pp. 45 & 79.

ii) UB. ana cf. Phon., pp. 45 & 79.

iii) The classification unstrengthened and strengthened cannot be applied to na and ana as a is not subject to a process of strengthening.

iv) Only about 30 additive stems could be indicated.

v) Although there is to-day hardly any semantic difference between the additive na, the protractive ma, and the durative a (cf. chapter 13 i a) ii) (a)), it is possible that in the past the additive had a more distinctly defined force peculiar to itself, viz. that of association. As will be seen below some of the derivatives in na actually support this possibility, cf. also W.d.s., p. 35.

vi) The last part of the meaning, viz. "by repeatedly adding ash to the snuff", obtained from my informants.
T. tsotséna (be in large numbers), no corresponding simple stem. These are the only examples I could find of derivative stems in ne having an associative force. In most ne indicates merely a state or action of more or less continuous nature, e.g. N. kiliba (beat), cf. S. kiba (catch in a trap) N. kiba (knock with a stick against the ground when walking); S. momo momo (suck), cf. S. momo T. momo N. momo (shut the mouth, be silent in S. also; suck); N. takina (make a shrill noise), cf. N. takina (smash the teeth); S. xókró (be dissatisfied i.e. keep on groaning), cf. N. xókró (groan), S. blihíne N. blihíne (itch i.e. keep on irritating), cf. S. blihína (irritate).

(b) The suffix S. na T. ne N. na has sometimes lost its additive force, e.g. N. bípsa (puff up, swell, inflate, bubble), cf. S. bipsa (malt, cause to ferment) N. bipsa (swell, puff out); S. shašéna (drive many animals), cf. S. shašéna (drive many animals); S. kotó (bite), cf. S. kotó (peck); S. shane (think), no corresponding simple stem; N. sofóna (fumble, touch the clothes when feeling for something), cf. S. sofó T. sofó 1) N. sofó (fly).

(c) In some cases the semantic relation between the additive stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S. sofóna (dilate, open as a peacock's tail), cf. N. sofó (be light), N. tainina (make a shrill noise), cf. N. tainina (smash the teeth); N. xókró (fancy, imagine, consider), cf. N. xóka (be sad).

1) I conceive the common idea to be that of performing a hovering action in the one case with the hands and in the other with the wings.
(d) Most additive stems are intransitive, there are only 8 transitive additive stems, e.g. S.šášášéna (drive many animals), cf. S.šášá transitive (drive many things); S.šéšéna (dilate, open as a peacock’s tail), cf. N.šéšé intransitive (be light) N.šéšé (beat), cf. S.šéšé transitive (catch in a trap) N.šéšé transitive (knock with a stick against the ground).

(e) The simple stems corresponding to some additive stems are transitive, while those corresponding to others are intransitive, e.g. S.šéšéna (dilate, open as a peacock’s tail), cf. N.šéšé intransitive (be light); N.šéšé (fumble, touch with the clothes when feeling for something), cf. S.šéšé T.šéšé N.šéšé intransitive (fly); N.šéšé (be dissatisfied), cf. N.šéšé intransitive (groan); N.šéšé (puff up, swell, inflate, bubble), cf. N.šéšé transitive (malt, cause to ferment) N.šéšé transitive or intransitive (swell, puff out); for further examples of additive stems with corresponding transitive simple verbal stems cf. (d) above.

(f) There are additive stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stem, neither could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these derivative stems; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stems or corresponding non-verbal stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g., N.šéšé (glitter, sparkle), cf. T.šéšé (shine forth); N.šéšé (gna, gnaw off), cf. N.šéšé (mibble at, gnaw); S.šéšé (shake e.g. of something taken out of the ground); T.šéšé (be quite full as a vlei), N.šéšé (wag, shake) N.šéšé (shake).
β) Compound:

1. Additive in basic position:

   i) (a) Additive-factive $S.\text{nya} T.\text{nya}$

   $N.\text{nya} \leq S.\text{n} + S.\text{ya} T.\text{n} + T.\text{ve} N.\text{n} + N.\text{ya}, e.g.

   $\text{N.kibinya}$ (cause to beat, i.e. the instrument with which you beat $\_\_\_$), cf. $\text{N.kibine}$ (beat) and $S.\text{kiba}$ (catch in a trap) $N.\text{kiba}$ (knock with a stick against the ground when walking); $N.\text{tsirinya}$ (chirp, chcep), cf. $N.\text{tsirine}$ (make a shrill noise) and $N.\text{tsiira}$ (gnash the teeth).

   It is perhaps noteworthy that of the 50 derivative stems in $\text{nya}$ only about half have corresponding derivative stems in $\text{na}$, and as the suffixes $\text{na}$ and $\text{me}$ are semantically closely related, it is not possible to say whether the other half is additive-factive or protractive-factive.

   However, there is anything in the force of these stems in $\text{nya}$ which indicates that the suffix $\text{nya}$ is composed of $S.\text{n} T.\text{n}$ $N.\text{n}$ and $S.\text{ya} T.\text{ve} N.\text{ya}$, rather than of $S.\text{n} T.\text{n} N.\text{n}$ and $S.\text{ya} T.\text{ve} N.\text{ya}$, but as some of the stems in $\text{nya}$ can definitely be indicated to be additive-factive, and there is no particular reason why the others should not also be regarded as such, all stems in $\text{nya}$ are classed together.

1) In the following four cases $\text{nya}$ is, however, protractive-factive, the corresponding protractive-stem being protractive and not additive: $S.\text{parinya}$ (give up), cf. $S.\text{para}$ (be afraid, be shy) and $S.\text{peya}$ (be timid, be a coward); $N.\text{blasiya}$ (cause to swarm), cf. $N.\text{blasima}$ (swarm), no corresponding simple stem; $T.\text{vadiya}$ (look round or turn the head quickly), cf. $S.\text{vadima} T.\text{vadima}$ (look, look at), no corresponding simple stem; $N.\text{kutunya}$ (creep on hands and knees), cf. $N.\text{kutuma}$ (go through by creeping underneath), no corresponding simple stem. For $\text{n} + \text{ya} \geq \text{nya}$ of $\text{Pohn.}$, p. 70.

2) Kademann gives the meaning only as beat, the extended meaning has been obtained from my informants.
266.

(b) Although the connecting vowel of the additive stem may be ə or ə, its counterpart with the corresponding additive-factivive stem is either ə or ə respectively. This process of narrowing the vowel, which is due to the factivive S. T. N. ə may or may not be applied to the vowel of the first syllable of the derivative stem, depending apparently upon the pronunciation of individual speakers, e.g. N. pëtelẹyẹ or N. pëtelẹyẹ (twinkle, sparkle as e.g. a star or water in the distance), cf.

N. pëtelẹnẹ (glitter, sparkle), no corresponding simple stem; S. pëkenẹya N. pëkenẹya or N. pëkenẹya (glitter, twinkle, sparkle as e.g. a star or water in the distance), cf.

N. pëkenẹ (glitter, sparkle) and N. pëka (look at over the shoulder, look angrily at); N. shenẹya (cause to be better than), cf. N. shenẹ (be better than), no corresponding simple stem; N. xonẹnya or N. xonẹnya (cause to imagine, cause to consider), cf. N. xonẹnẹ (fancy, imagine, consider) and N. xonẹ (be sad).

1) But cf. N. rórọnne (crunch, crush), for which no corresponding simple stem or corresponding derivative stem in ə or ə could be ascertained, it may therefore even have been formed from *rọnne through a process of prefix-formation (cf. Chapter 19) see also N. rórọ́nne (smash, dash to pieces).

ii) Nothing definite can however be said here as the number of examples obtained both from the dictionaries and from my almost exhaustively an exhaustive list.

iii) Obtained from my informants.

iv) No pëkenẹya in S.
ii) (a) The additive-factitive suffix adds the factitive idea to the idea expressed by the additive stem. The additive-factitive suffix has two sub-functions according to the two sub-functions of the factitive suf-
fix, viz. additive-factitive (causative) and additive-
factitive (effective).

Examples of additive-factitive (causative) stems:
N.shenya (cause to be better than), cf. N.shéna (be better
than), no corresponding simple stem; N.kibinya (cause to
beat, i.e. the instrument with which you beat), cf. N.kibina
(beat) and S.kiba (catch in a trap) N.kiba (knock with a
stick against the ground when walking); S.mokonya N.mokonya
(cause a flow of saliva, suck something put into the mouth),
of. T.mokona N.mokona (suck out sap), no corresponding
simple stem.

All additive-factitive (causative) stems are
transitive.

Examples of additive-factitive (effective) stems, which
stems are mostly intransitive: S.bekevya N.bekevya (glitter,
twinkle, sparkle, e.g. a star or water in the distance), cf.
N.vékéna (glitter, sparkle) and N.véka (look angrily at,
look at over the shoulder); N.teirinva (chirp, cheep), cf.
N.teirina (make a shrill noise) and N.þirá (gnash the
teeth); N.fofona (sniff about, sniff), cf. N.fofona (touch
about on the clothes when looking for something) and S.fofa
T.fofa N.fofa (fly).

\[ \text{i) cf. Chapter 17.} \]
(b) There are several additive-factitive stems for which only corresponding simple stems could be indicated and no corresponding additive stems; in some such cases the semantic relation between the additive-factitive stem and the corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. N. rata (fumble, examine by feeling), cf. N. rata (stir up, stir round i.e. to turn over by stirring); T. lela (talk very loudly, clamour), cf. S. lla T. lela N. lula (cry); T. tita (sheep or hinder one when speaking, when not wishing to hear more), cf. T. titi (withhold an opinion, decline to express an opinion about a matter without hearing more fully about it); S. kotchaye (throw the ground up), cf. N. kotka (dig with a crowbar).

(c) There are additive-factitive stems which are not associated with any extent simple verbal stems or extent additive stems, neither could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these derivative stems; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stems, or corresponding non-verbal stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extent simple verbal stem, e.g. S. tikitla N. tikitla (tickle), cf. T. tikitla (tickle); S. tikinwa (shake one's head), cf. S. tikhitleta (shake a bag); N. xekwa (move about e.g. while sleeping), cf. S. xekwa (shake); N. xidinwa (sob); S. xidinwa (raise something heavy); S. xebhwenwe (push in, put in); T. xhubkwa (give signs of life by moving, move as a person under a kaross or bed-clothes).

2. additive-factitive in a non-basic position; this suffix does not occur in this position.
II Secondary: a. Single:
1) Reciprocal S.ana T.ana N.ana, e.g. S.bohana
T.bohana (see one another), cf. S.bôna T.bôna N.bôna (see); S.bôna T.bôna N.bôna (fight, stab one another),
S.bôna T.tibhâna N.bôna (stab, striking); T.deâna (strike each other) < Tidayana, cf. T.deâna (strike); S.lâsâna (correct one another) T.lâsâna (instruct or exhort one another)
< Telayana, cf. S.làsa T.lâya N.lâya (instruct, direct, reprimand); N.làsâna (take one another), cf. N.làsa (take);
S.làsâna T.làsâna N.làsâna (run together in a race, pass one another going the same way), cf. S.làsa T.làna N.làsa or N.sîya (outrun, let alone); N.ràna (speak to one another), cf. N.rà (say); S.frâna N.frâna (give to one another), cf. S.frà T.frà N.frà (give).

ii) (a) The reciprocal denotes the following:
1) mutual action, or action done one to the other, and may here be termed reciprocal (mutual); ii. associative or collective action, or an associative or collective state, and may then be termed reciprocal (associative); and iii. reagentive action, or a reagentive state, and may here be termed reciprocal (reagentive).

1) The reciprocal stem corresponding to T.itse (know) is itsânya (know one another). It sometimes happens in T. that the reciprocal suffix employed with roots whose final consonant is s or ts is either ana or anya, e.g. thusa or thusanya (help one another), cf. thusa (help); futsâna or futsanya (sure one another), cf. futsa (sure). The derivatives in anya are given by Brown in his Geewana-English dictionary and the parallels in ana have been obtained from my informants. It should further be noted that in the Geewana Grammar of Wokey and Brown the only reciprocal suffix in ana and nothing is said about an alternative, anya is therefore probably only a dialectal variant of ana.
Aside with certain compound suffixes, of which the reciprocal is one of the component parts, anya may be used instead of ana, e.g. the factitive-reciprocal as in bitseânya (call one another), cf. bitseâna (bitseâna); botseânya (ask one another), cf. botseâna (botseânya).
ii) These terms are more fully defined below.

The suffix is predominantly reciprocal (mutual).

Of the + 280 derivative stems in ana about 200 have a reciprocal (mutual) force, about 40 a reciprocal (associative) force and about 20 a reciprocal (reagentive) force; the remainder have lost their reciprocal force.

I shall now proceed to deal more fully with each of these sub-divisions of the reciprocal:

1. Reciprocal (mutual) stems; Two or more agents are required to perform the action denoted by such a stem, and they perform it in such a way that they are mutually affected as objects of the corresponding simple stem; it is therefore obvious that the simple stems corresponding to reciprocal (mutual) stems must be transitive, e.g. S.aka (kiss one another) N.ahana (fondle each other, flirt with each other), cf. S.aka (kiss) N.aha (caress, fondle), S.batana (strike one another, fight), cf. S.bana T.bana N.bata (beat, slap with the open hand), S.fetana T.fetana N.fetana (pass each other), cf. S.feta T.feta N.feta (pass); S.khetana (choose one another, go apart from others) N.khetana (favour each other), cf. S.khetha N.khetha (choose, pick out); T.khutelana N.khutelana (knock against each other, mudge each other), cf. T.khutela T.khutela (knock against something with the foot, mudge with the elbow); T.ngokana (have a mutual regard for each other, consider each other), cf. T.ngoka (consider a person); S.zatana N.zatana (love one another), cf. S.rata T.rata N.rata (love); T.taana (take one another in marriage, accept one another), cf. T.taana (take); S.hiha T.tilhana N.hiyanana (hate one another), cf. S.hiha T.tilhana N.hiyanana (hate); S.lomana T.lomana N.lomana (bite one another), cf. S.loma T.loma N.loma (bite).
ii. Reciprocal (associative) stems:

(a) Some reciprocal (associative) stems denote associative or collective action, i.e. action in the performance of which two or more agents are associated, e.g.

S.bokana T.bokana N.bokana (come together, assemble, crowd together), cf. N.boka (rake together, snatch together); S.fapani T.fapani N.fapani (differ in opinion, disagree, differ as stories, get mixed up, i.e. mix with respect to one another), cf. S.fapa T.fapa N.fapa (wind round, bind into a bundle);

S.phuthana N.phuthana (gather, assemble), cf. S.phuta T.phuta N.phuta (fold, collect); N.kxobana (come together), cf. S.khoba (call or invite many people)

N.kxoba (sweep together, call together); S.khahlana T.kgatlhana (come together, meet), cf. N.kxahla (coagulate); N.fotana (wrestle with each other), cf. N.fota (wrestle); N.xobana (bark at each other), cf. N.xoba (bark).

(b) Other reciprocal (associative) stems denote an associative or collective state, i.e. a state in the production of which two or more agents are associated, e.g.

S.sakana (be in disorder, not symmetrical), cf. S.saka (squint); T.hufana (be jealous of each other, i.e. be in a state of being jealous together), cf.

1) Such stems have mostly corresponding simple stems that are intransitive.
T. hufa (be jealous); S. hasana N. xaə̂na (get scattered), cf. S. hasa T. gasa N. xaə̂na (scatter); N. lalana (lie together of people when cohabiting), cf. S. lala T. lala N. lala (lie down); S. tə̂lakanə N. tə̂wakana (get mixed up), cf. S. tə̂laka T. tə̂waka N. tə̂waka (mix); S. rarana T. rarana N. rarana (be entangled), cf. S. rara T. rara N. rara (spin as a spider its web, get entwined, interwoven).

iii. Reciprocal (reagentive) stems: These reciprocal stems have a reagentive force only when the agent responsible for the action or state denoted, is in the singular; as soon as there is more than one agent, the reciprocal stem ceases to be reagentive and becomes associative or mutual.

Reciprocal (reagentive) stems denote a reagentive state, i.e. a state in which an agent finds itself or into which it enters unassociated with other agents, e.g. T. kəə̂panə N. kəə̂panə (get folded up, shrivel up as a leaf in the sun or a wet skin in drying), cf. N. kəə̂pa (twist, wring); S. sothana (become much twisted, form a spiral, be rolled up\(^1\)), cf. S. sotha (twist, wring); N. thathana (get separated with respect to itself), cf. N. thatha (root up, stub up); S. kabana

\(^1\) S. sothana = S. sothahana
(become closed, stopped), cf. S.kaba T.kaba N.kaba (close, plug up); S.kbana (become bent), cf. S. koba N.koba (bend); S.timana T.timana N.timana (be stingy), cf. S.tima T.tima N.tima (give very little, begrudge); S.thibana T.thibana (get stopped especially of the ears), cf. S.thiba T.thiba N. thiba (stop); N.lotana (become bigger or stronger), cf. N.lota (become strong); N.phekana (get entangled with respect to itself), cf. N.pheka (bar up, block up); T.imana (be with child), cf. T ima N ima (be heavy, be stout, be with child); N. xarana (be wound up, be twisted up), cf. N.xara (twist, turn round).

(b) The suffix ana has in a few cases lost its reciprocal force, e.g. S.smana T.smana N.smana (scold), cf. S.sm T.sm N.sm (threaten); T. ngopana (be barren of animals), cf. T.ngopa (be barren of animals); N.xumana (attain, acquire), cf. N.xuma (become rich).

(c) In some cases the semantic relation between the reciprocal stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. T.papana (make smooth or bring down to a level, smooth out a wet skin), cf. N.papa (touch with the hands); T. gobana (accuse or incriminate one another), cf. N.koba (bark,
talk nonsense); S.ôpana (gather, come together), cf. N.ôpa (trade on a small scale).

(d) In about half a dozen cases derivative stems in ana are transitive, e.g. T.ôpana (make smooth or bring down to a level, smooth out a wet skin) cf. N.ôpa intransitive (touch with the hands); N.ônumana (attain, find), cf. N.ôuma intransitive (become rich); S.ônumana N.ôumana (find, discover), cf. S.ôuma T.ôuma intransitive (be or become rich).

In addition to these there is a certain number of reciprocal (reagentive) stems taking a subsidiary object; these stems are mostly used in their perfect conjugational form, e.g. S.ô thibane litsêbê T. ô thibanye ditsêbê N. ô thibane ditsêbê (he is stopped as to his ears, i.e. he is deaf or disobedient); S. sefete se rârafana mâkala T. setlhare se rârafane dikala N. sehlare se rârafana mâkala (the tree is entangled as to its branches); T. ô thakanye tilhôê (he is mixed as to his head, i.e. he is mad); S.ô fapane blôê N. ô fapane blôê (he is mixed up as to his head, i.e. he is mad); S.ôsesekela e sothane mbili (the bicycle is twisted up as to the wheels); S.ôtelêle e kabane molomo (the kettle is stopped as to its spout).

(e) There are reciprocal stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple stems shows, however, in some
cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. S. haXana T. thakane (become mixed, joined) N. haXana (meet, come together), cf. S. haXamatsu (go to meet); S. glana (sit quietly, be at rest, at ease), cf. S. glama (sleep lightly like one on the look out for something); S. matle (wrestle, unite one to another); T. rabane (be dashed to pieces); T. jômana (drink water while kneeling down).

(2) Reciprocal (mutual) and reciprocal (associative) stems are used with plural subjects, but they may be used with a singular subject provided the derivative stem is followed by the other agent or agents preceded by the conjunctive formative S. le T. le N. le. Examples of reciprocal (mutual) stems: S. rea bôhana T. re a bônana (we see each other), cf. S. ke bôhana le vôna T. ke bônana le vôna N. ke bônana le vôna (he and I see each other); S. les ratana T. le a ratana N. le a ratana (you love each other), cf. S. x ratana le hôna T. o ratana le hôna N. o ratana le hôna (you and they love one another).

Examples of reciprocal (associative) stems: S. rea khâhane T. re a krâthane (we meet), cf. S. ke khâhane le vôna T. ke krâthane le vôna (I meet with him, i.e. I meet him); N. be a fôtane (they wrestle with each other), cf. N. o fôtane le vôna (he wrestles with him).
(g) The following few T. durative-reciprocal stems are semantically identical with reciprocal stems: T. *fapana* = T. *fapana* (differ as stories, alternate, pass or cross one another), cf. S. *fapa* T. *fapa* N. *fapa* (wind round, bind into a bundle); T. *parana* = S. *parana* T. *parana* N. *parana* (become entangled), cf. S. *rara* T. *rara* N. *rara* (get entwined, creep).

(h) When a simple stem can take two objects, i.e., a principal and a subsidiary object, the subsidiary object may be used with the corresponding reciprocal stem, the principal object becoming one of the agents, e.g., S. *re fana* lijö T. *re fana dijö* N. *re fana dijö* (We give one another food), cf. S. *ke mo fa lijö* T. *ke mo fa dijö* N. *ke a mo fa dijö* (I give him food); S. *re timana lijö* T. *re timana dijö* N. *re timana dijö* (I stint one another food), cf. S. *ke mo tima lijö* T. *ke mo tima dijö* N. *ke a mo tima dijö* (I stint him food).

---

1) This rule is quite common with certain compound derivative stems; e.g., the performative-reciprocal S. *isana* T. *isana* N. *isana* as in S. *re tsedisa moleto* T. *te itsisanyo moleto* N. *re tsedisa moleto* (we inform one another of the mistake), cf. S. *ke mo tsedisa moleto* T. *ke mo itsisana moleto* N. *ke a mo tsedisa moleto* (I tell him (of) the mistake); the applicative-reciprocal S. *tlaana* T. *tlaana* N. *tlaana* as in S. *ba aholana ntle* T. *ba aholana ntle* N. *ba aholana ntle* (they build one another a house), cf. S. *o mo aholana ntle* T. *o mo aholana ntle* N. *o a mo aholana ntle* (he builds him a house).

11) In S. *fana* more commonly implies the idea of to be generous; so e.g., S. *rea fana* means almost exclusively we are generous, cf. also S. *kea fana* (I am generous).

111) A much more common meaning is: ye are stingy as regards food, cf. S. *kea timana* T. *kea timana* N. *kea timana* (I am stingy).
306

(2) Compound:

1. Reciprocal in basic position:

1) Reciprocal-factive S.\textsubscript{any} T.\textsubscript{any} N.\textsubscript{any} < S.\textsubscript{an} + S.\textsubscript{ye} T.\textsubscript{an} + T.\textsubscript{ye} N.\textsubscript{an} + N.\textsubscript{ye}, e.g.

S.\textsubscript{hakanye} T.\textsubscript{hakanye} N.\textsubscript{hakanye} (bring together, gather), cf.
S.\textsubscript{hakana} T.\textsubscript{hakana} N.\textsubscript{hakana} (come together, assemble, crowd together) and N.\textsubscript{hoke} (take together).

It is perhaps noteworthy that for about 25 of the approximately 90 reciprocal-factive stems no corresponding reciprocal stems could be indicated, e.g.

T.\textsubscript{thathlenya} (knock things together so as to make a rustling noise), cf. T.\textsubscript{thathla} (make a noise as two things knocking together); N.\textsubscript{thathlenya} (bring on a false track), cf. S.\textsubscript{thhale} (escape from one's memory);
T.\textsubscript{pakanye} (mix up together), cf. T.\textsubscript{peke} (mix, adulterate); S.\textsubscript{pahatlenya} (break in pieces, smash, e.g. an egg), cf. S.\textsubscript{pahatla} N.\textsubscript{pahatla} (break in pieces).

ii) (a) The reciprocal-factive adds the factitive idea to the idea expressed by the reciprocal stem. The reciprocal-factive suffix, whether reciprocal (mutual)-factive, reciprocal (associative)-factive or reciprocal (reagentive)-factive, is mostly reciprocal-factive (causative); in about 10 cases however, reciprocal-factive (effective).

---

1) The positional-factive suffix has the same form, cf. Chapter 13 § 11 β) 1.

ii) This division depends upon the force of the factitive, cf. Chapter 17.
Examples of reciprocal-factitive (causative) stems: T.\textit{atlanye} (cause to kiss one another), cf. T.\textit{atsi} N.\textit{atsi} (kiss one another) and T.\textit{asl} N.\textit{asl} (kiss); S.\textit{bokanye} N.\textit{bokanye} (bring together, gather), cf. S.\textit{bokane} T.\textit{bokane} N.\textit{bokane} (come together, assemble) and N.\textit{boke} (rake together); N.\textit{fikanye} (put together, place together, fasten to one another), cf. N.\textit{fikan} (hinder one another i.e., fasten one another) and N.\textit{flke} (fasten); S.\textit{hasanye} T.\textit{kasanye} N.\textit{kasanye} (scatter, disperse), cf. S.\textit{hase} N.\textit{xaba} (become scattered, dispersed) and S.\textit{hase} T.\textit{gaza} N.\textit{xa} (scatter); N.\textit{hlatlnye} (place or put upon one another), cf. N.\textit{hlatlane} (climb one upon the other) and N.\textit{hlite} (get full to the brim); T.\textit{spanye} (cause to turn, fold or crumple up as leaves or a wet skin), cf. T.\textit{spane} N.\textit{spane} (turn up, fold up or crumple up as leaves in the sun or a wet skin in drying) and N.\textit{spa} (turn, twist); S.\textit{sothanye} (wring something much), cf. S.\textit{sothane} (become much twisted, be rolled up) and S.\textit{sothe} (twist, wring, entwine); T.\textit{ifanye} (make jealous of each other), cf. T.\textit{ufane} (be jealous of each other) and T.\textit{ufa} (be jealous).

All reciprocal-factitive (causative) stems are transitive.

Examples of reciprocal-factitive (effective) stems: S.\textit{hulanye} (drag, roughly, badly), cf. S.\textit{hulana} (drag one another) and S.\textit{hula} (drag); T.\textit{mabanye} (withhold or keep back milk as a cow, refuse to speak or relate as news), cf. T.\textit{mabhe} N.\textit{mabhe} (keep back milk as a cow), no corresponding reciprocal stem; T.\textit{taaranye} (e.g. in \textit{taaranye matha} = spit out with a noise as from between the teeth), cf. N.\textit{thee} (spit), no corresponding reciprocal stem; T.\textit{thakanye} N.\textit{thakanye} (kick in all directions as an ox when one leg is held by a riem), cf.
30.9.

s.thäka (stretch out one’s leg like a man on horseback),
no corresponding reciprocal stem; T.tähabanya (rush out as a stream, dart out as the waves of a filling river), cf. S.täba
T.tähaba N.thäba (flee).

(b) The reciprocal-factitive suffix sometimes conveys an intensive force, e.g. T.kiitänä (join tightly together, cause to unite) N.kiitänä (press together, press in), cf. T.kiita (agree together, be united) and T.kita (strike with a fist or a stick); T.thakgänä N.thakxänä (kick in all directions as an ox when one leg is held by a riem), cf. S.thakka
(deth) (stretch out one’s legs like a man on horseback), no correspond-
ing reciprocal stem; N.xoxänä (pull about), cf. T.yoga N.xoxa
(draw, pull), no corresponding reciprocal stem; S.xulänä
(beat severely, throw violently on the ground), cf. S.xula
(beat with a stick), no corresponding reciprocal stem; S.tabänä
(throw down violently), cf. S.täba (fall on the ground) and
N.täba (dash to pieces); T.phatbänä (dabble with water, splash about in water as a child with the hands or as a horse
with the feet), no corresponding simple stem or corresponding reciprocal stem.

(c) In some cases where no corresponding reciprocal stem could be indicated the relation between the reciprocal-factitive and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g.
N.khölänä (bring on a false track), cf. S.khölä (escape from one’s memory); S.sokänä (mix, turn upside down), cf. S.soka (stir, trim, row); S.tlakanä (embarrass, prevent),
(cf. S.tlää N.tlää (laugh at, scorn, reject); T.tähabänä
(rush out as a stream, dart out as the waves of a filling river),
cf. S.täba T.tähaba N.thäba (flee).

(d) All derivative stems in S.änä T.änä N.änä are

1) cf. S.tabänkänä = S.tabänä
2) cf. T.phatbänkänä = T.phatbänä
transitive excepting the following few: T.thakganya
N.thakranya (cf. (a) above); T.tshabanya (cf. (a) above);
T.phathanya (cf. (b) above). T.buganya (eject from the
mouth in a stream, spurt out as blood from a severe cut); no
corresponding simple stem.

(a) There are reciprocal-factive stems which are not
associated with any extent simple or extent reciprocal stems;
that a comparison with other derivative stems, also having no
corresponding simple stems, shows, however, in some cases, a
probable common non-extent simple verbal stem, e.g. T.phathanya
(cf. (b) above), cf. T.phathuke (bespatter); S.rapanya (kill),
S.rapolla (kill an animal about to have a little one); T.gakanya (kill game in large quantities), cf. S.hakila
(be violent); S.bvohlanya (conceal, palliate); S.habanya
look around, cast a furtive look, glance).

(f) The following reciprocal-factive and statonal
(capable)-reciprocal-factive stems are semantically identical:
S.rapanya T.rapanya N.rapanya = N.rapaxanya (set at variance,
confuse, mix up), cf. S.rapana T.rapana N.rapana (differ in
opinion, differ as stories), pass one another; no corresponding
statonal (capable)-reciprocal stem; S.sothanya = S.sothabanya
(wring much), cf. S.sothana = S.sothabana (become much twisted);
N.hlatanya = T.thhatlaganya N.hlatlaxanya (put in layers,
put one on top of another; pile up one on another); cf.
N.hlatlana (climb onto one another) and T.thhatlaga
N.hlatlaxana (be piled up, lie one upon another); S.sjonya =
T.logaganya (knit together, twist or intertwine), cf. T.logagna
(become knit or twisted together); no corresponding reciprocal
stem.
310.

2. Reciprocal in a non-basic position:

The reciprocal suffix occurs extensively in such a position; I quote only a few such compounds below: The contribution of S.\textit{\textasciitilde}ana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}ana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}ana to the force of such compounds is that it adds in each case the reciprocal idea to the idea expressed by the compound without S.\textit{\textasciitilde}ana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}ana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}ana:

\textit{a) Applicative-reciprocal S.\textit{\textasciitilde}iana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}iana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}alana}\n
N.\textit{\textasciitilde}iana. In T.\textit{\textasciitilde}iana mostly becomes \textit{\textasciitilde}alana as a result of retrogressive assimilation, e.g. S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a or T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (resist one another, contend among one another), of S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (resist, prevent, contend) and S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (refuse); S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (live near each other, live together), of T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a (build for) and S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a (build); S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (divide among themselves, divide one another), of S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (divide to) and S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a (divide); S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (pray one another), of S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (pray) and N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a (summon, call up).

\textit{bb) Applicative (intensive)-reciprocal S.\textit{\textasciitilde}iana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}iana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}alana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}alana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}iana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}iana, e.g. S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (be friendly with each other), for preceding stages of \textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a, above; S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (tell to one another), T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (talk to each other in ordinary conversation) N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (discuss with each other, tell to each other), of S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (tell to, in N. also; talk one over), S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (tell) N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (speak) and T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a (tell news) N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (speak); S.\textit{\textasciitilde}alana T.\textit{\textasciitilde}alana N.\textit{\textasciitilde}alana (be at variance with each other, contend with each other), of S.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a T.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a N.\textit{\textasciitilde}a\textit{\textasciitilde}a (intercede for, stand security for, in S. also):
to oppose), S.ₐₐₐₐ T.ₐₐₐₐ N.ₐₐₐₐ (stand for, stand opposed) and S.ₐₐₐₐ T.ₐₐₐₐ N.ₐₐₐₐ (stand).

I) Actional (destructive)-applicative-reciprocal

S.ₐₐₐₐ T.ₐₐₐₐ or T.ₐₐₐₐ N.ₐₐₐₐ, e.g.

S.latolālā T.latolālā or T.latolalā (refuse to one another) N.latolālā (pay debts for one another with respect to something, to excuse one another with respect to something), cf. S.latolālā T.latolālā (deny to) N.latolālā (pay debts for somebody, excuse one with respect to something), S.latolā T.latolā (deny) N.latolā (excuse) and S.latā N.latā (follow).

---

1) Not ollana and olla because the vowel preceding the ə of the applicative suffix is o, cf. Chapter 12 § A) II) (E) (H). 47

II) Obtained from my informants.
CHAPTER 15

I. Punctative S. ra T. ra N. ra; punctative (contactive), here called contactive, S. ara T. ara N. ara; punctative (intensive) T. the, S. the N. the; and punctative (contactive intensive), here called contactive (intensive), S. athe T. athe N. athe.

A) Unstrengthened:

I Primary: (N) Single:

i) Punctative S. ra T. ra N. ra; e.g. S. the sphère (shake with a sieve), cf. N. the sphère (be loose, be shaky), S. jokera T. jokera N. jokera (brush away as dust, leaves, etc.), cf. S. joka T. joka N. joka (fly).

ii) The punctative suffix, a very rare suffix, denotes pointed and intermittent action, e.g. run hither


vii) No parallel could be indicated for S. and N.

viii) No UB. parallel is given by Keinholz.

v) This term is also used in Khosa to indicate the parallel of S. ra T. ra N. ra; cf. Holkeren A. These Grammar, P. 119.

vii) Denke thinks the term is unnecessary, cf. Tzerm., P. 180; but in Setshe there is a suffix ra semantically different from the contactive ara; this suffix must of course be designated and the term punctative seems to me, as far as Setshe is concerned at any rate, an appropriate term.

vii) Only about 20 punctative stems could be indicated.

vii) There would appear to be no longer any semantic difference between the punctative S. ra T. ra N. ra and the operative (intensive) S. ra T. ra N. ra; these are the only two single suffixes, phonologically not related, which have approached each other semantically to such an extent. In cases previously dealt with, e.g. S. ma T. ma N. ma and S. ma T. ma N. ma, S. ma T. ma N. ma and S. ma T. ma N. ma, etc., there has been a very great semantic approach between the individual members of each set of suffixes, but not to such an extent that the difference in force between the suffixes has entirely disappeared. In the case of ra and ma, however, this process of overlapping in the sphere of activity of suffixes has been carried a step further, and it would appear that this has taken place in such a way that the force of ra has been comparatively little affected; there is still a clearly noticeable relation between the present forms, e.g. ra and that of its secondary form ara; this cannot be said of the relation between the present form of ma and that of its phonologically related form ma.
and thither, move to and fro, gnaw, chew e.g. T.gelea (run about hither and thither as wild cattle), its corresponding simple stem; N.thesphere (shake with a sieve), of N.theshe (be loose, be shaky) S.fofore T.fofore N.fofore (brush away as dust or leaves), of S.fofa T.fofa N.fofa (fly); N.nheba (pick up twigs), of S.shoba (take much of something) N.sho (take out with both hands), T.gebura (devour bones, etc., as a lion), of S.haba N.haba (be greedy); T.kebura (stir up, agitate), of T.kabo N.kabo (make water muddy, agitate as water), S.khobe T.khobe N.khobe (upbraid, scold, reproach) S.kenara (advance stealthily), of N.kena (move carefully) N.katrsa (walk elastically, softly), of N.katse (walk on the toes).

(b) Sometimes the suffix re has lost its punctative force, e.g. N.telldre (be separated, stand wide apart), of S.tetla (occupy a space), T.tetre (startle, terrify, make afraid), of T.tore (terrify), N.halmare (get tired), of N.hlepa (lay off or aside e.g. a burden, disclaim, deny) N.akhare (run at full speed), of S.aphobe (fly).

(c) In some cases the semantic relation between the punctative stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is rather vague, e.g. T.gebera (spoil, ruin, make a thing worse than it was before), of S.haba T.gabo (beat a tree with a stick so as to knock off the leaves), N.kohora (get finished), of S.koko N.koko (be ill, get lean), N.teldora (of (b) above).

(d) Some punctative stems are transitive, others again intransitive, e.g. T.kohera transitive, of S.khoba T.khoba N.khobe transitive (of (a) above) T.hedore transitive, of T.ho transitive (of (b) above) S.fofore T.fofora N.fofora transitive, of S.fofa T.fofa N.fofa intransitive (of (a) above) T.gebra transitive, of S.ahba N.ahba intransitive.

1) In all these cases there is a break of longer or shorter duration in the performance of the action, subsequent to this break the action is then repeated or continued.
cf. (a) above); N.\textit{hlepire} intransitive, cf. N.\textit{hlape} intransitive, (cf. (b) above); N.\textit{ti\text{\textacute{n}tere}} intransitive, cf. S.\textit{ti\text{\acute{n}tle}} transitive (cf. (b) above); N.\textit{tsentsara} intransitive, cf. N.\textit{tsentsa} intransitive (cf. (a) above).

(e) As can be seen from (d) above the simple stems corresponding to some punctative stems are transitive, while those corresponding to others are intransitive.

(f) There are punctative stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems, neither could non-verbal stems be indicated as possible bases of these derivative stems; a comparison with other derivative stems, also having no corresponding simple verbal stems or corresponding non-verbal stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. T.\textit{golore} (run about hither and thither as wild settle; also in: \textit{golore le pue} = speak much, lengthen out talk), cf. S.\textit{holoketa} (prattle); N.\textit{nyabera} (gnaw), cf. N.\textit{nyabule} (gnaw); S.\textit{rohore} (shake), cf. N.\textit{roxonva} (move about e.g. of one sleeping); T.\textit{kelera} (wave to and fro); S.\textit{tambahara} N.\textit{tsebohaba} (stir about, scatter about); N.\textit{tshesera} (rub with the back against the wall resulting in the whitewash coming off).

\textit{\textbf{3) Compound:}}

1. Punctative suffix in basic position:

\begin{enumerate}
\item \textit{Punctative-factitive,} S.\textit{sa} N.\textit{sa} $\prec$ S.\textit{\textbullet} + S.\textit{\textbullet}
\end{enumerate}

\textit{N.\textbullet + N.\textbullet} $\prec$. This is a very rare suffix found only in the following examples: S.\textit{rohose} transitive (shake violently, turn the ground), cf. S.\textit{rohore} (shake), no corresponding simple stem; S.\textit{tselale} intransitive (totter, stagger), no corresponding simple or punctative stems; N.\textit{rathara} intransitive (crackle, flicker), no corresponding simple or punctative stems. The only reason why this suffix is given

\begin{enumerate}
\item Cf. Phon. p. 66.
\item (a) I am unable to say whether the \textbullet\textbullet in N.\textit{rohose} (smash) is a punctative-factitive or a statonal-factitive suffix, i.e. if it is a suffix at all, as no corresponding punctative \textit{\textbullet\textbullet} or statonal \textit{\textbullet\textbullet} could be indicated. (footnote continued on page 315)
here is because of its apparent resemblance in form, in the
case of S.oo in **hath** to the stational (destructive)-fact-
tive S.oo, and in the case of S.oo N.oo in S.oo N.oo
N. **hath** to the contactive-factitive S.oo N.oo; actual-
ly there is a difference as S.oo contains a standardised
connecting vowel a and S.oo N.oo contains a standardised
connecting vowel a.

(b) There is in T.η punctuative-factitive **hath** found in
**hath** (eat very much), cf. T. **hath** (eat very much), in
N. a punctuative-factitive **hath** found in S. **hath** (thresh), cf. N. **hath** (take
away as e.g. leaves or feathers), no corresponding simple
stem. No further examples could be obtained in support of
these forms of the punctuative-factitive, but for T.η + **hath**
**hath** (satisfy) with a

2. Punctuative in a non-basic position; this suffix does not
occur in this position.

(Continued from previous page) It is at any rate noteworthy
that both the vowels preceding **hath** are open; one would have ex-
pected either **hath** or **hath** owing to the presence of **hath**
in the punctuative-factitive or stational-factitive suffixes.
It is of course even possible that **hath** has been derived
from **hath** through prefix-formation, in which case **hath** is no
suffix at all; this will also apply to N. **hath** (saw).
The bases of these two stems will then be **hath** and **hath**
respectively, and not **hath**, cf. also the root S.η T.η T.η
in S.η η T.η η T.η (break).

(d) S. **hath** (run strongly of water in rapids) cf.
N. **hath** (pour or gush down) and E. **hath** (of the falling
down of water), is a verbalised derivative and not a verbal
derivative, and so are S. **hath** (stagger along), cf. S. **hath**
(dock), N. **hath** (dye blue), cf. E. **hath** (blue, green).
(e) The force of S. **hath** and N. **hath** referred to above
definitely excludes them from being stational-factitives. They
may of course be verbalised derivatives, but as no corresponding
non-verbal stems could be indicated they are not regarded as
such.

1) Cf. also T. **hath** = T. η (we, us).
II Secondary: A Single:

i) Contactive S.\textit{s̄a}ra T.\textit{s̄a}ra N.\textit{s̄a}ra (seize with violence) N.\textit{xamara} (take with both hands, take in the arms), cf. S.\textit{hama} T.\textit{gama} N.\textit{xamara} (milk); T.\textit{loparu} (hold fast), cf. T.\textit{jopa} (tie in an intricate and difficult knot).

Interesting are the following contactive and punctative stems with different stem-vowels and connecting-vowels but nevertheless semantically closely related, and sometimes even synonymous: N.\textit{fesara} (winnow), S.\textit{tōtō}ra T.\textit{tōtō}ra N.\textit{tōtō}ra (\textit{tōtō}ra), and S.\textit{tētē}ra T.\textit{tētē}ra N.\textit{tētē}ra (brush off, brush away as e.g. dust or leaves, pluck); S.\textit{hamara} (seize with violence) N.\textit{xamara} (take with both hands, take in the arms) and S.\textit{hamara} N.\textit{xamara} (hold fast); N.\textit{amara} (conceive, e.g. of animals, become pregnant), S.\textit{g̃ama} T.\textit{g̃ara} N.\textit{g̃ara} (=N.\textit{amara}) and T.\textit{amara} (=N.\textit{amara})

ii) (a) The contactive denotes "touching or contact of some sort" e.g. S.\textit{hīmara} (seize with violence) N.\textit{xamara} (take in the arms, take with both hands), cf. S.\textit{hama} T.\textit{gama} N.\textit{xamara} (milk); S.\textit{hamara} (get fastened, get affixed) cf. N.\textit{ma}ra (suck, cling to); N.\textit{hamara} (affix, fasten to, sew to), cf. N.\textit{g̃a}ma (border, hem, stitch to); T.\textit{toko}ra N.\textit{xoko}ra (hold a thing under the arm, or in the hand), cf. N.\textit{xoka} (bind, fasten); T.\textit{loparu} (hold fast), cf. T.\textit{jopa} (tie in an intricate and difficult knot); S.\textit{sikara} T.\textit{sikara} N.\textit{sikara} (carry on the shoulders, sling over the shoulders), cf. S.\textit{gil}a N.\textit{g̃a}ka (carry e.g. in the arms); N.\textit{jopa} (carry that which has been taken out of a grain basket), cf. N.\textit{jopa} (take out of a grain basket); N.\textit{tēmara} (close by taking hold with the hand), cf. S.\textit{jama} T.\textit{jama} (bind); T.\textit{koka} (take much or more than one has permission to take), cf. S.\textit{kaka} T.\textit{kaka} (take something as a whole, include).

---

i) cf. Tarm., p. 79. ii) There are about 40 contactive stems.
(b) The suffix *are* has in a few cases lost its contactive force, e.g. *S. anara* *T. anare* *N. anera* (turn one's back against), cf. *N. ıtle* (flee, retreat); *N. ıhera* (gather up, collect hastily), cf. *N. ıhı (gather up, collect hastily, take greedily); *N. ıhera* (be greedy, be stingy, desire the possessions of some one else), cf. *S. ıhıa* *N. ıhe* (be greedy).

(c) In other cases the semantic relation between the contactive stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. *N. ılabara* (winnow), cf. *N. ıtə* (be light); *T. ılabara* (cling around, encompass), cf. *S. ılab ılabara* *N. ılabara* (plant, fix in on end); *N. ılabara* (quarrel), cf. *T. ıla* (stand solidly or unmovable).

(d) Some contactive stems are transitive, others are intransitive, e.g. *S. ıhera* *N. ıhera* transitive *S. ıhe* *N. ıhe* transitive (cf. (a) above); *N. ıhera* transitive *N. ıhe* transitive (cf. (b) above); *T. ıhera* *N. ıhera* transitive *N. ıhe* transitive (cf. (a) above); *N. ıhera* intransitive *N. ıhe* intransitive (cf. (a) above); *T. ıhera* intransitive *T. ıhera* intransitive (cf. (a) above); *N. ıhera* intransitive *N. ıhe* intransitive (cf. (a) above); *N. ıhera* intransitive, *S. ıhe* *N. ıhe* intransitive (cf. (b) above).

(e) Most of the simple stems corresponding to contactive stems are transitive, some such simple stems are however intransitive cf. (d) above.

(f) There are contactive stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stems shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. *S. ıhera* *T. ıhera* *N. ıhera* (dress), cf. *S. ıhera* *T. ıhera* *N. ıhera* (be laid open, get open in T. also: be undressed); *S. ıhera* *T. ıhera* (clench the fist), cf. *S. ıhera* (bud); *S. ıhera* (take a little); *S. ıhera* *N. ıhera* (take hold of, clasp).

(g) A comparison between the contactive stems quoted above and the punctative stems quoted in (f) above will show that the relation between *are* and *re* lies therein that *re* indicates
intermittent action which may sometimes be intermittent contact, while are indicates contact of a more or less prolonged nature. I give a few examples here to illustrate the point: Contactive stems: T.gokara (hold a thing in the hand before putting it down), T.lepura (held fast), S.kamara (seize with violence) N.xamara (take in the arms), T.ithomara (cling around); Punctative stems: S.kofor S.kofor N.xofor (brush away), T.xolora (run about hither and thither), N.ôbôra (pick up twigs), N.xatsara (walk elastically).

(2) Compound:

1. Contactive suffix in basic position:

   (a) 1) Contactive-factitive, S.ase N.ase < S.ase +

   S.â N.â + N.â ; e.g. S.kakara (hold with force, carry something heavy), cf. T.kakara (take much or more than one has permission to take) and T.kaka (take something as a whole, include); N.xulâra (turn round), cf. S.xulara T.xulara N.xulara (turn one's back against) and N.xula (flee, re-treat).

Of the 11 derivative stems in S.ase N.ase the above are the only two I could find with a corresponding stem in S.ase N.ase. It should further be noted that with the exception of N.xulâra all have a as their stem-vowel; it is therefore possible that the suffixes of such stems as do not have a definite contactive-factitive force do not contain are as one of their component parts, but either: (a) the punctative suffix xa, in which case the compound suffix will be the punctative-factitive S.ase N.xa; or (b) the stationary (capable) S.âna N.âna, in which case

1) cf. Phon., p. 66
the compound suffix will be the stational (capable)-
factive. But those stems in S. *asa N. *asa not conveying
a contactive-factive force do not convey a punctative-
factive or stational (capable)-factive force either.
I therefore see no reason why they cannot be classed as
contactive-factive suffixes which have lost their ori-
ginal force.

(4) In T. there is a contactive-factive *awsa (cause to turn away) of S. *uluwa T. *uluwa
N. *uluwa (turn one's back against).

ii) (a) The contactive-factive adds the factitive
idea to the idea expressed by the contactive stems: cf.
S. *rakasa and N. *uluwa quoted in 1) above, as well as the
following examples for which no corresponding contactive
stems could be indicated: S. *rakasa (scatter, disperse), of.
N. *rake (splutter as e.g. clay by treading in it); N. *phapha (hatch out) no corresponding simple stem; S. *rakasa (walk
with feet far apart), of N. *rake (chase away); S. *thakasa
(walk with feet far apart), no corresponding simple stem
thaka, but of N. *rake (chase away); S. *thathasa (seize
something heavy), of N. *thatha (root out). Several of the
derivative stems quoted above have an idea of scatter or be
apart; I take this idea to be of a secondary nature having
developed out of the idea of contact; the underlying idea may
here then perhaps, that of extended contact.

(b) The following derivative stems in S. *asa N. *asa have
lost their contactive force: e.g. S. *blakasa (work hard,
heartyly, stubbornly, distribute food with pleasure), N. *farasa
(give birth to many young, e.g. of an animal), N. *farasa (be

i) Perhaps a dialectal variant of N. *farasa ("
beget many young).
mad or crazy), S. nyalaza (walk freely, in peace), N. pharaa
(resist being torn apart); no corresponding simple stem
could be indicated for these derivative stems.

(c) In the few cases where simple stems probably cor-
responding to contactive stems could be indicated, the
semantic relation between these two stems is often ex-
tremely vague, e.g. S. raka and N. raka (cf. (a) above),
S. thatasa and N. ththa (cf. (a) above).

(d) Of the 11 contactive-factitive stems the following
7 are intransive: N. fara (cf. (b) above), N. fara (be
mad), N. phara (cf. (b) above), S. nyalaza (cf. (b) above),
S. phakasa (cf. (b) above), S. raka (cf. (a) above),
S. thatasa (cf. (a) above).

(e) As already stated there are contactive-factitive
stems which do not have corresponding simple or con-
tactive stems (cf. (b) above).

This suffix, which adds the performative idea to the idea ex-
pressed by the contactive stem, occurs, as far as I could
ascertain, only in the following five cases; it is, however,
given here because of the interesting changes in form under-
gone in two cases: T. phakarisa (place one thing across another
at right angles to make a cross), cf. T. phaka (place a piece
of wood horizontally on two other pieces), no corresponding
contactive stem; S. emara N. emari (make pregnant), cf.
S. mera T. mera N. mera (become pregnant of animals only),
no corresponding simple stem; T. emirisa (prevent healing
in a wound), no corresponding simple or contactive stems; S. hofarisa
(cause to be poor, deprive, rob), cf. S. hafa (take out in
quantity), no corresponding simple stem; T. ruladisa (cause

(i) In view of N. pharaa (split apart) and N. pharoza (get split
apart) it is possible that pharaa is the factitive of pharaa,
the latter two stems forming the opposite of the former two,
respectively.

(ii) N. fara (go to a nearby place on a visit) is probably
derived from English vacation and S. kalasa (rebel) from Xhosa
khaleaza, (complain, vent a grievance) cf. Afrikaans klag (complain).
to turn away the face), cf. T.\textit{ruler} (turn away the face, turn back), the corresponding simple stem. Interesting is here the change of \textit{r} into \textit{d} before \textit{ias}; this, probably due to the influence of the \textit{d} of \textit{ias}. It is however noteworthy that in the other instances quoted above the \textit{r} of T.\textit{ara} remains unchanged.

S.\textit{spee} T.\textit{spere} N.\textit{apera} (cause to dress, cover, clothe), cf. S.\textit{apara} T.\textit{apara} N.\textit{apara} (dress), no corresponding simple stem; the process is here probably as follows: S.\textit{amaira} T.\textit{amaira} N.\textit{amaira} \rightarrow S.\textit{spee} T.\textit{spee} N.\textit{apera}; for a similar regressive assimilating influence of \textit{d}, cf. the perfect conjugation form S.\textit{spere} T.\textit{spere} N.\textit{spere} \rightarrow S.\textit{amaira} T.\textit{amaira} N.\textit{amaira} \rightarrow S.\textit{spee} T.\textit{spee} N.\textit{apera}, it is however difficult to say why the other examples quoted above have not gone through the same process of assimilation.

2. Contactive in a non-basic position:

The undermentioned are the only examples I could get of the contactive in this position: The contribution of T.\textit{ara} N.\textit{ara} to the force of these compounds is that it adds in each case the contactive idea to the idea expressed by the suffix without T.\textit{ara} N.\textit{ara}. Preteractive-contactive N.\textit{ara} in N.\textit{kakamara} (take on the shoulder), cf. S.\textit{kuka} N.\textit{kuka} (lift up something heavy, take) T.\textit{kuka} (carry a child on the back or on the hip). Positional-contactive T.\textit{ara} in T.\textit{kakamara} (support in the arms, lift up, carry or hold a thing in the arms or between both hands), cf. T.\textit{kakama} (carry with both hands, cf. the outstretched position of the hands and to a certain extent also the arms when performing this action) and T.\textit{kaka} (be drawn two ways).

1) cf. \textit{Phon}, p. 78.
Iri

1) Punctative (intensive) T.\textit{ntha} S.\textit{tha}, \textit{tha}. I could find only one example of the suffix \textit{ntha}, viz., T.\textit{setlontha} (unfold, unravel), cf. S.\textit{setla} (beat out corn), S.\textit{setla} T.\textit{setla} H.\textit{setla} (pound corn in a mortar). I think the suffix \textit{ntha} may be regarded as an intermediate stage between the punctulative ra on the one hand and the punctulative (intensive) tha on the other hand. No punctative stem \textit{setlera} could, however, be indicated.

ii) (a) The punctative (intensive) denotes intensive intermitent action, e.g. chop, kick, walk with force, beat, etc.: S.\textit{hela} N.\textit{hela} (shop into small bits, crush), cf. S.\textit{hela} N.\textit{hela} (heap, shop), S.\textit{nyan} (walk with force), cf. S.\textit{nyana} (come or go softly);
T.\textit{epa} (pat with a hand or stone when mearing or making a mud floor), cf. N.\textit{epe} (grope, tap with the hand);
T.\textit{thakatha} N.\textit{thakatha} (kick in all directions), cf. S.\textit{thaka} (stretch out the legs like one on horseback);
T.\textit{patma} (cut off), cf. N.\textit{kama} (bite through), S.\textit{ratha} (beat a skin with a stone to make it supple), cf. S.\textit{ratha} (strike, beat);
T.\textit{ruthu} (break down, e.g. a wall), cf. S.\textit{ru} (feel in the dark), cf. S.\textit{for} T.\textit{for} K.\textit{for} (brush away dust etc.) and S.\textit{for} T.\textit{for} N.\textit{for} (fly), S.\textit{pho} (shake out), cf. N.\textit{pho} (brush away, dust, take away leaves etc.), no corresponding simple stem, but cf. S.\textit{fora} (fly);
S.\textit{pho} (care, pat, stroke), cf. S.\textit{pho} (run with full speed i.e. make a clattering noise with the feet or hooves beating against the ground) and S.\textit{pho} (fly).

i) There are about 66 punctative (intensive) stems.
ii) These are the only punctative (intensive) stems for which corresponding punctulative stems could be indicated. I take it that S.\textit{fema} (scratch, tear off with the nails) has been derived from S.\textit{fema} which still has a parallel in N.\textit{fema} (bite something hard, gnaw, by strengthening of the final consonant $\textit{f}$; this consonant is however a stem-consonant and not a suffix-consonant as S.\textit{fema} has been derived from S.\textit{fema} T.\textit{fema} H.\textit{fema} (gnaw, notch) through prefix-formation (cf. Chapter 19). III: The process of consonant-strengthening in fora, pho and pho is noteworthy, cf. S.\textit{for} T.\textit{for} N.\textit{for} (winnow, blow chaff away) and S.\textit{pho} (blow of a strong wind), S.\textit{fora} (shake) and S.\textit{pho} (wash out by shaking about).
(b) Sometimes derivative verbs in the have lost their punctative(intensive) force, e.g., स्वत्व (wave), न्यव (brandish e.g. a weapon); सरस्थ (pinch); सरस्थ (cut, scrape); सरस्थ (exaggerate, speak foolishly); सरस्थ (lie, tell a lie); स्मृत्व (eat indiscriminately, cram); सम (eat meat); त्वक (rob), no corresponding simple stem; सहित्वन्त (prattle) of सहान्वन्त (prattle) and सहान्वत्स (jest, fool).

(c) In some cases the semantic relation between the punctative(intensive) stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g.: रश्था (make a noise like far off rain) of रश्था (curdle, stir); हक (change one's mind often) of हक (forget); रप्था (stab or shoot simultaneously in hunting) of हप्था; हन्था (drop, rain in occasional large drops); हम (break dry wood) of हम (eat anything hard); त्वक (shake) of त्वक (pound, break); हकल्ल (roam about) हकल्ल (walk alongside of the road) of हकल्ल (land).

(d) Some punctative(intensive) stems are transitive, others again intransitive, e.g. हकल्ल हकल्ल transitive S.halkhla N.halkhla transitive (cf. (a) above), तपात्या transitive S.पात्या intransitive (cf. (a) above), रश्था transitive S.रश्था transitive (cf. (a) above), हन्था intransitive T.नथा intransitive (cf. (a) above), तथ्व intransitive T.थव intransitive T.थव intransitive (cf. (a) above), S.थव transitive (cf. (a) above), S.थव transitive S.थव transitive (cf. (b) above).

(e) As can be seen from (d) above the simple stmes corresponding to some punctative(intensive) stems.

1) This stem seems to be merely punctative.
2) These stems seem to be merely intensive.
are transitive, while those corresponding to others are intransitive.

(2) There are punctative(intensive) stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems, nor could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these stems. A comparison with other derivative stems also reveals no corresponding simple verbal stems or corresponding non-verbal stems shows, however, in some cases a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem e.g. S.xenatha (strangle, oppress, despise), cf. S.xenakata (do something roughly); T.phaleatha (wander aimlessly not knowing where one is going), cf. T.phola (wander about); N.namotha (work), cf. S.nametha (undertake, set to); N.xanatha (beat with the fist); N.loantha (kill), T.thukutha N.thukutha (shake, wag).

T.kogkotha (trail on the ground as a long garment) is probably related to T.koga N.ko (pull), cf. also T.kogkotina (cause to trail on the ground); and S.pinitha (emit pusz, not to heal) is probably related to S.pinu (cause to ferment) and N.pina (swell).

β) Compound

1. Punctative(intensive) in basic position:
The punctative(intensive) suffix occurs in this position, e.g.: δ. Punctative (intensive)-performative N.thona, e.g. N.khlaothina (mislead) for N.khlaatha cf. α (c) above;
Punctative(intensive)-statational(capable) S.thona, e.g. S.khatha (get moved about), for S.khatha cf. α (b) above. Such compounds are however not of sufficient interest for further treatment here.

2. Punctative(intensive) in a non-basic position:
The punctative(intensive) does not occur in this position.
II Secondary: (c) Single:

1) Contactive(intensive) S. *atha T. *atha N. *tha

ii) (a) Contactive(intensive) denotes intensive contact; e.g. T. kramathę N. kramathę (become smeared or smudged as clothes by mud, stick to), cf. S. kamerę (seize with the hands) N. kamerę (take in the arms), and S. kheare N. kheare (stick in the throat, strangle); T. kramathę (become smeared or smudged), no corresponding simple stem; S. khamathę (come together, gather), cf. S. kamerę N. kamerę (clasp) and N. kheare (touch); N. krahathę (make everything up, together), cf. N. krahę (sweep together).

(b) In the following cases the suffix *atha has lost its contactive(intensive) force: T. kramathę (do anything with vigour or determination), cf. S. khōné T. khōné N. khōné (be able to do a thing); N. kopathę (be unable to refrain from laughing), no corresponding simple stem.

Ω Compound:

1. Contactive(intensive) in basic position:
The contactive(intensive) occurs in this position, e.g. in the contactive(intensive)-applicative S. athōla T. athōla N. athōla as in: T. kramathōla (press hard after), for kramathę cf. d) ii) (b) above; N. krahathōla (stick to), cf. T. krahę N. krahę (smear a floor with wet dung), no corresponding contactive(intensive) stem; S. khakhathōla (stick for as e.g. food in a pot), cf. N. kakhę (stick to

I) This is an extremely rare suffix, only 6 contactive (intensive) stems could be found.
e.g. a thorn on the clothes), no corresponding contactive (intensive) stem.

The contactive (intensive)-performative S. ahliše T. athīrases N. athīśvā, e.g. S. bliomatīs (intertwine, add to), cf. S. bhōma T. tliōma N. bhōma (plant, fix in) and T. tlēmāre (cling around, encompass), no corresponding contactive (intensive) stem; T. kramathīsā N. kramathīvā (cause to stick to), for T. kramathā N. kramathā cf. (a) ii) (a) above.

Such compounds are not of sufficient interest for further treatment here.

2. Contactive (intensive) in a non-basic position: This suffix does not occur in this position.

---

1) Obtained from my informants.
CHAPTER 10

Disruptive S.tila T.tila N.tila

1) 1) Disruptive S.tila T.tila N.tila, e.g. N.xhabatla
(chop aimlessly into pieces), cf. T.xabha (pierce at various points as with a branch, kill with a spade);
S.xhabatla N.xhabatla (trample, stamp, ruin by trampling upon), cf. S.xhoba T.xhoba N.xhoba (smash, beat, chisel);
N.xhabatla (open a book, turn up the edge) < N."uhestla <
nexhavlal, cf. N.phave (jerk open), T.panatla (grop along as a blind man, grope one's way along, idea: touch here and there everywhere), cf. N.papa (grop with the hands).

Interesting are the following disruptive stems with different stem-vowels and different connecting vowels, but related in meaning and sometimes even semantically identical:
N.xhabatla (chop aimlessly into pieces), T.xhabatla
N.xhabatla (break into pieces, cut up into pieces) and
N.xhabatla (cut into pieces, cut up).
S.panatla N.panatla (make a bread thing like a cake of dung for fuel, make flat, cf. the extensive slapping movements when performing this action), S.panatla T.panatla N.panatla (widen, spread, make flat), T.panatla (go along as a blind man, grope one's way along), N.panatla (trod) N.panatla (trod, walk quickly), perhaps related to the previous set.
T.panatla (begin to walk), N.panatla (=T.panatla).
N.tarpetla (nod with the head when walking) and N.tarpetla
("tarpetla").

1) UB. ye cf. Phon, P. 46.
11) The classification unstrengthened and strengthened is not applied to this suffix, as it, although a plosive, is not due to the strengthening of an unstrengthened suffix-consonant as here applied.
111) Due to a process of elision and regressive assimilation, cf. necela (water) < necela.
396.

N.ķxobetle (glean), T.ķxobetle (gather together money, etc., crowd), N.ķxobetle (glean).

T.ķaratle N.ķaratla (roar, growl, make a rumbling noise, thunder), N.ķaratla (¬ T.ķaratle N.ķaratla).

S.ķaratla (speak much, loudly).

S.ķaratla (make a noise with one's feet, e.g. of horses running), S.ķaratla (let out wind) S.ķaratla N.ķaratla (roar, sing loudly), N.ķuratle (roar e.g. of a lion).

S.ķhatlela (cut fringes in the edge of a cloth), S.ķhatlela (cut unequally, irregularly).

T.ķibitle (run heavily) and T.ķibitle (sway from side to side as a bad runner, walk with shaky gait as a weak person).

11) (a) The disruptive denotes disruptive or violent action, e.g. N.ķxabetla (chop aimlessly into bits), T.ķxabetla N.ķxabetla (break into pieces, cut up into pieces), cf. T.ķgebe (pierce at various points as with a branch, kill with a spade), N.ķxabetla (cut into pieces, cut up), cf. T.ķgebe (shop in a slanting direction, chop out the backbone of an animal), N.ķonela (cut through), cf. N.ķone (sprain), N.ķeketla N.ķeketla (cut or how about), cf. S.ķeke (lance), N.ķeketla (tear to bits), cf. N.ķeke (gnaw, bite off), N.ķxaritela (scratch), cf. T.ķxara N.ķxara (scratch, make a scratching noise), S.ķhatlela N.ķhatlela (trample, stamp, ruin by trampling upon), cf. S.ķḧ be T.ķḧ be N.ķḧ be (smash, beat, chisel), S.ķuratla (excavate), cf. S.ļura T.ļura N.ļura (make a hole), T.ļafetle (toss about as the wind), cf. N.ļafa (be light), N.ļaritela (sound of a drum), cf. N.ļira (gnash the teeth), T.ķḧ be (despise as being of no use, speak disparagingly to, hurt the feelings by speaking), cf. S.ķḧ be T.ķḧ be N.ķḧ be (upbraid,

1) cf. Endemann W.d.S., P. 34.
reproach, scold); T.\textit{Marata} (growl), cf. S.\textit{Barna} (look angrily at); N.\textit{Thala} (fill in very much, ladle a lot into), cf. N.\textit{Bana} (fill a pot when making beer); T.\textit{Panula} (close the arms fast around a thing, grasp the mouth of a sack with one's hands), cf. S.\textit{Hama} T.\textit{Gama} N.\textit{Rana} (milk); S.\textit{Papata} N.\textit{Papata} (make flat, make a broad thing like a cake of dung, ideas: beat repeatedly with flat hand), S.\textit{Papata} T.\textit{Papata} N.\textit{Papata} (make flat, widen, ideas: beat repeatedly with flat hand), T.\textit{Papata} (go along as a blind man, grope one's way along), cf. N.\textit{Pana} (grope with the hands); T.\textit{Papita} N.\textit{Papita} (keep back part of a story, fail to tell all the news), cf. N.\textit{Papa} (cover up).

(b) The suffix \textit{ita} has sometimes lost its disruptive force, e.g. N.\textit{Kapita} (suffer from foot and mouth disease), cf. N.\textit{Jaka} (suffer from foot and mouth disease); S.\textit{Renita} (speak alone, scold), cf. N.\textit{Rana} (call up, invite); N.\textit{Seopita} N.\textit{Seopita} (nod with the head when walking), cf. N.\textit{Kepa} (nod with the head when walking); N.\textit{Jekot} (cheat), cf. S.\textit{Jeka} N.\textit{Jeka} (enticed, draw by cunning); S.\textit{Jekot} (move to and fro, get shaken), cf. S.\textit{Jeka} N.\textit{Jeka} (wag the tail, move to and fro); S.\textit{Pukuta} (blow of the wind), cf. S.\textit{Puka} (blow hard, moan).

(c) In some cases the semantic relation between the disruptive stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. S.\textit{Khərata} (murmur), cf. T.\textit{Khara} N.\textit{Kvara} (make a scratching sound); T.\textit{Patla} (grope or feel one's way as a blind or drunken man, feel one's way when speaking about an unfamiliar subject), cf. N.\textit{Jala} (touch upon a subject in a conversation); N.\textit{Jokot} (wash off, wipe), cf. T.\textit{Joka} N.\textit{Joka} (thresh corn or mealies); T.\textit{Jokot} (speak with reserve, give stiltedly), cf. S.\textit{Jama} T.\textit{Jama} N.\textit{Jama} (shut the mouth, be silent); N.\textit{Pawata} (trod), cf. N.\textit{Papa}
(grape with the hands); T.khurutla (seek a lost thing perseveringly), cf. N.khura (hide).

(d) Some disruptive stems are transitive, others are intransitive, e.g.
N.kxabatla transitive T.kgabce transitive (cf. (a) above), N.konatla transitive N.kona transitive (cf. (a) above), S.papatla N.papatla transitive N.papa intransitive (cf. (a) above), T.kafetla transitive N.kafa intransitive (cf. (a) above), N.kakatla intransitive N.kaka intransitive (cf. (b) above), N.tsapotla intransitive N.tsopa intransitive (cf. (b) above), T.tCrodotla intransitive S.tjora transitive (cf. (a) above), T.papatla intransitive N.papa intransitive (cf. (a) above).

(e) As can be seen from (d) above the simple stems corresponding to some disruptive stems are transitive, while those corresponding to others are intransitive.

(f) There are disruptive stems not associated with any extent simple verbal stems, neither could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these derivatives; a comparison with other derivative stems, also having no corresponding simple verbal stems or corresponding non-verbal stems shows however, in some cases a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g.
S.papatla (make a noise with the feet, e.g. of horses running), cf. T.paraganya (gallop); S.paketla (run very quickly), cf. S.pakasela (flee);
N.tekotla (hew off with an axe), cf. S.tsokolla (cut or tear to pieces);
T.robotla (trample under foot as mud), cf. T.rohele (ram fast);
S.kabetla (walk with violence, quickly);
S.khibile (drive many animals);
T.khubile (work very hard).
T. kudita (away from side to side as a bad runner);
N. xokota (plough dry land);
T. lokota (break to pieces or into splinters);
N. tebota (dig with a hoe attached to a rod);
N. pakutla (grow very quickly, shoot up).

(g) If disruptive and consusive stems derived from
the same roots are compared it would seem as if the force
conveyed by the former is the intensive of the force con-
veyed by the latter, and it is even possible that the dis-
ruptive suffix may be regarded as the intensive of the con-
susive. However, I do not intend stressing this possible
relation any further than merely mentioning it as the
suffix-consonants of these two suffixes have a different
1) phonological origin.

Examples of disruptive and consusive stems derived
from the same verbal root:
S. khëreble (notch), N. kxerêla (tear to bits);
S. pherble (boil loudly), S. pherble N. phërëla (make
a rustling sound e.g. of the wings of a bird);
S. kirile (snore), S. kirile (thunder, sound);
S. stëhla (make supple), T. ghotla (trample under feet
as mud, snow, etc.);
S. khërble (said of the noise made by a boiling pot);
T. khereble (rattle or gurgle as in bronchitis);
S. khërble (walk on a stony place),
S. khërëla (grumble, murmur).

(3) Compound:

1. Disruptive in basic position; e.g.

aa) Disruptive-applicative S. tlela T. tlëla N. tlela as in:
S. mamale (cling to), cf. N. sama (stick to), no corre-
ponding disruptive stem; T. kamele (embrace), cf. N. kama

(catch something thrown at you), no corresponding disruptive stem; N. *nsangathle* (stretch out), cf. S. *ngeaba* (pull, drag), no corresponding disruptive stem; T. *kgabetla* N. *kxabetla* (mince meat or to cut up into small bits with respect to something), for T. *kgabetla* N. *kxabetla* and T. *kxaha*, cf. (8) ii) (a) above.

bb) Disruptive-performative S. *tliisa* T. *tlisa* N. *tlisa* as in: S. *papetlisa* T. *papetlisa* N. *papetlisa* (make flat, cause to be flat), for S. *papetla* T. *papetla* N. *papetla* and N. *papa*, cf. (8) ii) (a) above.

Such compounds are not of sufficient interest for further treatment here.

2. Disruptive in a non-basic position; it occurs in this position only in the cases referred to in Chapter 5 § 10 (f).

II Secondary:

The disruptive has no corresponding secondary form.
1) Primary: 

1) Factitive S.ta T.ta N.ta

1) Factitive S.ta T.ta N.ta; the semivowel of this suffix affects the final root-consonant in the manner to be described below, as well as the root-vowels a and o; these vowels become, as a rule, closed when the factitive suffix is attached to a root containing either of them; e.g., S.fetaa T.fetaa N.fetaa (finish, make an end of), cf. S.tìle T.tìle N.tìle (end, come to an end); S.tìtòa T.tìtòa N.tìtòa (anoint, grease), cf. S.tìle T.tìle N.tìle (use an ointment, anoint oneself with). Dialectally however these vowels sometimes remain unchanged, e.g., N.fènya iv) S.fënye or N.fënye (overcome, conquer; i.e., force back), cf. N.fëno (turn, bend back); S.nvëme (disdain, be disgusted), cf. T.nvëme (shudder); N.këna or N.këna (cut off the road), cf. N.këna (cut up); N.kûnya or N.kûnyë (utilise fully, make the best of), cf. S.kûna N.kûna (give sparingly v) (cut off the road).
How S.\( \text{a} \) T.\( \text{a} \) N.\( \text{a} \) affects the final consonant of a root to which the factitive is attached.

1) cf. Phon., 77. Suffix-consonants are affected in the same way by the S.\( \text{a} \) T.\( \text{a} \) N.\( \text{a} \) of S.\( \text{a} \) T.\( \text{a} \) N.\( \text{a} \), cf. (\( \beta \)) below.

2) cf. Phon., p. 67. (\( \beta \)) cf. N.\( \text{n} \text{a} \text{a} \) (assist with something, present with).

3) cf. Phon., p. 246


vii) cf. the two perfect conjugational forms emole = entëwa (has borne fruit)

ix) cf. Phon., p. 70.
boiled, change as blood into fibrine and serum), cf. T.tlamma (put yeast into beer); S.konya T.konya \textit{N.konya} (pluck out, pick out with a knife, tear out), cf. N.xoma or N.xôma (cut out).

S.n T.n N.n \textgreater S.rv T.rv N.rv, e.g. T.kwilda (make thick or strong), cf. T.kwina (be thick);
N.konya (utilise fully, make the best of), cf. S.ôna
N.kôna (give sparingly); S.minya N.minya (drain, skim), cf. S.mîna N.mîna (drain, skim).

S.p T.p N.p \textgreater S.tek T.thw N.taw, e.g. S.hlataka
T.tlatatawa N.hlatawa (wash something), cf. S.hlapa T.tlaha N.hlaha (wash e.g. the body);

\textgreater N.tô, e.g. N.kute (cause a flow of saliva), cf. N.kupa (keep in the e.g. water);

S.r T.r N.r \textgreater S.s T.s N.s and sometimes N.p, e.g. N.hlasa = N.hlase (chase away), cf. N.hlara (chase away); N.pose (organise a hunting drive), cf. N.pora (take part in a hunting drive); S.tôosa (catch fish, entangle, entrap), cf. S.tôora T.tôhwa (catch); S.fosa T.fosa N.fosa (miss the mark or aim, fail in one's purpose), cf. T.fora N.fôra (deceive, hoax);

In the following cases T.r has become teh, kroteha (satisfy, satisfy), cf. S.khore T.khore (become satisfied).

\(1\) cf. Phon., p. 70. \(\text{ii}\) cf. Phon., p 68. \(\text{iii}\) cf. Phon., p.66.
\(\text{iv}\) cf. also N.serîthâne (small hair) and N.serînana (small tuft of hair), both diminutive forms of seriri (uncut hair, tuft of hair).
\(\text{v}\) For the influence of the semivowel of the factitive suffix on \(\ddot{e}\), cf. Chapter 20.
ii) (a) The factitive denotes the bringing about, the inducing or the promoting of the action indicated by the corresponding simple stem and this is done

Directly applying the action expressed by the simple stem to the object of the derivative stem (the agent here is the subject of the derivative stem). This causes the object to perform the action expressed by the simple stem; the object may at the same time also be the means through which that action takes place. The suffix is here termed the factitive (causative);

Effecting or accomplishing in some modified way the action expressed by the simple stem without aiming 
specifitv at any object. The suffix may here be termed the fac-
titive (effective).

Of the approximately 110 factitive stems about one half are factitive (causative), the other half factitive (effective). Each of these sub-heads will now be dealt with separately.

The factitive (causative):

Factive (causative) stems are always transitive, e.g.
S.kenya (cause to enter, put in, insert), cf. S.čoho
(enter); T.čenye N.čenye (cause to enter, put in), cf.
T.čene N.čene (enter); S.čenea T.čenea N.čeđe
(frighten, startle), cf. S.čene T.čene T.čeđe N.čeđe
(get a fright); N.čača (put somebody in a sitting position, i.e.
somebody who cannot himself sit down, e.g. a patient or a
child), cf. S.čula T.čula N.čula (sit down); N.čotča (dip
in, i.e. cause to bathe), cf. S.čela (bathe); N.četča (leave
a reminder, i.e. cause to stay behind), cf. S.čale T.čale
N.čale (stay behind); S.čotča T.čotča N.čotča (cause
to anoint, grease, anoint), cf. S.čala T.čala N.čala
(use an ointment, anoint oneself with).

The semantic difference between the factitive (causative) and the performative (causative) is very slight and has mostly disappeared. The non-living factitive (causative) suffix has probably been replaced by the still living performative (causative) suffix. This difference, which can best be seen by comparing factitive (causative) stems and performative (causative) stems derived from the same root, seems to depend upon the fact that although both suffixes denote the causation of the action expressed by the simple stem, the factitive (causative) suffix conveys the idea that in causing it the subject of the corresponding derivative stem is personally and directly responsible for the performance of that action by the object of the derivative stem, the subject being thus the direct cause of the action; the performative (causative) suffix, on the other hand, conveys the idea that in causing it the subject of the corresponding derivative stem is merely indirectly responsible for the performance of that action by the object of the derivative stem, the subject being here the indirect cause of the action.

S.letase T.letsa N.letë (complete, fulfil, finish, e.g. another person's work) and S.elfesa T.elfesa N.elfë (cause to end or cause to cease, bring to an end, put a stop to), cf. S.êle T.êle N.êlë (end, get finished); S.letase T.letsa N.letë (lay down, e.g. a person, give rest, in T. also: cause to lie down) and N.lodië (cause to go to bed, cause to lie down), cf. S.êlë T.êlë N.êlë (lie down), S.letase T.letsa N.letë (play on an

instrument, cause to resound) and S.ledisa T.ledisa
N.ledisa (cause to weep), cf. S.lola T.lola N.lola
(cries); N.sade (put somebody into a sitting position,
i.e. somebody who cannot sit himself, e.g., a patient
or a child) and S.lulsa T.lulsa (cause to sit),
cf. S.lule T.dula N.dula (sit down); N.letsa (leave
a remainder behind) and S.salisa T.salisa (cause to
remain: in T. also: = N.letsa) N.salisa (=N.letsa)
and S.salisa T.salisa N.sal (stay behind); N.letsa (give
somebody something which he does not have, assist with,
present with) and S.salisa (cause to buy food), cf.
S.sal N.sal (go about buying food); N.totla (dip
in) and S.polisa (bathe, cause to take a bath), cf.
S.tola (bathe, wash the whole body); T.tcheta =
T.tcheta (cause to live, keep alive), cf. T.tshela
(live); S.totse T.totse N.totse (miss the aim or mark,
make a mistake) and N.torlo (cause deceit or fraud)
cf. T.totse N.totse (deceive, hoax); T.totse T.totse
(totse, toinse) T.tshweta (cause to catch or to seize)
f. T.tshwe T.tshweta T.tshweta (catch, seize)
f. N.tsho (purge) and S.tsho (cause to purge), cf. S.tsho N.tsho (have diarrhea); S.tsho (entrap, ensnare, catch fish) and S.tsho
T.tshweta (cause to catch or to seize), cf. S.tsho
T.letswa (catch hold of); T.kgotse = S.kgoro
T.kgoro (satisfy), cf. S.kgoro T.kgoro (become satis-
fied); S.punye T.punye N.punye (pierce, bore) and
S.punye (cause one to let a thing fall), cf. S.punye
(let fall) N.punye (inseach); N.punye (let something fade
or dry up) and S.puntsa N.puntsa (cause to fade, cause
to dry) cf. S.punye N.punye (dry, fade); T.tsonza N.tsonza
(put in, bring in, in T. also: cause to enter) and N.tsonza
(cause to enter, cause to bring in), cf. T.tsonza N.tsonza
(enter)
1) S.sebelese (cause to work), cf. S.sebelese (work) from
Afridi sebelese (work), has probably been formed in analogy
with such pairs of verbal stems; there is no corresponding
sebele in Sotho.
The factitive(effective): 

About 35 of the factitive(effective) stems are intransitive, the rest transitive. Example of intransitive factitive(effective) stems: S.bonya T.bonya N.bonya (blink, wink), cf. S.bõõa T.bõõa N.bõõa (see); N.xinya (get rolled up), cf. N.xõne (bind); S.hlëna N.hlëna (be mad, rave), cf. N.hlëna (be weak-minded); T.tlhonya (be erect or rough as the hair on a dog's back), cf. N.hlëne (stand, bristle up); N.kxënye (boast, swagger, be vain), cf. T.kgene N.kxene (exult, rejoice, boast); S.nanye T.nanye N.nanye (walk slowly, dragging one's feet), cf. N.nane (walk slowly); T.kwase N.kxwá (rustle, make a noise like feet in the grass), cf. T.kware N.kxwá (scrape with a knife, strike a match); N.kxetõ (coagulate, congeal), cf. T.kgalõ (dry up as blood in a wound, cease dripping as blood); S.khutë N.khutë N.khutiõ (become silent, pause for the time being), cf. N.khule (stop for the time being e.g. of rain).

Examples of transitive factitive(effective) stems: N.kenye (milk into the mouth), cf. S.xana T.xene N.xene (milk); T.ungve (bear fruit as a tree), cf. T.xene (be fruitful as a woman); S.xnya T.xnya N.xnya (suck), cf. S.xene T.xene N.xene (touch); S.rinya (kill many things at once, destroy), cf. N.rõne (crack, ride of lice); S.thonya (choose amongst others), cf. N.thõne (take out with two fingers), N.xenye (say no), cf. S.xene T.xene N.xene (refuse); N.xõna (cut off the road), cf. N.xõra (cut up); N.xõõa (clean a bottle or flask well by washing it out with water and sand), cf. S.xõra T.xõra N.xõra (lick a pot clean); S.pesa (bend the back e.g. of a horse when a saddle is put on its sore back), cf. S.põra (be timid).
Interesting is the semantic relation between the following factitive and performative stems derived from the same verbal root:

S.\textit{fenya} T.\textit{fenya} N.\textit{fenya} (overcome, conquer, i.e., force back) and T.\textit{fentsha} (cause to conquer), cf. N.\textit{fena} (turn, bend back); S.\textit{khena} N.\textit{khena} (be bright, glitter) and S.\textit{khethe} (brighten, cause to shine), cf. T.\textit{khena} N.\textit{khena} (exult, rejoice, boast); S.\textit{thinva} (turn very quickly in running), T.\textit{thinva} (abandon one’s intention for a good reason, postpone for a while) and S.\textit{thinthe} (cause to turn, turn aside). T.\textit{thintsha} (alter, postpone), cf. N.\textit{thina} (bend and crack); N.\textit{thina} (dip, dip in, bend in, break) and N.\textit{thinthe} (dip in entirely), cf. N.\textit{thine} (bend and crack).

For the following no corresponding simple stems could be ascertained: S.\textit{henya} (be bright, shine, glitter) and S.\textit{benthe} (make brilliant, polish); S.\textit{nyena} N.\textit{nyena} (suck) and N.\textit{nyenthe} (suckle, nurse), but cf. N.\textit{monyena} (girl); S.\textit{thany} T.\textit{thany} N.\textit{thany} (jump like a flea, beat of the heart, crack) and S.\textit{thanthe} T.\textit{thantsha} (make to crack, cause to jump); S.\textit{hlayna} (bristle up, e.g. the hair) and S.\textit{hlynthe} (cause to bristle); T.\textit{khenya} (swallow) and S.\textit{khenya} (cause to swallow).

Normally derivative stems in S.\textit{ina} T.\textit{isar} N.\textit{isa} convey the performative of the action expressed by the corresponding simple stem; here, however, they convey as far as the present state of affairs of concerned, the performative of the action expressed by the corresponding factitive stems. It would therefore appear as if the sound-combination S.\textit{ny} T.\textit{ny} N.\textit{ny} + S.\textit{isar} T.\textit{isar} N.\textit{isa} > S.\textit{ntha} T.\textit{ntha} N.\textit{ntha}; just as S.\textit{n} T.\textit{n} N.\textit{n} + S.\textit{isar} T.\textit{isar} N.\textit{isa} > S.\textit{ntha} T.\textit{ntha} N.\textit{ntha}; this is, however, not supported by any other cases apart from those where factitive and performative stems, of the above nature, are concerned.
It seems to me, therefore, as if there is no justification for regarding the above performatives as having been derived directly from a preceding stage ending in NG, and I think that both the factitive and the performative stems referred to above, are phonologically immediately preceded by a root in NG, and that the semantic relation between the factitive and the performative stems which conveys the impression that the latter has been built directly upon the former may be ascribed to the following:

1. a shifting of meaning, resulting in a vague semantic relation between the factitive and the performative stems on the one hand and the corresponding simple stems on the other hand, i.e., in the cases where corresponding simple stems can be indicated, it may even be that these simple stems have lost some of their force in favour of their corresponding factitive stems;

2. the non-existence of corresponding simple stems and the resulting impossibility of indicating the meaning of such stems, i.e., in cases where no corresponding simple stems could be indicated.

One may therefore assume that in the past, the performative stems referred to above clearly conveyed the performative of corresponding simple stems. Compare in this connection the following cases, where it is still quite obvious that the stems in S.ine T.ine N.ine convey the performative of the corresponding simple stems: S.bonta T.bontahe N.xenthe (cause to refuse) cf. S.bone T.gane N.xene (refuse) and N.xene (say no); S.bonta T.bontahe N.bontshe (show), cf. S.bone T.bone N.bone (see) and T.bonya N.bonya (wink, twinkle, e.g., an eye) S.bonya (smile); T.tlontahe N.blontha (set on end, e.g. the hair), cf. N.blona (stand on end, ruffle up) and T.tlonva (be erect or rough as the hair on a dog's back).

1) It has already been repeatedly indicated above that the semantic relation between simple stems and their corresponding derivative stems is sometimes vague.
It should be noted that the sound-combination nyvisa (nyvisa) actually exists as such, e.g. S. nyenvisā (smuggle) N. nyenvisā (cause repugnance, disgust), cf. S. nyénva N. nyenya (disdain) and T. nyēma (shudder); N. nyenenvisā (cause repugnance, disgust), cf. N. nyenenvisā (abhor, detest); S. nyenvisā (disgust), cf. S. nyenya (despise).

A difficulty arises however in the case of S. enya T. enya N. onya n. onya (suck) and S. ewse (suckle, nurse), cf. S. ema T. ema N. ema (touch), as the sound-combination S. misa does not give S. ntse; but I think the stem ensa has been formed in analogy with such cases as S. khenya N. kānva (be bright, glitter), S. khetē (cause to shine), T. kanā N. kanā (exult, rejoice, boast); and S. benva N. benva (be bright, glitter); and S. bentsa (make brilliant, polish); i.e. cases where the semantic relation between the simple stem on the one hand and the factitive and performative stems on the other hand is very vague, or where no corresponding simple stem could be indicated at all. In the case of ense a corresponding simple stem *ana has probably been assumed — the semantic relation between nse and ense being no longer commonly recognised.

(b) The suffix S. ye T. va N. va has sometimes lost its factitive force, e.g. S. jetaa N. wetaa (tell, say), cf. S. jēle N. jēla (=S. jēteaa N. jēteaa); T. khinya (kneehalter a horse), cf. N. khina (=T. khinya).

(c) Sometimes the semantic relation between the factitive stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. T. menya (smile), cf. S. mēma N. mēma (invite); N. onya = N. enya (bear fruit), cf. S. ema T. ema N. ema (stand); T. konya (beat with one hard blow, kill with one stroke, become tight as a barrel put into water), cf. T. kana N. kana
(stop holes with cement, seal); S. nonya (brandish, try something, e.g. a stick, on an assegai, try a man to see what he will say), cf. N. nône (choose out, select); sâsüna (aasüna, assegu, kômä); cf. N. gûna. (Collect stiick, or shake); S. rône T. rône N. rône (roar, grumble, snore); S. khotse (take refuge, seek or enjoy a peaceful life), cf. N. kôlala (satisfy).

(d) The simple stems corresponding to some factitive stems are transitive while those corresponding to others are intransitive, e.g. S. fetse T. fetse (cut wood, clip, plane), cf. S. fala T. fala N. fala transitive (screw, plane); T. fata (squirt as from a syringe), cf. S. aëa T. aëa N. aëa transitive (spread out); T. ñëse (entrap, ensnare, catch fish), cf. S. ñëse T. ñëse transitive (catch); S. bonya T. bonya N. bonya (blink, wink), cf. S. bône T. bône N. bône transitive (see); N. kunya (get rolled up), cf. N. ñuna transitive (bind); S. fetse T. fetse N. fetse (complete, fulfill), cf. S. fëla T. fëla N. fëla intransitive (end, get finished); S. letse T. letse N. letse (play on an instrument, cause to resound), cf. S. leïa T. leïa N. leïa intransitive (cry); S. nenyse T. nenyse N. nenyse (walk slowly dragging one's feet), cf. N. nâna intransitive (walk slowly).

(e) There are factitive stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stem, neither could non-verbal stems be indicated as being possible bases of these derivatives; a comparison with other derivative stems also having no corresponding simple verbal stem or corresponding ñëng- verbal stem shows, however, in some cases, a probable common non-extant simple verbal stem, e.g. T. ranyse (walk stealthily in a stooping posture), cf. T. rômatlo (begin to walk); S. ñeneve (tie ears of maize together), cf. S. ñenâsasa (fold, bend without breaking); S. ñenye (speak very well),
cf. N. temiša (greet, hail, welcome); S. nyeta
(criticise, blame, reproach) T. nyeta N. nyeta (despise, 
disdain, belittle, criticise) cf. N. nyetelä (treat dis-
dainfully) and T. nyadiwa (be despised); S. bitsa T. bitsa
(1) bitsa (call), cf. T. bidwa N. bidwa (be called) and
UB. yila (call); N. kwetse (stammer, speak thickly),
(1) T. kgwelesegwe (be tongue-tied); S. lesa T. lesa N. lesa
(1) (leave), cf. UB. leke (leave).

(i) As far as I could ascertain factitive stems
with corresponding transitive simple verbal stems do not
take two objects as do performative stems whose corres-
ponding simple stems are transitive.

β) Compound:

1. Factitive in basic position:

(a) (i) Factitive-performative S. ñesa T. yisa N. yisa,
the S. N. T. X. N. Y. combines with the final root-consonant in
the same way as the S. ñesa T. X. N. Y. of S. ñsa T. Ye N. Ye.
As was indicated in Chapter 10 S. ñesa T. yisa N. yisa consists
of S. ñsa + S. ñsa T. Ye + T. Ye S. ñsa + N. Ye. The factitive-
performative suffix therefore contains actually two
factitive suffixes.

(ii) This suffix adds the performative idea to the
idea expressed by the corresponding factitive stem. It

1) Cf. Phon., p. 244.
(iii) Cf. Chapter 10 § 1) (2) ((2)) β) l. (C) (a) ii.
iv) I could find only 6 factitive-performative stems.
mislead into fault), of. S.fofa T.fofa N.fota (miss the aim or mark, make a mistake); N.foriso (cause deceit or fraud) and T.fofa N.fota (deceive, hoax); S.letsiga (civilise, polish), of. S.letsa T.letsa N.letsa (give rest, lay down in T. also: cause to lie down), N.ladisa (cause to go to bed, cause to lie down) and S.lale T.lale N.lale (lie down); S.botsiga (cause to ask) T.botsiga (enquire into, search into, catechise) N.botsiga (ask), of. S.botsa T.botsa (ask inquir) N.botsa (say to, tell) and T.bola (tell news) N.bola (talk); S.khutsiga (cause to be quiet, prohibit speech, calm), of. S.khutsa T.khutsa N.khutsa (become silent, pause for the time being) and N.khula (stop for the time being e.g. of rain); S.nyatsiga (cause to blame), of. S.nyatsa N.nyatsa (despise, disdain) and T.nyadiga N.nyadi (cause to despise), no corresponding simple stem; N.nyenyia (cause repugnance), of. S.nyenyia N.nyenyia (despise, disdain), T.nyemiga (cause to shudder) and T.nyema (shudder).

bb) 1) Factive-applicative: this suffix has three forms, viz:

(a) S.yela T.yela N.yela, e.g. N.yunyela (come together, draw back e.g. of a snake drawing its head back into the hole, roll up), of. N.yunya (get rolled up) and N.yuna (bind); S.monyela (become absorbed, disappear), cf. S.monya (suck, absorb) and S.mono T.mono N.mone (suck up, taste); S.honyela N.honyela (get drawn together, shrink, get bent down) T.honyela (peep out and disappear again), of. T.gone (draw in as a hand or foot); T.utawela N.utawela (steal for or from), of. S.utse T.utswa N.utswa (steal) and S.uba (steal); N.latsawe

\[i\) Obtained from my informants.
(lick at), cf. S.latesa T.latesa N.latesa (lick) and
UB. lemba (lick); S.hlasesa T.hlasesa N.hlasesa
(attack, assault), cf. N.hlase (chase away, frighten
birds) and N.hlara (chase away); S.lasesa (leave for),
cf. S.lesa T.lesa N.lesa (leave) and UB. leka (leave).

(b) S.etase T.etase N.etse; it has this form
only when the final consonant of the verbal root is \( \frac{1}{2} \) -
the corresponding factitive stem thus having as final
stem-consonant S.te T.te N.te. Here the factitive suf-
fix has changed its position, it follows instead of pre-
ceeding the applicative suffix \( \frac{3}{4} \). This change in
the position of its component parts does not functionally
affect the suffix; it still conveys the applicative of
the idea expressed by the corresponding stem in spite of
the fact that the suffix S.etase T.etase N.etse is identical
in form with the applicative-factitive and with one of

---

1) cf. Phon., p. 246.

ii) cf. Phon., p. 19. This rule applies also to longer
compounds, cf. the actional(capable)-factitive-applica-
tive as in S.lakalatesa (wish for) cf. S.lakatesa
N.lakatesa (wish) in the following example the suffix
is an actional(capable)-applicative-factitive
S.bonaletesa N.bonaletesa (let something get into sight
for somebody) cf. N.bonalisa (get into sight with re-
spect to) and the actional(destructive)-factitive-ap-
pllicative as in S.manolatesa (take a little for) cf.
S.manolasa (take a little) in the following case the
suffix is an actional(destructive)-applicative-factitive
N.komoletesa (pacify) cf. N.komolisa (keep quiet).
the applicative suffixes, e.g. N.tloleze (smear on),
cf. S.tloleze T.tloleze N.tloleze (smear, anoint, cause
to anoint) and S.tiile T.tiile N.tiile (anoint oneself);
S.holetsa T.holetsa (ask for), cf. S.holet T.holet
(ask) N.holet (tell somebody something) cf. T. holet
(tell news) N.hole (speak).

In the following cases no corresponding simple
stems could be indicated:
S.biletsa T.biletsa N.biletsa (call for), cf. S.bitesa
T.bitesa N.bitesa (call) and UB. mila (call); T.meletsan
(swear for), cf. S.metse T.metse N.metse (swear) and
UB. mila (swear); S.beletsa T.beletsan N.beletse
(throw on), cf. S.betsa T.betsa N.betsa (throw); S.teletsa
(wipe in), cf. S.tele (wipe off); T.nyaletsa (despise),
cf. S.nyatsa (blame, criticize) T.nyatsa N.nyatsa
(despise) and N.nyaletsa (treat disdainfully). It is pos-
sible that with S.beletsan T.beletsa N.beletsa and S.teletsa
the corresponding simple stems are S.betsa T.betsa N.betsa
and S.tele respectively, and not *bele and *tele, and that
S.beletsa T.beletsan N.beletse and S.teletsa have been

1) cf. Chapter 12 § 4; II ((2) § 3) 1 bb), also Chapter
12 § 4 A; II ((2) § 3) 1 b). There are therefore three suf-
fixes of the form S.etsa T.etsa N.etsa viz: I. The factitive-
applicative S.etsa T.etsa N.etsa < S.etsa + S.ela T.ela + T.ela
N.ela + N.ela. II. The applicative S.etsa T.etsa N.etsa which
is due to analogy with the process of forming the factitive-
applicative and does not contain the factitive (cf. Chapter
12 above referred to). III. The applicative-factitive S.etsa

II) This process is also applied in compound suffixes where
the factitive is not in the basic position, e.g. in the ac-
tional(capable) factitive-applicative as in S.tloletsa (wish
for, wish to), cf. S.taketsa N.taketsa (wish, desire), N.taketsa
(be worried about) and N.taketa (superintend, govern); the
applicative-factitive-applicative as in T.keletsan (invent a lie
about), cf. T.aketsa N.akeketa (lie to, again, about), T.akeketa
N.akeketa receive by lying, tell someone a lie, gossip about
adversely) and T.akeketa N.akeketa (lie). There are therefore three
suffixes of the form S.etsa T.etsa N.etsa viz: I. The
applicative-factitive-applicative S.etsa T.etsa N.etsa
< S.etsa (< etse + elza) + S.ela T.ela + T.ela
N.ela (< ela + ya) + N.ela. II. The applicative (intensive)
(cf. Chapter 12 § 4; II ((2) § 3) 1 a) (b)) S.etsa T.etsa
N.etsa which I presume has been formed in analogy with I.
on of S.etsa + S.ela T.ela + T.ela N.etsa + N.ela. The first
component part here, viz. the applicative S.etsa T.etsa N.etsa
does not contain the factitive (cf. above). III. The applicative
(intensive)-factitive S.etsa T.etsa N.etsa
< S.etsa + S.ela T.ela + T.ela N.ela + N.ela (cf. Chapter 12 § 4; II ((2)
§ 3) 1 b)). These suffixes although identical in form, are
not identical in derivation.

formed in analogy, factitive-applicative stems whose corresponding factitive stems have S.to T.to N.to as final consonant; in this way S.obeletsae (work for); cf.
S.obeletsae (work) from £o a o b e l t e s e (work), has been formed. I have nevertheless classed S.obeletsae T.beletsae N.beletsae and S.so letsae here as they may equally well have *bele and *fetse respectively as corresponding simple stems, if, however, it can be proved that their roots are actually base and feet and not hal and fel respectively then the suffix here employed is an applicative and not a factitive-applicative.

(c) S.beletsae T.yetsae N.yotse, here the factitive suffix has been repeated, thus forming a third stage of development of the form of the factitive-applicative, e.g. S.bilasetse = S.biletsae T.biletsae N.biletse (cf. (b) above); S.tloletsae = N.tloletsae (cf. (b) above); S.oletsae = S.beletsae T.beletsae (cf. (b) above); S.ntsae (blame for), cf. T.ntsae (cf. (b) above); S.kutsae (keep silent about), cf. S.kutsae T.kutese N.khutse (become silent, pause for the time being) and N.khule (stop for the time being e.g. of rain); S.utsae = T.utele N.utele (cf. (a) above); S.hlasetse N.hlutese (wash for, in), cf. S.hlasetse T.hlatesa N.hlatswe (was something) and S.hlape T.hlape N.hlape (wash e.g. the body);

1) Equal in form to the factitive-applicative-factitive, cf. which I could find only one example, viz: S.borneatsae (cause to shrink, draw back) T.royntetse (draw back after peeping out), cf. S.bornea N.boneela (shrink, get drawn together) T.royela (peep out and disappear again) and T.egoa (draw in as a hand or foot.

ii) cf. Phon. p. 60. This rule applies also to longer compounds, cf. the statio nal (destructive) factitive-applicative as in S.roseatsae (send back to) cf. S.roasa (send home); T.thbosetsa (cause to move out of the way of), cf. T.thbose (cause to move out of the way). It is perhaps noteworthy that the suffixes S.ale T.ale N.ale and S.ale T.ale N.ale when following upon the factitive in a compound suffix is not affected by the latter, e.g. S.bitelesa (destroy one’s reputation), cf. S.bite T.ite N.ite (call); T.usolela (take vengeance upon), cf. S.buqan T.busa N.buqen (send back) and S.obe T.ova N.ova (return); N.berale (excuse, grin), cf. N.ina (show the teeth).
S. tesoasetse T. tesoasetse N. tesoaseten (excite for, arouse for), cf. S. teso T. teso N. teso (cause to rise) and S. tsoha T. tsohe N. tsoha (rise); S. lesetse T. lesetse N. lesetse (leave for), cf. S. lese T. lese N. lese (leave) and UE. leka (leave);

S. bonyetse (court for), cf. S. bonya (smile, flirt),

T. bonye N. bonya (wink an eye) and S. bône T. bône N. bône (see); S. kenyetse N. kenyetse (oppose, contradict), cf. N. kanye (say no) and S. hane T. gane N. xane (refuse); S. kenyetse (introduce for), cf. S. kanye (cause to enter, introduce) and S. kane (enter); T. kenyetse N. kenyetse (conquer with respect to), cf. S. kanye T. kanye N. kanye (conquer i.e. force back) and N. kôna (turn, bend back);

S. enyetse T. enyetse N. enyetse = N. enyetse = N. (Kôpa) enyetse (suck on behalf), cf. S. enye T. enye N. enye = N. enye = N. (Kôpa) enye (suck) and S. enye T. enye N. enye (touch).

See also S. betsetse = S. beletse T. beletse N. beletse (cf. (b) above) and S. fetsetse = S. feletse (cf. (b) above).

ii) The factitive-applicative suffix adds the applicative idea to the idea expressed by the factitive stem, for examples cf. i) above.

---

**iii)** Obtained from my informants, S. has also a form lesele (= lesetse cf. (a) above.)
2. Factive in a non-basic position:

The factive is extensively found in this position, I quote only a few examples below:

as) (i) Actional(destructive-intensive)-factive
N.rolleya T.rolleya N.rolleya, the second of the corresponding actional(destructive-intensive), if elided, always reappears in this compound, e.g. N.manolotha (pluck off the leaves, tear off the bark), cf. S.manolololol N.manolla or N.menololla (unseal, uncover, pull off as paper from a wall) and N.mene (wind round); S.ribolotta (turn up the ground, plough a forsaken field), cf. S.ribolla N.ribolla (turn up, tilt over) and N.ribe (bend); N.tatolotta (unwind, unravel), cf. N.tolle (wind off, unroll, uncouple) and N.tata (wind); S.takolotta (tear to pieces), cf. S.tekolla (tear to pieces, divide) and S.teka (dispute); S.fumolotta (draw or pull out a certain quantity of thatch, pluck a fowl or pull out wool); T.fumolotta (fly off a skin), cf. S.fumolla (draw or pull out a certain quantity of thatch, pluck a fowl or pull out wool), and S.fuma T.fuma N.fume (strip or peel off); N.bexolotha (have an announcement withdrawn), cf. N.bexolla (withdraw an announcement) and S.bephe N.bexa (report), N.bolotha (cause to skin) cf. N.bolle (skin) and N.bha (peel).

ii) This suffix adds the factive idea to the idea expressed by the corresponding actional(destructive-intensive) stem for examples: cf. (i) above, as will be seen from some of these examples actional(destructive-intensive) and actional(destructive-intensive)-factive stems are sometimes synonymous; in such cases the actional (destructive-intensive)-factive suffix has probably lost its factitive force.

1) cf. Chapter 12 §A II) ((3))/² 1. aa).
(1) The reciprocal-factitive suffix adds the factitive idea to the idea expressed by the corresponding reciprocal stem, e.g., S.fapa N.fapana (start a quarrel between, alternate, mix up) T.fapana (cause to alternate or cross one another), cf. S.fapana T.fapana N.fapana (differ in opinion, quarrel, pass or cross one another) and S.fapa T.fapa N.fapa (wind round); N.xahlana (put together, join), cf. N.xahlana (come across, meet) and T.xeltlna (tie, gird) S.xhla N.xhla (conglutinate); S.lekana T.lekanya N.lekanya (measure, estimate, weigh), cf. S.lekana T.lekana N.lekana (be enough, be equal) and S.leka T.leka N.leka (try).

(2) (1) The actional(destructive)-stational (destructive)-reciprocal-factitive suffix adds the factitive idea to the actional(destructive)-stational(destructive)-reciprocal stem, e.g., S.khetholohanya N.kxetholoxanya (separate from one another), cf. N.kxetholoxana (get separated from one another) and S.khetha N.kxetha (choose); T.metologanya N.matoloxanya (pull apart, loosen from one another), cf. N.matoloxana (get untied from one another) and N.meta (stick to).

II Secondary:
The factitive has no corresponding secondary form.
CHAPTER 10

Primary: С Single:

i) Passive С.ια С.ια С.ια (the semivowel in this suffix affects the final stem-consonant as follows: vii) 

c) Back-labialisation occurs in the following cases:

S.ια T.ια N.ια N.ια (be kicked), cf. С.ια С.ια N.ια (kick).

S.ια T.ια N.ια N.ια (be thrown away), cf. С.ια С.ια N.ια (throw away).

S.ια T.ια N.ια N.ια (be bought), cf. С.ια С.ια N.ια (buy).

S.ια T.ια N.ια N.ια (be filled up), cf. С.ια С.ια N.ια (fill up); T.ια T.ια N.ια (be gathered together as e.g. pumpkins), cf. T.ια T.ια N.ια (gather pumpkins);

N.ια N.ια (cut, as e.g. the ear of an animal), cf. N.ια N.ια (cut the ear of an animal);

S.ια T.ια N.ια (be counted), cf. С.ια С.ια N.ια (count).

Most of the examples quoted in this chapter, containing a passive suffix, have been obtained either from my informants or from the Sotho literature other than the three dictionaries referred to above.

ii) UB. С.ια С.ια С.ια, cf. Phon. С.ια С.ια, 45 and 77.

The same term is used for both the primary and secondary passive suffixes, as they are semantically identical.

iv) С.ια only found in coalesced forms, cf. II below.


As no passive with С.ια T.ια N.ια strengthened could be indicated, the classification unstrongened and strengthened is not applied here. It should, however, be noted that С.ια can be strengthened by replacing it by a back-labialised, e.g. T.ια С.ια (fall on oneself), cf. С.ια С.ια (fall upon).

vii) Suffix-consonants of identical form are similarly affected in the same way.

viii) cf. Tucker *The Comparative Phonetics of the Suto-Chuana Group of Bantu Languages* , pp. 64, 78 and 79. It should be noted that the С.ια T.ια N.ια in the following cases merely indicates back-labialisation and does not represent a separate sound.
S. 6 T. N. N. > S. 6 T. N. N. N. *2, e.g. S. khané N. kénwá

N. kánwá (be refused), cf. S. khané T. gén N. xáno (refuse).

S. nh > N. nhó, e.g. S. khannda (be driven), cf.

S. khannda (drive).

S. nh T. N. N. nh > S. nh T. N. N. nhó, e.g. S. nangá

N. nangá (be tied fast), cf. S. nangá N. nangá (tie fast); T. nangá (be haggled), cf. T. nangá (hag).

S. nh N. nh > S. nhó N. nhó, e.g. S. sayá N. sanyá (be spoiled), cf. S. sayá T. sanó N. sano (spoil); S. ténáyá

N. thwénwá (be disturbed), cf. S. ténáyá N. thwénwá (dis-

turb).

S. nh > S. nhó, e.g. S. khaná (be choked), cf. S. khaga (choked).

S. sh > S. shó, e.g. S. sháo (be pulled down), cf.

S. sháqa (pull down).

S. nh T. nh > S. nh T. nhó, e.g. S. sayážá N. ténwá

N. sánwá (be caught), cf. S. sayážá T. ténwá N. sánwá (catch).

S. shó > S. shó N. shó, e.g. S. leswá N. leswá (be left), cf.

S. leswá T. leswá N. leswá (leave).

S. sh T. nh > S. shó T. nhó, e.g. S. shošá (be made,

(2) e.g. a noise when breaking a piece of wood), cf. S. shošá

iii) (make a noise, e.g. when a piece of wood is broken); T. xáno

(look with pity upon), cf. T. xáno (look with pity upon);

N. díwá (be herded), cf. N. díwá (herd).

S. T. T. N. T. > S. T. T. N. T. ó, e.g. S. rato T. rówa N. rówa

(looked), cf. S. rato T. rówa N. rówa (love).

S. th T. th N. th > S. thó T. thó N. thó e.g. S. kható T. kható

N. khathó (be ploughed, of new ground), cf. S. kható T. kható

N. khathá (plough new ground).

S. nh T. nh > S. nhó T. nhó N. nhó, e.g. S. bétó T. bétó

N. bétó (be carved), cf. S. bétó T. bétó N. bétó (carve).

Note: The syllabic น is also labialised.

ii) This is not a common form in S., cf. (c) below.

iii) The secondary passive noima is, however, much more

common.
The secondary suffix iwa is, however, practically always used instead of the primary we if the final root-consonant is s, cf. S.to N.to > S.tod N.tow, e.g. S.phatea (be lanced),

cf. S.phate (lance); N.hlotea (be gathered together as various things separated from one another), cf. N.hlotea
(gather together, e.g. things separated from one another); S.hlatea (be vomited), cf. N.hlatea (vomit).

S.ti N.ti > S.ti N.ti, e.g. S.tiotea (be done of many things while the door is going about), cf. S.tiotea (go about working at many things); N.phatea (be lanced), cf. N.phatea (lance); N.hlatea (be vomited), cf. N.hlatea (vomit).

N.thsw N.thsw, e.g. N.theathswa (be rubbed in), cf. N.theathswa (rub in),

S.ch N.the > S.ch N.thsw, e.g. S.pechea (be coerced) cf. S.pechea (coerce); N.theathswa (be greased), cf. N.theathswa (grease).

(b) Back-labialisation combined with palatalisation

occurs in T. in the case of s, which becomes šw, e.g. lešwé (see left), cf. S.leša T.šeša N.šeša (leave), dišwe (be herded), cf. S.šeša T.šeša N.šeša (herd). As will be seen from

(a) above S.sh and N.sh are only back-labialised.

(c) Back-labialisation combined with velarisation occurs

in the case of S.m T.m N.m and S.ny T.ny N.ny, e.g.

S.m T.m N.m > S.ny T.ny N.ny, e.g. S.rongőa T.rongwa N.rongwa
(be sent), cf. S.rome T.rome N.rome (send); S.lengőa T.lengwa N.lengwa (be ploughed), cf. S.lena T.lena N.lena (plough);

S.longőa T.longwa N.longwa (be bitten), cf. S.lena T.lena N.lena (bite).

S.ny T.ny N.ny > S.ny T.ny N.ny, e.g. S.senęa or

S.šeša T.šeša N.šeša (be spoiled), cf. S.šeša T.šeša N.šeša (be spoiled); S.rsenęa or S.šeša T.šeša N.šeša (disturb).

The secondary suffix iwa is, however, practically always used instead of the primary we if the final root-consonant is s, cf.

(3) The secondarily suffix iwa is, however, practically always used instead of the primary we if the final root-consonant is s, cf.

(3) There are in T. three stages viz. (a) ny is only back-labialised, (b) ny is velarised and back-labialised, the latter form seems to be less common than the former; (3) there are in T. three stages viz. (a) ny is only back-labialised, (b) ny is velarised and back-labialised.

(3) There are in T. three stages viz. (a) ny is only back-labialised, (b) ny is velarised and back-labialised.

(3) There are in T. three stages viz. (a) ny is only back-labialised, (b) ny is velarised and back-labialised.
(d) Labials with the exception of m as follows:

1) In N. they are always front-labialised, except in the case of one or two dialects where no labialisation takes place, but where the labial is followed by a prepalatal semivowel. Front-labialisation takes place as follows:

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{b} & \rightarrow \text{by}, \text{e.g.} \text{ dilabya} \quad (\text{be stabbed}), \text{cf. hileba} \quad (\text{stab}); \\
\text{thbya} \quad (\text{be stopped}), \text{cf. thisha} \quad (\text{stop}); \\
\text{rōbya} \quad (\text{be broken}), \text{cf. rōbe} \quad (\text{break}); \\
\text{thbya} \quad (\text{be smashed}), \text{cf. thuba} \quad (\text{smash}); \\
\text{f} & \rightarrow \text{fy}, \text{e.g.} \text{ rafya} \quad (\text{be taken out}), \text{cf. rafu} \quad (\text{take out}); \\
\text{pōiy}a \quad (\text{be bound, tied}), \text{cf. pōfe} \quad (\text{tied}); \\
\text{lofy}a \quad (\text{be paid}), \text{cf. lofe} \quad (\text{pay}); \\
\text{p} & \rightarrow \text{py}, \text{e.g.} \text{ xapya} \quad (\text{be snatched}), \text{cf. xapa} \quad (\text{snatch}); \\
\text{pōpy}a \quad (\text{be fed}), \text{cf. pōpa} \quad (\text{feed}); \\
\text{bōpya} \quad (\text{be created}), \text{cf. bōpa} \quad (\text{create}); \\
\text{ph} & \rightarrow \text{phē}, \text{e.g.} \text{ kraphe} \quad (\text{be forced back}), \text{cf. kraphe} \quad (\text{force back}); \\
\text{hiōphē} \quad (\text{be arranged, be put in order}), \\
\text{of. hio} \quad \text{(arrange, put in order); thsophē} \quad (\text{be entwined}), \text{cf. thephē} \quad (\text{entwine}).
\end{align*} \]

(b) ny is velarised and back-labialised (c) ny is velarised, back-labialised and syllabified and is followed by a labialised vocar nasal which latter is however not syllabic. As far as I could ascertain (b) is not so common as (c); but these two forms can nevertheless be used interchangeably with all verbal stems concerned; but not so with (a) which would appear to be preferably used with some stems, e.g. nyanyō (be sucked), cf. nyawa (suck); nyonyō (be despised), cf. nyonya (despise); whereas with others it may be used, but not so commonly as (b) or (c).

The development of a third stage in S. can probably be ascribed to a desire to differentiate between passives derived from roots in m and ny respectively. Passives derived from roots in ny have ngō as final stem-consonant also in the following cases: i. in the habitual conjunctival form, e.g. ke de ke tāndnēgō (I am as a rule worried) e de a ngō (he is as a rule spoiled); ii. in the present subjunctive conjunctival form: hore ke tāndnēgō (so that I may be worried), hore a ngō (so that he may be spoiled).

Passives derived from roots in m, on the other hand, always have ngō and never ngō as final stem-consonants in such cases e.g. i. in the habitual conjunctival form: likhomo li mō li hangō (the cattle are as a rule milked), ii. in the present subjunctive conjunctival form: hore likhomo li hangō (so that the cattle may be milked).

1) cf. Tucker The Comparative Phonetics of the Suto-Chuana Group of Santu Languages, pp. 78-80.

ii) The symbol y is used to indicate front-labialisation,
ii) In S. b > ḏ origin (i.e. a back-labialised prepalatal voiced fricative), e.g. ḏlaṅg (be stabbed), cf. ḏlaṅ (stab); thījē (be stopped), cf. thībē (stop); rōjē (be broken), cf. rōba (break); thīdē (be smashed), cf. thūba (smash).

A > ṭē (i.e. a back-labialised prepalatal voiceless fricative) or sē (i.e. a labio-palatal fricative), with the first fricative front-labialised and the second fricative back-labialised), e.g. raṅghē or rāphē (be taken out), cf. rōna (take out); bōchē or bōphē (be bound, tied), cf. bōra (bind, tie); lechē or lephē (be paid), cf. lefa (pay).

P > tē (i.e. a back-labialised prepalatal ejective affricate) or Pē (i.e. a labialised labio-palatal ejective affricate), the explosive labial element being front-labialised, the fricative prepalatal element being back-labialised), e.g. ḏatījē or ḏapījē (be snatched), cf. ḏape (snatch); ḏetījē or ḏapījē (be fed), cf. ḏpē (feed); ḏotījē or ḏopījē (be created), cf. ḏopa (create).

Ph > ohō (i.e. a back-labialised prepalatal aspirated affricate) or sē (i.e. a labialised labio-palatal aspirated affricate), the explosive being front-labialised and the fricative back-labialised), e.g. khaspē (be forced back), cf. khaspha (force back); ḏlōchō or ḏlōphē (be arranged, be put in order), cf. ḏlōcha (arrange, put in order); ḏōchō or ḏōphē (be entwined), cf. ḏōpha (entwine).

iii. In T, b > ḏw (i.e. a back-labialised prepalatal voiced fricative), e.g. ḏhaṅwa (be stabbed), cf. ḏhaṅba (stab); thīwē (be stopped), cf. thībē (stop); ḏōwē (be broken), cf. ḏōba (break); thīwē (be smashed), cf. thūba (smash).

---

1) This front-labialised form seems to be more frequently used than the other forms.
1) חי (i.e. a back-velarised pre-
palatal voiceless fricative), e.g. רשב (be taken out), cf. רחנ (take out); בָּשָׁר (be bound), cf. בּשָׁר (bind); לֶכָּש (be paid), cf. לֶכָּש (pay).

2) לתו (i.e. a back-velarised pre-
palatal ejective affricate), e.g..chars (be snatched),
cf. גֶּפֶה (snatch), בַּחַש (be fed), cf. בַּחַש (feed);
he (be created), cf. hope (create).

3) תיו (i.e. a back-velarised pre-
palatal aspirated affricate), e.g. הקדש (be forced back),
cf. קֶפֶה (force back); הֶכַש (be arranged, be put in order), cf. הֶכַש (arrange, put in order); הֶכַש (be entwined), cf. הֶכַש (entwine).

1) But cf. boifwa (be feared) and boife (fear) given by Wookay and Brown on p. 90 of their grammar, my informants were not acquainted with the change of  ויבוי into  ויבוי under the influence of the -וֹ- of -וָט.

ii) Front-velarisation occurs dialectally in T., cf. Tucker The Comparative Phonetics of the Suto-Chuana Group of Bantu Languages, p. 80; also Wookay and Brown Secwena Grammar, p. 90.
(e) *S.bN. N.N. X is elided before S.b T.w N.N.*

1. **T.howa** N.howa (be returned), cf. **S.howe T.howa N.howa** (return);
2. **S.šeña N.šeña** (be left behind, be outrun), cf. **S.šeña N.šeña** (leave behind, outrun);
3. **N.kawa** (be ground), cf. **N.kaya** (grind);
4. **S.šeša N.ševa** (be corrected, reprimanded), cf. **S.šeša T.ševa** N.ševa (correct, reprimand);
5. **N.ševa** (be beaten), cf. **N.ševa** (beat);
6. **S.šeda** (be approved), cf. **S.šeda** (approve);
7. **N.šlawa** (be hated), cf. **S.šlawa N.šlawa** (hate);
8. **N.šlawa** (be bewitched), cf. **S.šlawa N.šlawa** (bewitch).

In cases where the final root-consonant has already been elided **S.še N.še** is added directly to the root-vowel, e.g., **S.še N.še** (be beaten), cf. **S.tee N.tee** (beat);

(i) **N.ševa** (be shaken), cf. **N.šeena** (take); **N.ruwa** (be owned, especially of cattle), cf. **S.rw N.rw** (own especially of cattle).

1) Except in the case of **howa** T., always employs the secondary passive in such circumstances (cf. II below). S. employs in all such cases the secondary passive and only some of these have a parallel primary passive form and N. employs only the primary passive.

ii) T. employs only the secondary passive here; but note the verbalised derivative **diwa** (be detained) referred to in footnote iii) below. S. employs in all such cases the secondary passive and only some of these have a parallel primary passive form and N. employs only the primary passive.

iii) Cf. also the following durative-passive stems in N.: **N.howa** (be put down), cf. **N.howa** (put down); **N.newa** (be given), cf. **N.newa** (give); and the following verbalised derivative **T.diwa** N.diwa (be detained), cf. **T.diwa N.diwa** (detain) and **S.le N.le** also found in **S.še N.še** (caution).
11) (a) The passive indicates that the subject undergoes the action denoted by the simple stem. An agent who performs this action may be expressed in the form of a copulative and if not expressed, seems always to be implied. The copulative, denoting the agent, if expressed, always follows the passive verb, e.g.

S. ke bōnā ke mona T. ke bōnā ke mona N. ke bōnā ke mona (I am seen by the man) cf. S. bōnā T. bōnā N. bōnā (see); S. kobo e rūkwa ke mosali T. kobo e rūkwa ke mosadi N. kobo e rūkwa ke mosadi (the blanket is bought by the woman), cf. S. rūkwa T. rūkwa N. rūkwa (buy).

S. likhomo li honđa ke ēnā T. dikgomo di gangwa ke yēnā N. dikxomo di xangwa ke yēnā (the cattle are milked by him), cf. S. hōma T. gama N. xama (milk); S. ba longāa ke lintja T. ba longana ke dindo N. ba longana ke dindo (they are bitten by the dogs), cf. S. lōma T. lōma N. lōma (bite); S. ngōnna o rēhōa ko pērō T. ngōnna o rēhwa ke pitei N. ngōnna o rēhwa ke pite (the child is kicked by the horse), cf. S. rēhwa T. rēhwa N. rēhwa (kick).

In the following cases the agent is understood:

S. kea ratō T. ke a ratwa N. ke a ratwa (I am loved), cf. S. rata T. rāte N. rāte (love); S. likhomo lia bōnā T. dikxomo di a bōnwa N. dikxomo di a bōnwa (the cattle are seen), cf. S. bōnā T. bōnā N. bōnā (see); S. ke sitbā ho etsa mosbtei T. ke sitwa go dina modirō N. ke sitwa xo dina modirō (I am unable to do the work), cf. S. site T. site N. site (surprise, excel, be too heavy for); and in the case of S. kea nyōrdā T. ke nyōrwa N. ke a nyōrwa (I am getting thirsty i.e. I am being made thirsty), cf. N. nyōrwa (make thirsty) the agent is entirely obscured.

1) cf. S. ke sitbā ke morwalē T. ke sitwa ke morwalē N. ke sitwa ke morwalē (the load is too heavy for me).
(b) The suffix \(S\hat{\text{e}} T\hat{\text{e}} \text{N,we} \) has in one or two cases lost its passive force, e.g. \(S\hat{\text{ohte}}\) (miss, make a mistake in the knuckle bones game), cf. \(S\hat{\text{osete}}\) (= ohte); \(S\ ke \hat{\text{kh\dot{t}la}} \hat{\text{litaba t\dot{e}so}} \text{N. ke \hat{\text{kh\dot{t}la}} \hat{\text{litaba t\dot{e}so}}} \) (I believe those matters), cf. \(N\hat{\text{kh\dot{t}la}} \text{litaba t\dot{e}so} \text{N. ke \hat{\text{kh\dot{t}la}} \hat{\text{litaba t\dot{e}so}}} \) (satisfy) and \(S\ ke \text{mo \hat{\text{kh\dot{t}la}}} \) (I believe him).

(c) In the following cases the semantic relation between the passive stem and the corresponding simple stem appears to be somewhat vague, e.g. \(S\hat{\text{ts\dot{e}la}}\) (not to be covered of a female animal), cf. \(S\hat{\text{ts\dot{e}la}} \hat{\text{T\dot{t}shala}}\) (pass over as e.g. a road, a river, etc.); \(S\hat{\text{kh\dot{e}t\dot{y}a}}\) (as in: \(\text{kh\dot{e}t\dot{y}a \ke \text{male} = \text{have stomach ache}}\)), cf. \(S\hat{\text{kh\dot{e}t\dot{y}a}}\) (bite, cut).

(d) The simple stems corresponding to passive stems are mostly transitive, e.g. \(S\hat{\text{bal\hat{l}o}} \text{N.bal\hat{l}o} \) (be counted), cf. \(S\hat{\text{ba\hat{l}e}} \hat{\text{T\hat{b}ale}} \text{N.bale} \) (count); \(S\hat{\text{bulo}} \hat{\text{T.bul\hat{w}a}} \text{N.bul\hat{w}a} \) (be opened), cf. \(S\hat{\text{bulo}} \hat{\text{T.bulo}} \text{N.bulo} \) (open), \(S\hat{\text{fe\hat{l}o}} \hat{\text{T.f\hat{e}l\hat{w}a}} \text{N.f\hat{e}l\hat{w}a} \) (be dazzled), cf. \(S\hat{\text{fe\hat{l}o}} \hat{\text{T.f\hat{e}l\hat{w}a}} \text{N.f\hat{e}l\hat{w}a} \) (dazzle). One finds however also passive stems with intransitive corresponding simple stems; the subjectiv verbal concord used with such

i) This applies also to \(S\hat{\text{y\hat{e}} T\hat{\text{e}} \text{N,we} \) in e.g. \(S\hat{\text{hiolo\dot{h}\dot{e}l\hat{\text{o}}}} \text{mo\hat{t}\dot{ho}} \) (long for somebody), \(S\ke \hat{\text{gie\dot{\ell}l\hat{\text{lo}} \text{litaba T. ke \hat{\text{gie\dot{\ell}l\hat{\text{lo}} \text{litaba d\dot{il}\dot{lo}}}}} \) (I reflect upon matters); but in S. one can also say: \(\text{litaba li \hat{\text{gie\dot{\ell}l\hat{\text{lo}}}}} \hat{\text{ke \text{\text{\ldots ne}}} \) (matters are reflected upon by me), this is however rarely used, at any rate \(\hat{\text{y\hat{e}}} \) is here clearly passive.

ii) Cf. \(S\ke \hat{\text{kh\dot{\text{h\dot{o}}} \ke \text{litaba t\dot{e}so N. ke \hat{\text{kh\dot{\text{h\dot{o}}} \ke \text{litaba t\dot{e}so}}} \) (I am satisfied about those matters), the passive is here quite normal.

iii) \(S\hat{\text{kh\dot{\text{h\dot{o}}} \text{\\ldots d\dot{e}n\dot{a}}} \text{seems not to exist, however, there are such constructions as \text{ke \hat{\text{kh\dot{\text{h\dot{o}}} \ke \text{d\dot{e}n\dot{a}}}}} \text{(I believe in him)} \) where the passive is quite normal, and \(\text{ke \hat{\text{kh\dot{\text{h\dot{o}}} \\ldots e\ldots n\ldots d\dot{e}n\dot{a}}} \) (I believe this one not that one) where the object is a demonstrative pronoun.
passives is that of the S. ho T. go N. xo class conveying an impersonal and very often an indefinite idea, e.g. S. h0 s898 T. go a s898a N. xo a s898a (there is being stood), cf. S. s898 T. s898a N. s898a (stand); S. ho s898 T. go a s898a N. xo a s898a (there is being travelled), cf. S. s898 T. s898a N. s898a (travel, journey); S. ho s898 T. go a s898a N. xo a s898a (there is being arrived), cf. S. s898 T. s898a N. s898a (arrive); S. ho h0le T. go a s898a N. xo a s898a (there is being grown), cf. S. h0le T. s898a N. s898a (grow).

(e) There are passive stems which are not associated with any extant simple verbal stems, and no non-verbal stems could be indicated as being possible bases of these derivatives, which seem to have lost their passive force, e.g. T. t898l8a (be eatable, but not fat, said of meat), N. s898p898 (be fickle), N. s898t8 (be caught by); T. 1898 (the skipping rope, make a mistake in certain games).

1) A similar construction is possible with passive stems having transitive corresponding simple stems e.g. S. ho r898a N. ?a r898a? (there is being bought), cf. S. r898a T. r898a N. r898a (buy); S. ho b898a N. ?a b898a? (where is being seen), cf. S. b898a T. b898a N. b898a (see); S. ho b898a N. b898a? (there is being seen a child by me), cf. S. b898a T. b898a N. b898a (see).

11) Such stems as N. s898t898a (bring a child up by hand), T. t898? (have too long a tongue) N. t898? (pull off the cuticle) may perhaps be passive stems which have lost their passive force and for which there existed corresponding simple stems N. t898? and N. t898? (cf. Chapter 17); or even simple stems with corresponding UB. forms * p9899, * lelu and * lelu respectively as e.g. S. h0 lelu T. h0 lelu N. h0 lelu (ripen, get cooked), has a probable corresponding UB. form * yul89 (cf. Phon., p. 67).
(f) A passive stem corresponding to a doubly transitive simple stem may take as subject either the principal or subsidiary object of the corresponding

simple stem, upon which of the two is to be emphasised, the one which remains an object carries the emphasis, which comes out most clearly if the agent is not mentioned. The agent seems to obscure the emphasis, and it should be elided from the examples quoted below if the real effect of this word-order is to be attained.

The manner of Setho prefers however the principal object to be converted into a subject which means that the subsidiary object usually carries the emphasis. S. monna o tingoa lijo (ke 'na), T. monna o tingwa dijo (ke 'na).

N. monna o tingwa dijo (ke 'na) (the man is stunted food (by me)), S. lijo li tingoa (ke 'na) T. dijo di tingwa monna (ke 'na) N. dijo di tingwa monna (ke 'na) (the food is stunted the man (by me), cf. S. ke time monna lijo dijo monna ne, N. ke time monna dijo (I stint the man food).

(g) There is a clear distinction between the stational (capable) stem and the passive stem, as the latter is or may be followed by an agent; the former on the other hand is never followed by an agent, e.g.:

S. bonohe N. bonohe (be visible, appear), cf. S. bonohe T. bonwa

1) In view of the scarcity of doubly transitive simple stems, this point will be more fully illustrated in §2 below under applicative-passive. The simple stem S. fe T. fe N. fe (give) is also doubly transitive; it takes however the secondary passive and not the primary passive suffix, thus:

S. monna o fiwa dijé (ke 'na) T. monna o fiwa dijé (ke 'na) N. monna o fiwa dijé (ke 'na) (the man is given food (by me)), S. lijo li fiwa monna (ke 'na) T. dijé di fiwa monna (ke 'na) (the food is given to the man (by me), cf. S. ke fe monna lijo T. ke fe monna dijé N. ke fi monna dijé (I give the man food).
N. dönwe (be seen); S. lenæhe T. lenæxa N. lenæxa
(be arable), cf. S. lenæx T. lenæwe N. lenæwe (be
ploughed); S. ilæhe T. ilæla N. ilæxa (be hateable, be-
come repugnant), cf. S. ilæ T. ilæwe N. ilæ (be avoided,
be hated).

β) Compound:

1. Passive in basic position:

This type of compound is rare, and is practically all such see the suffix S. ne T. ne N. ne has lost its
passive force, e.g.

aa) Passive-reciprocal S. ne T. ne N. ne as
in: T. gogwana (shrink up or become crumpled up as a
skin when drying), cf. T. goxwe N. xoxwe (be drawn, be
pulled) and T. xoxe N. xoxe (pull); S. khâlæke (understand,
trust one another), cf. S. khalæ N. xalæwe (become satis-
fiied) and N. xalæ (satisfy); S. sângæne (as in: hoa
sângæne = fun is being made of one another, mockery of
one another is going on), cf. S. sângæ N. sângwe (be mocked)
and S. sâne N. sâne (mock).

bb) The passive-applicative-factitive S. ûtæa
T. weta N. wetâ as in: T. kwakweta (have an impediment
in speech, stammer), N. kwakweta (cause to trot), no
corresponding simple stem; S. nyekweta (twist) no
corresponding simple stem.

2. Passive in a non-basic position:

The passive is very extensively employed in this
position and I quote only a few examples here to illus-
trate the point. It should, however, be noted that with

1) cf. also the applicative-passive-reciprocal found
in S. in the following example S. sitâlæhe (commit faults
against one another), cf. S. sitâlæa (commit a fault
against) and S. sitâ T. sitâ N. sitâ (be too difficult,
overcome).
such-compounds the passive suffix is always the final
component part. The contribution of S,oa T,wa N,wa to
the force of these compounds is that it adds in each
case the passive idea to the idea expressed by the suf-
fix without S,oa T,wa N,wa.

e)
 applicative-passive S,elwa T,elwa N,elwa:

When the corresponding applicative stem takes two
objects viz. a principal and subsidiary object, either
of these may be used as subject of the applicative-pass-

The one remaining an object carries the emphasis
which comes out most clearly if the agent is not mentioned.
The agent seems to obscure the emphasis, and it should be
elided from the examples quoted below if the real effect
of this word-order is to be attained. The genius of
Sotho prefers however the principal object to be converted
into a subject, which means that the subsidiary object
usually carries the emphasis, e.g.: S,moshemen o lisetsa
monna likhomo T, mosimene o disetsa monna dikgomo
N, mosimene o disetsa monna dikgomo (the boy hordes the
cattle for the man) with S,likhomo li lisetsa monna ke
moshemen T, dikgomo di disetsa monna ke mosimene
N, dikgomo di disetsa monna ke mosimene (the cattle are
locked after for the man by the boy) and S,monna o lisetsa
likhomo ke moshemen T, monna o disetsa dikgomo ke
mosimene N, monna o disetsa dikgomo ke mosimene (the
man has the cattle horded for him by the boy); and
S,mosali o lemolwa ngwane tsimó T, mosadi o lemolwa
ngwane tehimó N, mosadi o lemolwa ngwane tšemó (the woman ploughs
a land for the child) with
S,tšemó o lemolwa ngwane ke mosadi T, tehimo o lemolwa
ngwana ke mosadi N, tšemó o lemolwa ngwana ke mosadi
(a land is being ploughed by the woman on the child's
behalf) and S,ngwana o lemolwa tšemó ke mosali T, ngwana o
lemolwa tehimo ke mosadi N, ngwana o lemolwa tšemó ke mosadi
(the child has a land ploughed on its behalf by the woman).
When the corresponding applicative stem takes is only one object this object of course used as subject of the applicative-passive stem, e.g. S. batho ba ñêâåke monna T. batho ba ñêâåke monna N. batho ba ñêâåke monna (the people are represented by the man) of, S. monne o ñêâåle batho T. monne o ñêâåle batho N. monne o ñêâåle batho (the man represents the people); S. re ññêâââke bana T. re ññêââke bana N. re ññêâââke bana (we are being died for by the children, i.e. we are being bereaved of the children); the children are dying on our behalf), cf. S. nqodana en re ññêââle T. nqodana o en re ññêâ N. nqodana o en re ññêâ (the child is dying for us, i.e. we are losing it; or: it is dying on our behalf)

1) This is the more common meaning of the two and to express it the applicative-passive is preferred to the applicative alone (cf. below).

Owing to the sense this stem is preferably used in the perfect conjugalional form thus:
S. re ññêâââke nqodana T. re gwtëwe nqodana N. re gwtëwe nqodana (we have been bereaved of the child), cf. also the stational(cepsable)-applicative-passive as in S. ke lelhëtsëhe ke thibe T. ke lelhëgotëwe ke thibe N. ke lelhëgotëwe ke thibe (I have lost my knife).

On the other hand S. re ññêâââke ke Jesu T. re gwtëwe ke Jesu N. re gwtëwe ke Jesu means practically only: we have been died for by Jesus, i.e. Jesus has died on our behalf, although it may also mean we have been bereaved of Jesus.

ii) This is the more common meaning of the two.
S, be fêlêla ke liiô T, ba fêlêla ka diô
N, ba fêlêla ke diô (they are being finished for
by food, i.e., they run short of food), cf. S, liiô
lin ba fêlêla T, diô di a ba fêlêla N, diô di a
ba fêlêla (food runs short with respect to them).

As with the passive stem, so also with the appli-
cative-passive stem may be employed the subjectival verbal
concord of the S, ho T, xo N, xo clause, conveying an imper-
sonal and very often an indefinite idea, e.g., S, ho
êmêlêla T, go a êmêlêwa N, xo a êmêlêwa (there is being
represented), S, ho lemêlê T, go a lemêlêwa N, xo a
lemêlêwa (there is being ploughed for).

The object or objects of the corresponding applica-
tive stem may be retained, and an agent may even be indi-
cated; although it is preferable not to indicate an agent
in such cases, e.g., S, ho êmêlêba batho ke monna
T, go êmêlêwa batho ke monna N, xo êmêlêwa batho ke monna
(there is being represented the people by the man),
S, ho lemêlê na gona têimo ke mosadi T, go lemêlêwa
ngwana têimo ke mosadi N, xo lemêlêwa ngwana têimo ke
ke mosadi (there is being ploughed a field for the child
by the woman).

1) The applicative-passive is here preferred to the applicative.

passive.
bb) Primary durative-passive $S_{\text{\textsection}} S < S_{\text{\textsection}}^{\text{\textsection}}$

$T_{\text{\textsection}} S < T_{\text{\textsection}}^{\text{\textsection}} \equiv e.g. N_{\text{\textsection}}^{\text{\textsection}} \equiv N_{\text{\textsection}}^{\text{\textsection}} \equiv N_{\text{\textsection}}^{\text{\textsection}}\text{\textsection} T_{\text{\textsection}}^{\text{\textsection}}$

- $T_{\text{\textsection}} S$ (be bothered, annoyed), cf. $S_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be bothered, annoyed) and $S_{\text{\textsection}} T_{\text{\textsection}}$ $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (bother, annoy); $T_{\text{\textsection}} S$ $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be patched), cf. $T_{\text{\textsection}}$ $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (patch); $S_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be hidden), cf. $S_{\text{\textsection}}$ (hide); $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be placed), cf. $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (place) and $S_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be) $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be); $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be given), cf. $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (give) and $T_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be); $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be beaten with the fist), cf. $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (beet); $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (be stirred), cf. $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ (stir).

---

1) UB. need of course not become $T_{\text{\textsection}} N_{\text{\textsection}}$ - it may entirely disappear (cf. Phon., pp. 59-60), if this is the case the passive will be preceded merely by a latent consonant in this compound.

ii) With this compound $N_{\text{\textsection}}$ employs only the primary passive, $S_{\text{\textsection}}$ and $T_{\text{\textsection}}$ prefer however the secondary passive. $\xi$ represents an elided suffix-semivowel or a latent consonant, cf. Chapter 8 $\xi$).
cc) Secondary durative-passive.

T. *awna \( \leq \) T. *awna N. *awna \( < \) N. *awna. the y of the durative suffix awya has been dropped, e.g.

T. bolawa N. bolawa (be killed) \( < \) T. *bolawa N. *bolawa, cf. S. bolawa (be killed) and S. bolawa N. bolava (kill); T. watlhawa (be punished), cf. T. *watlhawa N. *watlhawa (punish);

N. *termawa (be walked) \( < \) N. *termawa, cf. S. termawo (be walked), T. termawiwa, cf. S. termawo, T. termaya; T. termawa (walk).

dd) Multiplicative-passive N. akwa T. akwa

N. akwa, e.g.

T. *atekwa N. *atekwa (be trampled upon), cf. T. *ateka N. *atekwa (trample upon), S. *teka N. *teka (be beaten indiscriminately), cf. S. *teka N. *teka (beat indiscriminately).

---

1) S. employs with this compound only the secondary passive suffix.
(ee) Factive-passive T.*ywa

N.*ywa. The suffix never appears in this form, S.*
T.*N.y always combines with the final stem-consonant as described in Chapter 17 above, e.g.
S..*,in *.*,in (be frightened), cf. S.*,in
T.*,in *.*,in (frighten) and S.*,in T.*,in
N.*in (got a fright); S.*,in *.*,in (be
aroused), cf. S.*,in T.*,in *.*,in (arouse) and
S.*,in T.*,in *.*,in (get up); S.*,in N.*,in
(be laid down), cf. S.*,in T.*,in N.*,in
(lay down) and S.*,in S.*,in N.*,in
(lie down); S.*,in N.*,in
(be caused to resound), cf. S.*,in T.*,in N.*,in
(cause to resound) and S.*,in S.*,in
N.*,in (cry); T.*,in N.*,in or T.*,in
(be put in), cf.
T.*,in N.*,in or T.*,in
N.*,in (put in) and T.*,in N.*,in
(enter); S.*,in or S.*,in or S.*,in
(be
put in), cf. S.*,in or S.*,in
S.*,in or S.*,in or S.*,in T.*,in
or N.*,in (be conquered), cf. S.*,in T.*,in
N.*,in (conquer) and N.*,in
(bend back).

i) With the factive-passive compound T. always uses
the secondary passive, excepting when the final root-
consonant is either m or n when it almost exclusively
employs the primary passive suffix.

ii) Cf. i) i) (a) and (c) above.

iii) Cf. i) i) (a) and (c) above.
The occurrence of a standardised connecting vowel preceding the passive suffix is not limited to Sotho. On the contrary, its occurrence is so frequent in the various Bantu languages that Neumof could have reconstructed an UB.\textit{iywa}. The secondary passive suffix must therefore be a very old suffix in Sotho, and as will be indicated below, it is, with the exception of a few cases, the only passive suffix employed with passive stems corresponding to monosyllabic simple stems.

\textit{Time} \textit{Niwa} is almost the universal secondary suffix in these two languages, and this is, of course, the normal state of affairs. \textit{Time} \textit{Niwa} being the counterparts of UB.\textit{iywa}. \textit{Niwa} occurs only in \textit{N.rutwa} = \textit{N.ratwa} (be taught); the connecting vowel \textit{a} has become \textit{u}, probably as a result of assimilation with the stem-vowel \textit{u}; no other example of a similar process of assimilation could be ascertained in \textit{N}. \textit{T.uwa} occurs only in \textit{T.uwa} (be said) probably from \textit{T.\textit{tiwa}}, the \textit{a} having been assimilated to \textit{u} under the influence of \textit{u}; no other example of a similar process of assimilation could be ascertained in \textit{T}. These two atoms will again be referred to below. In \textit{S}, however, the only secondary passive suffix used independently is \textit{u\textsc{a}}; \textit{\textsc{a}} occurs only in concealed \textit{\textsc{a}} (cf. below). This development of the connecting vowel of the secondary passive suffix in \textit{S} is probably due to the fact that in this language, much more than in the other two languages, the secondary passive suffix is employed with roots whose final consonant is a labial. The \textit{a} of \textit{\textsc{a}da} was then changed into \textit{u} under the influence of the preceding labial. \textit{\textsc{a}da} subsequently

---

1) as will be seen below the forms in brackets are not original forms.
iii) A similar influence exercised by bilabial consonants has been noticed in the case of the unstandardised connecting vowel \textit{u} (cf. Chapter 4. § 5).
the permuted form was used also with roots whose final root-consonant is not a labial, until finally it has entirely replaced the original suffix ige.

The following are particulars of the secondary passive suffix as occurring in the various languages:

(a) Where it occurs uncoalesced.

i. T.ive is found:

a. As the suffix of almost all passive stems derived of from consonantal roots, e.g. fiwa (be given, fa (give); giwa (be drawn of water), cf. go (draw water); awiwa (be died), cf. awa (die); iwa (be gone) << iviwa, cf. wa (go); wiwa (be fallen), cf. wa (fell).

b. As the suffix of almost all passive stems derived from syllabic roots with y as final semi-vowel, or without any final semi-vowel or consonant at

i) The following are exceptions the suffix here used is the primary and not the secondary passive:

a. T.ive or T.ive = S.ive = N.ive (be said), cf. re T.ive re re (say) also the secondary passive as in T.ive = T.ive = T.ive (be said); the passive is here highly irregular.

b. S.nowa T.nowa N.nowa (be drunk of a liquid) << S.nowa T.ive N.ive (be drunk of a liquid); S.ive T.ive (be fought) << S.ive T.ive, cf. S.ive T.nowa N.ive (fight) and UB. uke (fight) (Phon., p. 245), also the secondary passive as in N.nowa N.nowa (be fought). In the last two cases the semi-vowel S. iviwa N.nowa preceding S. ve T.ive N.nowa is vocalised to S. o T. o N.o.

c. T.ive (be come out) << T.ive, cf. T.ive T.ive N.ive (come out) and UB. uke (come out) (Phon., p. 244). Here the semi-vowel y preceding wa is vocalised to u. The iviwa in T.ive has UB. 2 as base (cf. Phon., p. 67) and UB. 2 becomes T. o before U.
i) e.g. ka*iwa (be described, be pointed out) < T. ke*yiwe (describe, point out), the*iwe (be set of a trap) < T. *the*yiwe (set a trap or a snare); si*iwa (be reserved) cf. si*n (reserve), he*iwa (be enclosed with a hedge), cf. be*n (enclose with a hedge); le*iwa (be tied carelessly of a knot), cf. lo*e (tie a knot carelessly); ti*hoo*iwa (be hated), cf. ti*hoo*e (hate); lo*iwa (be bewitched), cf. lo*e (bewitch), hui*wa (be flayed, be skinned), cf. bu*e (flay, skin); ru*iwa (be owned), cf. ru*e (own). In fi*wa (be convinced by argument) < *keiwa, cf. fa*e (convince by argument) the stem-vowel has been replaced by the connecting vowel.

c. As the suffix of all passive stems derived from syllabic roots whose final root-consonant is te*h, e.g. ka*teshi*wa (be sprinkled), cf. ka*teshe*a (sprinkle); tsheteshi*wa (be removed as things from one residence to another), cf. tsheteshe*a (remove things from one residence to another); nteshi*wa (be taken out), cf. nte*he*a (take out).

d. As the suffix of all passive stems derived from syllabic roots whose final root-consonant is te*v, e.g. tweteshi*wa (be flattered), cf. twetesh*a (flatter); huteshi*wa (be ripened, be getting cooked), cf. hutesh*a (ripen, become cooked).

e. As practically the only suffix of passive

1) An exception being bo*a (be returned), cf. bo*va (return).
2) In T. and N. * becomes a and e becomes e under the influence of the i of i*e*a. For more examples of this phenomenon cf. i. below)
3) If the passive suffix had been used te*h would have been palatalised and back-labialised as a result of the y of wa thus giving a final stem-consonant te*h, the passive corresponding to ka*teshe*a (sprinkle) would then have been *ka*tesh*wa, but if it is also palatalised and back-labialised if followed by the y of wa, giving a final stem-consonant te*h (cf. i (a), (d) above); thus the passive corresponding to ka*teshe*a (force back) is ka*tesh*wa and I suppose it is to avoid confusion that only i*e*a and not wa is used when the final root-consonant is te*h.
4) utes*wa (steal) has a corresponding passive utes*wa, the passive is here however not used singly and will be dealt with in (b) below.
stems derived from syllabic roots whose final consonant is e, e.g. disiwa (be horded), cf. disera (hord); lesiwa (be left), cf. lena (leave); thusiswa (be smeared), cf. tehase (amend); thusiwa (be helped), cf. thusa (help); losiwa (be hunted and killed of carnivorous animals), cf. lesea (hunt and kill carnivorous animals).

f. As practically the only suffix of passive stems derived from syllabic roots whose final root-vowel is a, e.g. ndiwa (be looked upon with pity), cf. nda (look with pity upon).

g. As the suffix of all passive stems derived from syllabic roots whose final root-consonant is b, e.g. thatisa (be vomited), cf. thataa (vomit); gataiwa (be kindled), cf. gataa (kindle); futiswa (be cursed), cf. futaa (curse); itiswa (be known), cf. ita (know).

h. Fairly frequently instead of wa as the suffix.

i) When employing the primary passive suffix, e is palatalised as well as back-labialised thus giving a final stem-consonant iwh (cf. i A i) (b) above), as in lehaa (be left), the passive stem corresponding to lewa (leave); but i is also palatalised and back-labialised if followed by the w of wa (e.g., a final stem-consonant iw (cf. i A i) (d) above), e.g., as in lewa (be paid), cf. leha (pay); and I suppose it is to avoid confusion that iwh is practically always preferred to wa when the final root-consonant is e.

ii) When employing the primary passive suffix, the final stem-consonant is iwh (cf. i A i) (e) above), but iwh is also the final stem-consonant when w is attached to a root whose final consonant is i (cf. i A i) (d) above), or to a root whose final consonant is a (cf. e above), and I suppose iwh is preferred to wa to avoid possible confusion.

iii) If the primary passive suffix had been used te would have been palatalised and back-labialised as a result of the w of wa thus giving a final stem-consonant tw; but p is also palatalised and back-labialised if followed by the w of wa giving a final stem-consonant tw (cf. i A i) (d) above); and I suppose it is to avoid confusion that only iwh and not wa is used when the final root-consonant is e.

iv) Such passive stems as bidia (be called), cf. bita (call); mading (be swallowed), cf. mata (swallow); bodinga (be asked), cf. bota (seek) and bade (tell news), have of course been derived from roots with i as final consonant and they will be more fully dealt with in A below, in view of the fact that semantically they are the passive of factitive stems.
of passive stems derived from syllabic roots whose final root-consonant is a labial or \(\mathsf{w}\), e.g. \(\mathsf{tilhabiwa}\) (be stabbed), cf. \(\mathsf{tilhaba}\) (stab); \(\mathsf{leriwa}\) (be paid), cf. \(\mathsf{lera}\) (pay); \(\mathsf{gapiwa}\) (be snatched), cf. \(\mathsf{gapwa}\) (snatch); \(\mathsf{kazhiwa}\) (be forced back), cf. \(\mathsf{kazha}\) (force back); \(\mathsf{romiwa}\) (be sent), cf. \(\mathsf{romwe}\) (send); \(\mathsf{senyiva}\) (be spoiled), cf. \(\mathsf{serwe}\) (spoil). Whether in such cases \(\mathsf{wa}\) is preferably used to \(\mathsf{we}\) I should not venture to say. Tests carried out with various informants did not yield anything definite, neither does the existing literature in \(\mathsf{Tswana}\), in so far as I could scrutinise it, throw any light upon the question.

1. As a possible but not a frequently used alternative to \(\mathsf{we}\) in all such cases (excepting \(\mathsf{2}\), which has already been dealt with above) as are referred to in \(\mathsf{1N}\).

i) \(\mathsf{a}\) above. If \(\mathsf{wa}\) is attached to a root whose final consonant is \(\mathsf{l}\), this consonant is changed into \(\mathsf{d}\) under the influence of the connecting vowel \(\mathsf{i}\) of the suffix, e.g. \(\mathsf{ladiwe}\) (be laid down), cf. \(\mathsf{letse}\) (lay down) and \(\mathsf{lala}\) (lie down); \(\mathsf{lediwe}\) (be caused to resound), cf. \(\mathsf{letse}\) (cause to resound) and \(\mathsf{lala}\) (cry).

ii) \(\mathsf{N}\mbox{.iwe}\) is found:

---

i) According to Tucker "the \(\mathsf{wa}\) passive construction is growing every year more popular among the younger generation of Suto-Chuana speakers," cf. The Comparative Phonetics of the Sutho-Chuana Group of Bantu Languages, p. 81. Tucker is, however, not definite as to how far this statement has been tested for T. in particular. Such a development, granted that it does take place in certain T. dialects, will undoubtedly be impeded as a result of the spread of literature; these remarks will also apply to N. cf. ii, c, below.

ii) The passive stem corresponding to \(\mathsf{lera}\) (bring) is \(\mathsf{leriwe}\) (be brought). In SeTlokwe I have come across \(\mathsf{leriwe}\) (be brought) with a corresponding simple stem \(\mathsf{lera}\) (bring).

iii) Cf. § 3/2, oo) below.
e. As the suffix of almost all passive stems derived from consonantal roots, e.g. tiwe (be given), cf. fe (give); xiwa (be drawn of water), cf. xa (draw water); kniwa (be plucked, be torn off), cf. kxe (pluck, tear off); iwa (be gone) < *viwa cf. ye (go).

b. As the suffix of all passive stems derived from syllabic roots whose final consonant is th, e.g., butiwa (be ripened, be getting cooked), cf. butiwa (ripen, become cooked).

c. Fairly frequently instead of wa, as the suffix of passive stems derived from syllabic roots whose final consonant is a labial, te teb or thu, e.g. hlaibiwa (be stabbed), cf. hlaba (stab), lefwiwa (be paid), cf. lenta (pay); kapiwa (be snatched), cf. kave (snatch); kkephiwa (be forced back), cf. kxepe (force back); romiwa (be sent), cf. ruma (send); hlatiwa (be vomited), cf. hlatse (vomit); hloteiwa (be gathered together), cf. hlotea (gather together); theathiwa (be rubbed in), cf. theathea (rub in); theathiwa (be greased), cf. throttle (grease). Whether in such cases iwa is used instead of wa, I should not venture to say, as tests carried out with my informants did not yield anything definite. Whether does the existing literature in N., in so far as I could scrutinise it, throw any light upon the question.

---

i) For cases where the primary and not the secondary passive is used, cf. 1. a. above; also N. kwe (be heard) < *kwaw, cf. N. kwe (hear) also the secondary passive in N. ka'we = N. kiwa (be heard). Here the semi-vowel w preceding wa is vocalised to g.

ii) cf. T. M. H. Endemann Handleiding by die aanleer van Transvaal Setsotso, p. 98.
As a possible alternative to *wa* in all such cases not referred to in \( \mathcal{L} \) (a) i) (a) above. It would appear as if the secondary suffix is here more frequently used than in the cases referred to in i. i. above.

If *wa* is attached to a root whose final consonant is \( \mathcal{L} \), this consonant is changed into \( \mathcal{L} \) under the influence of the connecting vowel \( \mathcal{L} \) of the suffix, e.g. *fadwa* (be scraped, be planed), cf. *fale* (scrape, plane); *nyale* (be married), cf. *nyale* (marry); *thwale* (be found), cf. *thwale* (find); *tidiwa* (be plundered), cf. *file* (plunder); *xodiwa* (be fastened), cf. *xale* (bind, fasten); *tudiwa* (be crushed), cf. *tula* (crush).

iii. *T.uba* found only in *tuwa* (be said), cf. re

(say) also *T.uba* (= *T.uba*) (be heard).

iv. *N.uba* found only in *rutuwa* (be taught), cf

rute (teach).

---

i) cf. T.M.H. Endemann Handlagings by die saameer van Transvaal-Sotho, p. 38.

ii) In the following cases the primary and not the secondary passive is used, the \( \mathfrak{w} \) preceding *wa* being vocalised to \( \mathfrak{u} \):

*Tuwa* (be come out) (cf. i.a. above); *T.utluwa* (be heard), cf. *Su.utluwa* *N.utluwa* (near) and *Utluwa* (hear) (Phon. p. 245) also the secondary passive in *N.utluwa* (be heard). In *T.utluwa* (be stolen) the passive suffix is used in a compound suffix and this stem will be dealt with in \( \mathfrak{u} \) below.

iii) The forms *N.rutuwa* (be taught) and *N.rutuwa* (be taught) also exist.
v. S.\textit{uoe} is found:

a. As the suffix of some passive stems derived from consonantal roots, e.g. \textit{fua} (be given), cf. \textit{fe} (give); \textit{khu\dot{a}} (be plucked), cf. \textit{kha} (pluck); \textit{nu\dot{a}} (be gone)

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{\textasteriskcentered fua} cf. \textit{\textasteriskcentered fo} (go);
  \item \textit{tu\dot{a}} (be come), cf. \textit{\textasteriskcentered tla} (come).
\end{itemize}

b. As the only suffix of the following passive stems derived from roots with \textit{\textasteriskcentered y} as a final semivowel or without any final semivowel or consonant at all; e.g. \textit{hu\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be skinned), cf. \textit{bue} (skin); \textit{hu\textasteriskcentered{o\dot{a}}} (be spoken) cf. \textit{bue} (spoke);

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be tanned), cf. \textit{bue} (tan); \textit{nu\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be possessed), cf.
  \item \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (possess), \textit{\textasteriskcentered{khu\dot{a}}} (be crushed), cf. \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (crush);
  \item \textit{h\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be hated) cf. \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (hate);
  \item \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be bewitched) cf. \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (bewitch);
  \item \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be picked out); \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be beckoned);
  \item \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (pick out); \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (pick out); \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be concerned about) cf. \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (concern about).
\end{itemize}

It should be noted that \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} is the only passive suffix that can be used in these cases if the stem-vowel is \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u}}.

As an alternative to \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} with the following passive stems derived from roots with \textit{\textasteriskcentered y} as final semivowel or without any final semivowel or consonant at all: \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be forg'd), cf. \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be cooked), cf. \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be corrected)

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (correct) and \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (correct) and \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be fed with porridge of a baby); \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be out run) \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be run)
  \item \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (make drunk) and \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} (be made drunk)
\end{itemize}

1) For cases where the primary and not the secondary suffix used cf. 1.c. above also a. S.\textit{sho\textasteriskcentered{a}} (be died) cf. S.\textit{sho\textasteriskcentered{a}} T.sin (die) and UB.T.sin (die) (Phon. p. 244) also T.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{w\dot{a}}} (be
die); S.\textit{h\textasteriskcentered{w\dot{a}}} (be climbed) cf. S.\textit{h\textasteriskcentered{w\dot{a}}} (climb); S.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{w\dot{a}}} (be fallen) cf. S.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{w\dot{a}}} T.sin and UB.T.sin (fall) (Phon. p. 248) also T.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{w\dot{a}}} (be fallen). Here the semivowel \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} preceding \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} is vocalised to \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} in S.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{n\dot{a}}} (be raised), cf. S.\textit{n\textasteriskcentered{a}} T.sin and UB.T.sin (rain) the primary passive suffix is added to the simple stem.

ii) The vowels \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} and \textit{\textasteriskcentered{w\dot{a}}} become \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} and \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}} respectively under the influence of the following \textit{\textasteriskcentered{u\dot{a}}}.

iii) Probably abbreviated forms of S.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{a\dot{a}}} and S.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{a\dot{a}}} which also exist, cf. also S.\textit{ph\textasteriskcentered{a}} (be reign'd) and S.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{a\dot{a}}} (be reign'd) as well as S.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{a\dot{a}}} and S.\textit{\textasteriskcentered{a\dot{a}}} (be reign'd).
c. As the suffix of all passive stems derived from roots whose final consonant is ū, e.g. butakā (be ripened) of butakā (ripen).

d. Very frequently instead of ū as the suffix of passive stems derived from syllabic roots whose final consonant is a labial, e.g. hīnhūdā (be stabbed) of hālāhā (stab); lēna (be paid) of laha (pay); hēpuōc (be snatched) of hāmbhā (snatch); khephūda (be forced back) of khepha (force back); romuōc (be sent) of romā (send). The S. secondary passive suffix wa is in these cases much more frequently used than either Ti or Miwa under similar circumstances, and it would even seem that very often wa is here preferred to dā, although there are cases where it is definitely awkward to use wa, e.g. tsebhūn instead of tsebhōc. But, as with the other two languages, the teaching of grammar in schools as well as the spreading of literature will impede such a process of substitution.

e. As a possible alternative to dā in all such cases as referred to in 1 (a) above, excepting when the final root-consonant is a or a in which case the only possible passive suffix is dā.

If *uk is attached to a root whose final consonant is 1, this consonant is changed into j (written i in S.), e.g.

- *tuk (be scraped, be planed), cf. *tuk (scrape, plane);
- *valuk (be married), cf. *valuk (marry);
- *suluk (be crossed), cf. *suluk (cross);
- *buluk (be crushed), cf. *buluk (crush).

(b) Where it occurs coalesced:

i) Coalescence of the terminative i of some monosyllabic simple stems and the connecting vowel i of S. "iwa T."wa N."wa giving:

- S."wa T."wa N."wa, e.g. "ewa T."wa (be rained), cf. N."wa (be rained) and
- S."wa T."wa N."wa (rain), S."wa T."wa N."wa (be eaten), cf. S."wa T."wa N."wa (eat);
- S."wa (be burnt), cf. S."wa (burn); N."wa (be fought).

---

1) The connecting vowel i of the performative suffix S."wa T."wa N."wa also sometimes coalesces with the terminative i of monosyllabic simple stems, cf. Chapter 10 §A II ((E)) /2 (C) sa); and so does the i of S."iwa T."iwa N."iwa of Chapter 2 §E. 6.

ii) In S., there is an old passive stem niwa (be rained) corresponding to ni (rain), cf. Jacottet's Grammar of the Socma Language, p. 110; and in N. there is also a form niwa (be rained).

iii) The initial consonant l in N. is probably due to the root i having been derived from UB. li as in UB. lile (cat) (phon., p. 244).
cf. S. \textit{wa} T. \textit{wa} N. \textit{wa} (fight); N. \textit{nwewa} (be drank of a liquid); cf. S. \textit{n\textasciitilde{e}} T. \textit{wa} N. \textit{wa} (drink);

ii) N. \textit{kwawa} (be heard); cf. N. \textit{kw} (hear).

b. \textit{a} found only in T. \textit{a} (= jewa, cf. a. above).

i) Coalescence of the stem-vowel \textit{a} and the \textit{i} of T. \textit{ive}, this occurs in T. only, and the only in such cases where a process of elision has first taken place, affecting the final root-semivowel \textit{e}, i.e.,

\textit{\~a}, e.g. \textit{\textasciitilde{ewa}} (be taken) < \textit{\textasciitilde{e}\textasciitilde{ewa}} < \textit{\textasciitilde{e}\textasciitilde{ewa}} (cf. \textit{e\textasciitilde{ewa} \textasciitilde{a}}).

(c) In S. the secondary passive suffix may be used in the perfect conjunctival form. In such cases the short perfect terminative \textit{e} is used and the long terminative \textit{ile}, e.g. \textit{\textasciitilde{u}\textasciitilde{ude}} (have been given), cf. S. \textit{\textasciitilde{u}\textasciitilde{ude}} (be given); bu\textit{u}\textasciitilde{e} (have been skinned), cf. S. \textit{\textasciitilde{u}\textasciitilde{ude}} (be skinned); hl\textit{u}\textasciitilde{a} (have been hated), cf. S. hl\textit{u}\textasciitilde{a} (be hated); \textit{la\textasciitilde{u}\textasciitilde{e}} (have been paid), cf.

i) N. has also a form \textit{nw\textasciitilde{e}a} (= nwewa)

ii) N. has also a form \textit{k\textasciitilde{w\textasciitilde{a}}} (= kwewa).

iii) For \textit{\textasciitilde{a}} also the plural of \textit{le\textasciitilde{\textasciitilde{ind}}} (tooth), viz. \textit{\textasciitilde{m\textasciitilde{e}n\textasciitilde{d}}} (teeth).

iv) T. \textit{\textasciitilde{we}} (be said), cf. re (say), would appear to have a passive suffix \textit{\textasciitilde{a}}, but it is possible that the corresponding simple stem here is \textit{\textasciitilde{re}} (say) which still exists in N., and that the \textit{\textasciitilde{a}} of \textit{\textasciitilde{we}} due to coalescence as above explained.

v) A form \textit{\textasciitilde{a}} is also obtained when T. \textit{\textasciitilde{we}} is employed with the secondary durative suffix \textit{\textasciitilde{a}}, cf. \textit{\textasciitilde{w}} below.
S.lafu safeguard (be paid); hapu safeguard (have been snatched), cf. 
S.hapu safeguard (be snatched). But it is more common in S. to 
use the primary passive suffix in the perfect conjunctio- 
al form, and in T. and N. only the primary and not the 
secondary passive suffix can be used in this conjunctio- 
al form. The long perfect terminative ile is here employ- 
ed, e.g. S.filwe T.filwe N.filwe (= S.tula), cf. S.tula 
T.filwe N.filwe (be given); S.tefilwe T.tefilwe N.tefilwe 
(= S.tufa), cf. S.tufa T.tefilwe N.tefilwe (be paid),  
S.tefilwe T.gapilwe N.xapilwe (= S.hapu) of. S.hapu 
T.gapilwe N.xapilwe (be snatched).  

ii) it is not necessary to deal specially with the 
function of the secondary passive suffix as it is seme- 
tically identical with the primary passive suffix. 

It is perhaps of interest that no secondary 
passive stem not associated with a corresponding simple 
stem, could be indicated.  

β) Compound: 

1. Secondary passive in basic position: 
It does not occur in this position.  

2. Secondary passive in a non-basic position: 
In S. and N., especially in the latter, it is far 
less commonly used than the primary passive, In T. on the 
other hand, it is fairly frequently met with although not 
so commonly as the primary passive. Its function in these 
cases is the same as that of S.tu T.wa N.wa.  

as) Primary durative-passive: S.tula T.euwa,  
e.g. S.tloli safeguard (be annoyed) < S.tloli safeguard, cf. S.tloli 
T.tlhodia N.tlodi or N.tlodi (annoy); T.tlatesiwa (be 
beaten much or hard with a downward movement), cf. T.tlatesiwa 
(beat much with a downward movement), T.popoziwa (be puni- 
shed slightly by tapping or slapping), cf. T.popoziwa (punish 
slightly by tapping or slapping); S.pipi safeguard (be hidden), cf.  

S. Pipie (hide), T. Tšebuine (be shaken as e.g. a tree),
cf. T. Tšebuane (shake a tree); S. Nkolwako (be done partly),
cf. Nkolweno (do partly); V.n (be) T. Naive < T. Naiwe <
T. Neile (be given), cf. T. Naye (give) and S. ne T. na
Na (be); T. Bowe < T. Bolwaco T. Bovine (be placed),
cf. T. Beve (place) and S. be T. be N. be (be).

bb) Secondary durative-passive: S. ruše <
S. ruše T. niwe < T. *avine, e.g. S. bolwe (be killed),
cf. S. bolwe T. bolwe N. bolwe (kill), S. tselewe
T. tseleve (be walked), cf. T. tsema T. tsemeve N. tsemeve
(walk), T. wetlhawa (be punished), cf. T. wetlhaya (punish).

The two connecting vowels a and i of T. niwe are some-
times contracted giving a form ève, e.g. tlahlewe <
*tlahlewe < *tlahleva (be put on the fire of a
pot), cf. tlahleva (put a pot on the fire); ditèwa <
*ditèwa < *ditewa (be struck), cf. ditava (strike);
apèwa < *apèwa < *apewa (be cooked), cf. apaya (cook).

ii) Pactive-passive: S. *T. *Yive
N. *Yine. In this compound T. employs only the secondary
passive excepting when the root-consonant is m or r
(when it almost exclusively employs the primary passive
S. and N. on the other hand, especially the latter, rarely em-
ploy the secondary passive, excepting when the root-consonant
is b or p, when they exclusively employ the secondary suffix:
S. tselewe T. tselewa N. tselewa (be aroused), cf.
S. tsele T. tsele N. tsele (arouse) and S. tsewa T. tsewa
N. tsewa (get up); S. tselewe T. tselewa N. tselewa
(be frightened), cf. S. tsewe T. tsewe N. tsewe
(frighten) and S. tsewa T. tsewa N. tsewa (get a fright);

1) In these cases the i of iwe has coalesced with the stem-
vowel a after the y has been elided. There exist also long
forms for these passive stems, viz. naywe and bolwe, this is
due to a doubling of the vowel cf. mea = mën = *mañño
(teeth) from lən (tooth). ii) The suffix never appears in
this form; S. & T. N. & always coalesces with the final stem-
consonant as described in Chapter 17 above. iii) Cf. 2
II 2. ee).
The passive stem corresponding to the T-factive stem derived from a root whose final consonant is \( l \), is 

possibly phonologically a single secondary passive stem, but 

semantically a factitive-passive. The passive suffix \( \text{iwa} \) is 

therefore attached to \( l \) and not to \( t \); this is also sometime 

very rarely, as in the case in N.: T.bodlw (be asked), 

cf. S.botsa T.botsa (ask) and T.boles (tell news); T.ladiwe 

I) cf. T.utlwe (be heard) \( < \) T.*utlwa \( < \) T.*utlwa, 

T.utlwa \( < \) T.*utlwa = S.*,utldsa T.*utlwa (cause to hear), 

S.*,utldsa T.*utlwa S.*,utld (near) and UB. *utla UB.*utla (near); 

utlwe and utluse have probably been arrived at after the \( w \) 

preceding \( \text{iwa} \) and \( \text{is} \) in *utlwa and utlwa respectively have 

been vocalised to \( v \) and the \( l \) of the suffix elided. Probably 

in analogy to this T.*utlwa has been derived from T.*utlwa. 


iii) This principle is also almost always applied in T.,when 

the factitive \( T.\text{ly} \) is the final component part of a compound 

suffix, and the consonant of the suffix immediately preceding 

\( \text{yw} \) is \( l \), e.g. with:

- The actional(capable)-factitive atsa as in gekatsa 
  (offend), cf. Akediva (be offended) and gekale (feel offended). 

- The actional(capable-intensive)-factitive atesa as in 
  phatlasetsa (cause to disperse), cf. phatlaladiwa (be caused to 
  disperse) and phatlalela (become dispersed).

- The applicative-factive atsa as in goletsa (exalt, lift 
  up), cf. golediwa (be exalted, be lifted up) and 
  golela (grow up at).

- The actional-factive tsa as in T.*budsua, cf. 
  T.budulwe (be opened), here we have a process of 
  progressive assimilation - a rare type of assimilation in 
  Sotho - probably owing to \( \text{iwa} \) being preceded by two syllables 
  each of which contains a vowel \( \text{u} \). The actional stem corres-
  ponding to the above stems is bidule (fill a sail, blow).
(be laid down), cf. S. latesa T. latesa N. latesa (lay down) and S. lela T. lela N. lela (lie down); T. lediwa (be caused to resound), cf. S. latesa T. latesa N. latesa (cause to resound) and S. lela T. lela N. lela (cry); T. fadiwa (be split, be cut or chopped of wood), cf. S. latesa T. latesa (split, cut wood) and S. lela T. lela N. lela (scrape, plane); T. bidiwa N. bidiwa or N. bitewa (be called), cf. S. bitewa T. bitewa N. bitewa (call) and UB. nile (call).

In cases where a simple stem derived from a root whose final consonant is ɬ, has a corresponding factitive stem, the secondary passive stem derived from the same root is therefore never to indicate the passive of the action expressed by the factitive stem, and can never be employed to convey the passive of the action expressed by the simple stem. E.g. the passive stem corresponding to fala (scrape) must always be falwa (be scraped), as fadiwa (be split, be planed) conveys the passive of fatesa (split, plane). Even in cases where there does not exist a factitive stem corresponding to the simple stem, it is not advisable to employ the secondary passive suffix, as there is a likelihood that the secondary passive stem will be regarded as conveying a factitive idea in addition to its passive idea.

1) cf. Phon., p. 244.
CHAPTER 19.

Derivation through prefix-formation -

1. Reduplication of the first syllable of a simple verbal stem:

1) Verbal derivatives formed in this way are termed frequentative stems, and the syllable reduplicated may be:

(i) Either a syllabic root consisting of a consonant plus a vowel as in N.kxokxoba (gather together, e.g. rubbish), cf. S.khoba N.kxoba (sweep together, gather together, invite) and for root kxo cf. App. A.46, S.khakhathe (beat repeatedly), cf. N.kxathe (gallop, i.e. strike the ground with the foot) and for root kxe cf. App. A.26, N.xexeme (stick to), cf. S.kome T.gome N.xome (milk) and for root xe cf. App. A.36; (ii) The first consonant and the vowel of a root consisting of a consonant plus a vowel plus a root as in S.nyovsaka (look well at, arrange well), cf. S.nyaka (look in all directions) N.nyaka (seek) with root S.nyak and N.nyak; S.lolome (be fierce), cf. S.lome T.lome N.lome (bite) with root S.lom T.lom N.lom.

Of the 220 trisyllabic verbal stems whose first syllables are identical in form, only 60 have a corresponding simple stem; of the remaining 160:

i. Some have a reduplicated root in common with other or with a verbal derivative of more than three syllables, e.g.

S.titima (run), cf. S.titititata (walk about, tread on a person's foot); S.khukhuna N.khukhuna (crawl, creep, walk while stooping down), cf. S.khukhukhuna (walk in a bent position, walk with difficulty) for root S.khu N.khu, cf. App. A.47; S.shaahara (take a great quantity of), cf. S.shaahabetae

1) Not counting approximately 30 derived from nominal and ideophonic roots.
(bite too big a slice, charge too much); S. koekoeletla
N. koekoeletla (turn aside from, beat the bush, walk
outside lands), cf. S. koekoeletna (turn aside, dodge
from); N. nauma (press Importunately, harass), cf.
S. naouhilela (push into); N. hlahlame (whiz, whir, swarm),
cf. N. hlahlame (whiz, whir, flare); N. teetsena (be
white), cf. N. teetsena (glimmer, shine white);
S. koeoehoare (be near one another), cf. S. koeoehoanye
(mix up things, embroil); T. eneura (eat very much), cf.
T. nudutha (eat much) and T. mokatsha (eat very much);
S. nondha (walk slowly), cf. N. nondra (walk about);
T. kogona (tuck in as e.g. blankets), cf. N. koxota (poke).

The fact that these stems convey a frequentative force (cf. § 2) below, excludes the possibility of
their being related to non-extant simple stems through
suffix-formation. This applies also to ii, and iii,
below.

ii. Others have the root, which is reduplicated in
them, in common with other verbal stems, e.g. T. teitsitsha
(tickle), cf. S. teikinye N. teikinye (tickle); N. tielipane
(dabble, splash in water), cf. N. tiampolotla (splash in
water with the legs); S. phoeohoire (shave), cf. S. phoeretsa
(scrape, shave); T. papotla (bother by much talking), cf.
T. porotela (talk incessantly), S. teitsinya (shake), cf.
T. teikinye N. teikinye (shake); S. fufule T. fufule (per-
spire) N. fufule (boil or foam up, boil over), cf. N. fuma
(boil over); T. fufutee (seek, examine), cf. T. fukutsa
(seek, examine); S. hihitea (scream loudly), cf. S. hikitea
(scream loudly).

iii. Others again, have the root, which is reduplica-
ted in them, in common with nominal stems, e.g. N. theothesema
(run, flow as the water of a heavy shower of rain), cf.
N. lethorome (a heavy shower of rain); T. teetsethea (shake
meal up and down so as to remove the bran), cf. N. ditebre
(bran).
In the following cases the final syllable of the simple stem has been elided: N.tatwa (be burnt white by the sun), cf. N. šawwa (shine, glitter); N. hlwašwa (pierce through, punch through) cf. N. šawwa (pierce, drill).

The following frequentative stems, different as regards their stem-vowels, but semantically either identical or else very closely related, are interesting: N. šitšëba (take a fright) and N. šetšëba (take a fright); N. nëndëra (walk about, walk much) and N. nëndëra (walk about), cf. also S. šapara (advance stealthily) and N. nëna (walk carefully); N. šifira (snatch the teeth) and N. šëfëna (bite something hard, gnaw); S. šëhëra (prattle, babble, speak angrily) and T. šëhëra (murmur, talk in a low voice, growl as a dog) N. šëhëra (prattle, talk a lot).

2) (a) The frequentative stem denotes "that the action is done over and over again" 1). The following examples are given in addition to those already quoted:

1) cf. Term., p. 110.
S. chachake (go from place to place to give orders), cf. S. chake (take a walk, walk about); T. pêpêna (rivet as a bolt), cf. S. pêna T. pêna L. pêna (bend back, turn back as the edge of a knife); S. kaketa N. kaketa (kill by beating repeatedly, kill by pelting with stones); N. kaketa (trample repeatedly on a floor), cf. S. keta T. keta N. keta (trample, tread); S. nyenatho (crush with the teeth, i.e. gnaw repeatedly), cf. S. nyatha (gnaw); N. puputla (trot, walk up and down, to and fro), cf. N. putla (traverse); N. s Faula (provoko, embitter), cf. N. Fala (threaten); T. hebenya (flicker, flash like a sword or a distant lightning), cf. S. benya N. benya (be bright, shine); T. gapa (take more than one has the right to take), cf. S. hape T. gapa N. kape (snatch, take with force); T. riripa (cut all the hair off the head), cf. S. ripa N. ripa (cut off); S. bêbêra (prattle, bubble, jabble), cf. S. bêra T. bêra N. bêra (talk foolishly, talk much); N. xentle (kill a number of things at the same time), cf. T. getla N. katla (beat with a stick).

(b) A few stems with reduplicated first syllables seem to have lost their frequentative force, e.g. N. kukuba (stupify, blunt, dull), cf. S. kuba T. kube N. kuba (spear without piercing the skin, be blunt); S. loloma (be fierce), cf. S. loma T. loma N. loma (bite); N. lelotla (become big, get stretched upwards), cf. S. lomla N. lome (grow quickly).

(c) In some cases the relation between the frequentative stem and the probable corresponding simple stem is vague, e.g. N. lalokxema (stammer, stutter), cf. S. khama N. kxema (strangle, stick in the throat); S. holchore T. tihetlora N. hlokora (shake, shake off), cf. N. hloora (cut with an axe); S. khokhetha T. kgokgèthea N. kxêxêthe (cut into pieces, cut into parts as a carcass), cf. S. khèthea S. xêthea N. xêthea (sevede, choose), N. bobotha (bring together, gather together), cf. S. botha T. botha N. botha (lie down of cattle after feeding).
(d) Frequentative stems may be either transitive or intrasitive according as the corresponding simple stems are transitive or intrasitive, e.g. S.chachuke intrasitive and S.chake intrasitive; T.bebeve intrasitive and S.beve N.bene intrasitive; S.kakatz N.kakat transitive and S.kate T.kate N.kate transitive; T.riri transitive and S.ripe N.ripe transitive.

(c) From roots to which the process of reduplication has been applied, verbal derivatives may be formed through suffix-formation, by employing the suffixes referred to in previous chapters, as one finds:

i. Frequentative-applicative, e.g. S.chachukel (go about giving orders to or with respect to), cf. S.chachuku (go from place to place to give orders) and S.chak (take a walk, walk about); S.xal.tlolu N.xax.tlolu (cl.im much more than is proper with respect to something, get the better of something), cf. N.xax.tlu (kill a number of things at the same time) and T.kutlu N.xatlu (beat with a stick).

ii. Frequentative-performative, e.g. T.k hepisan (cause to take more than one has the right to take), cf. T. Rene (take more than one has the right to take) and S.hepo T.hepo N.xon (take by force, snatch), S.xshakhathisaa (cause to beat repeatedly), cf. S.xshakhatho (beat repeatedly) and N.xetna (gallop i.e. strike the ground with the foot), N.xkatelo (cause to trample very often on the floor), cf. N.xekate (trample repeatedly on the floor) and S.kate T.kate N.kate (trample, tread).

iii. Frequentative-operate(intensive)-reciprocal, e.g. N.xasrahphene (withdraw, turn aside), cf. N.gore (change places).

i) For the meanings of examples here quoted refer to (a) above.

ii) The examples here quoted have been obtained from my informants.
B. Reduplication of the first syllable of a verbal derivative through suffix formation. More also "action done over and over again" is indicated, e.g.

S.pebele (shave completely), cf. S.peela T.peela (shave, i.e. remove from its place), S.bha (place) and S.be T.be N.be (be); N.kokočela (offload a wagon), cf. S.kolle N.kola (skin, take off the cream) and S.kola N.kola (gather together, rake together); S.thithibana (become blunt, become disheartened), cf. S.thibana N.thibana (got stopped, get deaf) and S.thiba T.thiba N.thiba (stop up);

S.hlahlonela (string beads or locusts, i.e. keep on piling up), cf. S.hlomela N.hlomela (pile up) and S.hlome T.hlome N.hlome (plant).

This process, viz. of first applying suffix formation and only subsequently reduplication of the first syllable, is very rare; the reverse process (cf. A. above) is much more common.

There are verbal stems containing both a reduplicated initial syllable as well as a suffix and for which only a corresponding verbal derivative through suffix formation but no corresponding simple stem could be ascertained, e.g. T.tofolela (string a great number of beads), cf. N.folole (string beads); S.ririhlēha (be slow, be delayed by trifles), cf. S.rilhēha (do unwillingly or slowly); T.totulela (Beat very hard) N.totulela (beat with a long stick), cf. S.toula (beat mercilessly with a stick); S.khokhētetla T.kgokekweetla (push violently, compel to go), cf. T.kgokekweeta (drive); N.hlowlolokena (march in a row in two's and three's), cf. S.hlolokena (come and go in numbers); Sفكhirite (turn away from a purpose, miss the mark), cf. S.khirite (withhold one's thoughts, allude to).
C) By adding a prefix, not identical in form with the first syllable of the simple stem, to the simple stem I have been able to indicate the force of these prefixes, as they occur very seldom:

N.â in: N.âkâme (be astonished, be amazed), cf. T.âkâme (perplex);

T.âho in: T.âhoduma (request, implore), cf. S.âluna N.âduma (wish earnestly);

N.âfu in: N.âxokhâla (rub off, rub between the hands), cf. S.âhûla T.âgotha N.âxokhâla (rub);

S.âfu in: S.âfûputla (look for, seek), cf. T.âputla (search diligently);

N.âxe in: N.âxenya (wink, twinkle), cf. S.âbenya (glitter);

T.âgo N.âxo in: T.âguduma (drink with a noise), cf. S.âluna T.âduma N.âduma (rumble);

S.âxe T.âko N.âko in: S.âkona N.âkâme T.âkâme N.âkâme (lie stretch-out on the back), cf. S.âname T.âname N.âname (spread out, extend); N.âkâbêla (cut with force), cf. S.âbêla T.âbêla N.âbêla (cut, chisel); T.âkoloma (bite without making deep incisions), cf. S.âloma T.âloma N.âloma (bite).

N.âkâ in: N.âkâbêla (cut with force), cf. S.âbêla T.âbêla N.âbêla (cut, chisel);

S.âko in: S.âgould (pull out a tooth, take out something whole), cf. S.âgold (pick out, single out);

N.âkâ in: N.âkôsbr (bend), cf. S.âbô T.âbôa N.âbôa (break);

N.âkwa in: N.âkâbêla (cut as with an axe), cf. S.âbêla T.âbêla N.âbêla (cut, chisel);

S.âkhi in: S.âkhirîpe (cut too short), cf. S.ârîpe (cut, cut off, cut very short).

1) A similar process has been noticed in Keranga, cf. Marcombe A Grammar of Central Keranga pp. 204-215.

ii) It is also possible that the basis here is âk, the a of which has been elided in the case of kâme.
N. dī in: N. ākitla (beat with a fist round and round), cf. T. ākitla (strike with a fist) and N. kītla (tan by beating the skin);
S. mū in: S. mūkītla (eat very much, cram), cf. S. kītla
N. kītla (press in);
S. pu T. pu in: S. putula T. putula (trample a place), cf. S. tule N. tule (crush, break);
N. ri in: N. ripītla (crush into bits), cf. S. pītla T. pītla
N. pītla (crush, squeeze between the fingers);
T. sē in: T. sēkōtla (whisper about, backbite), cf. S. hēle (speak much, prattle);
N. so in: N. somiīla (blow the nose with the two fingers), cf. N. smīla (blow the nose);
N. te in: N. tetsēba (be conscious), cf. S. tsēba N. teēba
(known);
N. tē in: N. teērēma (poke with the horns), cf. S. tēma
T. tēmu T. tēma (chop);
S. tē in: S. tēsēhē (gather pell-mell), cf. N. hēke (gather;
shut together);
N. tē in: N. tēsēbē (throw the blame on some one), cf. N. sēbē (lie);
N. y in: N. yūdēba (shake), cf. S. luba T. dūba N. dūba (turn
over something stiff, e.g. dough, clay, knead).
2) by adding a prefix, not identical with the
first syllable of a verbal derivative, to a verbal deriva-
tive. The following are the only examples I could find:
S. ā in: S. arabūrēsē (guess, imagine, give a vague
answer), cf. S. rabūrēsē (guess, suppose, speak
vaguely);
S. tē in: S. tēsēhē (peel off, pull off), cf. S. eēhē
N. eēhē (peel, pare, take the bark off) and
N. eēhē (skin); S. tēsēhē (peel off), cf. T. eēhē
(make a large opening, break open as a house or a
wound);

1) It is possible that the basis here is S. "ul T. "ud N. ud
the " of which has been elided in S. luba T. dūba N. dūba.
N.tl in: N.tlapola (undress), cf. S.apola T.apole
N.apole (undress); N.tlebole (peel off), cf.
S.bole N.bole (peel, pare, take the bark off)
and N.eba (skin);
T.so in: T.swebola (pull one thing off another, pluck),
cf. T.sbolc (make a large opening, break open
as house or a wound);
T.bo in: T.bolebene (look at each other, be opposite) cf.
S.abebe T.abebe N.abebe (be opposite), face
one another) and S.abe T.abe N.abe (look at);
S.so in: S.horhose (make a rustling noise), cf. S.rohosa
(shake violently), S.rohoses (shake) also
S.horose (rustle one's bedding);
N.tla in: N.tlapirixene (smash, beat or trample to pieces),
cf. T.pirixene N.pirixene (throw or knock down
a heavy thing) T.pirixene N.pirixene (fell of a
heavy thing) and N.pirixe (topple down);
T.kyy: T.kgelakete (spring up as a fountain) cf. S.letka T.letka
N.letka (hang down, swing about).
CHAPTER 20.

Verbalised derivatives.

Verbalised derivatives are of the following types: A. Denominative, B. Deideophonetic, C. Prejective, D. Deadjectival.

As will be seen below, all primary suffixes employed to form verbal derivatives are employed with more or less the same force to form verbalised derivatives. However, it happens in some cases that these suffixes have entirely lost their force - a phenomenon which, as we have seen, is not at all unfamiliar with suffixes. For such suffixes no specific force could be indicated.

Apart from the suffixes referred to above there is also the suffix S_fe T_fe N_fe, which is only employed with non-verbal stems whether nominative, deideophonetic, or adjectiveal. The force of S_fe T_fe N_fe is only to verbalise in each case the idea or state denoted by the non-verbal stem; or, with other words, only to denote being of the nature, or in the state expressed by the non-verbal stem. S_fe T_fe N_fe therefore indicates the change of the part of speech only, without any further enlargement upon the idea or state expressed by the non-verbal stem; but not so the other verbalising suffixes which, as pointed out above, carry also, to a certain extent, the respective forces typical of them when employed to form verbal derivatives.

Compound verbalising derivative suffixes are also met with, and of special importance here is S_fe S_fe T_fe N_fe S_fe which may be either verbalising (denominative)-actional (capable), verbalising (deideophonetic)-actional (capable), or verbalising (deadjectival)-actional (capable). This suffix is much more common than its single counterpart S_fe T_fe N_fe S_fe, which, as will be indicated below, has probably lost ground in favour of S_fe S_fe T_fe N_fe S_fe.

1) For the scheme according to which these suffixes are designated cf. Chapter 5.
2) No adverbal stem with which S_fe is employed could be ascertained.
3) About 40 stems in S_fe and 160 in S_fe S_fe could be indicated.
Only fa and some of its most interesting compounds will be dealt with at some length in this chapter, as they are the most important verbalising derivative suffixes. The other verbalising derivative suffixes will be referred to only very briefly.

II I shall now proceed to deal with the various types of verbalised derivatives individually:

A. DENOMINATIVES

1. (i) Verbalising (denominative) S.+fa T.+fa N.+fa:

(a) S.+fa T.+fa N.+fa is attached to the nominal stem only, i.e. the prefix of the noun is elided, e.g. S.+skofa T.+skofa N.+skofa (make haste, i.e. be speedy, quick), cf. +skofa found in N.+byako < *hako (haste, speed); S.+natefa T.+natefa N.+natefa (be nice, be tasty, become nice), cf. +natefa found in S.+monate T.+monate N.+monate (pleasantness especially of taste).

An exception to this rule is N.+képêfa (<*képêfa through progressive assimilation) (be the thing that is to be dug, be diggable), cf. S.+képe N.+képa (a digging stick or crowbar) N.+kopi (an iron digging stick) and S.+êpa, T.+êpa N.+êpa (dig). The initial k of the nouns referred to above contains the noun-prefix. +képêfa is, however, identical in meaning with T.+êpa N.+êpa, and it is therefore possible that +képêfa may only be a variant of T.+êpa N.+êpa, k being due to initial strengthening and the +fa having replaced the +a of N.+êxa, cf. T.+êla, sometimes dialectally replacing T.+gêla.

(b) As a rule the final vowel of the noun-stem remains unchanged when +fa is suffixed e.g. N.+opêfa (be barren), cf. +opê in S.+boopa N.+boopa (barrenness); S.+halefa T.+galefa N.+xalefa (be or become angry), cf. S.+hale T.+gale N.+xale

i) UB. +fa cf. Phon., pp. 44 and 76.

ii) cf. Phon., p. 61.

iii) cf. below.
found in S.ROKELE T.ROKELE N.ROKELE (anger). The following are however exceptions to this rule:

N.ROKTAFE (be blissful, blessed), cf. ROKTAFE found in N.ROKTSAE (luck, prosperity); N.ROKTSAE (be deformed), cf. S.ROKELE T.ROKELE N.ROKELE found in S.ROKELE T.ROKELE N.ROKELE (deformity). In both cases the final vowel of the stem has assimilated with the stem-vowel.

(ii) (a) For the definition of S.FA T.FA N.FA cf. I above. The following are a few more examples in addition to those already quoted: N.ROKTSAF (be quarrelsome, desirous of fighting), cf. T.ROKTSAF N.ROKTSAF found in T.ROKTSAYA N.ROKTSAYA (fierceness in battle, bravery); N.ROKTSAYA (be slow), cf. S.ROKTSAYA T.ROKTSAYA N.ROKTSAYA found in S.ROKTSAYA (state of one who has to creep) N.ROKTSAYA (slowness) and S.ROKTSAYA N.ROKTSAYA (lame person, one who creeps); N.ROKTSAF (be light in weight), cf. ROKTSF found in T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF (lightness in weight) and T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF (something very light); T.ROKTSF (be tame, be weak), cf. ROKTSF found in T.ROKTSF (weakness); N.ROKTSF (be nice, be good), cf. ROKTSF found in T.ROKTSF (beauty);

S.ROKTSF T.ROKTSF (be lost, feel disinclined), cf. S.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF in S.ROKTSF and N.ROKTSF (laziness) and N.ROKTSF in S.ROKTSF T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF (salt), cf. S.ROKTSF T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF in S.ROKTSF T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF (salt).

(b) In a few cases FA has lost either partly or wholly its original function in that:

1. It denotes in addition to the idea of being of the nature, or in the state expressed by the non-verbal stem also the idea of becoming of that nature or getting into state, e.g., S.ROKTSF T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF (be or become nice), cf. ROKTSF in S.ROKTSF T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF (pleasantness especially of taste), S.ROKTSF T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF (be or become angry), cf. S.ROKTSF T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF in S.ROKTSF T.ROKTSF N.ROKTSF (anger).

1) This is the idea generally expressed by S.FA T.FA N.FA (cf. 2 below), and it would therefore seem as if there has been an interchange between the functions expressed by FA and T.A respectively.
It denotes only becoming of the nature or getting into the state expressed by the non-verbal stem, e.g. 
N.atlafa (become silly), cf. atl in T.holtle (unskilled fullness) N.holtle (foolishness); N.hlafa (become unpalatable, insipid), cf. S.hla T.tihe N.hla in S.bohla T.bohla N.bohla (sourness, bitterness).

iii. It has in some lost its verbalising force. In all such cases no corresponding non-verbal stems could be ascertained, e.g. S.nlafa T.nlafa N.nlafa (cure, treat immediately, prescribe medicine); N.fakofa (hang up), T.fakofa (use or keep a thing beyond the time for which it was lent and without the lender's permission); N.katafa (speak quickly, telling lies only).

(c) All verbal stems in S.fe T.fe N.fe are intransitive with the exception of the following T.bohle N.bohle (fear, i.e. be afraid of), cf. boi in T.bohle (fear); S.nlafa T.nlafa N.nlafa (cf. (b) iii. above); T.fakofa (cf. (b) iii. above); N.fakofa (cf. (b) iii. above).

(d) There are 8 verbal stems in fe for which no corresponding non-verbal stems could be indicated. Such non-verbal stems need, of course, not have been noun- stems; but for convenience sake all these stems are classed here, on the understanding of course that a non-verbal stem as the basis of other than a noun-stem be indicated for any of these verbal stems, it will fall under the section concerned, and will not be a verbalised (denominative) stem. Examples: 
N.ukofa (hasten); N.fe kofa (cf. (b) iii. above); T.fakofa (cf. (b) iii. above); N.e kofa (cf. (b) iii. above), cf. 
N.katafa (lie in a mocking way); S.nlafa T.nlafa N.nlafa (cf. (b) iii. above); N.nkofa (multiply, become numerous), cf. 
T.fegofa (spread out); T.fegofa (look round quickly or in an exciting manner, take quickly hold of a thing); N.folofa (be hopeful).

1) This is the idea generally expressed by S.fale T.fale N.fale (cf. 2. below), and it would therefore seem as if there has been an interchange between the functions expressed by fe and fale respectively.
2. (1) Verbalising (denominative) - actional (capable)

S.fela T.fela N.fela

(a) S. fela T. fala N.fala is attached to nominal stems only, i.e. the prefix of the noun is elided; the following are however exceptions:

T.leadwefala N.leadwefala (become filthy, nasty or evil), cf. T.leadwa (something filthy or nasty) N.leadwa (filth); S.matlasfala N.matlasfala (become strong), cf. S.matla N.matla (strength).

In the following cases the nominal stems have been affected in various ways after the prefixes have been elided:

S.thethesfela (become blunt, diminish or pain), cf. ratho N.Bothe
in S.borethe (softness) T.borethe (smoothness, bluntness); S.mothesfela (become a man), cf. tho in S.motho T.motho N.motho (a person); N.rufesfala = N.ruthesfala
(become hot), cf. ratho in S.borutho (lukewarmness)
N.borutho (heat);

T. lotesfala = T. lotesfala (become deceitful or untruthful),

cf. S. lotesane T. lotesane N. lotesane in S. holotesene T. holotesene
(roguery, wickedness) and S. molotesane N. molotesane (a wicked person); S.taidesfala T.taidesfala N.taidesfala
(become cold), cf. in S. taides T.taides (cold) N. taides (coldness); S. foufesfala T. foufesfala N. foufesfala = T. foufesfala
N. foufesfala (become blind), cf. fou in S. seofes T. seofes
N. seofes (a blind person or animal).

1) US. pele cf. Phon. pp. 44 and 76.
(b) As a rule the final vowel of the noun-stem remains unchanged when *fala* is suffixed. The following are, however, exceptions:

T. *hilefala* N. *xilefale* = S. *hilefela* N. *xilefela* (become lame or crippled), cf. S. *hōλό T. *gōλ N. *xōλ* in S. *bōδλ T. *bogīδ N. *bokōδ* (deformity); S. *mulufala* = T. *mulufela* N. *.mulufela* (become tasteless, unpleasant, disagreeable), cf. S. *sula T. *jula* in S. *beulul N. bēsula* (tastelessness).

T. *bōxuln* (badness, evil); T. *teherufale* = T. *teherofofale* (become blessed, lucky), cf. T. *teho* (luck); N. *ritafela* = N. *ritifela* (become blunt), cf. *ritē* in N. *bōritē* (bluntness); T. *thuthafela* (become warm), cf. *thuthō* in T. *bothuthō* (best).

In some cases assimilation has taken place with the stem-vowel in others again with the connecting vowel e.

(ii) (a) S. *fale* T. *fale* N. *fale* adds to the idea expressed by *fela* the optional (capable) idea, i.e., the idea of entering into a certain state; in this case the state entered into is that expressed by the noun-stem. S. *fale* T. *fale* N. *fale* denotes therefore becoming of the nature or entering into the state of what is expressed by the nominal stem e.g. S. *hībōnōfela* T. *tihōzōndōfala* N. *hīxōndōfala* (become blessed, happy), cf. S. *hībōnōlo* T. *tihōzōndōlo* N. *hīxōndōlo* in S. *lehībōnōlo* T. *leletihōzōndōlo* N. *lehīxōndōlo* (blessing, good luck); T. *imafofela* N. *imafofela* (become thick, heavy), cf. *ima* in S. *bojina T. bojima N. bojina* (weight, heaviness); S. *mumafala* (become dumb) cf. *mumu* in S. *bomumu T. bomumu N. *bomumu* (dumbness) and S. *semumu T. semumu N. semumu* (a mute); S. *molofela* T. *molofela* N. *molofela* (become soft or tender), cf. *nōl* in S. *bōndō T. bōndō N. *bōndō* (softness, gentleness, meekness); S. *tōnifala* (become nice), cf. S. *tōnī T. tōnī* N. *tswai* in S. *letōnī T. letōnī N. *letswai* (salt); S. *hilokofala T. hilokofala* N. *hilokofala* (become sad, grieved, sore) cf.
S.hloko T.tlhoko N.hloko in S.bohloko T.bothoko N.bohloko (pain, grief); T.koduufale (become poor in flesh), cf. kodue in N.mokodu (lean-ness) also T.kodue in T.mokodu (lean-ness); N.latofala (become guilty), latolo in N.molate T.molate N.molato (mistake, guilt); N.latolela T.latolela

N.natolela (become strong, brave), cf. natla in S.bonatla T.bonatla N.bonatla (might, strength); S.natofala (become true), cf. note in S.'nate T.'nate N.'nate (truth); S.silofala N.silefala (become dirty, filthy), cf. S.sile N.sile in S.tyile N.thilile (dirt, filth); N.rurufale (become quite dirty), cf. rura in N.xo rura (to get dirty); S.xefala

---

1) This noun as well as the following few belong to the S.hloko T.ko N.xo noun-class, whose stems are identical in form with those of the corresponding simple verbal-stems. In forming verbalised derivatives from these noun-stems nothing extraordinary takes place - as in the other cases quoted above so also here fala is added to a non-verbal stem. It may perhaps be argued that we have here not verbalised derivatives but verbal derivatives with fala attached to the simple verbal stem. This is, however, very improbable, because, as pointed out right through this treatise, verbal derivatives are derived from verbal roots and not from simple stems. There are a few exceptions, viz: where S.isa T.isa N.isa and S.iva T.iva N.iva are attached to monosyllabic simple verbal stems, with the verbal-stems under discussion the stems are not monosyllabic. But this is really only of minor importance; the important point here, as already pointed out, is the fact that we have in these cases two types of stems, viz: a verbal stem and a non-verbal stem which are identical in form. Fala is commonly found attached to noun-stems, and why should the bases of these stems be regarded as being verbal stems when, as far as their forms are concerned, they can equally well be noun-stems? There would appear to be no reason for regarding these stems as verbal derivatives.

* The simple stems corresponding to the derivatives.
N. ateofale (become numerous), cf. ata in S. ata T. a\textsuperscript{la} N. xo ateofale (to increase); S. ateofale (become prosperous), cf. atla in S. ho atla N. xo atla (to prosper); T. kwatofale (become weak, submissive), cf. S. khoathe T. kwatathu in S. ho khoathe T. xo kwatathu (to bend down, to be beaten); S. lokofale N. lokofale (become straight, righteous), cf. loka in S. ho loka N. xo loka (to become right, righteous); T. protelofale (become small, humble), cf. neotela in S. ho neotela T. xo neotela (to lessen, to make small); T. totelofale (become larger, become increased), cf. tete in S. ho tete N. xo tete (to increase).

(b) There are about 16 verbal stems in a\textsuperscript{la} for which no corresponding non-verbal stems could be indicated, such non-verbal stems need of course not have been noun-stems, but, for convenience sake, all these verbal stems are classed here, on the understanding of course that should a non- verbal stem, other than a noun-stem, be indicated for any of these verbal stems, it will fall under the section concerned and will not be a verbalised (denominative) stem.

Examples:
N. xilifile (shake), cf. N. sikine (shake); T. kwatilofale (become dwarfed); T. khoatilofale (become bowed down);
N. diiefale (suffer physical hurt).

(c) The copulative construction with the copulative verb S. ba T. a\textsuperscript{na} N. ba (be) and a noun, conveys the same force as the verbalised (denominative) fictitious (capable) stem, e.g.
S. mentse a has a ba 'note = S. mentse a has a netofale (his words become true), cf. note (a) above; S. ka brke la lefa monna a ba solelo = S. ka brke la bolwetasai monna a ba solelo = S. ka brke la lefa monna a halofale N. ka baka la bolwetasai monna a xoleofale (because of the illness the man becomes lame), cf. S. holet N. xo (l. (i) (b) above);
S. ka beka la boholoko ba mahlô a hes ngêne e ba sekofy
N. ka beka le xo beba xa mahlô a xarwô ngwana o ba sekofy =
S. ka beka la boholoko ba mahlô a hes ngêne oa foufala
N. ka beka le xo beba xa mahlô o xarwô ngwana o a foufala
(because of the trouble with his eyes the child is becoming blind),
T. ka gone a bolawa ke malhô o mo sekofy =
T. ka gone a bolawa ke malhô o e 'foufala (because he has
trouble with his eyes he is becoming blind), cf. fru < sofû
((a) above); T. ke ntlhe ya go lwala thata monne o ba mokodue =
T. ke ntlhe ya go lwala thata monne o a koudéfala (the man
becomes thin because of his long illness), cf. koudue and
koudue ((a) above); S. lijô li ba monate T. dijô di nea
monate N. dijô di ba monate = S. lijô li a natefala
T. dijô di a natefala N. dijô di a natefala (the food be-
comes nice), cf. nate in S. monate T. monate N. monate
(pleasantness especially of taste).

(d) S. fela T. fela N. fela and S. shala T. (dialectally only),
shala N. shala have much in common: the former denoted entering
into the state expressed by the noun-stem, the latter denotes
entering into the state expressed by the corresponding
simple verbal stem; this similarity in force is especially
noticeable if fela is employed with noun-stems of the S. ho T. go
N. xo noun-class. The resulting verbalised derivatives being
in such cases actually semantically identical with the verbal
derivatives derived from roots underlying the non-verbal stems
from which the verbalised derivatives have been derived. This
is probably the reason why in some T. dialects as, e.g. Thaping,
ii) ngena is not met with, thus:
T. direkala "N. direkala (happen, come to pass), cf.

1) cf. Chapter 10 6 A II ((1)) \beta 

ii) cf. Wookoy and Brown Scwene Grammar p. 115.

iii) T. refers in these cases of course only to such dialects
as do not have ekalei.
T. go diha (to do, to act) and T. diha = N. dira (do, act); T. tilmokafale = S. liftokahela N. liftokaxala (be or become scarce), cf. T. go tilmok (to lack) and S. liftoka T. tilmokahela N. liftoka (lack, not to have); T. supafale = S. supahela (become plain, testified), cf. T. go kupe (to show, to indicate) S. supa T. supen X. supe (show, indicate).

The T. examples quoted above have been derived from the corresponding noun-stems found in the S. ho T. go N. xo noun class, and the same may be said of the following derivative stems in S. fale T. fale N. fale:

T. lalelafale (become very hot), cf. lele in T. go lele (to be very hot); T. lhopafale (become plundered or taken by force), cf. S. ho lhopo T. go lhopo N. xo lhopo (to plunder); S. etefale N. etefale (become numerous), cf. ete in S. ho ete T. go ete N. xo ete (to increase); S. etefale (become prosperous), cf. ete in S. ho ete N. xo ete (to prosper).

As a result of the similarity in their force some interchange has probably taken place in the incidence of these two suffixes, not only interdictively in T., as indicated above, but also in S. and N., e.g. S. netehala = S. netefale (become true), cf. neta in S. neta T. neta N. neta (truth); N. imoxela = T. imoxela N. imoxele (become heavy), cf. ime in T. go ime N. xo ime (become heavy with respect to a child, i.e. to become pregnant) and in S. boime T. boime N. boime (weight).

3. Verbalising (denominative)-performative S. fisea T. fisea N. fisea which adds the performative idea to the idea denoted by S. fa T. fa N. fa.

4. Verbalising (denominative)-cational (capable)-factitive S. fetae T. fetae N. fetae which adds the factitive idea to the idea denoted by S. felo T. fela N. fela.
The two suffixes mentioned under 3. and 4. above are of importance here only in so far as they sometimes convey the same force. This is probably due to the fact that and fals as well as S. i.e. T. i.e. N. i.e. and S. N. T. N. N. N are also sometimes semantically identical.

S. natufia N. natufia = S. natufate
T. natufate N. natufate (make nice) cf. natu (cf. ii)
2. (ii) (c) above); S. natufia N. natufia = S. natufate
N. natufate (make strong) cf. natu (2. (ii) (a) above),

5. Verbalising (denominative)-factitive S. se T. sase N. en
N. ena < S. e + S. e T. e + T. e N. e + N. en. This is a very rare suffix and it is given here only because of its interesting form. It will also be noticed that where verbalising (denominative)-factitive stems and verbalising (denominative)-performative stems have been derived from the same noun-stem they are semantically identical.

S. bhefa T. tlahse < S. *bhefa T. *bhefa (lose its nice taste, become sour), cf. N. bhefa (become uneatable, coagulate) and S. hfe T. tlah K. hle in S. bohle T. bohla
N. bohla (sourness); N. bhefa < N. *bhefa (disgust, excite loathing), cf. N. bhefa etc. above;
T. nonofata < T. *nonofa = T. nonofia (strengthen, enable) cf. T. nonofa (be able) and S. ene T. ene N. ena < S. *ena

i) cf. 1. (ii) (b) above as well as Chapter 17 § 7 (i) ii) (a).

ii) Obtained from my informants.
T. "none" \text{none} \text{ in S. mona} T. "mona" N. mona \text{ (man)}

T. akotche < T. "akofa = S. akofia T. akofia N. akofia \text{ (cause to hesten)} cf. S. akofa T. akofa N. akofa \text{ (make haste, be speedy, cf. l. (i) (a) above)}; T. boitche < T. "boify = T. boifia N. boifia \text{ (cause to fear, make to fear)} cf. T. boifa N. boifa \text{ (fear cf. l. (ii) (c) above)}; T. thaletoh < T. "thalefya = S. thalefia T. thalefia N. thalefia \text{ (make wise, intelligent)} cf. S. thalefia T. thalefia N. thalefia \text{ (become wise)} and S. thale T. thale N. thale in S. bohle T. bohleic N. bohle \text{ (wiseness, prudence)}; T. natetche < T. "natafya = S. natafia T. natafia N. natafia \text{ (make nice, cause to be pleasing)} cf. S. natafa T. natefa N. natafa \text{ (be or become nice cf. l. (ii) (b) above).}

6. Verbalising (denominative) (durative) S. \text{aka T. \text{ka N. ya, e.g. S. tatata} (walk a little like a child)} cf. S. tatì in S. letatà \text{ (a duck)} T. kwadie \text{ (go about as a wanderer)} cf. T. kwadi \text{ (an unknown place)}; T. kawelea \text{ (entangle)} cf. S. kwoled \text{ (string)} T. kawole \text{ (rice)} T. die N. diya \text{ (delay, detain)} cf. N. di \text{ in N. sedi} \text{ (caution, carefulness)}; T. kae = T. kave \text{ (tie a cow's legs together for milking)} cf. N. ka in N. moke \text{ (the whole of, totality)}.

7. Verbalising (denominative) (curative, intensive) S. \text{ka T. \text{ka N. \text{ke e.g. N. lodi ake (whistle of birds)} cf. S. loli T. lodi N. lodi \text{ in S. mololi T. molodi N. molodi (a whistling sound)} N. xolika \text{ (roar continually)} cf. N. xolà \text{ in N. xolà (throat, gullet)} T. galeka N. xaleka \text{ (be bitter, be breckish)} cf. S. hale T. gale N. xale \text{ in S. xale T. xole T. lospel N. xole} \text{ (porridge mixed with sour or sweet milk)} T. xoke (appear in public) cf. T. tebo (a looking, gaze) N. tevika \text{ (prick something with a needle)} cf. N. tevi \text{ in N. metevi (arrow)} T. dike N. dika \text{ (tarry)} cf. N. di \text{ in N. sedi (caution, carefulness)} S. kake T. kake N. kake \text{ (take}

i) "none" = mona in still dialectally met with.
something as a whole), cf. N.ka in N.moke (the whole of, totality); T.teletēlēke (be prudent, circumspect), cf. N.moteletēlē (a clever person).

8. Verbalising (denominative) (operative) S. be T. ba N. ba e.g. N.toloba (creep), cf. S. tālā N. tālā in N.letū N. letū (knee); N.ōiha (call cloud), cf. S. olo in moolo (howling of a dog); S. plehloko T. tīhelsloko N. plehloko (examine, inspect, survey), cf. N. plehlo (guiding, conducting); N. dība (restrain; pull up), cf. S. la N. di in S. sēli-sēli (wisdom) N. sēdi (caution, carefulness); N. kēba (catch with both hands), cf. N. ka in N. moka (the whole of, totality).

9. Verbalising (denominative) (operative (intensive)) S. be N. be, e.g. N. rinēpe (break off the handle or any end by which one can hold something), cf. rinē T. rinē N. rinē in S. serinē T. serinē N. serinē (stubble); S. tētepe (drink much and often), cf. T. tete in T. setete (a very full thing); N. kōro (bend), cf. S. kōro T. kōro N. kōro in S. lekōro T. lekōro N. lekōro (piece of wood, etc., bent like a bow); S. bēpa T. bēpa N. bēpa (cover, hide, smother), cf. N. bi in N. sahi (heap of stones covering bones); S. kepe T. kepe N. kepa (catch, e.g. with the hands), cf. N. ka in N. moka (the whole of, totality).

10. Verbalising (denominative) (stational) S. be T. ge N. ka e.g. N. tōkō (become weak, lose strength), cf. S. tōkō (a weak thing); T. fupūge (become bulged as a tottering wall), cf. T. fupu in T. lefupu (a swelling caused by a blow, prominence made by things hidden under a kaross); S. fupūhe (blossom, begin to sprout, i.e. to form buds), cf. T. fupu in T. lefupu (swelling caused by a blow) also

---

1) Only one member of the stem teletēlē has here been employed and its first syllable has been reduplicated.
11. Verbalising (denominative [confusive]) S.\textit{tele} T.\textit{tiko} N.\textit{telu} e.g. T.\textit{terel}he N.\textit{forele} (disturb, confuse), cf. S.\textit{vere} N.\textit{fare} in S.\textit{mofofare} N.\textit{mofofare} (tumult, disorder); T.\textit{ruxhutle} (brawl, riot, be rebellious), cf. S.\textit{rukhu} in S.\textit{seruuku} (noise, tumult); S.\textit{hleke} (seize and shake), cf. S.\textit{hleke} in S.\textit{mahleke} (disorder); S.\textit{khoorele} (change colour, have many colours), cf. N.\textit{kwware} (rust, stain).

12. Verbalising (persistive) S.\textit{sele} T.\textit{sele} N.\textit{selu} e.g. S.\textit{valasele} (walk hurrildly), cf. \textit{sele} in S.\textit{madale} (quickness); T.\textit{phethosela} (murmur as water flowing down a cataract), cf. \textit{phetho} in T.\textit{laphothaphotho} (waterfall); N.\textit{kotiele} (go deep into a hole), cf. \textit{kot} in S.\textit{makot} N.\textit{makoti} (hole).

13. Verbalising (denominative) (actional) S.\textit{la} T.\textit{la} N.\textit{la} e.g. S.\textit{fokela} N.\textit{fokela} (lose strength, become weak), cf. S.\textit{foko} (weak thing); S.\textit{holina} N.\textit{holina} (howl, cry aloud), cf. N.\textit{xolu} in N.\textit{oxolu} (throat, gullet); T.\textit{vyukule} (bore a hole in leather), cf. S.\textit{suko} N.\textit{vyuko} in S.\textit{mosuku} N.\textit{mosuko} (penis).

14. Verbalising (denominative) (actional-factitive) S.\textit{tea} T.\textit{tea} N.\textit{tea} e.g. S.\textit{thupeta} (take many wives), cf. S.\textit{tepu} in S.\textit{setepe} (polygamy); S.\textit{tepute} (wade), cf. S.\textit{tilapu} in T.\textit{telaputilapu} (something very wet, soaked); N.\textit{hlepele} (herd), cf. S.\textit{hlepe} in S.\textit{mohlepe} N.\textit{mohlepe} (herd, flock); T.\textit{hanote} (bite a soft watery substance with a noise), cf. N.\textit{tham} in N.\textit{mothem} (a mouthful); N.\textit{xoopure} (snatch out of the hand), cf. N.\textit{xoopuru} (one who eats so quickly that nobody else gets something to eat).
16. Verbalising (denominative) [actional (intensive)]
S.ta N.te, e.g. S.kukùta N.kokùta (knock, hammer), cf. N.koko in N.sekoko (bent stick used for making holes when planting).

e.g. N.tekone (stab with the horn), cf. N.tecere (rhinoceros); N.redata (form of butter when churning), cf. N.readi in N.laradi (butter); S.phirima T.phirima N.phirima (set of the sun, get dusk), cf. S.phiri T.phiri N.phiri in S.sephiri T.sephiri N.sephiri (secret, mystery, hidden place); N.xohlo (have a hydrocele), cf. N.xohie in N.moxhlo (hydrocele); T.tlhokôme (observe, take notice), cf. S.hlôko T.tlhokô (attention, care); T.bodu (become shrivelled as dry corn) N.bodu (be decayed, rotten), cf. S.bolu, T.bedu N.bedu in S.sebolu T.sebudu N.sebudu (rottenness, rotten thing); S.natima (press hard, pursue), cf. T.nata in T.moseta (an imperious woman); S.nyame N.nyame (dwindle, become sad), cf. N.nyae in N.jenye (sorrow, regret); N.kene (catch), cf. N.ke in N.moke (the whole of, totality).

17. Verbalising (denominative) (additive) S.ne T.ne N.ne e.g. T.mokona N.mokona (suck out marrow, sap), cf. S.mokô T.mokô N.mokô (marrow); T.egôna (stand on end as the hair, grow thick), cf. T.gope N.gope in T.bogope N.bogope (stinging nettle); S.kukuna N.kukuna (bother, make uneasy), cf. N.kuku in N.makuku (passion for teasing); T.kena N.kena (seal, cement), cf. N.ka in N.moke (the whole of, totality).

18. Verbalising (denominative) (protective) S.ta N.ta e.g. S.lola N.lola (roam about), cf. S.lale in S.molele (one who roams about); N.khupare (clench the fist), cf. N.khupa in N.sekhupa (bud); N.xwera (make friends), cf. S.xwe T.xwe N.xwe in S.xhwe (father-in-law) T.xwe (son-

1) Prefix retained and ê elided.
in-law), N.moxwe' (friend, bridegroom, son-in-law).

19. Verbalising (denominative) \( \left[ \text{punctetive(intensive)} \right] \) S. the T. the e.g. T.kêkôthe (knock), cf. N.kêkô in N.sekô (bent stick used for making holes when planting); T.kromôthe (do anything imperfectly, bungle), cf. T.kômô in T.mokômô (dirt); S.thukhutha (make a skin supple), cf. S.thukhu in S.thukhu-thukhu (a very supple kaross).

20. Verbalising (denominative)(disruptive) S. the T. the e.g. T.ratitle (roar like a lion), cf. T.ratle in T.loratle (a loud startling noise); S.pôrôle (form a line, go in a single file), cf. S.pôrô in S.mopôpôrô (row of people walking); N.hîkôtlâ (pay attention to, observe) cf. S.hîkô T.thôkô (attention, care); N.âtîla (heap up stones over bones), cf. N.bî in N.eâbi (heap of stones covering bones); N.tswitîla (prick with a needle), cf. B.tswi in N.motswi (an arrow); S.kîle (keep a flock well together) T.kûla (gather in in sewing) N.katå (clean e.g. in a vice), cf. N.kâ in N.môka (the whole of, totality).

(denominative)

21. Verbalising (factive) T.âe e.g. T.lota (whistle), cf. S.loli T.lodi N.lodi in S.moli T.molodi N.molodi (a whistling sound).

B. DEIDEOPHONIC

1. Verbalising (deideophonie) S.âe only one example could be found viz: S.ôkòkâ (scatter, disperse) cf. N.ôkô (of passing).

2. Verbalising (deideophonie)-actional(capable): S.ôla T.ôla N.ôla, only three examples found viz: S.ôfôla T.ôfôla N.ôfôla (become dark), cf. S.ôfô (of becoming dark); S.tôkrêfôla (become red, blush), cf. S.tôkrê (of being red); S.hlekefêla (become dirty, full of rubbish) cf. S.hleke (of getting spoiled, of getting in disorder).
3. Verbalising (deideophonie)(durative) S.ka, e.g. S.kopa N.kopa (spill as water out of a pot carried on the head), cf. S.kopa (of spilling); N.kwidiya (clatter or jingle as iron), cf. N.kwidi (of clattering, of jingling).

4. Verbalising (deideophonie) (durative(intensive)) S.ka, e.g. S.petic (fall backwards), cf. S.petic (of throwing away, of falling); S.phuhla (fall down), cf. S.phuhla (of falling down on the ground); S.ratho ka (stand up quickly), cf. S.ratho (of standing up quickly).

5. Verbalising (deideophonie) (deative) S.ba T.ba N.ba, e.g. S.khia (have a dirty mouth), cf. S.khi (of being dirty of the mouth); T.ngongoba (be silent) N.ngongoba (be obstinate), cf. N.ngongé (of being obstinate).

6. Verbalising (deideophonie)(operative(intensive)) S.pe N.pe, e.g. S.roporo (appear), cf. S.ropo (of appearing suddenly); N.thotho (pop, crackle), cf. S.tho N.tho (of dropping, of dripping); K.kurupa (dig), cf. N.kuru (of digging, of hollowing out).

7. Verbalising (deideophonie)(stational) S.ba N.ba, e.g. S.koete (get up), cf. S.koete in S.koete-köete (of waking up with a start); N.nyéléka (get entirely destroyed), cf. S.nyélé (of disappearing); S.kogho (appear of many people), cf. S.kogo (of appearing suddenly of many people); S.theo (appear or arrive suddenly), cf. S.theo (of appearing suddenly); S.chooga (break of a rope), cf. S.googo (of breaking); S.felekatha (be overwhelmed by a disease) of S.fekeketha (be overwhelmed by a disease).

8. Verbalising (deideophonie)(confusive) S.hla, e.g. S.phoche (boil as water and meal in a pot), cf. N.phoro

1) The possibility is not excluded that some of the examples quoted in this sub-section as well as in the following sub-sections the deiephonie stem has been derived from the verbal stem of Chapter 6.6.1.

2) Ideophonias also repeated.
in *phôrô-phôrô* (of the noise of falling water); *S. khuruhla* (make a noise with the throat, have the death-rattle), cf. *S. khuru* (of clearing the throat before talking).

9. Verbalising (deideophonic) (actional) *S. la T. le N. la* e.g. *N. kirîle* (run), cf. *S. kiri* in *S. kiri-kiri* (of a struggling haste) also *N. kidî* in *N. kidî-kidî* (of trotting with a noise); *T. ngôngôle* (deride, taunt) *N. ngôngôle* (be obstinate), cf. *N. ngôngô* (of being obstinate); *S. nokola* (pick up one by one), cf. *S. noko* in *S. noko-noko* (of picking up one by one); *S. geleula* (strike), cf. *S. geleu* (of hitting).

10. Verbalising (deideophonic) (protractive) *S. me T. ma N. ma* e.g. *T. thereme* (make a rough and loud sound), cf. *S. têere* in *S. têere-têere* (of changing like pieces of iron); *S. têelima* (glitter, flash), cf. *S. têellî* (of seeing a little); *S. fukhema* (fall down quietly, squat down frequently), cf. *S. fukha* (of sitting down heavily); *N. ñêexême* (flap of a woman’s dress while dancing), cf. *N. ñêaxe* (of flapping).

11. Verbalising (deideophonic) (punctative) *T. ra N. ra* e.g. *T. ngôngora* (cause to complain) *N. ngôngora* (be obstinate), cf. *N. ngôngô* (of being obstinate); *N. phôrôra* (fall down as water), cf. *N. phôrô* in *N. phôrô-phôrô* (of falling water).

12. Verbalising (deideophonic) [punctative (intensive)]

*S. the* e.g. *S. phêphêthê* (speak very much), cf. *S. pehe* (of speaking very much); *S. phuphutha* (wear a cost trailing on the ground) *N. phphutha* (clap the hands), cf. *S. phphu* (of flapping, of fluttering).

13. Verbalising (deideophonic) (disruptive) *S. ila T. ila N. ila* e.g. *N. kuku* (take a deep draw from a pipe), cf. *N. kuku* (run after a train).

1) See also *S. chuchuwa* (run of a train); this verbal stem is probably based upon the noise made by a running train; I could ascertain no ideophone *chuchu*.
2) See also *N. tilêla* (take long steps) and *N. tilêla* (of standing with legs apart); it seems as if in this case the first syllable of the ideophonic stem has been reduplicated and the resulting form used as a verbal stem.
in N.kukuku (of taking a deep draw from a pipe);
S.korore N.konrore (stop noisily, in N. also be obstinate) cf. S.kora (cf fighting, of working hard);
S.rokoto T.rokoto (tremble, shake, totter) cf. N.rokō in N.rokoro (of shaking about as e.g. jelly, of moving about while sleeping).

16. Verbalising(ideophonic)(factitive) T.fo, e.g. T.ryota (shine or burn brightly, shine as a glow worm), cf. S.myoli N.myodi (of flashing).

C. ADJECTIVAL

1. (1) Verbalising(declarative) S.ta T.ta N.ta, e.g. S.tak N.tak (grow high, become high) cf. N.ako (long);
N.ako (become long), cf. T.ako N.ako (long); 1
N.toko (become long), cf. S.toko T.toko N.toko
(long), N.nyenyo (be small), cf. T.nyenyo (small).

(ii) For a definition of fo cf. I. above. There are only 7 verbalising(declarative) stems. In addition to those quoted in (i) above see also: S.θain (avoid)
N.θain (to be finicky), cf. N.θain (thin, slim); S.θain
(bo violent) T.θain (from, look sorrowful or disappointed)
N.θain (bo or become ugly, bo or become bad, bo violent),
cf. S.θain T.θain N.θain (bad); N.θain (got increased), cf.
T.θain N.θain (many).

As will be noticed from the examples quoted above, fo has sometimes acquired the function usually denoted by naka, viz. that of entering into a certain state.

(b) All verbalising(declarative) stems are intrasitive excepting S.θain (avoid).

2. (1) (a) Verbalising(declarative)-actional(capable)
S.θain T.θain N.θain, e.g.
S.tako T.tako N.tako (become long), cf. T.tako
N.tako (long); S.tako T.tako N.tako (become

1) The final syllable of the adjectival stem has been elided here.
green], cf. S. oal T. oal H. oal (green).
(b) If the adjectival stem is monosyllabic a nasal is
prefixed to it, and where possible strengthening of the
stem-consonant takes place, e.g. S. mafela (became bad),
cf. S. no T. no H. no (bad); N. mafelo (become new), cf.
N. no (now); S. mafelo T. mafelo (become now), cf. S. ohe
T. ohe (now); S. mafelo (become pretty, clean), cf. S. tlo
H. tlo (pretty); S. tlo H. tlo (become black),
cf. S. tlo H. tlo (black).

T. mafelo (T. mafelo) is an exception to the above
rule.
(c) In the following cases the adjectival stems have been
affected in various ways:

i. The stem-vowel has been assimilated to the connecting
vowel of olo, e.g. S. olo T. olo H. olo (become pretty,
clean), cf. S. tlo T. tlo H. tlo (pretty).

ii. The final syllable has been elided before sana has been
suffixed, e.g. S. olo T. olo H. olo (become short), cf. S. olo
T. olo H. olo (short); S. olo T. olo H. olo (become grey), cf.
S. olo T. olo (grey).

iii. The final stem-vowel has been assimilated with the
first stem-vowel, e.g. S. olo = olo T. olo H. olo
(become pale, yellow), cf. S. olo T. olo H. olo (yellow),
S. mafelo (become thick), cf. S. tlo T. tlo H. tlo (thick).

(i) (a) S. olo T. olo H. olo adds to the idea expressed by
sana the additional (capable) idea of entering into a
certain state, in this case the state entered into is that
expressed by the adjectival stem S. olo T. olo H. olo.

1) It is perhaps noteworthy that although Sotho has a fair
number of adjectives indicating colour, the suffix olo is
rather sparingly used with these. The examples quoted in
this § should appear to be essentially exhaustive.
(ii) tlo is however attached to be cf. 1. above.
(iii) s ana has been assimilated with the connecting vowel o
of olo cf. (c) 1. above.
denotes, therefore, becoming of the nature or entering into the state expressed by the adjective stem. In addition to the examples already quoted above, note also the following: T.nteifile (become black) cf. T.nteio (black); T.ryvofile (become small, fem) cf. T.ryvo (small); T.nteifile H.nteifile (become many) cf. T.nteio H.nteio (many); S.motofile H.ryvofile (become numerous) cf. S.mote H.mote (many); S.ryvofile T.ryvofile H.ryvofile (become white) cf. S.ryvo T.ryvo H.ryvo (white); S.motofile (become dark brown) cf. S.mote (brown); S.chitifile (become round) cf. S.chite (round); S.ryvofile H.ryvofile (become small, short) cf. T.ryvenc (small).

(b) The copulative construction with the copulative verb S. br T.ana N.ana (be) and an adjective conveys the same force as the verbalizing(dejective)-actional(capable) stem, e.g. S.chite o be necte = S.chiteo nectofile (the money becomes more, i.e. it increases) necte (cf. (a) above); T.madi o mnc nectei H.tholelto o br. o nteio = T.madi n c nteifile H.tholelto o r nteifile (the money becomes more, i.e. it increases), T.nteio H.nteio (cf. (a) above), S.jone be br botlca T.ajenca be br botlca = H.bynga be br botlca S.jone be br telofile T.ajenca be r telofile H.bynga be r telofile (the grass becomes green) telc (cf. (i) (r) above).

D. RwYFIIAII

I could find only two examples, both having the verbalizing(dejective)-actional(capable) fale as suffix: T.ryfofale (become for) - cf. T.ryfofale (for). The final syllable of the adverbial stem has been dropped before fale was suffixed, and T.ryfofale = T.ryfofale (become true) - cf. S.ruru T.ryro H.ryro (truly), in the case of ryfofale the final vowel of the adverbial stem has been assimilated to the connecting vowel of fale.

1) There are about 28 verbalizing(dejective)-actional (capable) stems.

II) When the suffix en ce is employed the n of nteio is dropped cf. 1. (ii) (a) above.
CHAPTER 21

Compound Verbal Stems

A compound verbal stem consists of two stems of which at least one must be a verbal stem. The various types of compound stems will now be dealt with.

A. Verbal stems either fully or partly reduplicated.

Fully reduplicated stems have mostly been derived from simple stems, although there are a few derivative stems which have been reduplicated. Partly reduplicated stems, on the other hand, have been derived only from derivative stems.

To indicate reduplicated simple stems the term iterative will be employed.

To indicate fully or partly reduplicated derivative stems the designation of the suffix concerned will be added by a hyphen to the term iterative, and the same scheme will be adopted in the designation of derivatives formed by adding a suffix to the root of the final member of a compound consisting of two simple stems. No differentiation is made in the scheme of designation as there seems to be no semantic difference in the iterative force conveyed by these stems.

(i) Fully reduplicated stems:

(((1.))) Reduplicated simple stems, and derivatives formed by adding a suffix to the root of the final member of such a compound.

1. Iterative stems:

(i) (a) As a rule the simple stem is reduplicated unaltered, e.g. T.atla-atla (kiss much, fondle) cf. T.atla N.atla (kiss); T.bela-bela (bubble up as a fountain) cf. S.bela

1) A definition of this term will be given below.
(b) In the following cases the terminal a of the
initial simple stem is assimilated to its stem-vowel:
Buclu-bula (turn over), cf. S. bula T. bula N. bula (open);
S. titka-titka (turn on all sides), cf. S. titka (dance).
(ii) (a) In the majority of cases the iterative stem has
the same force as the frequentative stem i.e. it denotes
that the action is done over and over again e.g.
E. gale-gale (scratch all over), cf. S. gale T. gale N. gale
(corpus); N. kohr-kohr (p. a. often), cf. S. kohr T. kohr
N. kohr (pass); T. gale-gale (correc a lot), cf. T. gale
K. kohr (corpus); N. kohr-kohr (keep on biting), cf. N. kohr
(bite); N. koch-koch (pull about), cf. T. koch N. koch (pull);
S. kohe-kohle (be always on the move, visit much, run),
cf. S. kohele (visit, be on the move); N. kohre-kohrela
(keep on poking with the finger) of N. kohrela (touch with
the finger); S. kohle-kohle (shake violently) N. kohle-
kohle (swing to and fro, rock), cf. N. kohle (shake be
loose); T. khehr-kehr (knock, rrp or tap several times
or again and again) Cf. T. khehr (knock, tap or rrp once);
S. lehr-lehr (with very much, be eager), cf. S. lehr (desire);
S. kohr-lua (come with force), cf. S. lua (gallop);
K. leom-leom (keep on biting), cf. S. leom T. leom N. leom
(bite); T. gule-gule (rain in a thick stream, rain heavily)
cf. S. lutte T. lutte N. lutte (look); S. phule-phule (pick
up quickly i.e. pick and peck at a high speed), cf. S. phule
(pick); N. ere-ere (kick about, kick at somebody swimming)
cf. S. ehr T. ehr N. ehr (kick); N. rote-rote (keep on turning),
cf. N. rote (turn); N. gale-gale (hop along or about), cf. N. gale
(jump up); S. sunn-sun (go into a person often), cf. S. sun T. sun
N. sun (take, gather).

1) cf. Chapter 19.
(b) But often the iterative stem denotes a diminution of the action expressed by the simple stem. The idea here is that although the action may be performed repeatedly, it is on each occasion performed only on a very small scale e.g. T.kweete-kweete (drive a little), cf. T.kweete (drive); S.khotheta-khotheta (make a slight noise), cf. S.khotheta N.kwatho (touch lightly with the finger); S.khône-khône (snore a little), cf. S.hône (snore); N.léka-léka (do a little here and there, try all over), cf. S.lêke T.lêka N.lêka (try); N.sôke-sôke (drive along gradually), cf. N.sôke (drive cattle along), S.thónya-thónya (beat weakly as the heart of a dying person), cf. S.thónya N.thónya (beat of the heart), T.thôle-thôle (remain a while, sojourn for a short time), cf. S.hlôle T.hlôle N.hlôle (remain, spend some time).

(c) Iterative stems may be either transitive or intransitive, e.g. N.kwapha-kwapha intransitive (run over, overflow of a liquid), cf. T.kwapha N.kwapha transitive (push out with the hand, grain from a vessel); T.bala-bala intransitive (babble, chatter), cf. S.bala T.bala N.bala transitive (read, count); S.bua-bua intransitive (babble, talk a lot), cf. S.bua T.bua transitive (speak); T.atla-atla transitive (kiss much, fondle), cf. T.atla N.atla transitive (kiss); N.feta-feta transitive (pass often), cf. S.feta T.feta N.fètê transitive (pass); T.boya-boya N.boya-boya intransitive (return again and again, go to end fro), cf. S.boça T.boya N.boya intransitive (return); S.reba-reba intransitive (roam in a narrow circle, be flying round) N.reba-reba intransitive (hop along), cf. N.reba intransitive (hop).

In the majority of cases the iterative stem is transitive if the corresponding simple stem is transitive,
and intransitive if the corresponding simple stem is intransitive, but, as can be seen from examples quoted above, this is not always the case.

(d) In some cases the semantic relation between the iterative stem and the corresponding simple stem is vague, i.e.

T. bôta-bôta (speak in a low murmuring tone) of S. bôta (cry as e.g. a child); S. kôba-kôba T. kôba-kôba

N. kôba-kôba (be restless, potter about, go from house to house), of T. kôba N. kôba (drive away with contempt);

N. kôtha-kôtha (move from place to place) of T. kôtha

N. kôtha (gather together at different times, gather strugglers together); S. phêtha-phêtha (flee, run away),

of S. phêtha N. phêtha (break, burst); S. têna-têna (work here and there, work at many things, beat) of

S. têna T. têna N. têna (tire, disgust).

(e) For about 50 of the 250 iterative stems no corresponding simple stem could be indicated, e.g.:

N. bôka-bôka (be weak, be unable to keep yourself upright),

S. hêra-hêra (roam about, look for something, try to find here and there), S. hôka-hôka (shake), T. thôna-thôna (be restless), S. jôba-jôba (jump, run, flee), S. kasa-kasa (run with short steps under a heavy load), N. kôtha-kôtha (swing the shoulders when walking), T. kôtha-kôtha (be hasty in action).

(f) There are several pairs of frequentative and iterative stems having in each case a common corresponding simple stem, such stems are sometimes although not always semantically identical, e.g.

S. chôka-chôka (go from place to place, give orders) and

S. chôka-chôka (go from one to another), cf. S. chôka (visit); S. têka-têka (run shaking oneself) and S. têka-têka (go about working here and there), N. têka-têka (rock, shake about) of N. têka (shake about while floating upon
the water); N.kxakxama (stammerer) and N.kxema-kxema (stammerer) cf. S.kxema N.kxema (strangle, stick in the throat), N.kxekxephe (plaster) and N.kxephe-kxephe (run over, overflow) cf. T.kxephe N.kxephe (push out with the hand as grain from a vessel, smooth out wet clay with the hand); N.punutle (walk to and fro, walk in a zigzag way, walk quickly) and T.putla-putla (seek about very much, seek diligently, thoroughly) N.putle-putle (roam about often) cf. N.putla (roam about); S.bobe (prattle, babble, speak angrily) and S.bera-bera (talk foolishly) cf. S.bera T.bera (talk foolishly, incessantly); N.kakeke (trample a floor to make it even) and N.kate-kate (take a few steps) cf. S.kate T.kate N.kate (trample down).

(g) There are several pairs of multiplicative and iterative stems having in each case a common corresponding simple stem, each stems are sometimes although not always semantically identical e.g. S.tekena (work here and there, work hard, beat repeatedly) and S.teke-teke (work here and there, work at many things, beat), cf. S.teko T.teko N.ko (tire, disgust); S.tohaka (walk about, change one's residence frequently) N.tohaka (go again and again to the same place) and N.tohaka-toba (walk about, move from one place to another) cf. S.tohaka (go straight to, pick out a person amongst several); N.kaseke (scatter wide apart) and T.gase-gase (scatter about in all directions), cf. S.gase T.gan N.gan (scatter); N.tobake (make a big rustling or rattling sound as does rain) and N.toba-toba (rain with force; shower down) cf. N.tobake (make a rustling sound as does rain); N.tobake (kick very much) and N.toke-reke (kick about, kick as somebody swimming), cf. S.reke T.reke N.reke (kick); S.rebake (fly about, roam about, walk quickly) and S.reba-reba (roam in a narrow circle, be flying round), N.reba-reba (jump or hop along), cf. N.reba (hop), T.tibake (stump the ground very hard) and F.tibake-tibake

1) in T.kakeke-kakeke (trample, gallop) the frequentative stem has been reduplicated.
(trample, stamp with the feet) cf. S.tiba T.tiba N.tiba
(stamp with the foot).

2. Iterative-applicative, e.g.
T.boy-a-bole (return again and again to), cf. T.boy-a-boy
N.boy-a-boy (return again and again) and S.boy T.boy
N.boy (return); S.leba-labela (creve for, desire much),
cf. S.leba-leba (wish very much, be eager) and S.leba
(desire); T.leba-labela (look over for another, choose
for), cf. T.leba-leba N.leba-leba (look from one to another,
look in all directions) cf. S.leba T.leba N.leba (look);
N.teka-teka (look to and fro et), cf. N.teka-teka (look
to end fro) and N.teka (superintend).

3. Iterative-iterational (capable), e.g.
T.gase-gasega (be thrown or scattered about in all
directions), cf. T.gase-gase (scatter or throw about in
all directions) and S.hase T.gase N.xeexa (scatter).

4. Iterative-performative, e.g.
N.bola-hodiša (cause to babble), cf. N.bola-bola (babble)
and T.bola (tell news) N.bola (talk); S.reba-rebeisa (cause
to run, cause to pursue), cf. S.reba-reba (run) no simple
stem; T.thema-themaa (bother by asking many questions or
seeking many things), cf. N.thema-thema (do a number of
things at the same time, speak in a confused way) no
simple stem.

((2)) Reduplicated derivative stems:

1. Iterative-factitive, e.g.
S.binya-binya (walk with quick short steps as one carrying
a heavy load), cf. S.bina T.bine N.bina (dance); S.luta-s-
luta (walk slowly) cf. S.luna T.duna N.duna (sit down).

1) It should be noted that suffixes are added to the root of
the second of the two simple stems forming an iterative stem.
N. runya-runya (move about), cf. S. runya T. runya N. runya (move under ground like a mole, throb as e.g. the heart, the arteries) and T. runa (come up as a molehill).

2. Iterative-actional(destructive) e.g.
T. tlola-tlola N. tlola-tlola (leap about, hop about), cf. S. tlola T. tlola N. tlola (jump) and S. tla T. tle N. tle (come).

3. Iterative-actional(capable) e.g.
T. reale-reale (go through and through a land), cf. T. reale (pass through) and N. rale (run).

4. Iterative-performative, e.g.
S. ise-ise (in ho ise-ise = after a while, in the course of time) N. ise-ise (do a bit here and a bit there), cf. S. gna T. ya N. ya (go); S. buse-buse < S. *boisa-boisa (drive home a cow that is calving i.e. drive it very slowly causing it to stop very frequently), cf. S. bu sa T. buse N. busa < S. *boisa T. *boisa N. *boisa (cause to turn) and S. boon T. boya N. boya (turn).

3) Partly reduplicated stem:

1. Iterative-applicative, e.g.
S. nèka-nèkèla (approach stealthily) no nèka-nèka or nèka-nèka cf. S. nèkèla (approach stealthily) and N. nèka (do something slowly) N. nèba-sèba (whisper to), cf. no nèba-séba or sèba-sèba cf. S. sèba N. sèba (tell secretly to, whisper to) and S. sèba T. sèba N. sèba (backbite, speak evil of).

2. Iterative-performative-reciprocal e.g.
S. bui-buisa (converse a little with one another), cf. S. buisane (converse with one another), S. buisa T. buisa (cause to speak) and S. buis T. bua (speak).

3. Iterative-actional(destructive) e.g.
S. thebo-thebola (scratch slightly) cf. S. thebola (make holes) no thebe.
4. Iterative-stational(destructive), e.g.
S.feto-fetoba N.feto-fetoxa (change often; be inconsistent) cf. S.fetoba T.fetosa N.fetoxa (change) and S.feta T.feto N.feta (pass).

5. Iterative-actional(intensive) e.g.
T.kôrekôreta (stammer), no kôreta and no kôre.

B. Compounding of different verbal stems:

1. Simple verbal stem + simple verbal stem; such compounds are again of two types viz: 1)

1) Where both stems are unaltered e.g.,
T.gaba-duke (scoop out with fingers as a mellon) cf., T.gaba (scoop out) and N.duke (poke, reke), N.kxekka-bua (rub or polish till the skin comes off) cf. N.kxekka (hook as a thorn in the clothes) and S.bua T.bua N.bua (skin); T.phenya-dika (be broken up and scattered about) cf. T.phenya (burst) and S.dika T.dika N.dika (go around,

1) There are stems about which one cannot be sure whether they were formed by (a) adding a suffix to the root of the final member of a compound consisting of a reduplicated simple stem or (b) as a result of a partial reduplication of an existing derivative stem. Such, i.e., the case with the iterative-reciprocal stems as can be seen from the following examples:
S.feta-fetena (surpass each other only a little) T.feta-fetena N.feta-fetena (surpass each other in length or height) cf. S.fetena T.fetena N.fetena (pass or surpass each other), S.feta-feta (pass a little) N.feta-feta (pass often) and S.feta T.feta N.feta (pass); S.haer-haera (disperser gradually), cf. S.haera N.haera (become dispersed, go away from one another) T.haer-gea (scatter or throw about in all directions) and S.haera T.haera (scatter).

It is of course quite likely that the meaning of the stems will sometimes indicate which of the above-mentioned two types of derivation was employed.
surround) N.tsatsa-oka (walk on the toes) cf. N.tsatsa (walk on the toes) and N.oke (soar over); S.tlatle-bêhe (place carelessly, do negligently) cf. N.tlatle (be weakminded) and S.bêhe (place).

The semantic relation between the compound stem and the two component simple stems is not always very clear, e.g.
T.ake-têtêwa (be too long-tongued) cf. S.akeha T.ake N.ake (swing about) and T.êtêwa (have a too long tongue); T.kaene-ritha (take a firm stand i.e. see to it that one does not glide) cf. T.kaene (stand solidly or immovable) and N.ritha (glide off); T.phatla-dika (lie flat and spread out as an open country) cf. S.phahle (unload) and S.likë T.dika N.dika (surround, go around); T.gege-utla (tear in pieces ravenously, knock or pull about), no gege but cf. S.hehola T.gegoëla N.xaëola (tear, rend) and S.utla T.utla N.utla (snatch away).

2. Where the terminal a of the first simple stem is assimilated to the stem-vowel of that simple stem, e.g.
T.fëfe-utla (toes or drive about as the wind) cf. N.fëfa (be light) and S.utla T.utla N.utla (snatch away); N.xoëlo-bothe (keep up on the same place), no xoëlo but cf. N.xoëla (bind) and S.bothe T.bothe N.bothe (lie down of cattle after feeding in N. also: rake up); S.xoëla-beta (wrestle, fight) cf. S.xoëla T.kwela (throw off, rear as a horse in S. also: parry) and S.beta T.beta N.beta (seize with the hands, choke, throw on the ground); N.fôrê-fothë (keep on stroking), cf. S.fôra T.fôra N.fôra (pleat, dress, curl the hair, idea: stroke) and N.fothë (rub, stroke); N.fôrê-xoîle (keep on stroking) cf. S.fôra T.fôra N.fôra (cf. above) and S.xoîle T.golîha N.xoîle (rub).

Derivatives-suffixes may be added to the root of the second component of compounds consisting of two...
(3) Simple verbal stem + derivative verbal stem e.g.: 

N. kela-ketēla (squeeze tightly together) cf. N. kela (smooth),
S. keta T. keta N. keta (tread or trample down) and T. katēla
N. ketēla (press down, fill up). I could find no kela-ketēla, kela-katēla,
or koletēla. T. phara-gatlēla (force one's way in, break in upon),
cf. N. phara (step over, pass) and T. gatēla (strike with a stick)
N. xatēla (throw with a stone). I could find no phara-gatēla or
xatēla. T. kuku-tilhomole (root out), cf. S. kuke N. kuke (take
up, lift up) T. kuka (carry a child on the back), N. kōme
T. tlhōme N. hlōme (plant) and T. tlhomole (pull up by the roots
as in transplating). I could find no kuku-tilhōme or kuku-tilhomole.
N. kxoło-kxolē (pluck, pull, tug); cf. N. kxōhle (be loose, shake),
S. khōla T. kxole N. kxole (pull out, pull) and S. kha N. kxe
(pluck). I could find no kxōhlo-kxe, kxoło-kxole or kxotēla.

Sometimes only the second component verbal stem could be
indicated, e.g. N. kxolo-kxwhēla = N. kxolo-kxwhēla (shake), cf.
S. kwhēla T. kxōthēla N. kxōhēla (shake, be loose); N. kxolo-kxothēla
(beat off, knock off), cf. N. kxōthēla (cut off, chop off); N. kēlo-bētēla
(keep on chopping until the tree falls down) cf. S. bētēla T. betēla
N. bētēla (cut, carve); N. bōxō-dōme (make a noise, sing well), cf.
S. lume T. dōme N. jume (roar); T. fera-tlhathēna (be in a state of con-
fusion, be in a disorderly state), cf. T. tlhatēna (make a noise as if
things knocking together or as reeds in the female puberty ceremony)
also T. ferā-ferā (spread about); T. gēthē-bētēla (speak loudly, roar
angrily and suddenly), cf. S. bētē (cry as e.g. a little child) also
T. gelēkētēsa (talk much and noisily); S. khōle-kenya (speak with force
call loudly, sing loudly), cf. kenya in S. kenya-kenya (endeavour to
work hard); S. chihpi-ritēsa (slip on the ground), cf. S. rītēsa
N. rītēsa (slide along, drag oneself); N. mulekēsa (roast) cf. S. tleka
roula

1. It is possible that the first members of these compounds are non-
verbal stems. If this can be proved with any one of these compounds
then such a compound will have to be transferred to the $f$ concerned
(cf. below). In the meantime, these compounds are for convenience
sake classed together.
C. Noun-stem + verbal stem, e.g.

N.bole-bole (wind round, wrap round) cf. bole found in S.bole T.mole N.mole < *mohole (body) and N.betla (carry wrapped up in a cloth); N.fere-fehla (cause disturbance, cause trouble) cf. fere in N.moferfero (disturbance) and S.fehla T.fetha N.fehla (churn, rub between the hands); T.tihatla-rapa (do something badly, clumsily, bungle) cf. biaha in S.mohla (bristling hair of a pig or a dog) and N.rapa (bind); S.khophi-rita (scratch), cf. kgwapha in T.ekgapha (scab, itch) and S.rita N.rita (slide along, grind off); N.kolu-ëpa (make a cleft or a crack) cf. S.kolu T.kolu N.kolu (the part of the head under the chin) and S.ëpa T.ëpa N.ëpa (strike), T.kagke-buële (speak or act rashly), cf. kagkae in T.bokgakga (arrogance, unpleasantness of manner); T.buëla (rebuke, scold) and S.bue T.bue (speak) no kagke-bue; N.kolwa-ëua (swing about, shake) cf. koloe in T.sekolona (dry and shrivelled skin) and N.ëua (stir).

In the following cases the final syllable of the noun-stem is elided; e.g. T.pope-duma N.pope-duma (talk indistinctly, roar indistinctly as a distant lion), cf. pepele in S.lopelele (one who sings badly) and S.duma T.duma N.duma (roar, thunder), N.kolé-ëua (shake about), cf. koléa in T.sekolona (dry and shrivelled skin) and N.ëua (stir).

D. Ideophonic stem + verbal stem:

S.tsetse-bëha (place something heavy on the ground), cf. N.tee (of being upright) and S.bëha (place); S.ôakha-ëtaa (cause shoes to squeak, walk quickly), cf. ôakha (of running, of rushing) and S.ëtaa (do); T.kuru-ëtaa (coo as a dove, make a mournful noise) N.kuru-ëtaa (growl, snarl) cf. kuru in S.kuru-kuru (of making a cooing noise, like a baby, or a croaking noise, like a frog) and T.ëtaa N.ëtaa (imitate); S.kiri-ëtaa N.kiri-ëtaa (dart, rush) cf. kiri
in S. kiri-kiri (of struggling) and S. etse (do) T. etse N. etse (imitate),

E. Adjectival stem + verbal stem e.g.
N. sééé-nêka (avoid carefully something which can harm or defile, idea: make yourself thin or slender) cf. N. sééé (thin, slender) and N. nêka (go away secretly).

F. Miscellaneous compounds:

1. There are verbal stems which could only be partly analysed, but any rate not to such an extent as to allow of their being classed under a definite sub-head e.g.
T. gélé-bétla (make a shrieking noise) cf. T. gélé-bétêga (speak loudly, roar angrily and suddenly - cf. B. 40 above);
S. kolo-koche (fight) cf. S. kokohome (rock) for which no corresponding simple stem kochrome could be indicated, also
S. chokoche (chase, urge); T. póró-pštîha (leak much as a house in which the pattering of dripping water is heard) cf.
S. póró (roar) and N. pštîa (belch); T. köld-bétla (be naked) cf. S. sòle T. yâle N. sòle (moul); N. xola-xapa (become dry of the throat or mouth) cf. N. xolapa (become dry of throat or mouth) and T. galala N. xalala (be bitter, brakeish) no corresponding simple stem could be indicated;
T. bêre-peter (drive away, send off) cf. S. bêtea T. bêtse N. bêtâ (beat, throw); T. phuru-phûtse (feel about), cf. S. phutse (sprinkle); T. bêlê-bêtêga (bellow much as a cow for her calf, fry much as a cross child), cf. T. bêtêga (as in bêtêga pelo - be heart weary) and N. bêtla (make sad); S. khili-bîtehâ (roll down), cf. S. bilika (make round); T. kudo-bîtehâ (flee from place to place, move about quickly) and T. bidi-bêtêga (run fast) cf. bidi in S. mobidi-bidi (see one behind the other) cf. a group number of things, N. xola-xalê (long impatiently for something) cf. S. xalale T. galala N. xalalo (want more of something), S. hale (be a glutton) and S. kate T. kate N. kate (tramp, tramp).
There is a certain number of compound stems consisting of a verbal stem and a noun-stem. The difference between this type of compound and the other types referred to above is especially noteworthy in that here conjugational terminatives and derivative suffixes are attached to the root of the first component part, whereas in the other cases they are attached to the root of the second component part. The noun-stem mostly employed is *pelo* (heart), e.g.

- **T.pielo-pelo** (sob, sigh) cf. **S.piia** (sigh, be moved)
- **T.piia** (be moved): **N.piia-pelo** (trouble, worry)
- **S.piia-pelo** **N.piia (beat, pound); T.piia-pelo** (expect, hope) cf. **T.koia-pelo** (look around) and **T.koia-pelo** (have expected)
- **T.piia-pelo** (be heart weary), cf. **N.piia** (make sad); **T.piia-pelo** (ease the heart), cf. **T.piia-pelo** (have ceased the heart); **T.piia-pelo** (be grieved), cf. **T.piia** (keep silent and refuse to tell the news)
- **S.piia-pelo** **T.piia-pelo** **N.piia-pelo** (observe, take notice of); cf. **S.piia** **T.piia** **N.piia** (go), **S.piia** **T.piia** **N.piia** (go for, to) and **S.piia-pelo** **T.piia-pelo** (attention, carefulness)
- **S.piia-pelo** **T.piia-pelo** **N.piia-pelo** (inherit) cf. **S.piia** **T.piia** **N.piia** (eat) and **S.piia-pelo** **N.piia-pelo** (inheritance) **T.piia-pelo** (inheritance)
- **T.piia-pelo** (visit) cf. **S.piia** **T.piia** **N.piia** (eat) and **S.piia-pelo** (abundance of food), **T.piia-pelo** (call upon), **T.piia-pelo** (call upon each other)

b. There are 23 stems, 14 trisyllabic and 9 quadrisyllabic, which have *ala* as final component part and which indicate walk or move along in some way or another, e.g.

- **T.e-ila N.e-ila** (walk slowly, painfully dragging the feet along), cf. **S.e-ila** **T.e-ila** **N.e-ila** (go); **T.e-ila N.e-ila** (walk with sore feet, walk with turned out toes) **haya-ila**?
- **T.e-ila** (put down), cf. **N.e-ila** (go slowly) **haya-ila**?
- **T.e-ila** (give), cf. **N.e-ila** (toddle along) **taya-ila**?
- **T.e-ila** (beat), cf. **N.e-ila** (crawl on the knees)
Appendix A.

Roots

c. The roots given in this Appendix are syllabic (simple or derived) and of the form consonant plus vowel. In isolating these roots practically only simple verbal stems in their multi-functional conjugational form have been compared. A syllable consisting of a consonant plus a vowel is taken to be a root if contained in at least two simple verbal stems or else in one simple verbal stem, provided that in such a case it has also an UB counterpart. No attempt has therefore been made to give either all Sotho roots of the above form or all stems possibly derived from the roots actually given below. Such an attempt at exhaustiveness will result in the rewriting from the dictionaries of long lists of stems, without benefit to

b. Alphabetical order: Roots commencing in S.h

T.e N.kx have been classed immediately after ęż, those in N.kx after S. uh T.e N.kx, those in S. ɯh T. th N. ɯh after ęż, those in S. ɯh T. ɯ N.kx after k, those in S. ɯh T. ɯw N. ɯw after S. khu N. khu N. kwu, those in S. kx T. ɯw N. ɯw after ku, those in N. pha after nā, those in S. ɯ S. uh T. ɯ N. ɯ N. ɯ according to their root-vowels, those in S. th ū T. thw N. thw after thu, those in S. uh T. uh N. uh after to and according to their root-vowels. Roots with ą or ą as vowels have been classed before those with ęż or ęż as vowels, and roots S. ɯ T. ɯi N. ɯi and S. ɯu T. du N. du immediately after those

1) cf. Chapter 2. ą.
commencing with h.

c. The UB. roots quoted below have been obtained from N.UB.W. Chapter III, and the Sotho root given opposite each UB. root is semantically identical with the latter.

**SOThO ROOT**

1. **S.a T.a N.a** (idea of expansion in width and breadth):
   S.ala T.ala (spread out, plaster), S.eta T.eta
   N.eta (multiply, increase), S.eta N.eta (prosper, cause to increase).

2. **S.a T.a N.a** (idea of contact):
   S.an T.mna N.mna (touch, hint at, concern), S.apa
   N.apa (touch upon a subject, think much).

3. **S.a T.a N.a** (idea of dividing, splitting):
   S.abo T.abo N.abo (divide, distribute), N.chla
   (open, e.g. chla motha dikaya = open somebody's cheeks),
   T.eru N.eru (cut open a swelling).

4. **S.be T.be** (idea of lying across):
   T.bea (hedge, make a hedge), S.beena (put bits of thorn reed in, to prevent the water from splashing out), cf.
   S.bea (= S.beena).

5. **S.bê T.bê** (idea of crying, speaking):
   S.bêra T.bêra (talk foolishly), S.bêta (cry of a child), S.bêcha (speak much).

6. **S.bê T.bê N.bê** (idea of cutting, carving):
   S.bêka T.bêka N.bêka (cut meat into small pieces),
   S.bêla T.bêla N.bêla (cut, carve) cf. also
   N.bêtha (best).

7. **S.bi T.bi N.bi** (idea of uttering a sound):
   T.bïa (express thanks), N.bïâ (tell lies), T.bïse
   (scold), S.bïse, T.bïse N.bïse (sing) cf. also S.bïse
   T.bïse N.bïse (call) and AK. S. ho re bítô (say).
6. S.bâ N.bâ (idea of uttering a sound):
   S.bâ (low, belch) N.bâ (speak), cf. also
   N.bôlô (cry for help) and S.bôle T.bôle
   N.bêlô (bark).

9. S.hâ T.hâ N.hâ (idea of uttering a sound):
   S.hôkê T.bôkê N.bôkê (sing the praises of, thank),
   S.bôpê T.bôpê N.bôpê (roar).

10. S.bû T.bû N.bû (idea of breaking, tearing):
    S.bû T.bû N.bû (skin), S.bû N.bûxê (skin),
    S.bu N.bu N.bun (open), T.bùn N.bûn (reap,
    tear off a thing held in the mouth), N.bûn (reap).

11. S.dî T.dî N.dî (idea of throwing down):
    S.dîn T.dîn N.dîn (throw down, cast down), cf.
    N.dîdîmî (sink into water).

12. S.dî T.dî N.dî (idea of rotation):
    T.dîm (make a circle), S.dîk T.dîk N.dîk
    (surround).

13. N.âk (idea of heaviness):
    N.âkê (be too difficult).

14. S.lu T.lu N.lu (idea of stirring):
    N.lu (stir: something stiff), S.lû N.lû (stir,
    knead), S.lû (stir of well and make it muddy).

15. S.e T.e N.e (idea of swaying about):
    S.eba T.eba (swing, wave about as leaves of a tree),
    T.ebê (lift up the hands so as to ward off something),
    S.ebê T.eba N.eba (brandish a weapon), cf. N.ebê
    (fend off, flutter (fonding off)).

16. S.ê T.ê N.ê (idea of dividing, splitting, and
    scraping away):
    N.ê (plane, cut off obliquely), S.êbô (crush
    grain on a mill), S.êlô T.êlô N.êlô (scrape, plane,
    take off), T.êphê (chop or cut lengthwise), S.êtê
T.ʃa  N.ʃa (hollow, dig a hole), N.ʃay (break mound, beat in two).

17. /ʃa/ (idea of clapping, slapping):
N.ʃer (fend off e.g. with the hand).

18. S.ʃa T.ʃe N.ʃe (idea of flattering, cheating):
N.ʃe (tell lies), T.ʃe (praise, flatter), S.ʃe (cheat, praise).

19. S.ʃe N.ʃe (idea of wiping away):
S.ʃe (wipe off, away), S.ʃe (wipe away a child's dirt), S.ʃe (wipe off, away), cf. also T.ʃena (avoid blows, parry).

20. S.ʃe T.ʃe N.ʃe (idea of copulating):
S.ʃe (copulate), S.ʃe (have sexual intercourse)

21. S.ʃe T.ʃe N.ʃe (idea of committing adultery, seducing):
S.ʃe (commit adultery), S.ʃa (seduce, entice), S.ʃe (commit adultery, entice), cf. also T.ʃen (prostitute).

22. T.ʃe N.ʃe (idea of blowing, being light):
N.ʃe (be light), T.ʃena N.ʃena (breath, take a breath), cf. also T.ʃe (sigh).

23. S.ʃe T.ʃe N.ʃe (idea of rubbing, scraping):
S.ʃe (scratch, scrape), S.ʃe (rub between the hands, kindle a fire by rubbing two sticks), N.ʃe (stroke).

24. S.ʃe T.ʃe N.ʃe (idea of bending sideways, leaning over):
S.ʃe (suspend, hang), N.ʃa (bend, turn, change the mind), T.ʃe (bend, Ward off a blow).

25. T.ʃi N.ʃi (idea of hiding)
T. fitlha N. fihla (hide, bury).

26. S. fo N. fo (idea of tying, closing up):
N. fiko (feet, put down), N. filla (stop a wound up with ointment), S. bino T. bino (make a knot, take between finger and thumb).

27. S. fo N. fo (idea of blowing, making a rustling noise):
S. fofo T. fofo N. fofo (fly), S. fofo T. fofo N. fofo
(blow of the wind, sprinkle) cf. also N. fofo (grow).

28. S. fo (idea of draining):
1) S. fofo (strain a liquid), S. fofo (drain, fell in drops), S. fofo (= S. fofo)

29. T. fo N. fo (idea of beating):
T. foko N. foko (throw out),
N. foko (dig with a crowbar), T. foko (strike, smite with the hand).

30. N. fo (idea of wrestling):
N. fofo (wrestle) N. fofo (wrestle).

31. S. fo T. fo N. fo (idea of rubbing off, stripping off)
S. fofo T. fofo N. fofo (strip off the leaves or small branches with the hand) cf. also T. fofo
N. fofo (rub off, take away, the leaves).

32. S. fo T. fo N. fo (idea of rubbing):
T. fofo (rub with much fat), S. fofo T. fofo N. fofo
(pleat, dress, curl the hair), N. fofo (rub with medicine), N. fofo (rub with medicine) cf. also
S. fofo N. fofo (rub off, make a hole wider).

1) Given in Blotzheim's Sesuto-English Dictionary as fofo. According to my informants either the voiced aspirate h or the guttural fricative g may be used, the latter sound is, of course, foreign to S. Anyway fofo is much more common than either fofo or fofo.
33. **S.ju T.ju** (idea of putting into the mouth):
   - **S.juba** (put into the mouth), **S.juna T.juma** (put into the mouth, drink a little), **S.juto T.jute** (put into the mouth, eat fast).

34. **S.ju T.ju N.ju** (idea of plucking, jerking out):
   - **T.jutina** (pluck out, off), **S.jula T.jula N.jula** (pluck, jerk off), cf. also **S.juthe** (scatter, drive away).

35. **S.ju T.ju N.ju** (idea of notching, scratching off):
   - **S.juna T.junn N.juma** (peel off the bark), **S.jura T.jure N.jura** (gnaw, notch, hollow out), cf. also **S.jututha** (scratch, tear off).

36. **S.he T.ge N.xe** (idea of pressing):
   - **S.heen T.zanna N.xuma** (milk), **S.hate T.geta N.xata** (oppress, tread).

37. **S.he N.xe** (idea of coagulating):
   - **S.hehle N.xehle** (coagulate), **N.xataa** (coagulate, become thick).

38. **S.he T.ge N.xe** (idea of gathering):
   - **S.heen T.zanaa N.xona** (snatch, seize, capture),
   - **S.hara T.zaeke N.xara** (coil ropes, gather up clothes to prevent them from getting wet), **T.gaten** (tie; gird), **N.xakea** (pull tightly together).

39. **N.xe** (idea of painting, plastering):
   - **N.xebr** (paint the wall), **N.xale** (plaster).

40. **S.he T.ge N.xe** (idea of scattering):
   - **S.hoke** (scatter, disperse), **N.xona** (break out of herd e.g. cattle), **S.hara T.zahon N.xene** (scatter).

41. **S.he T.ge N.xe** (idea of cutting, scratching):
   - **S.haha T.zaha N.xebe** (cut out as an engraver, hollow out),
   - **N.xara** (open a sore, wound the head), **N.xevna** (scratch, open a sore), cf. also **N.xoaxa** (tear...
436

off), S.\textit{Mole} T.\textit{goma} N.\textit{xoxoa} (tear).

42. S.\textit{ho} N.\textit{xes} (idea of being mad, angry):
   N.\textit{xes} (be mad, rave, rage), S.\textit{holl} (get angry, have a hard expression), S.\textit{hirn} (be angry), N.\textit{xome} (be mad).

43. N.\textit{xh} (idea of cutting, scraping):
   N.\textit{xoph} (peel off, scrape off), N.\textit{xh} (carve), N.\textit{xh} (cut).

44. S.\textit{ho} T.\textit{go} N.\textit{xo} (idea of scraping off, hollowing out):
   S.\textit{hob} (whip water away, take out in quantity), S.\textit{hob} T.\textit{goti} N.\textit{xoh} (file, sharpen, rub), S.\textit{hob} T.\textit{go} N.\textit{xop} (scrape, brush up rubbish).

45. S.\textit{ho} (idea of smearing):
   S.\textit{hob} (smear), S.\textit{hob} (smear).

46. S.\textit{ho} N.\textit{xo} (idea of making a rustling noise):
   S.\textit{ho} N.\textit{xoba} (make a noise like hail in the clouds or water in a flooded river), N.\textit{xoba} (clean a bottle with water and sand).

47. T.\textit{go} N.\textit{xo} (idea of gathering, drawing in):
   N.\textit{xoh} (fasten), T.\textit{go} (gather pumpkins), T.\textit{go} (draw in as a hand or a foot).

48. S.\textit{ho} N.\textit{xo} (idea of drawing):
   S.\textit{hoh} (draw), S.\textit{hoh} N.\textit{xoh} (draw by cunning, entice), cf. also S.\textit{hoh} (inhale) T.\textit{go} N.\textit{xox} (pull, draw, inhale).

49. S.\textit{ho} T.\textit{go} N.\textit{xh} (idea of scraping off, hollowing out):
   T.\textit{go} N.\textit{xh} (suck up as cattle drinking a small quantity of water), S.\textit{hore} T.\textit{go} N.\textit{xh} (scrape with a finger and then lick the finger).

50. N.\textit{xh} (idea of bending):
   N.\textit{xh} (turn back or over), N.\textit{xh} (bend).
51. S.hlo T.xwbu N.xwba (idea of being obstinate or angry):
   N.xwba (be angry or bad-tempered), N.xwlo (remain unchanged in spite of punishment), S.hlo
   T.xwbaa N.xwbaa (walk boldly, behave in a defiant way), N.xwbaa (walk boldly, behave in a defiant way), N.xwba (= N.xwbaa), S.hlo (grumble, get angry), N.xwbaa (walk boldly without looking at anybody).

52. S.hlo T.xwbu N.xwba (idea of decaying):
   S.hlo (rust of grain), N.xwbaa (be withered, ill),
   T.xwbaa (waste, decay), N.xwbaa (rust, grow mouldy).

53. S.hlo T.xwbu N.xwba (idea of making a rustling sound):
   N.xwbaa (glum), S.hlo T.xwbaa N.xwbaa (rustle),
   cf. also hlo (grumble) and S.klohe (make a rustling noise).

54. N.xu (idea of making a rustling noise):
   N.xu (hiss, whiz), N.xu (rustle as water, rush)
   N.xu (aip).

55. N.xu (idea of tying):
   N.xu (tie, bind), N.xu (tie a knot, stoop),
   N.xu (be hunchbacked).

56. S.hlo T.tlohno N.hlo (idea of stabbing, breaking up):
   S.hlo T.tlohno N.hlo (stab, slaughter), S.hlo N.hlo (how, cut in the ground, dig), S.hlo N.hlo (wound, take asunder, strike, chop).

57. S.hlo T.tlohno N.hlo (idea of swaying):
   S.hlo T.tlohno N.hlo (run with elbows drawn) in a body swaying), S.hlo N.hlo (become loose, get out of joint).

58. S.hlo T.tlohno N.hlo (idea of plucking out or off):
   S.hlo T.tlohno N.hlo (pluck out, off), S.hlo N.hlo (pluck out, off).
50. S.hlo T.ihno N.hlo (idea of worrying):
S.hlohe (irritate), N.hlopa (diplocence),
S.hlopa N.hlopha (bother, annoy), T.ihlora (worry), cf. S.hlohe (worry, be unhappy).

50. S.hlo T.lhlo (idea of stabbing, chopping):
N.lhloro (chop e.g. with en czo), S.lhloha N.lhloha (etcb, poke).

51. T.ko N.ko (idea of being apart):
T.kohe (be drawn two ways), T.kolhe (hover with outstretched wings), N.kohe (untie), T.katle
(stretch a thing out sideways, stretch c skin, etc.,
so as to widen it).

52. N.ko (idea of beating):
N.koba (beat with the fist), N.kolhe (beat with
the fist), cf. also T.kokota N.kokota (beat re-
peatedly with a stick or the fist).

53. S.ko N.ko (idea of turning away):
N.koba (go round, turn out), S.kohe N.kohe (avoid),
N.kohe (make dialcyl or disaffected).

54. S.kha T.kha N.kxa (idea of piercing, cutting):
T.kohe (pierces as a branch), N.kokko (hook in
clothes as a thorn); S.khatho T.kgatho N.kktho
(crush, break new ground i.o. cutting furrows),
N.kxha (cut the car).

55. S.kha N.kxa (idea of striking, throwing):
S.khane (beat, conquer), N.kxthr (gallop i.o.
striking the ground with the feet), S.khatla N.kxatr
(strike mercilessly), N.kxatla (throw as a stick).

56. S.kha T.kha N.kxa (idea of pleasing, rejoicing):
S.khehe T.kxatla N.kxhe (please, delight),
T.kohe N.kxha (exult, rejoice) cf. S.khahe
T.kcoro N.kxha (be beautiful, righteous) and
S. khanu N. ksevhe (shino, glitter).

67. T. kdeo N. ksevhe (idea of drying up):
   N. ksevhe (coagulate), T. kdeo (dry up as a fountain or blood).

68. S. khe N. ksevhe (idea of gathering):
   N. ksevhe (tie together), N. ksevhe (pilo up),
   N. ksevhe (gather up, tuck up).

69. S. khe N. ksevhe (idea of running):
   N. ksevhe (run to and fro), S. khe (haste, hurry, gallop), S. khe N. ksevhe (run about madly), cf. also S. khe (run, be always on the move), S. khe (go away quickly before one has been told what one must do).

70. T. kdeo N. ksevhe (idea of breaking, chopping):
   T. kdeo (cut up growing grass with a spade, chop out the backbone of an animal), N. ksevhe (bite through),
   T. kdeo N. ksevhe (break with the teeth, plough hard land), T. kdeo N. ksevhe (break or cut a twig from a stump) cf. also S. khe N. ksevhe (choose, separate i.e. idea of making or breaking apart).

71. S. khe N. khe (idea of striking, digging):
   S. khe (dig dry dung in a krape), S. khe (strike the ground with a pick) cf. also S. khe (clean a place with a spade) and T. khe (dig superficially).

72. S. khe T. kdeo N. ksevhe (idea of rubbing, smearing):
   N. ksevhe (rub, rub out, make soft), T. kdeo (rub with much fat, smear with dung), S. khe N. ksevhe (rub with dung), S. khe N. ksevhe (rub a skin between the hands, smear out a house with dung, rub away with a finger), S. khe N. ksevhe (rub a skin between a stone) cf. also N. ksevhe (touch with a finger).
73. S.kho (idea of shovelling away):
    S.khofo (shovel away), S.khopa (shovel away).

74. S.kho T.kro N.kro (idea of gathering):
    S.khiba N.khoba (sweep together, invite many people),
    T.kropa (gather all together) cf. also T.krokoan
    (gather a number of things together), N.krokxola
    (gather together).

75. N.kro (idea of notching, chiselling):
    N.khoba (notch, chisel), N.khora (chisel out,
    hollow out) cf. also S.khofo (beat, smash).

76. T.kro N.kro (idea of breaking off):
    T.kropa N.khoba (break off), N.khora (cut or
    chop off).

77. T.kro N.kro (idea of getting nasty):
    T.khona (get rusty, dirty), N.khora (get rusty).

78. S.khu N.kru N.khu (idea of bending):
    S.khoba (bend, fall on the knees), N.khuta (stoop
    behind something), N.khuta (stoop down), S.khutla
    N.khuta (return) cf. also S.khumene T.khumena
    (kneel) and S.khukhuna N.khukhuna (creep).

79. S.kho T.krawa N.kxwa (idea of bending):
    N.kxwata (pull down with a hooked stick),
    S.khetha T.kwatha (bend down), N.kxwata (hook
    down).

80. S.kho T.krawa N.kxwa (idea of making a rustling
    sound).
    S.khurile (run in the grass, make a rustling sound
    of clothes while running), S.khara T.kwara (scrape
    with a knife, strike a match), N.kxwatho (scrape,
    plane), cf. also S.khulisa (rummage in the grass),
    S.khushitle (scratch) and N.kxwata (wipe away
    with a finger).
81. T.ki N.ki (idea of striking, pushing):
   T.kibn (push with a stick against the ground when walking), T.kitla N.kitlo (strike with the fist or a stick), cf. also S.kitièc (strike with a stick) and T.kiko (a mortar).

82. S.ko T.ko N.ko (idea of gathering):
   T.kon (gather), S.kola N.kola (gather locusts, rake together) cf. also N.koke (stick together of dogs when copulating).

83. S.ko T.ko N.ko (idea of begging):
   S.koke (beg for food instead of asking for it),
   S.kone T.kone N.kone (beg, ask).

84. S.ko T.ko N.ko (idea of bending):
   S.kabna N.kabna (bend), N.koka (lean), T.kone
   (bow as the head).

85. S.ku T.ku N.ku (idea of uttering a sound):
   T.kun N.kun (shout out), S.kupa (sing a circumcision song), cf. also S.kurèna (grumble), T.kurupee
   (coo as a dove) and S.kutla (speak badly of, abuse).

86. S.kòe N.kwe (idea of being stiff or hard):
   S.kòene (become stiff or hard from cold), N.kwone (become dry as fruit or meat), S.kotla N.kotla
   (be stiff from cold, have a tough body) cf. also
   S.kòalehola (become dry and hard).

87. S.kon (idea of stabbing, chopping):
   S.kotla (plough with a hoe) S.kotla (stab).

88. S.kòe (idea of hiding):
   S.kòene (hide, cover), S.kotla (hide, put something under the arm).

89. N.kwe (idea of cutting):
   N.kwene (cut grass), N.kwene (cut, cut off).
90. S.koe T.kwe (idea of jumping):
   S.koe T.kwa (rear as a horse, toss up a rider),
   S.koela T.kwela (hop as a lacust),
   S.koela (= S.koela T.kwela) (hop as a lacust),
   S.koe T.kwe (jump, buck) cf. also S.koe (dance).
91. S.le T.le N.le (idea of stretching out):
   S.le T.le N.le (lie down).
92. S.le T.le N.le (idea of looking):
   S.leNa T.leNa N.leNa (look towards), S.leNa (observe),
   S.leNa T.leNa N.leNa (observe the stars,
   observe, notice), S.leNa T.leNa N.leNa (expect, wait for).
93. N.le (idea of dangling):
   N.léNa (delay, idea: "dangle") cf. also T.lean
   N.lean (tie a knot carelessly).
94. S.le T.le N.le (idea of joining):
   S.leNa T.leNa N.lean (weave, pleit) cf. also N.lean
   (stick to, fasten).
95. N.mu (idea of sticking to):
   N.mura (stick to, suck), N.murra (patch),
   N.mura (stick to).
96. S.me T.me N.me (idea of running):
   S.meN.me (run) T.me (run as an ox,
   prance as a horse).
97. S.me T.me N.me (idea of closing the mouth):
   S.meNa T.meNa N.meNa (shut the mouth, be silent),
   S.meNa T.meNa N.meNa (suck, taste).
98. N.mu (idea of making a bundle):
   N.mura (make a bundle), N.mura (form into a ball).
99. T.me N.me (idea of pilfering):
   N.me (pilfer food), T.metha (pilfer food).
100. S. nga T. nga N. nga (idea of striking):
S. ngaba N. ngaba (strike), S. ngata T. ngata
(strike, beat).

101. S. nga T. nga N. nga (idea of being obstinate):
T. ngaba N. ngaba (refuse to speak, withhold milk
as a cow), S. ngenga N. ngenga (quarrel, rebel),
S. ngae T. ngaye N. ngaye (sulk, go away in a bad
temper).

102. N. nga (idea of fastening):
N. ngema (fasten) N. ngema (pull tightly) cf.
S. ngema T. ngema (soak, absorb with e sponge).

103. S. nga N. nga (idea of cutting):
N. ngéna (cut off, in two), S. ngéka (cut, clean),
cf. also S. ngéka (strike on the head).

104. S. nga N. nga (idea of scratching):
S. ngéla N. ngéla (scratch, engrave, write),
N. ngéla (scratch).

105. S. ngéa T. ngowa N. ngowa (idea of scratching):
N. ngwala (scratch, write), S. ngépea N. ngewepe
(scratch, punch), S. ngéra N. ngwara (scratch, on-
grave), S. ngéera T. ngaye N. ngaye (scratch).

106. S. nga N. nga (idea of thinning):
N. ngéa (make thin), S. ngéla N. ngéla (make thin,
small).

107. S. nga N. nga (idea of becoming loose):
N. nga (become loose), S. nga (become loose,
hang down), cf. also T. nga (shudder).

108. S. nga T. nga N. nga (idea of curving, bending):
S. nga T. nga N. nga (bend down e.g. a branch, turn
back).
109. **S.pkh N.pkh** (idea of pressing, squeezing together):

S.pke N.pke (shake in as corn in a bag, stop with a cork), N.patn (press together, squeeze), cf. also N.phetn (touch, full).

110. **S.phe T.phe N.phe** (idea of scattering):

T.phatnla (scatter), N.phetna (fill the mouth with water and squirt it out), S.phatla N.phetla (let water loose, burst of the water pouch), cf. also N.phetna (travel through a country) and N.phetna (chop or cut lengthwise).

111. **S.phe** (idea of filling up):

S.phakna (fill up, overfeed), S.phakna (fill), cf. also N.phakna (want to go to the stool).

112. **S.phe T.phe N.phe** (idea of turning):

N.phetna (turn towards the side, persuade), S.phetna T.phetna (turn, repeat), N.phetna (turn, turn round), cf. also S.phetna (turn up the edge, open a book).

113. **S.phe N.phe** (idea of being purulent):

S.phekna (not to heal of a wound), N.phekna (not to heal of a wound), S.phetna (be purulent) cf. also N.phetna (heal slowly).

114. **S.pha N.pha** (idea of wandering about, fleeing):

N.phakna (wander about), S.phakna (run away, flee), N.phetna (wander about in the village).

115. **T.pho N.pho** (idea of making bubbles, blisters):

T.phetna (become blistered), T.phetna (foam or froth as milk in a pail), N.phothn (bubble, swell).

116. **S.pho T.pho N.pho** (idea of beating, thrashing):

S.phetna (thrash), T.phetna (beat grain out of the ear) cf. also N.phothe (thrash).

117. **S.pho N.pho** (idea of rubbing):

N.phetha (bossear), S.phetna (wash the face), N.phetna (strip off as leaves) cf. also N.phetna
118. **S. phu T. phu** (idea of making a flapping sound):
   T. **phur** (beat a skin or carpet with the hand),
   S. **phutla** (slap with something soft).

119. **S. phu T. phu N. phu** (idea of breaking):
   S. **phulka** (break, smash), N. **phula** (cut open, bore),
   S. **phuma N. phumaa** (smash, let a thing fall), S. **phure T. phure N. phure** (cut hard food, gnaw).

120. **S. pi T. pi N. pi** (idea of covering):
   N. **pice** (cover), S. **pite N. pite** (hide), S. **pitla T. pitla N. pitla** (fall upon, crush by falling on).

121. **S. pe N. pa** (idea of uttering a loud sound):
   S. **peke** (bellow, scold, roar), N. **pepa** (explode),
   S. **pere** (roar of a lion), cf. also N. **petla** (belch).

122. **N. phel N. phel** (make a blowing sound):
   N. **phake** (blow the nose), N. **phaine** (pant, puff).

123. **S. fe T. fe N. fe** (idea of making short forceful movements):
   N. **feha** (jump along), S. **fehe T. feae N. feae** (kick),
   S. **frehe T. frehe N. frehe** (cut with an axe, split up wood).

124. **S. fe T. fe N. fe** (idea of moving about, running):
   S. **feke T. feke N. feke** (chase off), N. **rela** (run), cf.
   also T. **rea N. rea** (approach and retreat from one in dancing) and T. **reloke N. reloke** (run about as elves at play).

125. **S. re T. re N. re** (idea of extending, stretching out):
   S. **rela T. rela N. rela** (draw a straight line, make a cut in the skin as in skinning an animal), S. **reha**
   (get spread out, got scattered).
126. S.rim T.rim N.rim (idea of thickening):
   T.rema (become curdled), S.rothe N.rothe (curdle, thicken).

127. S.rim T.rim N.rim (idea of cutting):
   S.roha T.roha N.roha (cut, chop), S.raha (cut a dry skin).

128. S.rim T.rim N.rim (idea of being loose, shaky):
   N.roha (become loose), T.repa (become loose or aleck), S.rothe N.rothe (become loose) cf. also
   N.roha (become soft).

129. N.rim (idea of rubbing):
   N.rima (smear the floor).

130. S.ro N.ro (idea of swelling, ascending):
   N.rohe (become very big), S.roha (rise), N.rota
   (ascend), N.rothe (blow up of bowels).

131. N.ro (idea of becoming rusty, dark):
   N.roha (rust), N.roha (become black or dark),
   N.roha (get a dirty colour).

132. T.ru N.ru (idea of ascending):
   T.runa (come up as a molehill), N.runa (flare up high of a fire).

133. S.ru T.ru N.ru (idea of crushing):
   N.rula (hammer, forge), S.runa T.runa N.runa
   (crush with the teeth), S.runa T.runa N.runa (kill lice with the nails), S.ruthe T.ruthe
   (smite, hit with a stone), S.ruha T.ruha N.ruha (break down, pull down).

134. N.se (idea of going across):
   N.sela (cross a river) cf. also S.tehla T.tehla
   (cross a river, road).

135. S.se T.se N.se (idea of cutting):
   T.sega (cut), S.sega (cut off the top of the ear as
a mark), T. satlhn (cut with a sharp knife or an axe).

136. S. pā T. ṭā N. ्
(idea of being sad):
S. ṭārē T. ṭārē (be sad), N. ṭālā (be sad).

137. S. pā T. ṭā N. ् (idea of cutting):
S. pāhā N. pāhā (cut), S. pāhān ṭāhāle (cut as with a saw), S. pākā (lance), S. ṭārē T. ṭārē N. ṭārē (chisel, cut with the nails), N. ṭātā (cut round).

138. S. ् T. ् N. ् (idea of inclining, bending):
S. ṭākā T. ṭākā N. ् (incline, turn to the west as a shadow), N. ṭāmā (leap), N. ṭārē (walk in a bent position), cf. also N. ṭānā (change the mind).

139. N. ् (idea of cutting):
N. ṭāpā (clip, prune), N. ṭātā (cut the throat).

140. S. pāhā T. ṭā N. ् (idea of folding):
S. pāhā (fold, make a parcel of), T. ṭākā, N. pākā (roll up a blanket, etc.), N. ṭāpā (turn, twist).

141. S. ṭā N. ṭā N. ् (idea of folding, twisting):
N. ṭākā (twist, wring), N. ṭānā (fold), N. ṭāpā (twist, wring, entwine).

142. S. ् T. ् N. ् N. ् (idea of making a rustling noise):
T. ṭalhān N. ṭāhā (brush off, rub), T. ṭānā (make a noise as wind, rain or a river), N. ṭāmā (rush, rustle), N. ṭātā (whiz, puff e.g., porridge when well cooked), S. ṭātā (got well cooked), cf. also T. ṭānā (knead half dry dough) and S. ् T. ् T. ् (make a skin supple).

143. S. ् T. ् N. ् (idea of cutting or going acunder):
S. ṭāhā (break), N. ṭānā (cut off), T. ṭātā N. ṭātā (move away), S. ṭārē T. ṭārē (draw aside, get out of the way.)

1) cf. Xheca sēkr (cut or make a small furrow or ditch).
144. S.to N.to (idea of making short quick movements):
N.toba (jump), N.tante (run quickly, gallop),
S.teta (act in a hurry).

145. S.to N.to (idea of being exhausted):
S.tela (become bad, insipid), S.tama (become
tired), S.tena (get tired, sad), S.tena N.tena
(become tired, weak, tasteless).

146. S.to T.to N.to (idea of beating):
N.toa (beat), S.teta T.teta (strike, hit),
S.tela (strike with the fist), N.toya (beat).

147. S.to T.to N.to (idea of sinking down):
S.toba T.teha (sink, get deep in), N.toa (sink,
sink down).

148. N.te (idea of surrounding):
N.tere (enclose), N.teta (go round, enclose).

149. S.the N.the (idea of jumping along, running):
S.thele (jump of calves, frolic), N.thepe (play),
N.thepha (run along), N.thatha (go round in circles,
walk about) cf. also S.theba T.theba N.thaba
(be
glad, rejoice).

150. S.the N.the (idea of making short violent movements
e.g. breaking, beating):
N.thaka (cut into pieces), S.thakha (kick out one's
legs like a man on horseback), S.thasa (beat with a
stone to make supple), N.thatha (break into pieces).

151. S.the T.the N.the (idea of making short movements
e.g. knocking, pushing):
T.thanya N.thanya (knock a goat's udder with the hand
when milking), S.thetle (push at its mother's udder

1) But cf. Afrikaans Tam (be tired, exhausted).
of a calf, push), S. thete N. thete (push slightly, touch), cf. also S. thebe (dig).

152. S. the N. the (idea of making short violent movements e.g. nudging, digging):
N. thebe (nudge, butt), S. theke (dig, dig out).

153. N. the (idea of cutting):
N. thena (cut off, castrate), N. theta (cut round a thing), N. thetha (cut off, eradicate).

154. N. thi (idea of nodding):
N. thine (nod), N. thina (nod).

155. S. thi T. thi N. thi (idea of turning back):
S. thine T. thine N. thine (stop, turn back), S. thinya T. thinya N. thinya (turn quickly in running, change the mind, etc.), N. thine (close, cover up i.e. turn away from sight).

156. S. the N. the (idea of breaking off, away):
S. thebe T. thebe (break through, break out and run away), N. thekha (break off, out), cf. also N. theba (break through, out) and N. thona (take out with two fingers).

157. S. thu T. thu N. thu (idea of breaking, smashing):
S. thua (break, crush, divide), S. thube T. thuba N. thuba (smash, break to pieces), S. thuhe T. thupa N. thuhe (break, crush, divide), S. thule (break down, faint), S. thukhe (break), S. thula T. thula N. thula (give a knock, pierce, strike), S. thuma T. thump N. thumpa (crush, grind fine).

158. N. thwa (idea of making a rustling noise):
N. thwakha (make a noise when walking), N. thwapa (scratch open), N. thwathwa (trot), N. thwaya (gnaw).
159. S.ti T.ti N.ti (idea of striking):

S.tiba T.tiba N.tiba (strike the ground with the foot), S.tila (strike the ground with the foot), N.tiye (beat).

160. S.ti T.ti N.ti (idea of getting strong):

T.tiin (become strong), N.tine (become strong), S.tiê N.tiye (become strong).

161. S.tie (idea of moving about):

S.tieba (shake), S.tjake (dance), S.tietie (go about working at many things).

162. S.tle T.yle N.tle (idea of catching, holding together):

S.tlema T.tlema N.tlema (bind), N.tlema (take with the tongue), N.tlepa (catch).

163. T.tee N.tee (idea of standing erect):

N.teeme (stick upright), T.keepe N.keepe (throw a spear so as to make it stick).

164. S.che (idea of digging):

S.cheba (dig), S.cheka (dig out).

165. T.tahi N.thi (idea of closing):

T.tahibâ (plug, stop), T.thihire N.thiïre (veil, throw a protection over).

166. S.chô (idea of sharpening):

S.chôra (be pointed, sharp), S.chêcha (sharpen), cf. also S.chotêna (sharpen) and S.têotêna (sharpen).

167. S.tei N.têi (idea of pinching, breaking off a little):

S.teipe N.teipe (pinch, take a little), N.têitle (break off a little) cf. also N.têire (gnash the teeth).

168. S.tao T.tao N.tao (idea of taking out, off):

N.tôha (pluck out), S.taola, T.taola N.taole
N. tsała (take off, undress), N. tšoši (pluck out as feathers or hair), cf. S. tseša T. tshwa N. tšwa (come out).

169. S. tu T. tu N. tu (idea of beating, striking):
S. tuła (get broken), S. tšuba N. tšubä (strike with the fist, oppress), S. tšula T. tšula (stamp. crush)
T. tšupa (beat with the hand), cf. also S. tšula (shake a bag in order to compress what it contains).
APPENDIX B

ROOTS

a. The roots given in this Appendix are consonantal, simple or derivative. In isolating these roots only disyllabic simple verbal stems in their multi-functional conjugal form have been compared. No attempt at exhaustiveness has been made here either for the same reasons as given in Appendix A, § c.

b. The UB roots quoted below have been obtained from N.UB.V. Chapter III, and are here given merely for the sake of indicating the phonological relation probably existing between their consonants and the semantically corresponding Sotho consonantal roots.

SOtho Root

1. S.h T.b N.b (idea of cutting, chopping, stabbing, digging):
   S.hoba T.gaba N.xoba (cut out, how out), S.hleo
   T.tlhoba N.hoba (spear, stab), T.kgoba (pierce as a branch, thrust as a killing with a spade),
   T.kgoba (chop out the backbone of an animal), N.kxoba
   (carve, chisel), N.kxoba (cut grass), S.loba (cut by pinching with the nails), S.yoba (slaughter),
   S.thoba N.thoba (dig), S.thoba T.thoba N.thoba (stab, prick), S.tldoba (scratch), S.choba (dig), T.tshiba
   (dig out).

2. S.h T.b N.b (idea of striking, beating, smashing):
   S.hoba T.goba N.xoba (beat with a stone, beat a
tree with a stick in order to knock off the leaves or
fruit), S.hoba (beat, whip), N.keha (beat with the
fist), S.khoba T.kgoba N.kxoba (beat, smash), S.kuba
T.kuba N.kuba (spear without piercing the skin),
S.\textsc{pach} N.\textsc{pach} (strike, beat on the head), N.\textsc{toba} (sharpen a grindstone by beating it with another stone, smash), S.\textsc{thube} T.\textsc{thub} N.\textsc{thub} (smash), S.\textsc{tiba} T.\textsc{tiba} N.\textsc{tiba} (strike the ground with the foot, beat the ground with the tail as an ox), S.\textsc{toba} T.\textsc{toba} N.\textsc{toba} (smite with a fist, beat, best of the heart).

3. S.\textsc{f} T.\textsc{f} N.\textsc{f} (idea of scattering):
S.\textsc{fefa} N.\textsc{fefa} (wipe away a child's dirt), S.\textsc{hefa} (scatter, disperse), S.\textsc{hefa} (whip water away, take away in quantity), N.\textsc{tefa} (dip up mud with the hand), T.\textsc{inf}a (wipe away filth), S.\textsc{khena} (shovel away, drive out), T.\textsc{enef}a (squander, lavish).

4. S.\textsc{hi} T.\textsc{hl} N.\textsc{hl} (idea of making a rustling noise e.g. rub, scratch, crush, be shaky, trot):
N.\textsc{hobe} (rub against each other), S.\textsc{hehe} (crush grain on a mill), S.\textsc{feha} T.\textsc{feha} N.\textsc{fehe} (rub between the hands, strike a match, charm), S.\textsc{fehe} (enlarge a hole), S.\textsc{hehe} (speak much, be talkative, prattle), N.\textsc{xehe} (get loose, fall off)
S.\textsc{hehe} T.\textsc{gothe} N.\textsc{hehe} (rub, sharpen, polish by rubbing), N.\textsc{kweha} (grabble, scratch about), N.\textsc{kwehe} (grabble, scratch about), T.\textsc{thethle} (make a noise as things knocking together e.g. reeds), S.\textsc{khela} N.\textsc{khehe} (cut in the ground, new), S.\textsc{khehe} T.\textsc{thethla} N.\textsc{khehe} (trot, run with elbows drawn in, body swaying), N.\textsc{kwehe} (wipe off with a cloth), N.\textsc{kwehe} (run to and fro), N.\textsc{kwehe} (rub, rub out, make soft), N.\textsc{khehe} (shake, be loose), T.\textsc{thethla} (rub a skin with a stone in brey- ing), S.\textsc{khela} (run), S.\textsc{khehe} T.\textsc{kwehe} N.\textsc{kwehe} (become loose, shake, be shaky as a door), S.\textsc{nwehe} (become loose, hang down), S.\textsc{hela} T.\textsc{thela} N.\textsc{nhehe} (twist by rubbing on the thigh), N.\textsc{nhehe} (scrape, scratch with the foot), S.\textsc{nhehe} T.\textsc{gale} N.\textsc{ghehe} (cut as with a saw).
H."khle (rub in), H."khle (to have the colic),
H."khle (rub the grain out of the ear), H."khle (rustle, break the fence on cattle), T."utihne
H."uhle (rub or brush something off a person, make way through bushes, press anything in a mortar),
S."uhle (break), S."rohle (prattle, speak very much, indiscriminately), N."t"hle (rustle, go against the wind), T."utihne (push a thing in and shake it about when in), S."tèhle T."tèhle (chew, masticate, chew sweet read), S."uhle (get broken).

5. S."kh T."kh N."kx (idea of breaking, breaking apart);
N."koxn (break with a crowbar), N."kxkx (hook e.g. a thorn in the clothes), S."phoks (split in two),
S."phokse (break, smash), N."t"kx (break out, off),
S."thokse (break) cf. else the suffix kx found in the following derivative verbal stems: N."phoks (cut a slit in an animal's ear) from pho exist found in
S."phoxe (sear, rent), N."phoxe (break out, off, smash) from rô also found in R."lerô (crack) as well as the simple stem S."tèhle (kick out one's legs like one on horseback).

6. S."m T."n N."m (idea of being in contact with e.g. touching or leaning against something);
S."mna T."mna N."mna (touch), S."mna T."mna N."mna (stand),
N."f"mna (stand together), T."f"mna (rub with fat), S."r"hna
T."mna N."kxna (milk), S."blôna T."blôna N."blôna (plant, lay eggs of grasshoppers), S."hôna N."kxna (strangle),
N."kxona (touch with the open hand or fingertips),
N."kaxna (rub with much fat, smear with much dung),
N."lona (stick to, stick fast), N."mona (stick to a hole as a patch, suck), S."mona T."mona N."mona (suck), N."muna (suck), S."gona T."gona N."g"x (fasten, close, stitch)
N."phôna (rub), S."gona T."gona N."gona (pillow), N."sâna (lawn, incline), N."sâna (plant), N."tôna (touch here and there, dot), S."sâna T."sâna (bind) N."tôna (bind),
N.*tima (strengthen), N.*teima (lay eggs of grasshoppers).

7. S.*t P.*t N.*t (idea of holding together, bringing together, binding):
N.*bena (seam, stitch a seam), N.*fona (bend, turn), S.*fina (make a knot, form a bud), T.*kuna (tie a knot), N.*kuna (tie, bind), N.*kxana (bind together), S.*khine N.*kxine (kneehalter a horse), N.*khine (kneehalter), N.*khune (bind, pull back), T.*kine (kneehalter), T.*kuna (bow the head), S.*kda*na N.*kwena (turn, turn round), N.*pana (twist, wind round, cling to), S.*pana T.*pâna N.*pâna (hem, roll up, turn round), S.*pâna T.*pâna N.*pâna (turn up the brim of a hat, bend back), N.*bâna (fold in order to seam or to stitch), N.*tâna (bind, fasten), N.*tâna (bend back), T.*tâna (bend down the head and body), N.*tiâna (take with the tongue).

8. S.*t P.*t N.*t (idea of bringing into contact):
S.*tapa N.*pâna (talk about a subject, touch upon a subject in a conversation), N.*bepa (interweave, ontwine), S.*topa T.*topa N.*topa (wind round), S.*tropa T.*gapa N.*kopa (snatch, seise, capture), S.*tropa T.*gopa N.*kopa (scratch), S.*kopa (embrace, seise), S.*kopa T.*lepa (tie in a knot), N.*mopa (patch, mend), N.*mopa (dip a finger or a piece of wood into food and eat the food clinging to it), S.*mopa N.*mopa (hit, be right), N.*no*pepa (scratch), N.*no*pepa (scratch), S.*opa T.*öna N.*öna (strike), N.*öopa (gropo, like a blind person), N.*öopa (bind), N.*öopa (wind), N.*öopa (weave), N.*töapa (catch), T.*töapa N.*töapa (hop as a locust or a frog), N.*töna (pick up), N.*tupa (beat with the hand).

---

1) Cf. also suffix *pa in S.*kopa T.*kopa N.*kopa (catch). *pa also found in N.*maka (the whole, totality).
9. S. ph T. ph N. ph (idea of chopping, pushing or clapping aside):
   T. sōpha (chop, or cut lengthwise), N. sōpha (a blow), T. sōpha (strike or smite with the hand),
   N. sōpha (scrape off, peel off), T. krophe N. krophe
   (push out with the hand as grain from a vessel, smear e floor with wet dung), N. krophe
   (smear out e.g. a house, wipe away with a finger), T. krophe N. krophe
   (brock off), S. phepha (fly, run, jump), N. phepha
   (chop or cut lengthwise), S. phepha N. phepha (smear off, evade a blow), N. phepha
   (throw), N. thepha (jerk off, send off with a jerk).

10. S. T. N. (idea of cutting, scratching, biting):
    T. sōra N. sōra (cut open a swelling, wound the head),
    N. sōra (cut open a swelling, wound the head), S. sōra
    T. sōra N. sōra (make a hole, hollow out, notch), N. sōra
    (cut open a swelling, wound the head), N. sōra (carve),
    S. sōra T. sōra N. sōra (scrape a thing with a finger
    and lick the finger), N. sōra (dig, hollow out, scrape a
    hole in the earth), N. sōra (cut e.g. with an axe),
    T. sōra (plough before the rain falls, plough hard dry
    land), N. sōra (bite off, break with the teeth), N. sōra
    (chisel; hollow out), T. sōra N. sōra (scrape with a
    knife, strike a match), S. sōra N. sōra
    (engrave, scratch), S. phura T. phura N. phura
    (gnaw, eat something hard), S. sōra (tattoo a brave warrior's arm), N. sōra
    (cut a stick very thin, turn on a lathe) cf. also S. sōra
    (strike on the head), S. sōra (be pointed, sharp of the
    horns of an ox), S. sōra (strike on the head), N. sōra
    (gnash with the teeth).

11. S. T. N. (idea of treading upon, slapping or striking against, pressing against):
    S. pate T. pate N. pate (slap, smite, strike on the head
    with a stick), N. pate (plaster), S. pate T. pate N. pate
    (dig in the ground, dig a hole, hollow out), S. pate
12. S.th T.th N.th (idea of making short abrupt movements):
N.bèthe (beat), S.kłothe (strike, chop, pinch),
S.hłothe N.hłotha (pluck off feathers, pluck),
N.hłwatha (pluck, pull), S.khatha T.kgatha N.kxatha
(crush, break in new ground), N.kxatha (gallop),
N.kxôtha (cut or chop off), S.khotha (prepare a
threshing floor by removing the grass thereof), S.matha
N.metha (gallop, run), T.matha N.matha (pilfer food,
take a little, grind fine), N.mathe (beat), N.nçótha
(break off, pinch off), S.nçótha T.nwatha N.nwathà
(pilfer, take a slice off, break off), S.nwatha N.nwatha
(pinch, tear, scratch), S.phatha (slap), T.phothe
N.phothe (beat grain out of the ear, thresh), S.rathë
T.råtha N.råtha (cut with an axe, split up wood),
S.rathe (strike), S.rôtha T.rôthe N.rôthe (drip, drop)
S.rathe T.rathe (hit with a stone, strike with a stick),
N.ññathà (break into pieces), N.ññathà (chop off, root
out) cf. also N.thiêthà (churn).

13. S.th T.th N.th l (idea of smiting, crushing, striking,
cutting)
S.bêtle T.bêlga N.bêlga (chisel, carve), T.katla
N.katla (strike with a stick or a club), N.xwetla (cut
with the sickle), N.kîlîn (poke with a stick at something unseen), N.kêlî (beat with the fist), S.kêlî n.kêlî (strike mercilessly, hammer), S.khêlî T.kêlî n.kêlî (break or cut a twig from a stump, cut, bite off), S.khîlî n.kêlî (strike the ground with a pick, job, knock), S.khîlî (cut with the teeth), S.khîlî n.kêlî (crush, bruise), T.kêlî n.kêlî (punch a thing off with a stick, poke with a finger), N.kûlî (knock against something with the foot or elbow), N.kwûlî (tap or knock with the finger or the fist), T.khîlî (root up grass as a pig), T.khîlî n.khîlî (nudge with the elbow, knock against a thing with the foot), T.kîlî n.kîlî (strike with a fist or a stick), N.kûlî (push, wound by shooting), T.lêlî n.lêlî (destroy, smite to death), N.nêlî (flatten, hammer out), S.nêlî n.nêlî (strike, beat, punish), N.pêlî (cut, turn on a lathe), S.phûlî (split with something soft), N.pêlî n.pêlî (crush, squeeze), S.pshûlî (crush, break into pieces), S.pûlî (cut in two, cut one's way through cattle), T.pûlî (strike with a stick, poke with horns from side to side), S.pêlî (cut small pieces of meat), N.rôlî (smash), S.sêlî T.sêlî n.sêlî (beat out, stamp, pound corn in a mortar), T.nêlî (cut with a sharp knife or exe, chew the edible part of a bone), S.têlî (strike with the fist), T.taîlîlî (crush), N.têlîlî (break off a little).

14.S.a T.x S.¥ (idea of chopping, cutting open, scratching): N.kvè (break asunder), N.kvè (cut open a swelling), S.hûnî T.kvè n.kvè (scratch, hollow out), S.hûnî T.tïnî n.tïnî (how out a tree, scoop out), S.kèy (how down, chop, strike), N.kvè (cut a slip in the ear), T.kvè (carve), N.kvè (cut), S.nûnî T.nvè n.nvè (scratch), cf. also N.tïnî (gnaw), N.thsâya (beat), N.tvè (smash), N.tôvè (crack) and T.doîva (strike).
Simple stems identical in meaning but differing in form, the one being primary, the other secondary, with a strengthened consonant as initial consonant:

S. bipa T. bipa N. bipa (hide, smother, veil)
N. pipa

T. pupa (cover) N. pupa (cover)

N. fahle (send off) N. phahle (send off)

N. fahe (cheat, defraud) N. phapha (cheat, defraud)

T. fahne (chop, cut lengthwise)
N. phapha (chop, cut transverse, split)

S. fême N. fêxe (hang, suspend) N. phêxe (suspend)

N. fêxe (send off a blow, etc.)
S. phêxe N. phêxe (send off a blow, escape)

T. fôle N. fôle (thresh corn or maize while sitting round the heap)
S. phole

T. foma (lubricate, rub with fat, prepare arrow by rubbing it with poison)
N. phômen

T. fôse N. fôse (go dry of cow or milk goat)
N. phôse

N. fôse (have diarrhoea, purge)
S. phôse N. phôse

S. fahle N. fahle (coagulate, become thick from cold)
N. krahle

N. xôre (steal, be a good-for-nothing)
N. kôre

N. xôre (be satisfied, have plenty)
S. khôre T. kôre
N. xôra (rust, get mouldy)
N. xôra
N. xôra (suck up, hold in the mouth)
N. xôra
N. xôra
N. xôra
S. rola T. rola N. rola (make a first cut on the skin, rip open; run)
N. rola
S. rola T. rola N. rola (cut with an axe, a sword, split up wood, break into pieces)
N. rola
N. rola (root out, stub up)
N. rola
N. rola (set a trap) T. thya N. thya (set a trap)
T. thya (become curdled of milk)
N. thya
N. thya (delouse, crack vermin)
N. thya
N. thya (delouse, crack vermin)
N. thya
N. thya
N. thya (prevent from sucking of a calf)
S. thya
S. thya (burn) T. thya N. thya (burn)
S. thya
S. thya
S. thya (smear a skin in order to make it supple)
T. thya N. thya (smear, smear a skin in order to make it supple)
S. thya T. thya
N. thya (cross a river, a road, pass over)
S. thya T. thya
S. thya T. thya
T. thya N. thya (lift up the dress indecently)
N. thya
N. thya
N. thya
S. sibe T. sibe (plug, stop)

T. tahibe

S. sirn T. sirn N. sirn (shade, veil, throw a protection over)

T. tshira N. tshira

N. šhle (rub grain out of the ear, chew e.g.

S. šhleya T. šhôthle sweet reed)

N. šokra (make a noise) N. thêpko (make a noise).

N. šole (dish up)

S. šôle T. šhôle N. šheole

N. swna (be like) S. swnne T. swwana (be like).
SIMPLE STEMS RELATED IN MEANING BUT NOT
SYNONYMOUS, AND DIFFERING IN FORM, THE ONE BEING PRIMARY,
THE OTHER SECONDARY WITH A STRENGTHENED CONSONANT AS
INITIAL CONSONANT:

S.เวลา T.เวลา N.เวลา (spread out, plaster)
T.เวลา (open the eyes wide, hover with outstretched
wings)
N.เวลา (get smoothed out)

N.แต่ง (help with something, grant)
N.แต่ง N.แต่ง (give, be generous)

S.แตะ T.แตะ N.แตะ (strike, smite, slap with the hand,
smoothen by beating)
N.แตะ (beat with open hand on the ground e.g. when
catching locusts).

N.ต่อ (put, place, set up, lay eggs)
T.ต่อ (set or place up, hang up).

S.ต่อ T.ต่อ N.ต่อ (cut into small pieces e.g. meat,
skin; N. also cut meat from the
bone, scratch off)

N.ต่อ (seam, make a seam)

S.ต่อ T.ต่อ N.ต่อ (turn up the brim of a hat, bend
back, turn back at the edge of a
knife).

S.ต่อ T.ต่อ N.ต่อ (seize with the hands, strangle)
N.ต่อ (squeezes, press close).

S.ต่อ T.ต่อ N.ต่อ (cut, chisel, carve, plane)
N.ต่อ (cut).

S.ต่อ T.ต่อ N.ต่อ (sing the praises of, praise, give
thanks)
S.ต่อ (bellow, scold, roar).

S.ต่อ (sulk, be peevish)
T.ต่อ N.ต่อ (bellow as a bull, make a noise like a
river)
N.ต่อ (explode, burst).
S. duba T. duba N. duma (knead, make a mess)
S. tubn (oppress, torment, harass)
T. tuba (strike with a fist)

S. luna T. duna N. duma (sit down, sit)
S. tule N. tule (stamp, crush)

S. luna T. duna N. duma (make a noise, resound, thunder)
S. tula T. tuma N. tula (become known, become noised abroad)

S. lupa T. duma (sacrifice, put the mouth to a sick person and draw out the sickness)
S. tupa (go marauding)

N. duto (let the head sink, bend under a burden)
N. tuta (let the head sink through fatigue)

N. feya (beat into two, crack)
N. phava (pull open a door, turn the pages of a book, beat back somebody's hand)

N. jeele (go in one direction, stand together)
N. phara (make parallel, alay against each other)

S. lehla T. tehta N. tehla (churn, rub between the hands)
S. phelah (goad, prick)

N. tehta (shell, unhair, shovel away)
S. phetla N. phetla (dress a beam, or a stone on both sides, rub off, shell, strip of leaves)

S. furu N. furu (make a hole, notch, hollow out)
T. furu (gnaw, chew hard food as berries)
S. phura T. phura N. phura (gnaw, eat hard food)

N. fao/T. (katla) fry (burn) S. paha N. paha (get dry)

M. xeke (mix tobacco with ash)
N. xeke (mix tobacco with ash, change about)
S. kheka (join)
\( R \cdot x_{k40} \) (pull tightly)

\( R \cdot x_{k40} \) (hook e.g. a thorn in clothes cf. the preceding and subsequent pulling when clothes are hooked by e.g. a thorn still attached to a branch).

\( S \cdot h30m0 \) \( T \cdot g30n0 \) \( N \cdot x_{300} \) (milk)

\( S \cdot k30m0 \) \( R \cdot x_{k40} \) (strangle) ...

\( S \cdot h3e0 \) \( T \cdot g3e0 \) \( N \cdot x_{3e0} \) (coil ropes, pull up the dress, coil anything up into a small compass; S. also: make a pot round)

\( R \cdot x_{k40} \) (pull up the dress).

\( S \cdot h3e0 \) \( T \cdot g3e0 \) \( N \cdot x_{3e0} \) (tread on, trample, oppress)

\( S \cdot k3e0 \) (catch with a trap that crushes).

\( T \cdot g3e0 \) \( R \cdot x_{k40} \) (strike with a stick or club, beat against the head, throw with a stone)

\( S \cdot k3e0 \) \( N \cdot x_{k40} \) (strike mercilessly, be stone).

\( N \cdot x_{300} \) (cut open a swelling, scrape, graze the skin)

\( N \cdot kx_{k00} \) (mark by cutting the ear).

\( N \cdot x_{3e0} \) (get loose, get untied)

\( N \cdot kx_{k00} \) (run to and fro).

\( N \cdot x_{3e0} \) (cut into pieces)

\( N \cdot kx_{k00} \) (bite off, bite into pieces, gnaw).

\( N \cdot h30n0 \) \( T \cdot g30n0 \) \( N \cdot x_{300} \) (shout, call)

\( N \cdot kx_{k00} \) (utter a sound (of a child)).

\( N \cdot x_{300} \) (talk nonsense, bark, cry)

\( S \cdot k30n0 \) (bark fiercely for a long time).

\( S \cdot k30n0 \) (sneeze)

\( S \cdot k30n0 \) (smear the head with clay).

\( S \cdot k30n0 \) (whip water away)

\( S \cdot k30n0 \) (shovel away, drive out).

\( T \cdot g30n0 \) \( N \cdot k00 \) (draw, pull, lead; also: inhale, smoke)

\( S \cdot k30n0 \) (inhale, smoke)

\( N \cdot kx_{k00} \) (inhale, smoke).
S. kohla T. gethka N. kohla (rub, sharpen, polish by rub- bing)
N. kohla (rub against, rub out, make soft).

N. xoke (fasten, bind)
S. xhoke T. xhoke N. xoke (fasten, inspan, hook, lead with a thong).

S. hope T. gopa N. xopa (scrape, remove or brush up rubbish)
S. xhope (shovel away).

T. dene (suck or draw out matter from an abscess, suck up as cattle drinking a small quantity of water; dry up)
N. xôpe (drink out everything).

S. hörca T.hörca N. xôra (lick a pot clean, scrape with a finger and then lick the finger.
N. xôra (hollow out, chisel out).

N. leka (command, forbid a person to part with what has been given to him; be in charge of)
N. tick (be in charge of).

T. lepa N. lepa (become tired or weary, be faint)
S. lepa N. lepa (be hungry)
S. tapa N. tapa (become tasteless, tired, weak).

S. lôca T. lôya N. lôya (correct, reprimend, punish, in- struct)
T. ntera (strike, knock down) cf. also T. deya (strike).

N. lêka (limber, terry)
S. teka (roam, be helpless)
N. têka (shoke about on the water).

S. ôbe T. ôbe N. ôbe (prevent, stop, bend)
S. kôbe N. kôbe (bend, lie down).

S. ôle T. ôle N. ôle (gather e.g. ground ashes, etc; gather with the hands)
S. kôla N. kôla (gather locusts, catch with the hands, rakes together).

S. ona N. ôna N. ona (shake the head)
T. koma (assent by nodding the head).

S. ône T. ône N. ône (strike, clap the hands, throb or ache as a head or pulse)
N. kôpa (beat suddenly, stab).
N.re+h (jump along)
S.th+a+h N.t+h+a+h (be glad, cheerful, cf. the association between jump on one hand and be glad or excited on the other hand).

N.re+h (arrive before, forestall, precede, chase away)
N.th+a+h (forestall, precede, wake up simultaneously).

N.t+a+n (summon, call up, invite)
T.th+a+n (hire, engage a person to work).

N.t+a+n (get out of sight, escape, idea: slide from)
N.t+h+a+n (slide, slide off).

N.re+a+n (stir i.e. turn over by stirring)
S.t+h+a+n (roll down, send rolling down).

S.to+h+a+n (strike, beat)
N.t+h+a+n (cut off, cut down).

S.t+i+n N.t+i+n (move one's head up and down, bend, stoop)
S.t+h+i+n T.th+i+n N.t+h+i+n (turn, stop, prevent, shut)

(of bending or turning.

N.t+i+n (bend down) N.t+i+n (nod, fall asleep).

S.t+i+n T.t+i+n N.t+i+n (break, bend)
S.t+h+i+n T.t+h+i+n N.t+h+i+n (go away unseen, break out and run away).

N.t+i+n (forge)
S.t+h+a+n T.t+h+a+n N.t+h+a+n (give a knock to, strike, smash, cut open).

S.t+i+n T.t+i+n N.t+i+n (crush with the teeth)
S.t+h+i+n T.th+i+n N.t+h+i+n (grind fine, crush, stone, beat into pieces e.g. a stone).

N.t+i+n (float of a lifeless object; bathe)
N.t+h+i+n (wash).

T.t+i+n (become burnt, scalded, scorched)
T.t+i+n (dry up or water).
s. ees (smear a skin in order to make it supple)

s. theen t. tehene t. (kgatla) tsebe n. theee (smear, rub, ground, rub fat in) cf. also app. ch. 2.

s. chebe t. kebe (look at, look round, look over the shoulder)

n. tehbe (look sideways).

s. erre t. erre (be sad, have a heavy head)

s. lerre n. theere (become lean, weak, sad).

t. ketla (cut with a sharp knife, chew the edible parts of a bone)

t. tehetla (crush).
APPENDIX D(4)

Simple stems identical in meaning but differing in form, the one being primary, and the other secondary with a strengthened consonant as second consonant:

\[ S.b \, T \, N.b \, > \, S.p \, T \, p \, N.p \]

\(-i)

- **T. hôpa** (cool of anger) **T. hôpa** (cool of anger)

\[ S.fûpe \, (put \, into \, the \, mouth) \]

\[ S.fûpe \, T. hôpe \, " \, " \]

\[ S.f \, T \, N.ô \, > \, S.p \, T \, ph \, N.p \]

- **N.ôfe** (become loose) **N.ôfe** (become loose)

\[ S.b \, T \, N.ô \, > \, S.kh \, T \, kg \, N.kk \]

- **S.tuho** **T. thûga** **N. thûxe** (break, pound, bruise)

\[ S.tuho \, T. hôha \, N.huho \, " \, " \]

\[ S.f \, T \, N.ô \, > \, S.th \, T \, th \, N.th \]

- **N.ôra** (take on the should) **N.ôthe** (take on the shoulder)

\[ S.bora \, (lie \, down) \]

\[ S.bôha \, T. hôha \, N. hôha \, " \, " \]

\[ S.ôra \, T. ôra \, N.ôre \, (bask \, in \, the \, sun) \]

\[ N.ôthe \, " \, " \, " \]

\[ S.e \, T \, N.e \, N.e \, > \, S.te \, T \, te \, N. te \, N.ôth \]

- **N.ôse** (fall off, of leaves of a tree)

\[ N.ôthean \, " \, " \, " \, " \, " \]

\[ S.tôsân \, T. tôsân \, T. (ktèle) \, tehoèa \, N.ôsôe \, (smear \, with \, fat, \, grease, \, paint) \]

\[ N.ôthean \, N.ôthean \, " \, " \, " \]

1) The stems in this Appendix have been alphabetically classified into sub-sections according to the unstrengthened consonants of their second syllables.
1) **APPENDIX D**

Simple stems related in meaning but not synonymous and differing in form, the one being primary the other secondary with a strengthened consonant as second consonant.

### ii) No-consonant and S.Ł T.Ł N.Ł > S.Ł T.Ł N.Ł

- **N.duce** (stir something stiff)
- **S.juka** (stir up water and make it muddy)
- **T.tlheya** N.\_leya (fail to reach, be insufficient)
- **N.lake** (possess nothing, be homeless, find it difficult to make ends meet)
- **T.kon** (gather, heap up)
- **N.\_koka** (stick together)
- **S.l\_\_e\_e T.l\_\_e\_a N.\_\_e\_a** (correct, reprimand, instruct)
- **N.\_\_e\_a** (be in charge of, act on instructions)
- **N.\_\_\_e\_a** (not to forget or forgive)
- **S.\_\_p\_\_e\_a** (witness, stand as witness for)
- **N.\_\_\_p\_\_e\_a** (witness, stand as witness for)
- **T.\_\_t\_\_e\_\_a N.\_\_t\_\_e\_\_a (hide a goat by means of knee, (and crosswise))
- **T.\_\_t\_\_e\_\_e (become blistered)
- **T.\_\_t\_\_h\_\_o\_\_e (foam or froth as milk in a pail)
- **N.\_\_e\_e\_n (enquire after, investigate)
- **S.\_\_e\_e\_e T.\_\_e\_e\_\_e N.\_\_e\_e\_e (lock round, seek)

---

1) The stems in this Appendix have been alphabetically classified into sub-sections according to the unstrengthened consonants of their second syllables.

ii) This term refers to such stems **that** have no consonant preceding the terminative ą; the original consonant has been dropped in some cases but is retained as the palatal semi-vowel S.Ł T.Ł N.Ł (Phon. 59) (in others). For this reason stems with the palatal semi-vowel in the second syllable will also be classified in the same sub-section.
T. sīr (run away, outrun)
S. bāda N. sīrē (run away, outrun)
S. sīkē T. sīkē N. sīkē (go parallel, go along, pass something, go a long way).
T. teva (beat)
N. teka (throw, sling).
S. thōs N. thōs (lay the foundation)
S. thēke (dig, dig out).
N. teva (crack a flea)
N. tēka (smash).

S. b T. b N. b  >  S. p T. p N. p

S. bāba N. xāba (be greedy, strive for)
S. bēpa T. gope N. xopa (snatch, seize, capture).
S. bēba T. gope (beat with a stone, beat a tree with a stick to knock off the leaves or thorns)
S. bōpa T. gope N. xopa (scrape, remove or brush up rubbish, scrape off).
S. bōba (rust of corn, etc., ) common idea that of ) decaying.
T. gwape (waste, decay) )
N. xwēba (be furious)
N. xwopa (pass somebody in a haughty or contumacious way).
S. kēba T. kēba N. kēba (close, shut a hole; N. also: catch with both hands, catch with the mouth)
S. kēpa T. kēpa (catch, receive with the hands).
S. leba T. leba N. leba (look towards face)
S. lepa T. lepa N. lepo (observe the stars, watch carefully).
N. reba (gather)
N. rēpa (call up an army; agree upon).
S. thēba T. thēba N. thēba (be glad, cheerful)
N. thēpa (play).
S. thēba T. thēba N. thēba (prevent, stop, turn)
N. thēna (cover up with a lid).
S.toba (go straight to, pick out amongst several, attack)
S.tope (walk straight towards).

S.chebe (dig, cf. the taking out of ground when digging)
S.chepe (dip up much).

N.tube (search about)
S.tupa (go marauding).

S.tube (oppress, torment, harrass)
S.tube (strike with a fist, beat the ground with the tail as an ox)
T.(kxatla) tupa (beat with the hand).

S.fofe T.f N.f > S.ph T.ph N.ph

N.fofe (cut off obliquely, plane)
T.fepha (chop or cut lengthwise, hew).

N.fofe (lie)
N.fofe (cheat, defraud).

S.fofe T.fofe N.fofe (fly i.e. to beat with wings)
T.fope (strike or smite with the hand).

S.khopha (shovel away, drive out)

N.kxophe (smear out a house with dung, wipe away with the finger).

S.khopha (scratch, take out).

S.h T.g N.k > S.kh T.kg N.kx

N.phaxa (roam about)
S.phêkha (run away, flee).

S.l T.l N.l > S.t T.t N.t

S.ela T.ela N.ela (spread out)
S.eta T.eta N.eta (multiply, increase).

S.lule T.dula N.dula (sit down)
N.duta (bend under a heavy load, bend the head).

S.fela T.fala N.fala (scrape, take off)
S.fate T.fata N.fata (dig a hole, hollow out).
N.xula (plunder)
N.xuta (snatch away from somebody).

S.pale T.pale N.pale (be too much for one, be unmanageable)
N.pale (oppress, press hard, squeeze).

S.shole (move about while unable to sleep)
S.shote (wander at random, emigrate, be nomadic) (common idea is that of moving about aimlessly).

N.thela (slide, glide off)
S.theta (roll down, send rolling down).

T.tile N.tile (avoid, get out of the way of anything likely to hurt, refuse)
T.tite (decline to express an opinion about a matter without hearing more fully about it, withhold an opinion).

S.T.T.N.T > S.th T.th N.th

T.tope N.tope (hose, deceive, tell lies to)
S.tothe (steel).

N.hlera (chase away)
N.hlathe (walk about).

S.khara T.khara (have plenty, be satisfied)
S.khothe (get strong, fat, well-looking).

N.kxora (hollow out, chisel out)
N.kxotha (cut off, chop off, plane).

T.kwara N.kwara (scrape with a knife, strike a match)
N.kwatha (plane, cut away notches).

N.khura (hide)
N.khuthe (stoop).

T.mare N.mare (stain, bespetter, misrepresent words)
T.mathe (throw down any wet thing, throw at as with clay).

S.nkore N.ngwara (scratch, engrave)
S.nkatha T.ngwatha N.ngwatha (break off, take a slice of).
S.rara (tattoo a brave warrior's arm)
S.rathe T.rathe N.rathe (cut with an axe, chop).
N.sora (sip off, lop)
N.rothe (blow into water so as to form bubbles).
APPENDIX E. (++)

Simple stems identical in meaning but differing in form, the one being primary the other secondary with both syllables commencing in a strengthened consonant:

S. x̱ora T. x̱ora N. x̱ora (pleit e.g. hair, fibres, etc.)
N. phôta

S. hase T. gese N. kane (sprinkle, spread, scatter)
T. kantesha

T. x̱ora N. x̱ora (remove, carry away from the fields, garner corn, transport)
S. thothe: N. thothe:

S. gase (smear a skin in order to make it supple)
N. thacthe (smear, smear a skin with fat in order to make it supple).
Appendix E2(2)

Simple stems related in meaning but not synonymous and differing in form, the one being primary, the other secondary with both syllables commencing in same strengthened consonant:

T. bōle N. bōle (speak, relate news)
S. pot. (rave, be delirious).

S. bur T. bur (speak, talk, S. puke (blow hard, mourn, scold much, discuss).
S. lute T. lute N. lute (knead, make a mess of)
T. tute (beat with the hand).

S. lute T. dute N. dute (sit down)
N. tutr (bend the head through fatigue).

N. jaff (cut off obliquely, plane)
N. phorph (split wood, chop).

N. jaff (lie)
N. phorph (cheat, defraud).

N. xara (cut open a swelling)
S. khatba T. khatba N. kxatha (plough furrows, break in new ground)
S. hoba T. goba N. xoba (knock off leaves, beat off thorns, beat with anstone)
S. khopha (shovel away).
S. hopha (whip water away, take out in a quantity)
N. kxopha (smear with dung, wipe away with the finger)
S. khopha (take out, scratch).

N. xara (get satisfied)
S. khotha (get strong, fat, well looking).
S. hōra T. gōra N. xōra (lick a pot clean, scrape a thing with the finger and then lick the finger)
N. kxōtha (plane, cut off).
N.reba (jump along)
N.there (play).

S.rehe T.rega N.rexe (kick)
S.thakha (kick out the legs as one on horseback).

S.reta T.rega N.rega (get entwined, spin as a spider, interweave, creep)
N.thatha (walk about in circles, wind).

N.rela (get out of sight, idea: slide from)
S.thate (roll down, send rolling down).

S.sasa (smear a skin in order to make it supple)
N.thëathísa (grease a wheel, paint, rub).
APPENDIX F

Simple stems related in meaning and in form, obtained from appendices C1( ), C2( ), D1( ), D2( ), E1( ) and E2( ); only such sets as contain at least three stems have been formed:

S. ale T. ale N. ale (spread, scatter)
S. ata T. ata N. ata (increase, become numerous)
T. kela (hover with outstretched wings)
N. kela (smooth out)

no kata

Common idea that of spreading out.

S. luba T. duba N. duba (knead, make a mess)

no lupe (dupe)

S. tube (oppress, torment, harrass)
T. tuba (strike with a fist)
T. (xatle) tua (beat with the hand).

S. lula T. dula N. dula (sit down, stay)
N. duta (bend under a heavy load, bend the head)
S. tula N. tula (stamp, crush)
N. tuta (bend the head through fatigue).

N. fefa (lie)
N. fepha (cheat, defraud)

no phefa

N. phapha (cheat, defraud).

N. fefa (cut off obliquely, plane)
T. fepha (chop, cut lengthwise, hew)

no phafe

N. phapha (split wood, chop).

N. feya (beat into two, crack)

no fake

N. phaya (pull open a door, turn the pages of a book, beat back somebody's hand)
N. phaka (divide).
S.lobby T.lobby (beat a tree with a stick to knock off leaves or thorns)
S.lobby T.lobby N.lobby (scrape, remove rubbish, scrape off)
   no lobby, klobby, klobby
S.lobby (shovel away).

S.lobby (whip water away)
   no lobby, globby, xlobby
S.lobby (shovel away, drive out)
N.lobby (wipe away with the finger, smear with dung).

S.lobora T.lobora N.lobora (lick a pot clean, scrape with a finger and then lick the finger)
   no lobora, gobra, xobra
N.lobora (hollow out, chisel out)
N.lobora (plane, cut off).

N.lobora (be satisfied, have plenty)
   no lobora, gobra, xobra
S.lobora (be satisfied, have plenty)
S.lobora (get strong, fat, well-looking).

S.laya T.laya N.laya (correct, reprimand, punish, instruct)
N.laya (command, be in charge of)
N.lobbya (strike, knock down)
N.lobby (be in charge of).

N.lobby (jump along)
   no reba
S.thaba T.thaba N.thaba (be glad, cheerful)
N.thinga (play).

N.lobby (get out of sight, idea: slide from)
   no reba
N.thinga (glide, glide off)
S.thinga (roll down, send rolling down).

S.ribs N.ribs (move one's head up and down, bend, stoop down)
   no S.ribs T.ribs N.ribs but cf. S.ribs N.ribs (cut off)
S.thiba T.thiba N.thiba (turn, stop, prevent)
N.thinga (cover up with a lid).
S. scam (smear a skin in order to make it supple)

no aske, asche, arsten, šalten or žaltan

S. tseer T. tshaae T. (Kaztir) tshaae N. théeré (smear, rub, rub fat in)

T. tseer T. (Kaztir) tshée (smear a skin in order to make it supple)

N. thaxthee (smear, smear a skin in order to make it supple)

N. thärthee (grease a wheel, point, rub).
APPENDIX G.

Simple stems related in meaning (a small proportion being synonymous) but differing in stem-
vowel:

T.äla N.äla (all lie, dreams), S.äke N.äke (betray, deceive).
S.äke T.äke N.äke (betray, entrance).
S.äke N.äke (kiss, caress, fondle)
S.äke T.äke N.äke (nurse a sick person).

S.äle T.äla N.äla (spread out)
T.äla N.äla (flow as water).

S.ana N.ana (swear, to take an oath)
N.ana (take an oath).

T.ära N.äre (wound, cut open a swelling or tumor)
N.äre (wound, beat).

T.åtla N.åtla (kiss, fondle)
S.åtla T.åtla N.åtla (feed a little child, nourish, bring up).

S.åkaka N.åkaka (provoke, excite)
T.åkaka (offend, affront, treat with contempt).

T.åkaka (praise, extol, applaud)
S.åkaka T.åkaka N.åkaka (praise, sing the praises of).

S.åkaka T.åkaka N.åkaka (read, count)
T.åkaka N.åkaka (speak, tell news).

N.äkara (become lean)
S.åkara"

S.åkaka T.åkaka N.åkaka (strike, slap)
N.åkaka (plaster, polish).

S.åkaka T.åkaka N.åkaka (seek, look for, search for)
T.åkaka (search for hidden things).

S.åkaka (put straw etc. on water to prevent it from spilling out when carried)
T.åkaka (mother, hide, cover)
S.åkaka T.åkaka N.åkaka (mother, hide, cover)
T.åkaka (cover).
N. dipa (chase)
S. lupa T. dupa (scarify, put a mouth to a sick person and draw out the sickness).
N. éna (put into water e.g. something to be ground)
S. éna T. éna N. éna (put into water, dip, plunge).
S. épa T. épa N. épa (call together)
T. épa (call to a tribal gathering).
N. kafn (cut off obliquely, plane)
S. kafn N. kafn (scratch, scrape, cut).
N. fote (lie)
N. fote
N. fote (be light in weight)
N. hote
S. kote T. kote N. kote (fly)
S. kote (become weak, thin).
N. faka (put in)
S. faka T. faka N. faka (copulate of a dog or horse, idea: put in)
N. fika (fasten, place, fix)
N. faka (fasten).
S. faka T. faka N. faka (scrape, plane, scrape out)
N. filna (take away, plunder)
S. fula T. fula N. fula (graze, pluck off).
T. fapha (chop or cut lengthwise)
T. fopho (strike or smite with the hand).
S. fôle T. fôlha N. fôla (churn, rub between the hands)
S. fôle (enlarge a hole).
S. fôre T. fôre N. fôra (put on the rafters of a roof, make a hedge)
S. fôra T. fôra N. fôra (plot).
S. fína (make a knot)
T. funa

N.xeba (paint a wall)
S.hoba (smear, besmear).
N.hoba (scatter, disperse)
S.hoba (whip water away).
S.hoba T.gaka N.xeba (slip from one's memory, forget)
S.hoba (forget, embarrass).
N.xera (wound the head, open a swelling)
N.xera (cut into pieces).
N.xen (prompt)
S.xen T.xen N.xen (shout, call).
S.xen (mow, reap)
N.xen (plunder).
S.hohla T.gotla N.xohla (rub, sharpen)
N.xwahla (scratch).
N.xhro (rust, get mouldy)
N.xware " " "

S.hoile N.xoile (cry loudly, roar)
T.gwatile (bleat as a goat, bawl as a crying child).
N.xwele (copulate of sheep or goats)
S.hoile T.gwile N.xwele (cover, copulate, serve).
S.hlohe T.nlhega N.hlohe (appear, happen)
T.nlhega N.hlohe (sprout as a tree, burst into leaf, grow).
S.hloke N.hloke (be bright, visible, put on clean clothes)
S.hloke (take away, clean, put in good order).
S.nlwaka N.nlwaka (become clean, pure).
N.hloke (possess nothing, trudge along)
S.nlaka T.nlhaka N.nlaka (be in need of, lack something).
N. hlothe (take to pieces e.g. the material of a house)
S. hlotha, hlothe (pluck off feathers, pluck out)
N. hiwatho (pluck, pull out).

T. thotiba (rub a skin with a stone in bringing)
N. hiwele (wipe out with a cloth).

S. khîon T. thélia N. khîon (look at, spy, visit)
S. khîon (spy out, go and see, visit).

S. khe T. dke N. khe (close, stop a hole)
T. kha (plug, stop a hole).

T. khe (be drawn two ways)
S. khe N. khe (spread of a fire)
N. khe (spread out to all sides).

S. khe (walk, move)
N. khe (go).

N. khe (prompt)
T. kha N. kha (shout out, proclaim with a loud voice).

S. khe N. khe (bow, incline, hang down)
S. khe N. khe (bow)

T. kha (bend in as the crown of a soft felt hat, be bow-legged).

N. kete (beat with the fist)
T. kîle N. kîle (strike with the fist or a stick)
N. kutle (push, nudge against).

T. kshe (pierce as a branch, thrust at as in killing with a spade)
T. kshe (chop out the backbone of an animal, cut up growing grass with a spade)
N. kshe (chisel, notch).

N. ksema (bite off)
N. ksema (bite through, bite off).

N. ksema (tie together)
S. khîne N. khîne (kneehalter)
N. khîne (tie).
T. kxopa Ha N. kxopa (push out with the hand as grain from a vessel, smear a floor)
N. kxopa (smear a floor, wipe away with a finger).

S. khatla T. khatla Ha N. khatla (break in new ground, crush)
S. khotha (prepare a threshing floor by removing the grass thereof).

S. khatla N. khatla (strike mercilessly, hammer)
S. khotha N. khotha (strike the ground with a pick, job, knock)

T. khotla N. khotla (push a thing off with a stick, poke with the finger, pound in a mortar)
T. khutla N. khutla (nudge with the elbow, knock against with the foot)
N. kxhotla (knock with the finger or with the fist).

N. kxeela (run to and fro)
S. kxeela (run).

S. khera N. khera (run about madly)
S. khoera N. khoera (climb a long way up the mountain, walk about aimlessly).

T. khota (plough hard dry land, plough the surface only)
N. khera (bite into pieces, gnaw)
N. kxora (chisel out, hollow out)
T. kware N. kware (scrape with a knife).

S. khota (go to a place of safety of cattle)
S. khutla (go away).

N. kxeela (be loose, shake)
S. khxeela T. khweela N. kxeela (be loose, shake).

S. khone T. khoane N. kxone (be able, be becoming)
N. kxwene (be able, be becoming).

N. khuse (shake a child up and down in the arms)
N. khisa

N. khutha (bend, stoop)
S. khoatha T. kwatha (bend down, lie down).

S. kona N. kona (give sparingly, begrudge)
N. kuna (withhold, keep back, deprive of).
N. kota (shear)
S. kute T. kuta N. kota (shear)
N. kwita (shear).

S. kute (return a reproach against one)
N. kute (deride, jeer, mock)
S. kutte (speak badly of, allude to).

S. lele T. lele N. lele (lie down)
S. lele T. dule N. dule (sit down).

S. lele T. lele N. lele (fetch, follow)
S. lele T. lele N. lele (expect, wait for).

N. lebe (worry)
T. dube (act so as to cause strife).

N. loke (bind)
S. loke T. loke N. loke (weave, plait).

S. lema T. leme N. lema (plough)
S. leme T. leme N. leme (bite).

T. lete (grind very fine)
T. lete (grind, pound to powder).

N. mane (suck, stick to of a patch)
S. mane T. mane N. mane (suck, shut the mouth)
N. mane (close the mouth, take with the teeth, etc.).

N. mane (wind round)
S. mane T. mane (fold up, roll up)
N. mane (fold, bend).

N. mete (touch here and there, dot)
N. mete (polish with the hand).

S. mine T. mine N. mine (below the nose in S. and N. also: drain a liquid)
T. mane (trickle through as water through a strainer).
N.นั่น (eat by sticking the finger or a piece of wood into the food)
N.นั่น (pick up).

N.นัท (form into a ball)
N.น้ำ (clinch, cement, stick to).

T.นี้ (be at rest)
T.นอง (withhold).

N.นัก (do something slowly)
N.นัก (go very slowly).

N.นาง (fasten)
S.นาง (clasp, lock, buckle).

S.นก (scratch, take hold with the nails)
N.นก (scratch)
S.นก (scratch, take hold with the nails).

T.นกตา (break off small bits)
S.นกตา (pilfer, break small bits off).

S.นกตา (cut clean, cut a bit of string)
T.นกตา (break or snap off a branch, a stick).

S.นกตา N.นกตา (engrave, write)
N.นกตา (write, scratch).

N.นิ่ง (press together, cramp, squeeze)
N.นิ่ง (press between the hands).

S.นิ่ง N.นิ่ง (hide, conceal)
S.นิ่ง N.นิ่ง (hide).

S.นิ่ง (boil)
S.นิ่ง (continue to be bad, be purulent)
N.นิ่ง (belch)

N.นิ่ง (give plenty of milk: cf. the noise made as well on the foam produced when milking into a pail containing much milk).
N.นิ่ง (beat up froth).
N. pexa (put sticks or straw on the water to prevent the water from spilling out)

N. puxa

N. petle (cut, turn on the lethe)

S. putla (cut in two).

T. phexa (place a piece of wood horizontally on two others, pieces).

T. phexa N. phexa (hold a goat's leg under one's knee when milking it; place across).

N. phexa (cut a slit or flap in the ear)

S. phexa (split in two)

S. phuka (break, smash).

N. phetha (press in, press close, fasten)

S. phetha (pleit, twist)

N. phetha (twist, twist together, pleit the hair)

S. phutha T. phutha N. phutha (fold, gather).

S. phetha (slop)

T. phetha (beat grain out of the ear, thresh).

N. pipe (cover up)

N. pupa

S. pok (bellow, scold, roar)

S. puk (blow hard, moan).

T. reme (demoralise)

T. reme N. reme (demoralise, spoil a child).

N. reme (call up, call for service, invite)

N. reme (call up, call for service, discuss) cf. also: S. reme (rush in great numbers).

S. reme T. reme N. reme (get entwined, spin)

S. reme T. reme N. reme (plot against, make plans about).

N. rothe (fell off of fruit from a tree)

S. rothe T. rothe N. rothe (drop, drip).

S. rotha T. rothe N. rothe (cut with an ax, chop, split)

S. rothen (strike, beat)

S. ruthe T. ruthe (smite, hit with a stone or a stick).
S. rūla (cut small pieces of meat)
N. rūla (smash)
S. rūla T. rūla N. rūla (break down, pull down, un-thatch).

N. rōba (bend, stoop)
S. rōba T. rōba N. rōba (break; N. else: bend).

N. rina (kill lice with one's nails, delouse)
S. rina T. rina N. rina " " " "

N. šāba (trade, exchange)
S. šāba (take much of something, buy many things)
N. šāba (take together, take greedily).

N. šēba (whisper, speak evil of)
S. šēba T. šēba N. šēba (whisper, speak evil of).

S. šēba (eat bread with meat or vegetables)
S. šēba N. šēba " " " "
N. šēba " " " "
S. šēba " " " "

S. šēma T. šēma N. šēma (pillow, put a thing as a pillow, lean)
N. šēma (lean against).

N. šēla (scrape with the foot)
S. šēla T. šēla N. šēla (cut with a saw, or a knife)
N. šēla (rumble of the stomach)
N. šēla (rub corn out of the ear)
N. šēla (rustle, go against the wind)
T. šutla (rub or brush something off a person, rub anything, press anything in a mortar, push or make way through bushes)
N. šutla (go against the wind)
T. šalha (push a thing in and shake it about when in).

S. šēma T. šēma (invent, begin, start a new thing)
S. šēma (eat the first fruit of the year).

S. šēna T. šēna N. šēna (show the teeth)
T. (Kṣatla) šina N. šina " " "
N. šēna " " "
T.sêpe (be weary of limbs after much walking)
N.sêpe (be stiff and sore of tired limbs).

N.setn (walk about at night)
S.sho-te (wander at random, be nomadic).

S.nîthe (roll up)
S.sîthe (entwine, wind, twist, wring).

H体贴 (jump, go bogging from one house to another)
N.tube (seek all over).

N.tîbe (smash)
N.tîbe (smash, sharpen a grindstone)
S.tîbe T.tîbe N.tîbe (strike the ground with the foot, thump with a fist)
S.tube (oppress)
T.tube (strike with the fist).

S.têba (become grey)
N.tîbe (become pale).

N.têba (throw e.g. a spear, shoot, sling)
N.tika (carry to a great distance of a shot).

N.têna (draw lots)
N.têna " "

S.têna (get sad, tired)
S.têna T.têna N.têna (tire, disgust).

T.têta (forbid, prohibit)
T.tête (withhold an opinion, decline to express an opinion about a matter without hearing more fully about it).

N.tête (wind, twist, roll)
N.tête (enclose, encompass, go round).

S.têta (extend)
S.têta T.têta (increase, become great, strong)
N.têna (get stiff of the male organ).

T.têya (beat)
N.têya "
N.tîya ".
S. telə N. telə (give up, renounce, abandon)
T. tela N. tela (avoid, get out of the way of anything likely to do harm).

S. tepe N. tepe (scoop up much water or corn)
N. tire (scoop up with something flat)
N. tope (pick up).

N. thene (clip, lop, prune)
N. thêne (clip, lop, prune, castrate)

N. thêtha (break into pieces)
N. thatha (root out)
N. thôtha (chop off, root out).

S. thôba N. thôba (dig, butt, push)
N. thoba (stab with the horns)
S. thuba T. thube N. thuba (dash to pieces, smash).

N. thina (crack, break)
N. thone (crack vermin).

N. thôkxa (break off, smash)
S. thukha (break).

S. thélé (pick up, find, adopt, take as a servant)
T. thwale N. thwala (find a thing and take it not knowing its owners, hire)
N. thwala (find).

N. thêkxe (throw away, lose)
N. thêkxa (suffer a loss).

N. thôela (twist pieces of sinews into threads)
S. têcele " " " " " "

S. tile (strike the ground with the foot as a sign of joy)
S. tula N. tula (stamp, crush, break).

S. têke (laugh at, scorn, shout)
S. tôka (shout for joy, laugh, make a noise).

S. tlama T. tlama N. tlama (bind, tie)
N. tlêma (bind, tie)
N. tîma (strangle, choke).
N. tattle (be weak minded)
N. tattle (be mad, crazy).

N. tote (wither of a plant, get weak of a calf)
N. totte (bend the head through fatigue).

N. tattle (groan, make a snarling or buzzing noise)
N. tattlet (blow, moan of the wind).

V
T. trite (despise)
T. tattle (despise, speak derisively against).
APPENDIX H.

Simple stems related in meaning, the initial consonant of the one being identical in form with the consonant of the second syllable of the other. A process of consonant transposition is probably involved here:

S. bate T. bate N. bate (strike, chop, slap)
N. taba (smash).
N. bêtha (beat)
N. thêba (knock, butt).
T. boke N. boke (fan off, fend off)
T. koba N. koba (drive away with contempt).
S. fehla (scandalise, displease, offend)
N. lefa (become insipid, lose the taste).
N. fele (compensate, stonc).
S. lefe T. lefe N. lefe (pay).
N. fokxe (dig with a crowbar)
S. khof (shovel away).
S. hlale T. lhale N. hlale (divorce)
S. lohla T. latpla N. lohla (throw away).
N. kxathe (gallop)
S. thekha (kick out the legs like one on horseback).
N. kxôre (chisel out, hollow out)
N. rôixe (break off, smash).
N. kxôthe (cut off, plane)
N. thôixe (break off, smash, break out).
T. mava N. mava (stein, bespatter, misrepresent words or actions)
N. rama (demoralise).
N. metla (go slowly, be unable to get along)
S. kleme T. kleme N. kleme (bind, tie).
N.môta (smoothen, polish with the hand)
N.tôma (touch here and there).
N.pata (roll up, form into a ball; also: beat repeatedly)
N.tane (fasten, tie, also: beat down with the fist).
T.natho N.natho (pilfer food, break off a bit with a finger)
N.thane (clip, lop, prune).
N.nône (dry up of water)
S.pône N.pône (dry, fade, shrink).
T.ataa N.patee (become very tired, become lazy)
N.taphe (be tired, hungry).
N.pute (seek something lost)
S.tupe (go merrauding).
N.rôxe (get rusty)
N.xôra (get rusty, mouldy).
Bibliography

Bantu In General


SOTHO GENERAL


V. Warmelo N.J. "European and other Influences in Sotho". Bantu Studies, vol. 3.

SOUTHERN SOTHO


TSWAHA


NORTHERN SOTHO


--- Versuch einer Grammatik des Sotho. Berlin, Wilhelm Hertz, 1876.

RANU LANGUAGES OTHER THAN SOTHO

Keene M.  "Lehrbuch des Nsaziga und Nsawani", Abhandlung des Humbullischen Kolonialinstitut.
Marconnet F. A Grammar of Central Karanga. Witwatersrand University, 1931.
Meinhof C. "Linguistische Studien in Ostafrika", M.S.O.S. 7.

NON-BANTU